

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/



Jough. Buks. 12.





The live: Wir Polar de Book

Digitized by Google





His Royal Highness GEORGE AUGUSTUS Prince of Wales, &c., And Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

Andrew Marie Carlos Car

and the second s

TO HIS

ROYAL HIGHNESS

GEORGE-AUGUST.

Prince of WALES, &c.

KNIGHT and COMPANION of the MOST NOBLE ORDER of the GARTER.

ARDON me, Mighty Prince, that in the Crowd of Your Joyful and Devoted Britons, one of an obscure Fame presumes to lay his Humble Offering at Your Feet.

IT is the History of the MOST NOBLE ORDER of the GARTER; which, from its first Institution, has been constantly worn by Persons of the highest Birth, and most illustrious Merit.

The DEDICATION.

IF the Stile and Manner, in which it is treated, were proportionable to the Dignity of the Subject, there would need no Apology for this Dedication. For to whom, next to the Great Sovereign of the Garter, whose true Heir You are, in all manner of Virtue and Honour, could this Treatise have recourse for Protection, but to Your Royal Highness, who are the Premier Knight of this Most Noble Order, and the standing Grace and Ornament of it.

BUT far above all particular Views, are the unspeakable Blessings derived to these Kingdoms, by the SUCCESSION of Your Illustrious Royal House:

The DEDICATION.

Every Briton seems new Born, and to have borrow'd fresh Influence from its Glorious Presence.

THE Godlike Virtues of Your Royal Father, are not to be excelled; and should we venture to express an Equality, it can only be the Appearance of Your Royal Highness's imitating so Great a Pattern.

AS He is Wise and Good beyond Praise, so has He a Title to the Hearts of His People beyond Question; which stands Confirmed by the highest Instances of Divine Providence, as well as the incontestible Authorities of Temporal Laws: On these Foundations, what glorious Prospects may we not

The DEDICATION.

Build of future Happiness?

IT were easy to dwell on this Subject, were it not wasting Moments of much more concern to Your Royal Highness, than what I am able to Express.

MAY Your Royal Highnefs long Live to Adorn this MOST NOBLE ORDER, and to support the Crown, by a bountiful and flourishing Issue, that there may never want one of Your Royal Line to sit on the Throne of Great-Britain,

Is the Ardent Prayer of,
ILLUSTRIOUS SIR!

Your Royal Highness's

Most Faithful,

Most Obedient,

and Humbly Devoted Servant,

THE

PREFACE

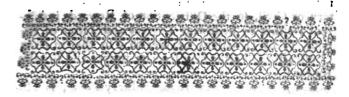
Hose who are acquainted with Mr. Ashmole's History of the most Noble Order of the Garter, will easily satisfy themselves; that no Pains or Industry was wanting to Perfect and Complete so Voluminous a Work: He had the Encouragement of a very gracious Prince, and the use of publick Records, more particularly the several Books of the Order, with the Assistance of several MSS wrote by the Osticers of Arms, who bore Part in the Ceremonies, or went on Embassies to Stranger Kings, Princes, &c. and by their constant Observations, were familiarly versed in all its Laws and Customs.

These were very great helps to him, and it must be confessed his own elaborate Study had not less owing to it. There is nothing that has relation to this most Noble Order, which he has not touched on; and indeed

The PREFACE.

deed it is a Work so very copious, that he does bimself acknowledge be has inserted some things of little importance; which he desires may be considered to be done, to gratify some sew, who have a more immediate concern therein.

The Reader will in this Treatise find little else omitted: A very painful and exact Abridgment has been made, many Corrections of the Author's, which he saw before his Death, and left among his other Books in his Library at Oxford, are here carefully altered; some Additions are made, a List continued, of the several Knights-Companions, as well as Officers of the Order, for above forty Years; and the Coats of Arms of abundance of the Knights-Companions visibly corrected from good Authorities; and every distinct Chapter treated of at large; so that this Work has not been compleated but at great Labour as well as Expence, which could not have been supported, but for the Encouragement some of the Knights-Companions of the most Noble Order were pleased to give it; as well in their Subscriptions, as in the good Opinion they seemed to Express of the Design. THE



THE

HISTORY

OFTHE

Most Noble Order

OFTHE

GARTER

T was, undoubtedly, a good Sentiment in the first Collector of this Learned Work, to introduce, as well as a Discourse of Knighthood in general, a Treatise of all the several Orders that have prevail'd in other Parts of the World; for these in

their Rise and Institutions, having a relative Sense to the particular Subject he was to illustrate, seemed to afford him a very good Opportunity of doing it, by building on so convenient a Foundation.

I shall therefore, (tho' much more consin'd to brevity) follow the same Method, making it serve as a proper Introduction; there being many Things in the voluminous Original, which I conceive may with less Inconveniency be dispensed with.

Ir was a constant Maxim in all well-regulated Governments, to give a just Encouragement to Merit, and this by proportioning Rewards to the Service done; for Merit must be supposed to consist in the Personance of B

mance of some Vertuous or Heroick Action, directed for the publick Good: And as Vertue is either Military or Civil, so the Distribution of Rewards is different; either by bestowing Degrees and Titles of Honour, or by Donations of Wealth; so that in either Construction, Vertue may have its proper and suitable Reward.

Bur the proper Reward of Military Vertue, is Honour: (to which distinct Head this Work is confin'd.) Honour, which Aristotle calls the Greatest of exteriour Goods: And being an Object of a nobler Ambition than the Accumulation of Wealth, is principally the Aim of that Vertue we understand by Valour; which springs from more generous Spirits, and hath been the constant Foundation of raising Men to the highest

Eminence of Glory, and superiour Dignity.

Bur that Fame might not lose it self in an unbounded Notion, it was at length thought fit to reduce Honour into Form and Order, by investing the Person meriting with some particular Title or Appellation of Excellence, (the Original of all Nobility;) of which Knighthood, as it hath been accounted the most suitable Reward to the greatest Vertue, so it hath been esteemed the chief and primary Honour among many Nations.

THE Romans held Honour and Vertue in that Escent, that they deify'd, and dedicated Temples to them: They made them so contiguous in their Situation, that there was no other Passage to that of Honour, but thro' the Temple of Vertue, myslically admonishing, that Honour was not to be attained by any other Way.

In several of the Roman Coins we see Honour and Vertue represented together in one Reverse, and in one Medal; the Face of Honour so shadows that of Vertue, that but a little of it appears, Honour being the more illustrions of the two; and where we behold any Person outwardly adorned with it, we are to judge him inwardly endued with Vertue, inasmuch as Honour is his due, and justly bestowed mpon him.

9. 2. In tracing the Original of Knighthood, we are not so vain to say, with the French, that S. Michael was the fremier Chevalier; yet thus much we may affert, that 'tis near as ancient as Valour and Heroic Vertue, notwithstanding the Ceremonies and Circumstances of it have varied according to several Ages and Nations: And therefore, with much Probability, we may derive tha

Original of Military Honour from the Trojans and Greeks; among whom, as Knights of great Renown, were Hellor, Trojlus, Æne.us, Antenor, Agamemnon, Mendens, Peleus, Tydeus, &c. And thus Homer uses the Word intitute, in the same Sense as Eques was afterwards among the Latins.

Tolor di mi periman popini @ innina Nicup,

'Mong whom thus Nestor spake, that honour'd Knight.

6. 3. Upon a more fubstantial Basis we shall descend to the Romans; among whom, in the very Infancy of their Military Glory, a Society of Knights was instituted, immediately after their Linion with the Sabines. Romulus inrolled Centuria tres Equitum, three Centuries of Knights, out of the chiefest Families, whom he appointed to be his Life-guard, and called them Colores, from their Activity and Dispatch in Martial Affairs.

Tarquinius Priscus made an Addition to these Centuries; the like did Servius Tullius, who ordained, that those who should succeed in that Body, should be elected ex censu, viz. from a considerable and certain Valuation of their Estates, who had the greatest Cense, and were of the most Noble Families, says Dyonys. Haliearn. And soon after, the Equestrian Class began to be formed and constituted one of the three Orders of the Commonwealth, which were thus rank'd, according to Livy: Senatus, Ordo Equestru & Plebs; which in the Roman Literal Notes is set down after this Manner : CON. SEN. E. ORD. P. Q. R. And forasmuch as this Degree is placed between the Patricians, or Senators, and the Plebeians, it answers exactly the State of our Knights between the Nobility and Commonalty: And from this Order, to the Height of Nobility which refided in the Senators, was the Way prepared; Junius Brutus being the first who was raised to a Senator from the Equestrian Order.

IT was a Constitution, as old as Tiberius's Reign, that none should be admitted, unless Free-born, or a Gentleman for three Generations; and, indeed, for a long Time pone were elected Knights but the best Sort of Gentlemen, and Persons of Extraction, as was the il-

Instrious Macenas.

Atavis regibus ortus eques, Mart.

who aspired no higher, not out of any Incapacity of attaining greater Honours, but that he defired them not, says Paterculus: Yet at length, thro' Corruption of Times, Plebeians and Freedmen being too frequently received into this Degree (too near a Farallel among the Knights of this Age) occasion'd their Power to grow less and less, 'till it shrunk to nothing; so that the Places and Offices of Judges which they before had executed, became conferrable upon the Publicans. And when Cicero was Consul, anno ab urbe condition, the Equestrian Order stood in need of Re-establishment, whereupon they were then incorporated into that Commonwealth in the third Degree, all Acts passing in the Name of the Senate, the People of Rome, and the Equestrian Order.

They often enjoy'd Abroad the Government of several Provinces, whereof Egyps had this peculiar to itself, that none of the Senators were admitted, but only those of the Equestrian Order, whose Decrees Augustus commanded to be had in like Regard, as if the Magistrates of Rome, or Kings, Consuls, or Freetors, had pronoun-

ced them.

As a Mark of Eminence, they had the Titles of Splendidi and Illustres bestowed upon them, and some-

times have been called most facred Knights.

And besides other Privileges, they had Seats with the Senators in the Circus Maximus; and by the Roscian Law, sat next them in the Theatres: They had likewise a College called Collegium Equitum; and Temples were dedicated to the Goddess Fortune, under the Title of

Equestri Fortune.

HAVING shewn the Dignity and Honours, of the Equestrian Order among the Romans, we shall now touch upon the Degrees of Knighthood which have been. Personal, and may be comprehended under the Modern Title of Equites Aunati, or Milites Simplices, (as distinguish'd from the several Orders of Chivalry, instituted in Christendom.) In the Circumstance of whose Creation we confess, nothing in the Roman Ordo Equestra hath place, the that might be the Ground and Original of the Dignity, and one common End in both, namely, the Pursuit of Military Exploits, and Service in the Wats.

Digitized by GOGSIC OF

3. 4. Or the Degrees of Knighthood. We shall first of the Monozons, i. e. Knights begirt with the Military Girdle, a Custom devolved to the Germans and Gauls from ancient Times, and from them to After-Ages.

SIR Henry Spelman notes, That the late Emperors conferred the Dignity of Knighthood with the Military Girdle instead of all other Arms, because that Part more thument among it them girdeth, supporteth, and adorneth the rest; whence Selden calls this Girding the most effential part of the Ceremony. Nor do we find among the various Ceremonies of Knighthood any that have continued so constant in Practice as the endowing with Girdle and Sword, Ornaments proper to the Dignity and Marks of Honour and Verse, with which the Statues and Portraitures of Knights, on their Grave-stones have been adorned.

FOR as at this Day Knights. are styled Equites Aurati, from the Golden Spurs, heretofore put on at their Creation, so were they more anciently Singulo Miletati donati, in respect, when any one was Knighted, he was not only imitten with the Sword, but invested with Sword and Belt, yet retain'd at the creating our Knights of the Bath, as the old Formulary thus hath it; Elen that the Ring of great Favour take the bituid, and gird the Equire therewith.

Secondly, The Bairdaurei or Knights Batchelors, are to be confider'd, who are indifferently flyled Chevaliers, Milles, Equites Aurati, and Knights. This Degree is truly accounted the first of all Military Dignity, and the Foundation of all Honours in our Nation, and is deriwed from, if not the same with that immediately pre-For as the Ceremony of a gentle Touch on the Shoulder with the flat Side of the Sword hath been face used, instead of girting with the Sword and Belt, (especially in Times of War, or in Haste) as an Initiasion into the Military Order; fo on the contrary, it is not unusual now-adays, for the Prince, at least Gladio, if not Cingulo donare; for he oftentimes bestows the Sword upon the Person he Knighteth.

Miraus gives them the Epithet Aurati, from the Privilege of wearing Gold upon their Swords and Spurs, omitting Traquel's fanciful Distinction between Miles and Eques Auratus, who allows the former to fignify a Knight Noble before, and the other to denote one whom we call a Knight and no Gentleman, or applicable to the Neapelitan Gentlemen, (usually called Cavalier;) who Digitized by GOTG C

Вз

are all flyled Equites, tho' they never have attained the

Knightly Dignity.

THE third Sort were Knights Banerets, who so well deserv'd in the Wars, that they were afterwards permitted to use Vexillum quadratum, a square Banner, whence they were called Equites vexillarii, or Chevaliers a Buniere from the Dutch Banerheere, Lord or Master of the Banner.

Camden conceives this Title first devis'd by K. Edward 3. in Recompence of Martial Prowels; a Recital of which Dignity is mention'd in a Patenr 20 E. 3. to John Compland, for his Service, in taking David King of Scots Prifoner. But it was much more ancient with us, as well as in France; and they had particular Robes, and other Ornaments given them from the Crown, ad apparatum fuum promilitia, sanquam pro Baneretto, a Rege suscipienda, &c. viz. ad unum Tunicam, &c. after which is let down the particular Robes, and other Ornaments appointed

for his Creation.

To shew this Dignity yet more ancient, there is the Evidence of a Writ in K. Edw. 3d's Time, for furnishing Thomas Bardolf with the Robes of a Baneret. It is an Honour effected the last among the Greatest, viz. Nobilitam Majorum, or the First of the Second Rank; and is placed in the Middle between the Barons and the other Knights 3 in which respect the Baneres may be called Vexillarius minor, as if he were the leffer Banner-Bearer; to the End he might be so differenced from the Greater, namely the Baron, to whom the Right of bearing a square Banner doth belong.

Bur there are some remarkable differences between these Knights and Knights-Batchelors; as in the Occafions and Circumstances of their Creations, the Baneres being not Created, unless at a Time when the King's Standard is erected, and that he bears his own Banner in the Field; whilst the Knight-Batchelor follows that

which is anothers.

This farther difference is observed between them, that the Knight-Baneret had so many Gentlemen his Servants at Command, as that he could raise a Banner, and make up a Company of Soldiers to be maintained at his Table, and with his own Pay: But the Knight-Batchelor had not sufficient for this, and therefore marched under the Banner of another; and the Wages of the Baneres were double.

> NEXT Digitized by Google

(7)

NEXT to these, we are to mention Knights of the Bath, which is a Degree that hath the Investiture and Title of Knight, with an additional Denomination, derived from Part of the Ceremony of his Creation. It is the general receiv'd Opinion, that our K. Hen. 4. Instituted these Knights, which is justify'd by Sir. John Froisard, who says he created 46 of them at his Coronation, chusing them from such, as were either his Favorites, or had pretensions to it from their perfonal Merits, or Services.

Bur if the Ceremonies and Circumstances of their Creation be well consider'd, it may be inferr'd, that he rather restor'd the ancient way of making Knights, than Instituted them; and consequently that the Knights of the Bath, are really no other than Knights-Batchelors; that is, such as are created with those Ceremonies, wherewith Knights-Batchelors were formerly created by Ecclesiasticks: But some of them having been laid asside, were then brought again into Use, and made peculiar to this Degree, and since continued to them upon some

solemn and great Occasion.

Ar the first View they look like a distinct Order of Knighthood; but cannot be so accounted, because they have no Statutes assigned them, nor are in Case of Vacancy, supply'd, (the Essentials of distinct Orders) nor do they wear their Robes beyond the Time of that Occasion upon which they were created; as chiefly, the Coronation of a King or Queen, the Creation of a Prince of Wales, Duke of York, and the like; whereas also their Number is uncertain, and always at the Pleasure of the King.

Fawise calls them Knights of the Crown, because, to distinguish them from Esquires, they wore upon their Left Shoulder an Escutcheon of Black Silk embroider'd with three Crowns of Gold; but therein he mistakes, for they never used only a Silk Lace, and the Jewel they wore was made of Gold, containing three Crowns, with this Motto Trie juntain una, hanging down under the left Armat a Carnation Ribbon worn cross the Body.

This leads us to the Degree of Baronets, who seem allied to Knighthood, by having granted them the Addition of Sir to be set before their Names: But this gives them not the Dignity of Knighthood; nor can they properly be styled Knights, until they be actually Knighted.

3 Digitized by Good R

It is a Degree erected Anno 9. Jac. 1. and the Grant made by Letters Patents under the Great Seal of England. It is Hereditary to them, and the Heirs Male of their Bodies lawfully begotten, for ever; and by a subsequent Decree of the said King, Precedence is granted to them before all Banerets, except such as should be made by the King under his Standard, display'd in an Army Royal in open War, and the King personally present, and next to and immediately after the younger Sons of Viscount and Barons.

THE Ground for execting this Degree was partly Martial; for the themselves were not enjoined personal Service in the Wars, yet each Baronet was to maintain thirty Foot Soldiers for three Years in Ireland, after the rate of Eight Pence per Day, for the Desence of that Kingdom, and chiefly to secure the Plantation of Usser.

THEY were at least to be descended from a Grand-father, on the Father's Side, that bore Arms, and had a Revenue of 1000 l. per Ann. or Lands of old Rents of equal Value with 1000 l. per Ann. of improved Lands, or at least two Parts of three of such Estate in Possession the other third in Reversion Expectant upon one Life held only in Jointure.

THE Year after, King James I. added some new Privileges and Ornaments, vin. to Knight those already made that were no Knights; and the Heirs hereafter of every Baronet should, at the Age of One and Twenty Years, receive Knighthood; likewise that all Baronets might bear in Canton, or in an Inescutcheon, the Arms of User; and farther, to have place in the Armies of the King in the Gross, near about the Royal Standard.

Since the Institution of Baronets in England, there have been made divers in Ireland after the like Form: And the Knights of Nova Scotia in the West-Indies were, ordained in Imitation of Baronets in England by the said King James, A. D. 1622. for the Planting that Country by Scotch Colonies, and the Degree made likewise Hereditary.

THESE latter wear an Orange Tawny Ribbon as their, Badge, to distinguish them from other Knights; and it appears, there was an Intention, 1627, to move his then Majesty, that all Baronets and Knights Bachelors might wear Ribbons of several Colours, some Badge or sewel, in such Sort as did the Knights of the Bath, to distinguish the one from the other: But that Matter

dropt.

(9)

Miles, Chevalier, Rister, and Sir. The Grecians had a Title of Honour equivalent to the Signification of Eques in the Latin, from Equus; an Horse, because one Part of the Ceremony, whereby this Honour became conferred, was the giving of an Horse; or because having an Horse at the Publick Charge, they received the Stipend of an Horseman to serve in the Wars, Horses being Symbols of War, Bello armantur equi. It is to be noted, That the Degree of Knighthood in the Dialects of other Nations hath the same Derivation: For in the French, a Knight is called Chevalier; in the German, Ridder, or Ritter, q. d. Rider; so the Gheslages Ridder is interpreted, The dubbed Knight; in the Italian, it is Cavagliero; in the old British, Morchog; concerning which, hear one of Jeffery Chaucer's Scholars.

Eques ab Equo is laid of very right, And Chevalier is laid of Chevalitie, In which a Rider called is a Knight; Arragoners done also specific Caballiers through all that Angles.

Is Name of Enough plant is took his giveling.

St Spare of Soid, and chiefy Ridding.

And tho' the Word Miles fignified at first any legally involled for the War, which Involment was twofold, Honoraria and Vulgaria; yet upon the Decay of the Roman Empire, upon the Irruption of the insumerable Forces of the Alani, Goths, Vandals, &c. which confifted in Horse, their Foot was rendred useless. Miles was not longer said of him that served on Foot in the Wara, but began to be properly spoken of the Horseman; whence it came into Vogue, That among the Titles of Nobility, he who had that of Miles bestowed on him, was understood to be Horseman, or Eques, that is, of the Equestrian Dignity.

Selden observes Miles to be equivocal: and that in the old feodal Laws of the Empire it fignify'd a Gentleman, as the Word Gentleman is fignify'd in Nobilis; and with us it hath been frequently used to denote both Gentlemen, and Knights; for Milites denotes Gentlemen, or great Freeholders, and not dubbed Knights, viz. Such who hold by Knights Service from a Lord of

Digitized by Google

a Mannour, and fuch who are chosen from the several Counties to serve in the High Courts of Parliament.

Miles, even in the Saxon Times, denoted sometimes a Dignity. But about the Year 1046, becoming a Title of Honour, it is since most generally appropriated to Persons who have received Knighthood correspondent to Eques and Chevalier, the indeed less proper; in regard, Knighthood is the Dignity of Horsemanship, and the Tenure of Lands by Knights Fees here in England, anciently called Regale Servicium, is in truth Horse Service; and the Tenants such as served the King on Horseback in Wars, are Gentlemen at least (if not of Noble Extraction.)

Minshew says, the Equites, which heretofore followed and accompanied the Emperor, are, in the Garman Tongue, called Knechtes, that is, Servitors, or Minssters; but Camden says, Knecht, in Saxon Cniht, was in far more ancient Times accepted as an honorary Title; and, among the old Germans, signify'd a Person arm'd with Spear and Lance, (the Ensigns of their Knighthood) as in After Times such were, among other Nations, adorned with a Girdle and Belt, since called Equites

merati, and sometimes simply Milites.

THE Addition Sir to the Names of all Knights Banerets, Knights of the Bath, and Batchelor Knights, pronounced at the Time when they are created, with this Compellation: Arife, Sir John, or Sir Thomas, &c. is accounted Parcel of their Style, which the Banerets enjoy by virtue of a Clause in their Patent. It is a Contraction of the Old French Sire, taken for Seigneur, or Lord, from the Greek Kneed. But how it came to be first given, we cannot find; nevertheless, our English Writers have bestowed it upon the major Part of the Nobility, after they had been received into the Order of Knighthood; and in the Life of St. Thomas Becker, written about the Time of King Edw. 1. we meet with the Title prefix'd to the Names of the four Knights, who slew the said St. Thomas.

6. 6. THE Ensigns of the Equestrian Order among the Romans, by which they were made, was a Publick Horse, or a Gold Ring; yet still, to those who had Equestrian Gense, the Horse was the ancienter Badge of the two; but when thro' the Multitude of these Knights no Publick Horses were assigned, but to such who were ready to enter upon Military Service, and to

Digitized by Google

fight in the Legions, such were called Legionary Knights, to diffinguish them from the rest, who had only receiv'd the Honour of a Gold-Ring; for they were not all

employ'd in Wars.

THE Censor (after the Institution of that Office ab whe condita, 310.) and afterwards the Emperor, were the Persons who bestowed this Equus Militari, or Pubficus, as it was called from the Annual Allowance, to keep him, which they gave unto those of known Vertue and ap prov'd Life, compelling him to serve in the Wars, tho' against his Will; (but in the more ancient Method of Election, Constraint was not used.) And upon Negligence in the Care of these Horses, or any Blemish, Reproach, or Infamy, or Loss of Patrimony in the Knights, the Horses were not only taken aways but the Knights wholly disfranchis'd. Rosinus laying down the Manner and Order used in ejecting such Knights, adds, A Recital being made of all the Knights than were involled, those whose Names he omitted, were thereby understood to be deprived of that Dignity.

WHEN they had served in the Wars the Time appointed by Law, it was the Custom to lead their Horses by the Bridle into the Forum, before the Dunmwirs [Cenfors,] and giving an Account under whom and what Generals or Captains they had served; they were thereupon dismissed from farther Service in the Wars: An Example whereof Plutarch relates to have been given

by Pompey himself.

Bur whereas among the Roman Inscriptions we find Rquo publico honoratus donatus, ornatus, and exornatus, such is not to be construed to be of Equestrian Dignity, but only to have received the pramia militaria, with which the Emperors used to recompense some particular Exploit, by the Honour of such a Gift, according to Salmasms. Equas Publicus, by a wondrous, nevertheless an accustom'd Speech, among the Romans, is the Knight, qui equo publico meret. And qui equo publico donatus, the other deserving Person.

As to the Ring: In Genesis we read of Pharoah's taking off his Ring, and putting it upon Joseph's Hand. When they came in Fashion with the Romans, the Senators at first wore Iron ones, which were accounted the Ensign of Military Vertue, received upon a Publick Account. Howbeit, in Process of Time, when Gold Rings were drawn into Use, none but Senators and Knights had

Digitized by Chemy

([12,)

them. The Difference among the Rings of the three Orders in the State were, as Liegus observes, Gold Rings for with precious Stones were given to the Senators only; Plain Rings without Stones to the Knights, and Iron Rings to the Plebeians, or Free born-men; info-much that Equestri dignitate donare, and annulo bowerers, is a promiseuous Phrase in Tacitus, to give the Dignity of Knighthood; and at the Battle of Cappe, by the two Measures or Bushels of Gold Rings sent to Carthage, the Number of the Roman Knights there sain was computed, 6.7. At length Freed-Men being created Knights.

6. 7. AT length Freed-Men being created Knights; the Jus annulorum, the Right of wearing Gold Rings

became promifcuous.

Among the Germans, the Shield and Lance were accounted the grand Badges of Military Honour, or Knighthood. This the Lombards, the Franks, and our Country-men, all descending out of Germany, used, and was to us (in the Opinion of Sir Hen. Spelman) the Foundation of the Knightly Order. Much like the ancient Germans was the Custom of making Knights among the Irish: And Favine notes the Shield and Lance were the proper Arms appertaining to a French Knight, which Esquires, Armigers, carried always after their Masters, Shields and Scutes (as they are vulgarly called) i. c. Equestrian Targets, inclining to an Oval, not Shields or Bucklers of Foot Soldiers.

ANOTHER Enfign and Ornament of Knightly Honour is, the Cingulum militare, or Balteus, which, Varro fays, is Tuscan, fignifying a military Girdle, which were garnished with great Buckles, Studs, and Rings of pure Gold, to shew their Dignity and Power in military Commands; and with such a Belt, set with Pearls and precious Stones, young Athelstan was girded, when he receiv'd Knighthood from his Grandtather King Alfred. Our Knights were no less anciently known by these Belts, than by their gilt Swords, Spurs, &c. Howbeit the Use now only appears in Knights of the Bath.

To this Belt was also added a Sword, not of Ordinaryo Use; and therefore termed the Sword of a Knight,

which was hallowed with great Ceremony.

ANOTHER eminent Badge is the Golden Spurs, wherewith, at the Time of their Creation, Knights Spurs were wont to be adorned; and to these, a little after the Conquest, were added far more and greater Orusments. They were usually put on after the Person had been

Digitized by Google pre-

Presented to the Prince who gave the Honour, to fignify, that the new-made Knight should not only declare his Valour by his Sword, but also by the Management of his Horse, which he should encourage and excite with his Spurs, to the carrying on his valiant Designs. These Spurs have been of that Esteem, that Knight Batchelors are latinized Equires aurasi; among the Germans, Ritter des Galden Spores; and with us heretofore, Knights of the Spurs: And several Families by the Name of Knight,

bear for their Arms the Spurs on a Canton.

It is farther certify'd among the Rights of a Knight Baneret, that upon the Account of his Knighthood he may wear gilt Spurs, as well as a gilt Sword; and that the Spurs are effential, may be collected from the Degadation of a Knight, where his gilt Spurs are first cut off with an Hatcher; the Case of Sir Andra Harcla. In the last Place is the Collar, an Ensign of Knightly Dignity among the German, Gauls, Britons, Danes and Goths, among whom it was customary to wear them, as denoting such as were remarkable for their Valour. But in laser Pimes, it was the peculiar Fashion of Knights among us to wear Golden Collars composed of S. or other various Devices; so that those Monuments are known to be crecked for Knights on whose Portraitures such Ornaments are found.

8. The Qualifications for Knighthood are principally three. 1. Merit, the bare mentioning whereof shall suffice here. 2. Birth, viz. that the Parties who enter thereinto ought first to make appear they be Gentlemen of three Paternal Descents, bearing Coat Armour; and much the same was the Law of the Empire under Frederick 2. A. D. 1212. Some think it also insufficient, unless descended so by the Mother's Side; at least she must be a freed Woman. And, 3. Estate,

which also serves to support the Dignity.

Thus Wealth was so much regarded among the Chalindonians, that those who were rich, bore the Name of Knights. It was Estate that entitled a Man to this Honour among the Remans; for the Cenfor might compel any Citizen equal to the Equestrian Cense, whom he thought fit to take that Order: And this constitled of 400000 Sesterces, i. e. 3025 l. of our Money.

And as in Old Rome, so here in England, not long after the Conquest, they who held a Knights Fee, viz. 680 Acres of Land might claim it, says Camden. But it appears from Selden, that no certain Number, or Extent of Acres, made a Knight's Fee ? and Temp. Hen. 3. and Edw. I. and I Edw. 2. the Census militin was measured by 20 l. by the Year, or more; and by the Royal Prerogative, some who held 15, then 20, at other times 30, then 40, and sometimes 50 l. Lands, were required to accept this Honour by Writs directed to the Sheriffs of the Counties, and were excused only by Reason of old Age, irrecoverable Weakness, Loss of Limbs, or being in Holy Orders; and upon all other Causes (if exempted) they paid a Fine, estimated according to the Nature of the Excuse, or length of Time given.

Bur in the promiscuous Course of Knighthood, where the Men of Wealth and Estate (whether otherwise worthy or not) became dignify'd; yet the Gate of Honour was not then shut against those, who wanting Riches, deserved well of their Country; for when Princes conferr'd such Dignities upon Men of narrow Fortunes, they usually bestowed with them annual Penfions, or Lands, agreeable to the Judgment of the Author of the Division du monde, who saith that the Honour of Knighthood is not to be given any Person who hath not a confiderable Estate, unless sufficient Means to support the Honour of the Order be also given with it.

THESE Penfions are frequently mention'd in our Rolls, fometimes during Pleasure, and sometimes during the Life of the Knight, or till better Provision should be made for their Supports: Examples whereof are, Sir John Atte Lee, Sir Nele Loring, Sir John Walsh, Knights. The like Rewards our Kings gave to such whose Merit raised them to the Degree of a Baneret, express'd in their Patents, ad manutenendum statum Baneretti, Pro sustentatione. sua, ut ipse statum Baneretti melius manutenere possit, Pro statu two manutenendo; or Words to the like Effect: Examples where of are, Sir Reginald Cobham, Sir Thomas de Rokeley, Sir John Lysle, and Sir Roger de Swynerson, Banerets.

IT may be next confider'd who can make Knights; wherein it is apparent, that they who never were, and others who never could be Knights, have conferr'd this Dignity; yet 'tis to be understood, that Necessity and Custom hath in this Case the Force of a Law: For anciently, Bishops and Priests made Knights; so also do the Popes, and some Commonwealths; likewise our Queens. For the Sovereign, or the Heir apparent, tho' they be no Knights, may nevertheless do it, by reason they possess the Kingdom; and are therefore the Head and Chief of Chevalry, and consequent all the Power thereof is con-

tained'

tained in their Command. To conclude this Point, Knighthood was always received from the Hands of another Person, either by Ceremony, or Diploma, except only the Kings of Spain, who Time out of Mind made themselves Knights; and this by Vertue of an old Law written in the Arragonian Tongue, as Ambrosias Morales repotts. And, to show that no Man upon Earth hath any Power over him, he shall gird himself with the Sword made after the Form' of a Cros; and that Day can no other Man be Knighted.

6. 9. Of the Ceremonies and Formalities used at the Conferring of Knighthood, the most ancient was perform'd by putting the Belt Ioose over the Shoulder, or girding it close about the Waste. The Bend in Armoury represents the one, and the Fess the other. The first Christian Kings at giving this Belt kissed the new Knight on the Left Cheek, faying, In the Honour of the Father, and the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, I make you a Knight. It was called Osculum pacin, the Kiss of Favour, or Brotherhood, and is prefumed to be the Accollade, or Ceremony of Imbracing, which Charles the Great used when he Knighted his Son Lews the Debonair. It was in the Time of the fame Emperor, the Way of Knighting by the Colaphum, or Blow on the Ear, used in Sign of sustaining future Hardships, which is thought to have been deriv'd from the Manner of Manumission of a Slave among the Romans; a Custom long after retained in Germany and Thus William Earl of Holland, who was to be Knighted before he could be Emperor, at his being elected King of the Romans, received Knighthood by the Box of the Ear, &c. from John King of Bohemia, A. D. 1247.

In the Time of the Saxons here in England, Knights received their Institutions at the Hands of Great Prelates or Abbers; which, according to their Opinion, render'd them more auspicious. In the accomplishing of which Solemnity, they added many religious Ceremonies, as Watching, Fasting, Bathing, and Confectating the Sword; an Instance of which we have in Heward Lord of Brune, in in Lincolnsbire, who received this Honour from Brand, Abbot of St. Edmundsbury. But not long after the Conquest, this Custom was restrained by a Synod a, Westminfter, A. D. 1102. 3 H. 1. which among other Things ordained Ne Abbates [i. e. all Spiritnal Persons] faciune spilites. However the religious Ceremonies for the most part continued, especially Vigils and Bathings, as appears by that grand Solemnity at the Creation of 267 Knights, Sons of Earls, Barons, and Knights, upon A for the second section in a second to the territory with the

Whisfontide, anno 34 Edw. 1. cited by Selden and Camden. And these Formalities the Saxons and Normans, not only here in England, but the French, Spaniards, and other Nations, observ'd, concluding from it, that decency of Habit was as well expected from them, as Integrity of Life, and purity of Manners. And the like religious Geremony was heretofore observ'd in Spain at the Creation of Knights, whether Cavelleros de Espuela d' Orada, or Amados [our Knights Batchelors,] In this Form, the Person to be Knighted was bathed in the Evening, and presently laid in Bed; then cloathed in rich Robes, and led to the Church to perform his Vigils: That being over, and Mass heard, his Spurs were put on, and his Sword girt about him, then drawn out, and put into his Right Hand; whereupon the Oath was forthwith administred to him; which taken, he that bestowed the Dignity gave him una Pesconade, a Blow, or Stroke on the Neck, faying, God affift you in the Performance of your Promise.

THE Oath or Vow the Knights professed, was in general, to relieve and protect Widows, the Fatherless, Oppressed and Miserable, and to defend the Church of God; which to keep and perform was esteem'd as meritorious, as to do all that a Monk, Frier, or Canon Regular should.

THERE is also mention (by Mr. Selden) of confecrating the Sword, offering it at the Altar, and receiving it again from thence, as an implicit Kind of taking an Oath. But as in Peace and great Leisure these tedious Ceremonies were used, yet it was otherwise in Times of War, or on a Day of Battle, where Hurry and Throng of Affairs would not permit; and therefore, as well before the joining of Battle, as after Victory obtained, it was usual for the Prince or General in the Field, on Sight of the Army, to give those whom he thought fit to advance to that Honour (they humbly kneeling before him) a Stroke with a naked Sword flatwise upon their Shoulders, or else to touch their Heads or Shoulders lightly, without any other Ceremony, except pronouncing Su Eques in nomine Dei; to which he adds, Rife, Sir ---- Knight, or in the French, Sus, or Sois, Chevulier, au nome de Dien, which we commonly call Dubbing, the old English Word used for Creating [Consecrating] a Knight, from dropen to dip, by Bathing

LANOTHER Manner of creating Knights Abroad was, by Royal Codicils, or Letters Patents (these the Spaniards

call Privilegios de Cavelleria) whereupon such Knights are intitled Equites Codicellares; and these were sent to such as dwelt in remote Countries, and sometimes, but rarely, extended so as to make the Degree hereditary. There is one Example, that by the bare signification of Letter, without any Ceremonies or Patents under Seal; Philip IV. of Spain, Jan. 15. 1633. conferr'd upon all the Captains that behav'd themselves valiantly in Desence of Mastricht (then lately besieg'd by the Hollanders) to those that were Gentlemen, the Title

of Knights; and to others, that of Gentlemen.

Having thus briefly shew'd the various Forms of Creation of Knights Batchelors, I shall remark what Selden has observ'd of Knights Bunnerets in later Times, wherein he that was advanc'd to that Honour in the Field, was inducted between two Senior Knights with Trumpets before them, and the Heralds carrying a long Banner of his Arms, call'd a Penon; in which Manner being brought to the King or Lieutenant, who bidding him good Success, the Tip of the Banner is cut off, that of an Oblong it might become a Square, like the Banner of a Baron: This done, he returns to his Tent, conducted as before. As for the many and various Formularies at the Creation of a Knight of the Bath, see Sir Edward Byfle among his Notes upon Upton and Sir William Dugdale's Warwick h. The Knights of the Bath, at the Coronation of King Charles II. watched and bathed; they took an Oath; they were girded with a Sword and Belt; and lastly, dubbed by the King with the Sword of State.

6 10. In the Dignity, Honour and Renown of Knighthood, is included iomewhat of Magnificence more excellent than Nobility it self; which mounting the Royal Throne, becomes the Affertor of Civil Nobility, and fits as Judge at the Tribunal therefore. Knight is noted by Canden as a Name of Dignity, but Baron is not so. For if heretofore a Baron had not receiv'd Knighthood, he was written plainly by his Christian Name, and that of his Family, without any Addition but that of Dominus, a Term attributed to a Knight; and in ancient Charters, the Titles and Names of Knights may be feen set before Barons. It bestows Gentility not only upon the meanly Born, but upon his Descendants, and

encreaseth the Honour of those well-descended. Hereunto agrees the Common-Law: If a Villain be made a Knight, he is thereby immediately enfranchised, and consequently accounted a Gentleman; agreeable to the Roman Law, where the Donation of a Gold-Ring ennobled a Slave. Macenus dy'd a Companion of that Order; even Kings and Princes look upon it as an Accession to their Honour, their other Titles shewing Dominion and Power, this their Valour and Courage. Geysa, King of Hungary, Leopold, Marquis of Austria, Ottacher, Duke of Stiria, and Frederick, Duke of Austria and Stiria; Godfry, Duke of Brabant, with Henry his Son, Peter, King of Arragon, the Emperor Henry III. our William Rufus, King Edward III. Henry VI. Henry VII. Edward VI. Lewis XI. Francis I. Kings of France, and others, received this Dignity at the Time they enjoy'd their other Titles. And tho' it is said the Sons of the French King are Knights as foon as they receive Baptism, yet are they not judg'd worthy the Kingdom, unless first solemnly created. And we elsewhere find, that the Royal Heirs of Arragon were sufpended from that Crown, until they had received the Honour of Knighthood. And after the Norman Conquest, our young Princes were sent over to the neighbouring Kings to receive this Honour. Thus our King Henry Il. was fent to David, King of Scots, and Knighted by him in Carlisle; and Edward I. at the Age of Fifteen Years, to Alphonius XI. King of Castile, for the same Dignity. In like manner did foreign Princes repair hither, to receive the Honour from our Kings. Malcolme, King of Scotland, and Alexander, Son of Willians, King of Scotland, Knighted by our King John, Anno 1212. So was Alexander III. by our King Henry III. at York, Anno 1252. and Magnus, King of the Isle of Man, by the same King. All which sufficiently demon-Atrate the great Renown of Knighthood, and the Honour and Esteem which was ever had for that Order.

CAP.

CAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Christendom.

1. THE Grounds and Causes of founding Societies or Knightly Orders, were several and different, tho' all terminated in one End. Among which, principally were these, First, A sincere Love to Honour, and therein chiefly to excite and promote Vertue by suitable Rewards; such was the Design of King Arthur, when he formed himself and other Martial Men into a Fellowship, which he stiled Knights of the Round Table. Secondly, To repress the Incursions and Robberies of the Saraceus and Barbarians, to vindicate the Oppressed, redeem the Enslaved, and to entertain and relieve Pilgrims and Strangers, which were Part of the Duties the Knights Hospitallers and Templars, &c. stood engag'd in. A third Regson was, To Fight in Defence of the Christian Faith, against Pagans and Infidels; to enlarge the Christian Territories, and promote the Service of the Catholick Church: And indeed their Zeal very much advanced Christianity. Lastly, When Sovereign Princes perceived themselves embroiled in Wars or dangerous Factions, the erecting fuch an Order or Society was, that they might by fuch a Tye restore Peace, quiet all Jealousies, unite Affections, and secure a lasting Friendship and powerful Assiflance, both for their own and their Country's Safety. And to this End were Badges of several Orders devised, as Pledges of Remembrance to quicken and establish their Friendship.

6 2. THESE Orders are of Two Kinds, 1. Religious, or

Ecclesiastical; and, 2. Military, or Secular.

\$3. The Institutions of the latter Sort were after a: while thought too weak to continue, if not sustained by

by Religion and Piety; and too defective without adjoyning Ecclesiastical Persons thereunto. Therefore the Founders, confidering Divine Affistance should concur with Military Industry, began to dedicate these Orders to the Honour and Worship of God, or to our Saviour, or to the bleffed Virgin, or some other of the Saints, to gain the Protection and Favour of Heaven, more easily, as they thought, obtainable by the Prayers and Offices of the Clergy. Whereupon some in their Institution joyned Sacred Orders to their Military, and made Provision for Sacred Persons to pray for their Profperity at home, while they were engaged abroad. Hence King Edw. III. at the first Institution of the Garter, appointed Thirteen Secular Canons, and Thirteen Vicars to attend the Celebration of Divine Offices. Upon the same Account certain Foundations of Divine Service were erected at Bugey, for the Order of the Annunciads; at Dijon, for the Order of the Golden Fleece; and at Mont St. Michael in Normandy, for the Order of St. Michael.

§ 4. I shall now deliver a brief Account of the Religious Orders of Knighthood, proceeding according to their Antiquity.

I. The Knights of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem, are accounted the most Ancient.

DR. Heylin reports this Order to be inflituted A. D. 1099. at such Time as the Temple of Jerusalem was regain'd from the Saracens by Philip King of France. Yet Favin will have it to be by Baldwin the First, King of Jerasalem; for while the Saracens possess'd the City, there were certain Canons Regular of St. Augustin, to whom they permitted the Cuffody of the Holy Sepulchre. These Canons Baldwin made Men of Arms, and Knights of the Holy Sepulchre, and ordained that they should nevertheless retain their white Habits, and on the Breaft bear his own Arms, which were Argent a Cross potent: Or, between four Crosses of the same, commonly call'd The Jerusalem Cross. Their Great Master was the Patriarch of Jerusalem. They were to guard the Sepulchre, fight against the Saracens and Insidels, protect Pilgrims,

grims, redeem Christian Captives, hear Mass every Day, recite the Hours of the Cross, and to bear the five red Croffes in memory of our Saviour's Wounds. Their Rule was confirm'd by Pope Innocent III. Upon the loss of the Holy Land, these Knights retired to Perugia in Italy; but retaining their white Habit, chang'd their Arms to a double red Cross. A. D. 1484. they were incorporated to the Knights Hospitallers of Jerusalem then in Rhodes. But A. D. 1496. Alexander VI. made himself, and the Popes his Successors, Great Masters thereof, and empower'd the Guardian of the Holy Sepulchre (his Vicar General) to bestow the same upon Pilgrims to the Holy Land. Philip II. King of Spain, endeavour'd to restore this Order in some of his Dominions, about the Year 1558. himself being elected Great Master: And another Attempt was made by the Duke of Nevers, 1615. but these Designs took no Effect.

2. Knights Hospitallers of St. John Baptist in Je-

BEFORE the taking of Jerusalem from the Saracens, certain Christian Merchants of Naples obtain'd leave from the Caliph of Egypt to erect a small and convenient House, for the Entertainment of themselves and Countrymen, which they built before the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, together with a small Oratory. them repair'd certain Canons of the Order of St. Auguflin, who built another Oratory; but the Confluence of Pilgrims growing great, they erected a large Hospital, in the Place where our Saviour celebrated his last Supper, for the better accommodating devout Travellers, who for want of a Place to lodge in were often robb'd and murder'd: So that at length from their Charity and Hospitality, as also for that they took St. John Baptist for their Patron, they obtain'd that Title. It was instituted A.D. 1092. or according to others 1099. by Gerard, a Native of Thoulouse, who came to Jerusalem in the Time of Godfry of Bouillon, and built this Hospital (which became the first Seat of this Order) dedicated to St. John of Cyprus, Bp. of Alexandria, commonly

 $\mathsf{Digitized}\,\mathsf{by}\,Google$

commonly call'd Johannes Elemosynarius; and King Baldwin I. conferred on them large Privileges, permitting them Arms, and instituted them to be Knights, A. D. 1104. Their Duty was to fight against the Insidels, and they acknowledged Obedience to the Patriarch of Jerusalem; but growing rich, they obtained from Rome to be absolved from that Obedience. Pope Gelasius II. or Calintus II. A. D. 1120. confirmed their Rule of living; and Adrian IV. receiv'd them under the Protection of the Papal See, being likewise endowed with ample Privileges, and exempted from Payment of Tithes, by

fucceeding Popes, chiefly by Pius IV.

THEY took the black Habit of Hermits of St. Augustin, and lived under his Rule by Grant of Honorius II. Anno 1125. vowing Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity; and on the Breast of their Habit wore at first a plain Cross of White Cloth, which was after changed to one with Eight Points; but in time of War they used a Red Cassock, bearing the White Cross upon it Gerard succeeded Raimund, who digested and enlarged their Laws and Institutions in the Composition whereof his Stile was Raimundus Dei gratia servus pauperum Jesu Christi & Custos Hospitalis Jerusolymitani; but afterwards he and his Successors had the Title of Great Mailer of the Order given him, to denote his Power and Authority. At this Day he has the Title of Prince of Malta and Goza; among his Privileges he seals in Lead, as doth the Pope and Doge of Vemce; he acknowledges the Pope for his Head, and the King of Spain for his Patron; he had under him in feveral Kingdoms Priors; some of whom had also the Addition of Great with us in England he was stiled Prior Hospitalis; St. Johannis Jerusalem in Anglia, and by that Title was he summoned to the Parliament as a Baron of this Kingdom, and at length for Place and Precedency was ranked the first Baron; and the greatness of these Knights grew to such height that temp. H.3. they had in Christendom 19000 Mannors.

WHEN Saladine took Jerusalem, these Knights retreated to Acres or Ptolemais, and that being taken they seized upon the Island of Rhodes, A.D. 1308 whence they began to be call'd Knights of Rhodes; but A.D. 1522 being driven thence by Solyman, they betook themselves to the Island

of Malta, which with Tripoli and Goza were granted to them in Fee by the Emperor Charles V. A.D. 1530. under the Tender of one Falcon, yearly to the Viceroy of Scily, and to acknowledge the King of Spain and Sicily for their Protectors. In this Isle they continue a Bulwark to those Parts, and from this their Settlement are called Knights of Malta.

3. Knights Templars.

About the Year 1117, 1118, 1119, or 1120, this Order took Beginning, Baldwin II. then reigning in Jerufalem; when Nine Gentlemen, of whom Two of noble Extraction, Hugh de Paganes and Godfrey de St. Omer, came. in Devotion to the Holy Land; they were called Brothers of the Militia of the Temple, ordinarily Knights Templars, from the Habitation assigned them out of a part of the King's own Palace, adjoyning to the Temple of Solomon in Jerusalem. Their first Undertaking was to guard the most dangerous Ways about that City, against the Violence and Robberies of the Saracens, which made them acceptable to all, and for which they had Remittion of their Sins; but for the first Nine Years they were yet so poor that they lived upon the Alms of others, wore Clothes bestowed in Charity upon them, and rode two on one Horse; in memory of which primitive Poverty their Seal had the Impress, which is represented in Math. Paris, A. D. 1127. They had Rules affigned them, drawn up by St. Bernard Abbot of Clairvaux, by the Appointment of Pope Honorius II. and Stephen Patriarch of Jerusalem. They made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty and Chastity, and to live under the Rules of Canons regular of St. Augustin. Habit was White, to which, in the Time of Eugenius III. they added the Red Cross, and of the same Form that the Hospitallers wore (Favin says a patriarchal Cross) and sowed it on the left Shoulder of the Maulles. These with the Holy Sepulchre Hospitallers and Teutonicks, principally supported a long time the Kingdom of Jerusalem; but when Riches encreas'd, and their Revenues augmented, they grew proud, fell from the Obedience of the Patriarch to joyn with the Pope; and at last, 1370.

1207, all the Knights of this Order in France were, in one and the same Hour, seized and imprison'd by Philip le Bel, King of France, with Consent of Pope Clement V. being charged with most infamous and damnable Crimes. And in England, Anno 1. Ed.: 2. they were also apprehended afterwards, rendred Convicts, and all their Possessions seized into the King's Hands. Howbeit the Bishop of York commiserating their deplorable Condition within his Diocess, charitably disposed of them in Monasteries under his Jurisdiction. Two Years after many of these Knights were burn'd in France, and Jaques de la Maule, the last great Master, suffered the same Fate, having seen, A. D. 1312. his Order by Papal Authority, condemned and perpetually diffolved; after which their Lands were annexed to the Hospitallers, for their Service against the Turks.

Thus they fell, no less famous for Martial Atchievments in the East, than their Wealth in the West; for they enjoyed 16000 Lordships in Europe, and a Spanish Author tells us, their Revenue was Two Millions yearly, and had in possession 40000 Commanderies, which occasion'd divers to think they were falsly accused, and by suborned Witnesses, merely upon the Ambition and

covetous Design of Philip King of France,

4. Knights of the Order of St. Lazarus,

These were at the first a Fraternity of Religious Monks, after which they became Ecclesiastick Knights, in Imitation of the Knights of the Holy Sepulchre. Pope Pins V. 1572. Stiles it Antiquissimum Charitatis & Militia Christi Ordinem; yet it must be understood as an Order of Monks, founded by St. Basil, about the time of Julian the Apostate, A. D. 366. upon a Charitable Account, viz. to take Care of Leprous Persons (a Malady frequent in the East) by which they became staparated, even from the Conversation of Men. At length, through the Incursion of the Barbarians, and Injury of Time, it lay extinguish'd, but was revived when the Latin Princes joyned in a Holy League to recover the Holy Land. And a samous Hospital was exected at Jerusalem, under the Title of St. Lazarus.

for the Reception of Lepers: For in that Time she Monks of this Order added Martial Discipline to their Skill in Physick; and for their Services against the Infidels, begat a great Efteem from Baldwin IL King of Jerusalem, and some of his Successors. In process of Time this Order decayed, being suppressed by Issuecore VHI. who united it to the Mespiraliers at Rhodes, A. D. 1490. Nevertheless Pius IV. restored it A. D. 1569. confirming the old, and granting new Privileges, making his Kinfman Don Janes de Chaftilleu great Mather. Pins V. A. D. 1567. enlarged their Privileges, permitting them to take one Wife only, to wit, a Virgin, not a Widow. Laftly, Pope Gregory XIII. A. D. 1974. bestowed the Great Mastership of this Order upon Emanuel Philibert Duke of Sevey, and his Successors, and prescribed them the Ciftereian Rule; and accordingly he had the Investiture and Collation of the Commanderies in Spain and Italy.

5. Knights of the Toutonick Order, or Pruffia.

fir the Time of the Holy War, a wealthy Gentleman of Germany, who dwelt at Jerufalem, commiscrating the Condition of his Country-mon, coming thither in Devotion, made his House their Receptacle; afterwards he erected a Chapel to the Bleffed Virgin, whence they had also the Title of Marian Knights. To him affociated other Germans, and in short time encreasing, they professed the Military Employments of the Templars, and followed the Acts of Piety and Charity of the Hospitallers. A. D. 1190, or 1191, they elected Hany Walpott their first Master, and the following Year were confirmed by Colesius III. under the Title of Knights Tentonicks, or Dutch Knights, of the Hospital of St. Mary the Virgin, vowing Poverty, Obedience, and Charity, and following the Rule of St. Augustim. Their Statutes were composed from those of the Hospitallers and Templars, and One Article was, That none but Germans should be of this Order. Their Habit was a White Mantle, on the Breast a plain Black Crofs, but some make it a Black Crofs voided with a Crofs Potent. At Acon they erected another Hospital; but after that

City was taken by ballsdine, they removed under Hermannus their Master into Germany, on whom the Emperor Frederick II. A. D. 1229. and Pope Honorius III. ben flowed Prassia; where having conquer'd that Nation, and reduced it from Paganism, they built the City of Maryburgh, and there, A. D. 1340. fixed the chief. Residence of their great Master. This Country they enjoyed till 1525. that Albertus Brandenburgh, last igreat Master, made solemn Repunciation of that Order, and became feudatory to Sigismond I. King of Poland, who created this Albert full Duke of Pruffia: However, some of the Knights disrellishing this Action elected another great Master, wiz. Albert Wolfang, and leaving Prusha setled in Germany, where they now reside. The younger Sons of the German Princes being, for the most part received into this Order, giving it the. greatest Reputation.

6. Knights of Mount-Joy.

THESE are so called, from a Castle where this Order was instituted, built upon the Point of a Mountain not far from Jerusalem, whence the Pilgrims first view'd the Holy City, and where thele Knights lay in Garrison. Their Habit was White, and the Badge thereof any Officeonal Crofs Red; they wowed Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, and followed the Rule of St., Basil ; which Pope Alexander HL A. D. 1,80. changed to that. of Augustine. Upon the Loss of the Holy Land they retired to Spain, and fought against the Moors, and according to the Places they refided in had other Names, in Catalonia and Valentia, Equitys de Mongrea, i. c. Mouve , Jov; but in Castile, Knights of Monfrac, a Castle there. When Alphonso IX. King of Castelle gave them Lands they had won from the Moors, the Donation says, To you. Don Rodrigo Gonsales, Master of Monfrac, of the Order of Mount Joy. Upon the Decay of this Order, A. D... 1221. this Castle was given to Don Gonfalionez, Master of the Order of Calatrava, by Ferdinand the Saint; and these Knights were incorporated with them.

7. Knights

7. Knights of St. John of Acon or Acres,

UNDER the Patronage of this Saint was this Order erected; they exercised all Duties of Charity towards Pilgrims, and assumed Arms in imitation of the Hospischers; they followed the Rule of St. Augustine; and according to Favina, had a Black Habit, upon which they wore a White Cross patce. After Acon was taken they removed into Spain, and sourished in the Reign of Alphonsus the Astrologer King of Castile, about which time. Pope Alexander IV. approved the Order under the conjoined Title of St. Thomas and St. John of Acon. This King gave them by his Will all the Furniture of his House, and much Mosley; but afterward they dwindled, and at last were united to the Hospitallers. The Ensign, was a Red Cross, in the middle whereof stood the Figures of St. John and St. Thomas.

8. Knights of St. Thomas.

DISTINCT from the former, yet wearing the same Habit, as the Knights of St. John of Acon, making the same Processions, and following the same Rule; their Badge was a Saltire Gules, (or as others are of Opinion) the same with that of St. John of Acon, wanting the Figures in the middle: But Favin reports, this Order was instituted by King Richard I. after the Surprizal of Acon; and that these Knights were of the English Nation, who wore a White Habit and a Red Cross, charged in the middle with an Escalon, and that St. Thomas Becket was their Patron. Howbeit, after the Christians were driven out of the Holy Land, the Knights of this Order were joined to the Hospitallers.

9. Knights of St. Blaze.

THESE were also called Knights de Sta. Maria; they were Officers and Servants to the Kings of Armenia; their Habit was Sky colour with a Cross Gold on their Breasts; others say a Red Cross, and in the middle the Picture

Picture of St. Blaze, their Patron. This Order was at the height, when the Armenian Kings of the House of Luzignan kept their Court in Acon.

10. Knights of the Martyrs in Palestine.

These took their Denomination from an Hospital in Palestine, dedicated to St. Cosmus and St. Damianus, Martyrs; where Acts of Charity were exercised towards Sick Strangers. Their Profession obliged them to other Works of Mercy, wz. to redeem Captives, and bury their Dead. They followed the Rule of St. Basil, which was consirmed to them by Pope Fohn XXII. There Badge was a Red Cross, in, the middle whereof, within a Circle, was the aforesaid Two Saints. When they retir'd into Europe they changed into a Red Cross, and St. Augustin's Rule.

11. Knights of St. Catherine at Mount Sinai;

THIS Order was instituted, A. D. 1063. under the Patronage of St. Catherine, whose Body was there deposited in the Church of the Monastery erected and dedicated to her Name. Their first Institution was to guard the said Sepulchre, to secure Travellers, defend the Grecian Pilgrims, and to relieve them with Hospitality. Their Habit was White, and they lived under the Rule of St. Bafil the Great, vowing conjugal Chastity, and Obedience to the Abbot of this Monastery, who was their Superior. But when the Turks obtained these Countries, these Knights were ill treated and driven away, and the Order almost abolished; nevertheless fome 8hadow remains for such as travel to visit the Holy Sepulchre at Ferusalem, do now and then pass to this Monastery at Mount Sinai, where in imitation of the Padre Guardian of Jerusalem, the principal Monk in this Covent makes them Knights of St. Catherine over her Tomb, with the like Questions and Formulary as used at the Holy Sepulchre. These Knights now wear upon the left fide of their White Habit the Cross of Jerusalem, and Instrument of St. Catherine's Martyrdom; but according to others, the middle of the Wheel is pierced with a Sword. 12.

12. Knights of St. Anthony in Æthiopia.

AFTER the Death of St. Authory the Hermite, who dy'd about the Year 357, many of his Disciples remaining near Ashiopia, follow'd his Example and Manner of Life, and their Successors lived in great Autherity and Solitarine's in the Defatt (therefore calld Anchorites) till the Year 370. when the said John, Emperor of Athiopia, crefted them into a Religious Order of Knighthood, under the Title and Protection of St. Anshowy, Patron of his Empire, and bestow'd upon them great Privileges; and being thus inflituted, they reeciv'd St. Bafit's Rule, and cohabited in Monasterice. Their Habit is black, with a blue Cross Tan. Their chief Seat is in the Iste of Merce; but in other Parts of Æthiopia they have great Numbers of Convents, and no less than 2000000 of annual Revenue. The eldest Some of Nobles and Gentlemen cannot be admitted, but the fecond Sons may; and if a Man (except a Physician) have three Sons, he is bound to affign one of them to be of this Order. Their Vow is to observe conjugal Chastity 5 to die in Desence of the Christian Faith to guard the Empire; to obey their Laws and their Superiors; and to go to War when and wherefoever commanded: Moreover, they take an Oath not to fight in Wars between Christians, nor receive Holy Orders, or marry without License. They are of two Sorts: One employ'd in the Wars, the other who being Old are exempted from Military Services, and retire themselves under the Title and Profession of Monks, to the Abbies where they first took their Habit; before which they must serve three Years against the Arabian Pyrates about the Red Sea, three Years against the Turks, and three against the Moors upon the Borders of Borneo. When they come to be admitted into their Abbey, they are introduced in their Military Habit, of which being difrob'd, the Religious one is put on, viz. a black Gown reaching down to the Ground, lined with blue, having a blue Cross fix'd to the Breaft, and over that a black Cowle; they are afterwards led to the Church, and there make their Profession.

Profession. Philip VII. Son to the Founder, enlarged their Lands and Privileges, and added a Border of Gold to the Badge of the blue Cross, as observed at

this Day.

In Italy, France and Spain, there are a Sort of Monks that have the Title of Knights of St. Anthony, which observe the Rule of St. Augustiu, and they wear 2 plain Cross like that in Athiopia; but the Principals of these wear a double St. Anthony's Cross of blue Satin, the one above the other. Their chief Seat is at Vienne in Dauphine, of which Place the General of the Order bears the Title of Abbot, the Monastery being erected into an Abbey 1297. in Honour of St. Anthony, whole Body was translated thither from Constantinople; and all other Places built in Honour of his Name, were made subject, to him A. D. 1523. Moraus calls them The Hospitallers of St. Anthony, and says they begun in France A, D. 1121, from Gaston 2 Nobleman of Vienna But Baronius and others say, Gaston and Gerin instituted it earlier, making the Letter Thau their Enfign or Badge.

13. The Constantinian Angelick Knights of St. George in Greece, but now in Italy.

MARQUEZ, a Spanish Writer, makes this one of the first Military Orders in Christendom, and derives a formal Institution, Rules and Laws from Constantine the Great, which appears little better than Fabulous, therefore we shall omit his Account.

THE Great Masters have their chief Seat and Convent at Brianno rear Venice, and is Hereditary in the Family of Angelus Flavius Commenus. Among the rest of their Prerogatives, the Masters are Commensales Pontificum, i. e. may sit at the Table with the Pope, who defends them as Benefactors to the Church, and Founders of the Lateran Cathedral at Rome. As Subjects to no Prince, they have Power of coyning Money: They give Titles of Counts and Princes to their own Fraternity, and take upon them the restoring to Honours, of legitimating Bastards, making Dostors, Poets Laureaus and Publick Notaries. This Order is under the Protection of the

the Virgin Mary and Patronage of St. George; and they profess Obedience and conjugal Chastity; they wear a white Habit, on the left Side whereof is sowed a red or crimson Velvet Cross, Flory; in the middle is the

Labarum in imbroidered with the Letter A upon one Arm of the Cross, and Ω on the other. The Sides are wrought with Gold and Silk, but the Labarum is all Gold. Amongst these Knights are three Degrees; the first call'd Collered or Grand Crosses, wearing a Collar form'd of Labarums, whereat hangs the Cross and St. George. The second are the Knights, and these wear the Cross above describ'd. The third are Servants, and they bear the Cross only, without the Labarum. The many Grand Priorates or Commanderies belonging to this Order, shew the Power they were formerly endow'd with.

14. Knights of St. James in Galicia or Sanctiago.

This is the principal Order in Spain, and had its Title of Don Raniro, King of Leon, who about the Year 826. at Clavigio, by the Affistance of St. James (faid to appear upon a white Horse, bearing a Banner with a red Cross) and gain'd a mighty Victory over a great Army of the Moors. Some place the Institution about the Year 1160. others 1175. whereas it was only then confirm'd, and their Rule of Living prescrib'd by Pope Alexander III. these being a Fraternity of Knights in Spain, A. D. 1030. under a Master and Governor, with Revenues.

AND altho' this Order at first were dispos'd to vertuous Courses, and valiantly to encounter the Moors, Enemies to the Cross of Christ, yet in time they became scandalously perverted, but were afterwards reduc'd to a better Life, and approv'd on by the said Pope Alexander, who receiv'd them into the Protection of the Papal See, and gave them the Rule of St. Augustin, the Form of holding Chapters, of electing their Masters, of Treves, and thirteen Commendadores of Houses, and of the Visitors; and in short very large Privileges, together with the Monastery of St. Lorjo, situate in Galicia near Santiago;

Santlingo; and the Prior and Canons thereof were in-

corporated into this Order.

THEIR Enfign is a red Cross, which the Knights wear upon their Breast, terminating like the Blade of a Sword, the Hilt crossetted and fashion'd after the ancient Manner; whereupon it was call'd La Order de Sanstiago de la Espada.

THEIR Habit is a white Mantle close before, on the Breast whereon is placed the said Cross, made of Silk or Cloth, and they are obliged to wear it upon their Garments, Coats or Cloaks, tho' they use Crosses of

Gold likewise.

When the Moors were driven out of Spain, and the principal Branch of this Order expir'd, upon a Contest for the Place of Great Master, the Crown of Castile stepp'd in between, and by consent of the Knights. obtain'd it under the Title of Administrator, which was granted to King Ferdinand; and his Son Charles V. annex'd it with all its Rights, ere. to his Successors in the Kingdoms of Castile and Leon. Since which, the Kings of Spain now enjoy the Administration of this Order, and carry that Title and Stile in the Inscription upon the Great Seal thereof, which holds the Royal Arms of Spain, upon a Cross that filleth all the Shield, with a Sword at each of the four Corners.

15. Knights of St. Saviour in Arragon.

THESE were instituted A. D. 1118. by Don Alphonso, call'd Emperor of Spain, King of Navarre, Arragon, &c. chosen out of the Spanish and French Nobility that assisted in his Wars. He form'd them into a Society, the better to enable him to drive the Moors out of Saragossa, and the whole Territory of Arragon. Their Rule of living was the Cisterian, and somewhat conformable to the Knights Templars. When the Moors were driven out of Spain, their rich Commanderies were at length united to the Crown.

THEIR Habit was a white Mantle, on the Breast whereof was a red Cross Anchro; but some say it was

the Figure of our Saviour

16. Knights

16. Knights d'Avis in Portugal.

Don Alphanfo Henriquez, first King of Portugal, took from the Moors, A.D. 1147. the City of Evera, and to strengthen it, sent thither several gallant Commanders, who affirm'd the Title of Knights of St. Mary of Evora, putting themselves under the Protection of our blessed Lady. Not long after they were call'd d'Avis, from a Castle upon the Porsuguese Frontiers, conquer'd from the Moors, whither they transplanted themselves. It was confirm'd by Pope Innocent III. A. D. 1204. under the Rule of St. Benedict, and therefore in some Papal Rules call'd of St. Beneditt d'Avis. The Knights profess conjugal Chastiny and Obedience. Anno 1213. they submitted themselves to the Rule, Statutes and Visnation of the Order of Calarrava; but in the Time of John of Portugal (natural Son to Pedro King of Portugal) seventh Great Master d'Avis, they cast off their Acknowledgments to Calatrava, and never after submitted to them; and afterwards, when the Crown of Portugal fell into the Hands of Philip II. King of Spain, this Order was govern'd according to the Statutes of Portugal.

Their Badge is a green Cross, Flory, (such as the Knights of Alcantara us'd to wear.) They must be Gentlemen by Extraction, both of the Father's and Mother's side.

17. Knights of St. Michael's Wing in Portugal.

About the Year 1165. others say 1171. Don Alphonso, who founded the Order d'Avis, founded this also after his obtaining a notable Victory over the Moors and Albara King of Sevil, in which Battle St. Michael the Archangel is said to appear on the right Side of Alphonso, and fight against them.

Their Investiture, &c. was the same with Avis. It is now grown out of Use, but the Mastership remains

with the King of Portugal.

18. Knights of St. Gereon.

This Order was establish'd by Frederick Barbaressa the Emperor; others say by Frederick II. and consisted only of the German Nation. They follow'd the Rule of St. Augustin, and wore a white Habit, whereon was sow'd a black Patriarchal Cross, set on a little green Hill.

19. Knights of St. Julian de Pereyro, or of Al-

They had the first Appellation from St. Julian de Pereyro, a Town in Leon, where they had a Monastery built for them by Ferdinand II. King of Leon and Galicia, who in his Diploma of Privileges granted thereunto 1176. stiled himself Protector of this Society of Knights. In the Approbation-Bull of Pope Alexander III. their Chief is called Prior; but in that of Pope Lucius III. he is stiled Master of Pereyro. They used a Secular Habit, modest and grave, and the Ecclesiasticks a Clerical Habit, with a Shred of Cloth and a Scapulary, to distinguish them from other Seculars and Ecclefiasticks. They observed the Rule of St. Benedist moderated, as it was convenient for the Exercise of Arms against the Moors, for which End it was instituted. Their ancient Badge was a Pear-tree Vert, in Allusion to the Name.

The Occasion of altering the first Appellation was upon change of their Habitation. Pope Adrian VI. annex'd this Mastership, together with those of St. James and Calatrava, to the Royal Crown of Castile for ever.

20. Knights of Trugillo or Truxillo in Spain.

This Order is so call'd from the City of Trugillo in Estremadura, but when, or by whom sounded, or their Badge, is unknown. Some suppose these Knights the same with that of Alcantara; 'tis evident they were in being A. D. 1227. when 'tis pretended the Master of Alcantara took Trugillo from the Moors, and plac'd there a Brotherhood of Knights. But it seems these Knights

of Truxillo, were a distinct Order several Years before, and 'tis not unlikely that they might be incorporated into that of St. Julian de Pereyro, and by this Means the Order of Alcantara acquired the Towns of Trugillo, Sansta Cruz, &cc. which Associated IX. King of Castile had given them. They were to be of Noble Descent, and make proof of their Gentility; they were obliged to be near the King's Person, and to attend him in all Martial Expeditions, maintaining always Two Horsesand Servanta in Readiness.

21. Knights of Calatrava.

This Order was instituted in Castile by Sanchio III. and so called from Calatrava, a Frontier Castle of Castile and Toledo, which the Moors took, A. D. 714. compounded of the Arabick Cala a Castle, and the Spanish Travas Manacles, with which the Moors fettered the Christians; 400 Years after which, upon the Recovery of the Town from the Moors, it was given to the Knights Templars; but they, unable to stop the mighty Conquests of the Moors, the said Sanchio by Proclamation promis'd the Inheritance to any who would undertake the Detence of it, being the Key of the Kingdom of Toledo. At length Raymond of Barcelona (formerly 2 Knight, then a Ciftercian Abbot) by the Perswasion of Velasquez, accepted the Proffer, and had the Donation, A. D. 1158. and fortifying it by the Help of his Affociates, this Order arose, call'd at first Militia de Calatrava. Upon the account of the Fertility of the Place, 20000 Men and their Families were drawn from the neighbouring Countries to settle there, so that the Moors never after attempted it. They remain'd under their own Masters till Pope Adrian VI. annex'd it to the Crowns of Castile and Leon.

22. Order of the Holy Ghost at Rome.

Marquez calls them Brothers of the Hospital of the Holy Ghoss, who tho' not invested with Swords and Spurs, are nevertheless reckoned among the Military Orders, because bound to certify their Gentility before Admitance.

D 2 tance.

tance. Their chief Seat is the Sumptuous Hospital of the Holy Ghost, sounded at Saxia near the River Tyber at Rome, by Pope Innocent III. A. D. 1198. or 1201. But the Ancient Foundation was the Hospital of the Holy Ghost at Montpelier in France, tho' this other became the Principal. They profess Chastity, Poverty, and Obedience, living under the Rule of St. Augustine, and have a Master. Their Ensign is a White Patriarchal Cross with Twelve Points, sowed to their Breast, and on the left side of their Black Mantle.

In this Hospital, Care is taken for the nursing and bringing up exposed Children, curing Instrmities, Entertainment of Strangers for Three Days, relieving the Poor, and the like Works. Their Revenue is about 24000 Ducats per Day, having great Commandaries in Italy, Sicily, Spain, France, Burgundy, Germany, and else-

where.

23. Knights of St. George d'Alfama.

So named from a Town in Tortofa, were instituted, A. D. 1201. received Approbation from the Papal See, A. D. 1363. and A. D. 1399. was united to the Order of our Lady of Montesa.

24. Knights of Christ in Livonia, or of the Swordbearers.

A. D. 1186. Mainard first preach'd Christianity to the Livonians, and erected the Bishoprick of Riga; but his Successors meeting with many Difficulties, A. D. 1200. Albers, then Bishop of Livonia, instituted this Order in Imitation of the Knights Teutonicks, with design to extirpate Idolatry, and promote the Gospel. He prescribed to these Knights the Cistercian Rule and Habit, viz. a long White Mantle and Black Hood; on the Breast was the Figure of a Red Sword, or rather Two plac din Saltire, whence they had the Title of Ensister fratres, or Brethren Sword-bearers. Their Statutes were something like the Knights Templars, and they vowed Obedience and Chastity. Pope Innocent III. consirmed this Order, which became fully instituted, A. D. 1203. but because they

they could not of themselves accomplish their End. About the Year 1237, they were united to the Teutonick Order, and submitted to their Rule and Habit, by whose Help they overcame the Livonians, and brought them to the Christian Faith; thenceforward the Great Master of Livonia acknowledged him of Prussia their Superior, until Walter de Pletemberg, their Great Master, separated this Order from their Obedience to the Tentonick. Finally, A. D. 1561. Gothard de Ketler, the last Great Master, following the Example of the Great Master of Prussa, became subject to the Crown of Poland, surrendering to King Sigismond II. the City and Castle of Riga, and all the Lands, Charters, Privileges, &c. of this Order, receiving in exchange the Dukedom of Curland, to him and his Heirs for ever; so the Order expired after 357 Years continuance.

25. Knights of Jesus Christ in Italy or France.

ST. Dominick descended of the Family of the Guzmans in Spain, instituted this Order, A. D. 1206. principally to fight against the Albigenses, then call'd Hereticks. He prescribed to them a White Habit, and for their Badge a Cross flory, quarterly, sable and argent. The Work being done with the Albigenses, they devoted themselves wholly to spiritual Warfare; and afterwards, upon admitting Widows and Virgins into their Order, they became called Fratres seu Sorores de Panitentia B. Dominici, whose Rule Pope Innocent VI. consirm'd circa An. 1360.

26. Knights of St. Mary de Merced. in Aragon.

James I. of Aragon, being sometime a Prisoner to Simon Earl of Montfort in France, where he suffered much Hardship, and being moved with the insufferable Miseries the Christians endured under the Slavery of the Moors, made a Vow to the Blessed Virgin, That when delivered himself, he would endeavour the Redemption of such Christians as the Moors had made Captives, and accordingly laid up great Summs for the Performance; and afterwards, by the Council of Raymond de Penasort, his Confessor, and Pedro Nolasco, a Noble D.

Chevalier, he founded in Barcelona this Order of la Nueva Merced, so named by the Virgin, who, as they reported, appeared to them all in one and the same Hour, directing the Institution. In Anno 1358. I find it called also Ordo beate Eulalie, from St. Eulalia the Virgin and Martyr, buried at Parcelona in the Church bearing her Name. This Order began on the Day of St. Laurence, in August, A. D. 1218. in the Fifth Year of that King, which Day they annually commemorate. They were to gather Alms, and go in Person to redeem Christian Slaves; which Work prospered so well, that Velasco (the first General or Head) set at Liberty 400 within the Space of Six Years after its Foundation. Their Habit was a Coat and Scapular of course white Cloath, garnished with Cordons and Ribbons, wherewith they fast'ned it about their Necks, and from the upper-end thereof issued a Cap that covered half their Head: The Monks wore their Coats and Scapulars reaching down to their Feet; but those of the Knights were much shorter. A. D. 1251. King James, the Founder, granted unto all the Fraternity, that they should wear upon their Scapulars the Arms of Aragon, viz. Or 4 Pales Gules, and above that the White Cross of the Church of Barcelona in a red Field, with Two Coats joined together per fess in one Shield, which came afterwards to be encompassed with a Bordure, which the Knights wore on their Scapulars, but the Monks on their Mantles, and both upon their Breasts. Disputes arising among themselves, they were incorporated with the Knights of Montesa; so that, ever fince, the whole Fraternity have been only Priests. The Master General hath his Refidence at Barcelona, by the Decrees of Pope Clement V. and John XXII. To conclude, they now collect great Sums of Money, send out their Agents yearly, chiefly to Algiers and Fess, and for the Redemption of Christian Captives, and have from the Time of their Institution followed their proposed Ends with all religious Care and Faithfulness.

27.

27. Knights of the Rosary in Toledo.

Roderick, Bishop of Toledo in Spain, seeing the Country sore oppressed by the Moors, assembled the Noblest of the City, and proposed the Necessity of their Assistance to extirpate the Moors; whereunto they being unanimously inclin'd, he gave Beginning to this Order, By their Statutes, besides sighting against the Moors, they are obliged to say, continually, the Rosary of our Blessed Lady. Their Rule of Living was that of St. Dominick; and their Ensign the Figure of our Lady of the Rosary upon a Cross story, quarterly, argent and sable.

28. Knights of St. Mary the Glorious, in Italy,

Their Author was Bartholomeo de Vincenza, a Fr ar Preacher, or Dominican, afterwards Bishop of that City. The End he chiefly defigned, was to procure Peace to Italy, then much disquieted by Civil Wars. It was inflituted, A. D. 1233. called Generalis Devotionis annu, and approved and confirmed by Pope Urban IV. A. 1. 1262. and the Rule of St. Dominick prescribed them, who are obliged to take into their Care Widows and Orphans, and endeavour to beget Concord among such as are at Variance. Their Habit is a White Tunick or Cassock, and a Mantle of Russet; some make their. Badge which they wear upon their Beast a purple Cross patee bordered with Gold, others make it a purple Crofs patee, with Two Stars in chief; but Marquez, that has writ of the Order of Knighthood, gives it an Ollogonal Cross, like that of Malta. They profess Obedience and Conjugal Chastity; but are forbid to wear Spurs or Bridles of Gold: They are commonly called Cavaleri de Madona, and refide at Bolonia, Modena, and other Italian Cities; and because they have no Monasteries, but dwell in their own Houses at Ease and Plenty, they were called Fratres Gaudentes or Hilares.

29. Knights

29. Knights of St. James, in Portugal,

WERE instituted, A. D. 1310. by Denys VI. King of Portugal, in honour of St. James, under whose Protection he became victorious in divers' Battles against the Moors, and at length quieted his Kingdom by the Affistance of these Knights. It was not long after its Institution ere this Order flourished, through the Privileges the Founder bestowed, and the Approbation of Pope Nicholas IV. and others his Successors. Knights profess Conjugal Chastity, Hospitality and Obedience, and none are admitted till they make proof of their Gentility by Blood. Their Enfign is a red Sword, formed like that of St. Fames of Calicia; the Habit White, and the only difference between them lies in a little Twist of Gold which these of Portugal draw about their Sword. At Alcasar de Sul was their Principal Convent, which they afterwards removed to Dalmela, where it yet continues. Their Statutes, &c. are much the same with those of St. James in Galicia, whereupon some erroneously have confounded them.

30. Knights of our Lady, and of St. George of Montesa.

THIS Order fucceeded into the Lands and Possessions of the Knights Templars in Valentia, as the Knights Hofpitallers did into those of the Templars in France, Italy, and England; for James II. King of Aragon and Valentia, refusing to give their Revenues to the Holpitallers (which as other Princes had done) gave them to the Convent of Montesa, where had been placed both Knights and Friars of the Order of Calatrava; and excusing himfelf to Pope John XXII. A. D. 1317. he instituted this Order in the City Valentia (nevertheless subject to that of Calatrava) and made choice of the Town of Montesa, to give the Knights both Name and Habitation, whom he obliged to defend his Kingdom against the Their College, dedicated to St. George, was built the following Year, and their Statutes confirmed by the Aid Pope John; who gave them the Ciffercian Rule.

Rule. Upon their Habit is White, and the Badge e plain red Cross, which they wear on their Breasts. A. D. 1399, the Order of St. George d'Alfama was incorporated to it. And the Great Office of Master hereof is in the King of Spain, who hath the Rovenue of Thirteen Commandaries belonging thereunto to the Value of 23000 Ducats per annum,

31. Knights of Christ in Portugal,

THESE sprang also from the Ruin of the Knights Templars, whose confiscated Estates King Days, firnamed Penoca, defired of Pope John XXII. might not be disposed out of his Kingdom, in regard of the great Evils the Neighbouring Moors in Algarves, did his Kingdom; and forasmuch as the Town of Castro Marie was a Frontier, and commodious to refift the Enemy, he moved for Licence to institute an Order of Knights therein, and offer'd his Holiness the Rents and Jurisdiction thereof, which accordingly was granted by the Pope, and dedicated it to the Honour of God, and the Exaltation of the Catholick Faith, under the Title of the Military Order of our Lord Jesus Christ, as is alledged from the miraculous Apparition of our Saviour crucified, seen by the King when he went out to fight the Moors.

32. Knights of the Passion of Jesus Christ.

This Order was erected by Charles King of France, (tho' it made no Progress) and our King Richard II. with a large Design exceeding all other Religious Orders, except those of St. John of Jerusalem and Knights Templars. They were to renew the Memory of our Saviour's Passion, to extirpate Pride, Covetousness and Luxury, to make way for the Reconquest of Jerusalem and Palestine, and for the Subversion and Consuson of Enemies of the Faith. A MSS in the Arandelian Library, reckons up Twenty Causes for the Necessity of its Institution, which are too long to be inserted; and altho' it was dedicated to our Saviour, yet the Blessed Virgin was look'd upon as a principal Mediatress and Advocate

Advocate of this Holy Chevalry. Their Governments in the principal Convent, were to be debated by Five Councils, in the Presence of the Prince: 1. The Quotidian Council, confifting of Twenty-four; The Particular confisting of about Fourty: 3. The Grand Council confisting of Eighty. General Chapter held every Year. And, 5. The Universal Chapter to be held every Fourth or Sixth Years, confishing of a Thousand Knights of the Chevalry. The Principal Officer was the Grand Justiciary, the next the Grand Bailiff: In the Chief City, and in every City and Castle of theirs, one was to administer Justice called a Potestate. In the general Chapter was to be an Officer called the Senator, and in the Universal Chapter a Distator with Coadjutors and Affiftants.

In the principal Convent were to be Ten Executers of Justice, and Four styled Charitable Commissaries, whose Office was, to provide for Widows and Orphans; and whereas this Order was made up of Eight several Languages, and as many Notaries, who put on the Habit of the Brothers; for the greater Regularity of their Order, they were to bind themselves by Oath to the Observance of these Three Points, Obedience to Sovereigns, Poverty of Spirit, and Conjugal Chassity, They were allotted for their Maintainance, the Possession of Cities, Casses, &c. Gold, Silver, &c. and all to be in common, &c.

There was to belong to the Castle or Principal Convent a Church of marvellous Structure; it was design'd Fifty Cubits in breadth, without any Pillars, a Hundred Cubits long, and in height Twenty-sive; likewise an Hospital, where the Widows of the Holy Chevalry should attend upon the Sick and Insirm; a Baptistery or Font, for the Baptizing the Children of the Knights; a stately Palace, with a great Hall and large Consistories, to contain the Prince and Council with their Retinue; with a large and delightful Cloister for the Canons and Clerks; together with a very spacious Palace, to entertain the Princes of the West when they came that Way, either to War, or upon Pilgrimage; In sine, there was to have been Three chief Halls, wherein they

they might dine together; with distinct Lodgings and Habitations, Wine-Cellars, Granges, Granaries, Stables for Horses and Cattel, Easements, Mills, Cisterns, Baths, and all other Necessaries for the Chevalry. Their

Habit was to denote the Passion of Jesus.

THE Dress they were obliged to was a hansome Cloth Coat of a civil Colour, reaching down half way their Legs, and girt with a large Girdle of Silk or Leather Two Fingers broad, the Buckle of Black Horn, the Tongue and Garnishing of the Holes, Tin; to have Red Chaperons or Caps, representing the Blood of our Saviour; over their said Coats, a Mantle of White Cloth or Serge, which from the Shoulders downward was to be open on both Sides along the Arms, and in that Part before the Breast a Cross of red Cloth or Serge Two Fingers broad, extending to the Breadth and Length of that Part of the Mantle; the Cross of the Prince's Mantle was to be edged round with a Gold Fringe about half an Inch broad; there were to be some other small Distinction as to the Shape of the Cross upon the White Habit to be used by this Holy Chevalry. Their Arms in a Banner were Argent, upon a Cross Gules; a Compass of Four convex semi-circles, conjoyning Four intervening Angles alternately fable (in Allufion to the Agony of our Lord) charged with an Agnus Dei Or, the Compass and Cross both simbriated Gold, with a little red Bordure.

In Times of extraordinary Danger, and great Battles, they were to have another fingular and solema Banner; every Knight was to have his Esquire armed at all Points, a little Valet for his Lance and Helmet, a bigger to carry his Mail, and a third to lead his Sumpter; Five Horses, and Four Servants were to attend him in all Warlike Expeditions, and Two or Three Horses and Servants in all Times of Peace. The Number of these Knights of the Holy Chevalry was 1000 or 1100.

33. The Order of the Brician Knights in Sweden.

WAs founded, A. D. 1366. by an holy and famous Queen of that Kingdom which they repute St. Bridges, the the Aim of whose Profession was to oppose Herely, secure the Consines of the Kingdom, bury the Dead, succour Widows and Fatherless, and to keep up Hospitality. Their chief Ensign was a Blue OBogonal Cross, and under it a Tongue of Fire, the Symbol of Love and Charity.

34. Knights of St. Maurice in Savoy.

THIS Order took its rife upon the Retreat of Amadems VIII. Duke of Savoy, into the Defart of Ripaille, near the Lake of Geneva, and was conferr'd by him, A. D. 1434. on Ten of his Courtiers, who retir'd with him, as well as to preserve the Memory of St. Maurice, the Patron of Savoy. Nine Years after its Institution, the Founder was elected Pope, A. D. 1439. and assumed the Name of Felix V. Nine Years after that he resigned the Chair, and retir'd to his Solitude in Ripaille, where he died, Jan. 7. 1451. and lies buried at Lausanna. The Order continued not long after his Death; but Duke Emanual Philibert restored it, A. D. 1572. and the Dukes of Savoy are their Grand Massers.

35. Kuights of the Holy Ghost,

WERE instituted by Pope Paul II. A. D. 1468. under the Title of Brethren of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost. They were upon their Habits a White Cross forms.

36. Knights of St. George in Austria and Carrinthia.

THE Emperor Frederick III. others say Rudolphus of Hapsburgh, first Founder of the Greatness of the House of Austria, instituted this Order, A. D. 1470. chiesly to guard the Frontiers of Germany, Hungary, Austria, Stiria, and Carimbia, and to suppress the Insolency of the Turks, fince which these Knights have gallantly behaved themselves. The Great Master was advanced to the Honour of a Prince; and the Castle of Mildstad in Carinthia was given him for his Seat, where was founded

founded a Cathedral Church of Canons, under the Rule of St. Augustin. Their Ensign is the Arms of St. George, a red Cross, and their Habit white; they profess Conjugal Chastity and Obedience; and have the

Emperors for their Protectors.

THERE are also Cavalleros de San Jorge en Alemania, am Order erected by the Emperor Maximilian, 1494. upon the like Design with the former; it was confirmed by Pope Alexander VI. and is under the same Profession and Protection as the other. There Ensign is a red Cross, with a Crown of Gold on the top of it; they were otherwise called crowned Knights; for after they had served a Year, they and their Heirs have a peculiar right of Adorning their Shields and Helms with a Crown; the Occasion was upon a notable Victory obtained against the Turks, who consessed that a Man on Horseback supposed to be St. George, put them into that Fear and Disorder as to quit the Field.

37. Knights of St. George at Rome.

THESE were instituted by Alexander VI. 1498. or, as others say, by Pope Paul III. at whose Death it became extinct. They dwelt at Rawenna, their Province, and were to secure the Adriatick Sea from Pyrates.

38. Knights of St. Peter at Rome.

POPE Leo X. A. D. 1520. instituted this Order to fight against the Turks, and defend the Sca Coasts. Their Number was Four Hundred; they wore the Image of St. Peser within an Oval of Gold hanging at a Golden Chain.

39. Knights of St. Paul at Rome,

Were instituted by Paul III. 1540. and while he was Pope, he made Two Hundred of them. Their Ensign was St. Paul's Image hanging at a Golden Chain.

40. Knights

40. Knights called Pios at Rome.

Pore Pius IV. erected this Order 1560. He created of them at first 375. but they encreased to 535. He granted them very considerable Endowments, and preferr'd them before the Knights of the Empire, and Maka, because they were his Courtiers, and had the Charge of carrying his Chair on their Shoulders when he went abroad.

41. Knights of St. Stephen at Florence.

THIS Order was founded in imitation of the Knights of Malta, 1561. by Cosmo de Medicu II. Duke of Florence, afterwards first Duke of Tuscany, in honour of St. Stephen, Pope and Martyr, the Patron of the City of Florence, and in memory of the Battle on the 6th of August, (St. Stephens-day) at Marciano, where overthrowing the Affertors of Liberty, he laid the Foundation of his Grandeur. Pins IV. confirmed it under the Rule of St. Beneditt, which was afterwards enlarged with many Emoluments and Privileges, by the succeeding Popes. The Knights vow'd Conjugal Chastity and Charity, in relieving the Afflicted, Obedience to their Masters the Great Dukes of Tuscany. The chief Place of their Residence was at Pisa, where the Founder erected a Church and Convent, as a Nursery for Persons skilful in Maritime Affairs, but fince it is transferred to Cosmopoli in the Isle of Ilva. Their Habit is a long Mantle of White Chamlet trimmed with Red, and on the left part of their Breast a Cross (like that of Malta) of red or crimfon Satin border'd with Gold; it is daily worn. on their Cloaks, and on their Military Garments, and about their Necks in a Ribbon on Festival Days. Order (like the Maltele) also confists of Knights, Priests and Servants. The Priests wear the Cross of red Taffaty without a Bordure, the Servants the Cross of St. Anthomy only. The Statutes were reformed by Ferdmand Duke of Tuscany, Son to the Founder, and approv'd, 1590.

42. Knights

42. Knights of St. Maurice and St. Lazarus in Savoy.

Porz Gregory XIII. having, at the Request of Emanuel Philibert, Duke of Savoy, restor'd the Order of St. Lazarus, and the Order of St. Maurice, A. D. 1572. and constituted this Duke Grand Master, the same Year, for their greater Honour, he united them under the Title of St. Maurice and St. Lazarus, and appointed the Dukes of Savoy Hereditaries and Masters, and oblig'd them to furnish out two Gallies for the Service of the Papal See, to be employ'd against Pyrates. Upon this Union, the Knights had affign'd them for Habit 2 Gown of Crimson Tabby, with wide Sleeves, a long Train, and edg'd with white Taffaty, and a Cordon with a Taffel of White and Green fix'd to the Collar. The Badge is, A green Cross ancree of St. Laurence, plac'd Saltirewise, surmounted with the white Cross pornelle of St. Maurice, which the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain, or any colour'd Ribbon. And the faid Duke founded for the Knights two fair Convents, one at Nice, the other at Turin, and bestow'd on them all the Revenues within his Territories, formerly appertaining to the Order of St. Lazarus. The Dukes of Savoy, as Grand Masters, use this Title.

43. Knights of Loretto.

THIS Order, about the Year 1587. was inflituted by Sixtm V. who erected the Church of our Lady at Loresto into a Cathedral and Bishop's See, and gave the Knights for their Ensign, the Image of our Lady of Loresto, hung in a Gold Chain. This is not quite extinguish'd.

44. Knights of the Blessed Virgin Mary of Mount Carmel.

Tho' the Grand Mastership of St. Lazarus, and its Commandaries in all Dominions, were confirm'd by Pope Gregory XIII. upon the House of Savoy, yet under King Henry

Henry III. some Knights in France, of that Order, refus'd to joyn with their Fellows, under the Obedience of the Duke of Savoy. King Henry IV. defirous to have a new order, bearing the Denomination of The Bleffed Virgin, &c. apply'd himself to Pope Paul V. and obtain d what he su'd for A. D. 1608. (besides other Penfions out of certain Ecclefiastical Benefices in France) the Commandaries and Hospitals of St. Lazarus in that Kingdom, and the Knights of St. Lazarus that remain'd in France, were incorporated with them under two Titles; their Seal being inscrib'd, Sigillum Ordinis & Militie Marie Virginis de Monte Carmeli, & Santi Lazari in Hierusalem. The Order confists of One Hundred choice French Gentlemen, whose Offices are to attend on the King in every warlike Expedition. They vow Chastity and Obedience, and profess to fight against the Enemies of the Romish See. The Feast of the Patroness is the 16th of July; Philibert Nerestang, a valiant Knight of St. Lazarm, was elected their first Master 1608. Their Badge is a Cross of 8 Points of tawny Velvet or Sattin, with a white Border sow'd on the left Side of their Cloaks, and the Image of the Virgin Mary of Mount Carmel plac'd in the Middle, within a Rundle encompass'd with Rays of Gold. They also wear about their Necks, in a tawny Silk Ribbon, the like Cross of Gold; but the Image of the said Knights is enamel'd on both Sides. There Investiture is like that of Malta.

45. Knights of the most Glorious Virgin Mary of Rome.

A. D. 1618. Pedro, John Baptista, and Bernardo, sirnam'd Petrignaneos (three Brethren of Spelta in Italy) invented this Order: To which was added, the Rule of St. Francis d'Assis, whereof the Popes are Great Masters. Paul V. consirm'd them, and gave these Knights the Palace of St. John Lateran for their Convent, and the City and Port of Civita Vecchia to make their Arsenal; with an Island adjacent, together with the Government of his Gallies. Their Institution was for the Exaltation of the Roman Church, and to check or suppress

the Turks roving in the Mediterranean. There are three Sorts of this Order, 1. Knights Gentlemen, Laicks. 2. Knights Gentlemen, Priests and benefic'd. 3. Knights Chaplains, or Servants of Arms. All of these wear on the lost Side of their Mantles their Badge, which is a blew Cross floree Azure, border'd with Silver, having 4 Mullets, or Stars, at the End of each Flowers to significe the Four Evangelists; in the Middle is a Circle (extended round underneath the Arms of the Cross) set with 12 Rays for the 12 Apostles, inscrib'd, In hoc signo vincam 3 and within it (taking up the Center of the Cross) is a Cypher of M.S. i. e. Santia Maria, crown'd with Chaplets of Flowers, and Stars of Gold set over the Chaplet.

46. Knights of the Annunciade, and St. Michael the Archangel in Mantua, or of the Christian Militia in Moravia.

By these Names they have been promiseuously called. It was instituted 1618. by Charles Gonzaga, Duke of Mantua and Nevers, in Conjunction with Adolph, Count of Altham his Brother, and John Baptist Petrignan Sfortia. To give it the greater Lustre, they divided the World among them; Charles took the North and West Parts, Adolph the Eastern, and the other had the South, where they were personally to found Convents and invest Knights. Duke Charles began his Institution of this Order under the Rule of St. Francis, in Olmutz the Metropolis of Moravia, the Year aforesaid, and dedicated it to the bleffed Virgin and St. Michael: But what Progress the others made in their pious Resolutions, History is filent. It has been likewise styl'd, Conceptionis Ordo & Militis Virginis annunciata. Anno 1612. several illustrious Princes of divers Countries entered themselves into that Order at Vienna. It was approv'd by Pope Paul V. and confirm'd by Pope Paul VIII. 1624, The Design of its Institution was, to establish Peace and Concord among Christian Princes and their Subjects; to release Captives, and deliver the Oppressed out of the Hands of the Infidels..

On some unhappy Difference among the illustrious Founders, in a short time it moulder'd away and became E ineffeineffectual, that the Mahometans (for whose Destruction it was design'd) heard only the Report of it.

CAP. III.

- I AVING particulariz'd the Religious Orders, I shall proceed to those accounted absolutely Military. Among them,
- 1. Knights of the Round Table may, for Antiquity, challenge the first Place.

The Founder was Arthur King of Britain, crown'd in the Year of our Lord 516, at the Age of 15 Years; of whose incredible Courage and Gallantry, the' some have stretch'd too far, yet William of Malmsbury is of Opinion, he was worthy to have been celebrated by. true and faithful Historians, and not falle and spurious Tales. He it was that long prop'd up his declining Country, and inspir'd Martial Courage into his Subjects, the Saxons, in twelve pitch'd Battles having overcome, and conquer'd divers Countries. He liv'd in fo great Repute and Renown, that worthy Knights came from all Parts to his Court, as a Seminary of Mi-, litary Discipline, to demonstrate their Valour in point of Arms. This gave him Occasion to select out of these, and his own Subjects, some say Twenty Four of the most Valiant, which he united in a Fellowship; and to avoid all Controversy upon Precedency, caus'd a Round Table to be made, whence the Order had its Appellation. He admitted not only Britains, but Strangers; and their Qualifications were to be Persons of Mobility, Dignity, and renown'd for Vertue and Va-The Place where they were instituted was Windfor; and those others of Note, where he and his Knights affembled, were at Caerleon in Monmouthsbire, Winchester, and Camelot in Com' Somerset; and their time of convening was Whitfuntide. In Winchester Castle was a large Round Table, call'd (and affirm'd to be) King Arthur's 3

Arthm's; or at least feet up in the room of one more ancient, which was destroy'd in the rebellions Times of Forty One, with other Reliques there. The Anticles of their Profession (Number 12) are set down by Sir William Sogar. We find no authentick Proof what Badge they bore, notwithstanding the Report that King Archar had a Shield man'd Bridwin, wherein the Virgin Mary was depicted. His Swood and Lance had also their Names, one being call'd Caliburne, the other Irone or Rome. It was remembered that this Order survivid the Founder, but rather that it expir'd with him, most of these Knights perishing with him at the Battle of Kamblen, now Camelsford, in Cornwall, where the' he kill'd his Ememy Mordred; yet he dy'd A.D. 542.

Ir may be noted, that the like Round Table grow in Estimation shortly after the Norman Conquest, being permitted at Hasteladea, Tilus and Turnaments, remp. Staph. and R. I. And Roger Mortineer, Earl of March, kept the Celebration of the Round Table (confishing of One Hundred Knights, and as many Ladies) with Tilting at Kenelworth-Castle, in Com' Worcest' 7 Ed. I. And King Edward III. designing to restore it, held a Just at Windsor in the 18th Year of his Reign; and in the 19th ordain'd it annually to be kept there at Whitsonide. But it was thought sit upon divers Accounts to sorbid these Assemblies, and in particular 16 H. III. at Shrewsbury, when the King went to meet Llewellen Prince of Wales, and in 36 H. III. and at many other times.

2. Knights of the Oak in Navarre,

WERE instituted by Garcia Ximenes of the Blood of the Gosks, who had formerly retir'd from the World to a solitary Life, but relinquish'd it to command an Arimy rais'd by the Navarrois, to deliver themselves from the Oppression of the Moors. As he was marching to encounter them, A. D. 722. there appear'd to him from the Top of an Oak the Sign of the Cross, ador'd by an infinite Number of Angels. On giving Battle to the Insidels he gain'd a remarkable Victory, and the People elected him their King; and he in thankfulness to God erected this Order, investing his Nobles there—

E 2 with,

with, and oblig'd them to defend the Christian Faith, and acknowledge Obedience to his Successors, Kings of Navarre. Time has eclips'd this Order.

3. The Order of the Gennet,

Was Founded by Charles Martel, in Memory of the famous Battle near Tours, A. D. 726. where he overthrew 385000 Saracens and Moors, with their General Abdirano 3 and to reward those who had well-behav'd themselves in this Action. The great Number of rich Gennet Furr, (Ermine has fince gain'd the better value) as also the Creatures themselves taken alive among the Spoils, was the Occasion of assuming the Name: But others impute it to Gennets, a kind of neat-shap'd Horses, whereof not unlikely a great Part of the Founder's Cavalry consisted. The Knights were Sixteen in Number, and were accounted the first Order of this Nature among the French, which continu'd till the Institution of the Star, when it was laid asside, tho' some French Authors question if ever the Order was in being.

4. The Order of the Crown-Flower,

ERECTED by Charles the Great, Son of King Pepin, A. D. 802. to reward the Frizons, who had behav'd themselves valiantly in his Armies, and to encourage others to emulate their Vertue. It was so call'd from its Ensign, with an Imperial Crown embroider'd with Gold. The Knights were invested with the Military Belt and a Box on the Ear.

5. The Order of the Dog and Cock.

THAT there was such an Order in France is related by several Writers, but they give no certain Account of its Institution.

6. The Order of St. Andrew, or the Thistle, in Scotland,

Is reported by John Lesley, Bishop of Ross, to take beginning from a bright Cross in Heaven, in Fashion of that whereou St. Andrew suffer'd Martyrdom, which appear'd to Hungus, King of the Pills (and to the Scots whom Achains King of Scotland sent to his Assistance) the Night preceding the Battle with Athelftan King of England; over whom prevailing, they went in Solemn Procession to the Kirk of St. Andrew, to thank God and his Apostle for their Victory, promising that they and their Posterity would ever bear the Figure of that Cross in their Enfigns and Banners. Favin, in his Theatre of Honour, relates it to be instituted upon the famous League, Offensive and Defensive, made between Achains and Charlemain King of France; to preserve the Memory of which Alliance, Achains added the Tressure of Honers de Lys to the Lyon, and took for Device the Thiftle and Rue, which he compos'd into a Collar of his Order; and for his Motto, Pour ma Defence: Yet doth Menenius. make these the Symbols of two different Orders, one. of the Thiftle, whence the Knights were so styl'd, and the Motto, Nemo me impune lacessit; the other call'd Ser-. tum Rute, or The Garland of Rue: Nevertheless to both these Gollars hung one and the same Jewel, viz. the Figure of St. Andrew, bearing his Cross before him. But there are some, faith the same Author, that refer the Institution of the Thistle (the Badge of the Scotch Kingdom from the Times of Achains) to the Reign of Charles VII. King of France, when the Amity was renew'd between both Kingdoms. Lastly, Others place its Foundation 1500. Their principal Enfign is a Gold Collar, compos'd of Thistles interlink'd with Anulets of Gold, and pendant thereto St. Andrew with his Cross, and this Epigraph, Nemo me impune lacessit. Their solemn Meeting was annually on St. Andrew's Day, in the Church of the Town dedicated to his Name: During the Festivity, the Knights were richly habited, and wore their Parliament Robes, having fix'd on their left Shoulders an Azure Round's, charg'd with a Saltire Argent, OF. or St. Audrew's Cross enfil'd in Centre, with a Crown compos'd of Flower de Luces Or. For the ordinary and common Ensign, the Knights us'd a Green Ribbon, whereat hung a Thistle of Gold, crown'd with an Imperial Crown, within a Circle of Gold, containing the last nam'd Epigraph; and now of late they have sew'd to their lest Breast an Irradiation (like that of The Knights of the Garter) over a Saltire Silver, the Irradiation charg'd with a Blew Roundle of St. Andrew's Cross. Their Number consisted of Thirteen, in Allusion to our blessed Saviour and the Twelve Aposses.

7. Knights of our Lady of the Star,

Owe their Original to Robert the Devout of France, A. D. 1022. to manifest his strict Devotion to the blesfed Virgin. They were in Number Thirty, inclusive of the Chief. Their Seat was in the noble and ancient House of St. Owen, call'd de Chichey, near St. Denys in France. This Order was of no long continuance, for being much fully'd and difgrac'd (during the Civil and Foreign Wars) by the Imitation of Persons that had neither Birth nor Merit to recommend them, King Charles VII. took Occasion to efface it A. D. 1455, by delivering up, in a Chapter, the Enfign that he wore to the Chevalier du Guet, Captain of the Night-watch in Paris, the Lords and Princes throwing it off after it had receiv'd that Mark of Infamy; tho' some alledge it declin'd upon the Erection of The Order of St. Michael, as the Star supplanted that of the Gennet.

8. The Order of the Lilly in Navarre, or of St. Mary of the Lilly,

Was founded A. D. 1048. by Garcius VI. King of Navarre, in Honour of the bleffed Virgin Mary, after his Recovery from a languishing Sickness. Others relate, that prevailing against the Moors, he made a Feast in Honour of the bleffed Virgin, at which he instituted this Order, electing his Brothers and Sons among the first Knights. It was esteem'd the most Illustrious of all Spain, and consisted of Thirty Eight Knights, extracted

tracted out of the ancientest Blood of Navarre, Biscay and Old Castile. The Kings of Navarre were their Chief. They promised, at their Institution, to expose their Lives and Fostumes in Defence of the Christian Faith, the Conservation of the Crown, and Expulsion of the Moore.

9. The Order of the Sword in Cyprus,

Was erected 1195. by Guy of Lusignan, King of Jerusalem and Cyprus, after he had purchas'd that life of our King Richard L in Commemoration of so fortunate a Plantation of 15000 Persons whom he brought this ther. Some question the Truth of this; however all affent, its Founder was one of the Lufignan Family. The Collar was composed of round Cordons of white Silk, woven into Love-Knots, interlac'd with the Letters S and R. Beneath this Collar hung an Oval of Gold, whereen was perfigur'd a Sword, the Blade enamell'd Silver, the Hilt Gold, and about the Oval this Motto, Securitas Regni. Micheli fays, Pzo Fide Servanda, and Gothafredus, pro integritate tuenda. Their Festivity was Afcenfion-Day, whereon the Founder gave it (in the Church of St. Sophia, the Cathedral of Nicosia in Cyprus) to his Brother Amany, and to Three Hundred Barons establish'd in that his new Kingdom. There were Eight Kings of Cyprus of the Lufignan Lines Great Ma-Aers; but when this Isle fell into the Hands of the Turks, this Institution ceas'd.

10. The Bear in Switzerland,

Was instituted A. D. 1213. by the Emperor Frederick II. in Favour of the Abbot of St. Gall in Swaben, who had ssifted him in gaining the Empire. These Knights wore a Collar of Gold, at the End whereof hung a Bear Gold, mounted on an Hillock enamell'd with Black, in Honour of St. Ursin of the Theban Legion, who was martyr'd before the Temple of the Sun at Solearre in Switzerland. It was also call'd The Order of St. Gall, from the Name of the Patron (a Scotch Gentleman, and the Apostle of Swaben) of the Place where

If receiv'd its Appellation. The Abbot whereof, for the Time being, had Power to confer this Honour, which was done by girding with the Military Belt (the Sword being first confectated) and putting on the Collar. It continu'd 'till the Switzers became a Common-Wealth; and then the Castles of the Nobles being dismantled, it was laid aside.

11. The Broom-Flower in France,

Took its Original from Lewis of France, to honour the Coronation of his Queen Margaret, A.D. 1234. Their Habits were Cassocks of White Damask, and Violet Chaperons; the Collar compos'd of Broom-Flowers Proper, interlac'd with Flowers de Lys, hanging thereat a Cross Florence Gold, to which was added this Inscription, Exaltar Humiles; the Founder accounting the Broom the Symbol of Humility. Their Number was at the Sovereign's Pleasure, and this Order continu'd till the Death of King Charles V. Some say Charles VI. instituted it, and others deny the being of any such Order.

12. The Ship and Double Crescent in France.

SUCH an Order was of Old, in Honour of the great Atchievements of that Nation, tho' by whom founded is unknown. Favin affirms, St. Lewis erected this after he had inflituted the Broom Flower, to animate the Nobility to accompany him in his Expedition to Africa, 1269. Their Badge was alluding to the Name of the Order, the Figure of a Ship Pendant in an Oval of Gold; and expir'd with St. Lewis after the first Class of Knights; but its Honour was kept up by Charles, Brother of St. Lewis, and flourish'd in Sicily with his Successors, until the Kings of Arragon obtain'd that Kingdom,

13. Knights of St. James in Holland.

This Order was erected by Florentim, Earl of Holland and Zeland, and Lord of Friseland; and he, A.D. 1290, bestow'd the Ensigns of it, in his Palace at the Hague,

Was Laurenet Lord Hamilton, Embassador from the King of Sees. They were invested with a Collar of Gold, or Military Belt of Silver gilt, set off with Six Escallops, whereat was hung the Picture of St. James the Apostle.

14. The Order of the Swan in Cleveland.

In ever any such was, it has been effac'd long since. Yet Favin says, the Princes of Cleve have born the Swan for their Order, Devise, Crest and Supporters, to preserve the Memory of the Knight of the Swan, whose Romance he sets down. And further reports, That Charles Genzaga of Clew, Duke of Nevers, had a Design to registablish it.

15. The Knights of Jesus at Rome,

Were instituted by Pope John XXII. at August in France, A.D. 1320. as a Temporal Prince, being Lord Paramount of St. Peter's Patrimony. Paul V. much augmented it. Their Badge is a plain Cross Gules, inclos'd within a Cross patee Or, hanging at a Gold Chain. Pope Clement IX. 1668-9. treated Three of the Embassadors from the Swift Cauteus with the usual Ceremonies, himself putting on the Chains, and the Captains of his Guards girding their Swords about them.

16. The White Eagle in Poland,

Was instituted by Ladeslaus, King of Poland, to honour the Marriage of his Son Casimire the Great, with Anne Daughter of Gedimer Duke of Lithuania, 1325. The Ensign was a white Eagle crown'd.

17. The Order of Knights de la Banda in Castile,

Was fet up by Alphonius II. King of Leon in Castile, in the City of Villoria, A. D. 1332. (or Palencia 1330. or Burgos 1368. according to others) not long before his

his Coconation, the better to secure himself against his Enemies. Soon after the Solemaity was celebrated as Burges, in the Monastery of St. Mary Royal, where the Candidates, conducted by the King to the Altar, and depositing their Arms, spent the Night in Watching and Prayer. The Morrow after Mais, they were in vested with a red military Belt or Ribbon, of four Fingers broad, which came a cross the Body over the right Shoulder, and so under the left Arm, and was the Enfign from whence they took their Denomination. This Order was chiefly to Honour the Nobility 3' and at first none were admitted but the vounger Sons of Noblemen [excluding elder Brothers] or Persons well-descended, or Esquires, who had serv'd in Court or Camp Ten Years at least. It was anciently of great Esteem, and Kings have vouchsafed to take its Enfigu: but at length it was disus'd.

18. The Order de la Calza,

INSTITUTED at Venice A. D. 1400. from the Example of the Knights de la Banda, in Honour of the Inauguration of Duke Michele Steno. It confifted of a Society of particular Noblemen and Genelemen, who voluntarily met together, and elected a Chief among them. selves. They took an Oath to observe their Articles, part whereof was, the Honour of the City, where noble and splendid Regales were made; and with such 'like magnificent Divertisements did they entertain King Henry III. of France, and other noble Personages. receiv'd the greater Lustre, by the Addition of several Italian Princes; and the most conspicuous Families were receiv'd into it. Their Habit, on Solemn Days, was a Crimson Senator's Vest appearing very splendid. Their Ensign, a Sun in a Sheild painted in their Banners. It arriv'd to such Profuseness, that in 1590. it was wholly laid aside.

19. The Order of St. Mark in Venice,

Is here reckon'd, because the Knights are dignify'd with a Title and particular Ensign of Honour at their Creation.

Creation. The Ceremony is after the Manner of Kulcher Batchelors, by Dubbing with a Sword, and their Tide a bare Mark of Honour, having no Laws or Statutes, or particular Obligations enjoye'd. It had the Denomination from St. Mark the Evangelist, whose Body was translated to Venice, 828. and became the Titular Angel and Guardian of that City, his Picture being difplay'd in their Banners. The exact Time of its Institution is not certainly determined. The Badge than adorns these Knights, is, a Gold Chain put over their Shoulders at their Creation, whereat depends a Medel on one fide whereof is the Symbol of St. Mark, viz. a winged Lyon, holding in his right Paw a drawn. Sword, and in his left an open Book, with this Motto. Pax tibi Marce Evangelista mens. On the Reverse, the Duke furviving is beautify'd with a particular Impress. Sometimes represented on his Knee, receiving a Standard from the Hands of St. Mark. This Medal is worn on a Cross enamell'd Blew. The Duke confers this Honour, either privately in his Chamber, or publickly in a full College. The Senate have the Power of creating this Order; and they who receive it by their Sanction, the Dignity is greater than from the Hands of the Duke himself. Absent Persons are invested by Letters Patents; and to aggrandize their Honour and Title, flyle themselves Knigher of St. Mark.

20. The Order of the Scraphims, or Scraphick Knights, otherwife firnam'd of Jesus,

Was begun by Magnes IV. King of Sweden 1334. in Memory of the Siege laid to the Metropolitan City of Upfala. The Collar was composed of Semphines and Patriarchal Crosses.

21. The Order of the Sword and Military Belt in Sweden.

By whom or when founded we have no Memoirs. The Collar made up of Swords, with Belts twining round them (the Symbol of Love and Justice) the Swords somewhat inclining towards the Point, and so joyn'd

jeyn'd Two and Two, Point to Point, plac'd round in a Circle.

22. The Order of the Knot in Naples.

WHEN Lewis, King of Hungary, warr'd against Joan, Queen of Naples; not so much to disposses her of the Kingdom, as to revenge his Brother Andrew's Death, whom this Joan, his Wife, had strangled 1351. On the 26th of May, the Queen and Lewis Prince of Tarantuni, being crown'd King and Queen of that Realm on the same Day, in Commemoration of so pacifick an Union, and to tear up all their Enmities, the Prince instituted this Order; into which enter'd, at that Time, Three-score and Ten Lords. Their Habit was White, and their Ensign a Knot (the Emblem of Love and Friendship) intermixt with Gold. This Order expir'd in a short Time.

23. Knights of the Annunciade in Savoy:

. Ame VI. Earl of Savey, instituted this Order, under the Title of The Collar 1362. in Honour of the Fifteen Divine Mysteries of the Rosary. Favin, on a mistaken Ground, calls it The Order of the Snares of Love, in regard its Founder had receiv'd of his Lady, a Bracelet made of the Tresses of her Hair, plaited in Love-knots, and that the four Letters, afterwards interlac'd by the Founder, should fignifie Frappes, Entres, Rompes, Tout. It is conspicuous enough at the first Erection it was call'd of The Collar, and so remain'd till Charles III. or Le Bon Duke of Savoy, bestow'd on it the Title of The Annunciation, from the Picture of the Annunciation which he annex'd to The Collar, 1518. The Founder appointed the Number of his Knights to be Fifteen, among whom Sir Richard Musard, an Englishman, is recorded 1434. and 1568. their Number was encreas'd to Twenty, that being folely lodg'd in the Breast of their Sovereign. Riene Castle, in Buger, was their principal' Seat; they had a Chartreuse to entertain Fifteen Priests to celebrate Fifteen Masses to the Honour of the Fifteen Joys of the bleffed Virgin, and to the Soul's Health of thele

these Knights; and here were their Ceremonies and Chapters held; until Charles Emmanuel L exchang'd it and other Places for the Marquilate of Saluces, 1607. on the Anniversary of the Feast and Celebration of the Order (being fix'd upon the Day of the Annunciation) were translated first to the Church of St. Deminist at Monsmeiller, and afterwards by him to the Hermitage of Camaldule, upon the Mountain of Turin call'd PErame Alis. The ancient Collar was of Gold, Three Fingers broad; in barbarous Characters were ingraved thefe Letters, FERT, and one Knot (commonly call'd the Saver Knos) at the end of each Fert; which, with Three other Knots entwin'd one within another, made up the Circumference pendant at the Collar without any Figure. These old Characters were supposed to be the Initials of Forsitude ejus Rhodum remais, alluding to Amadens le Grand, who so valiantly defended Rhodes against the Turks, 1310. But that this was long before the Devile of the House of Savey, is manifest from the Coins of Lewis de Savey, Baron de Vand. who dy'd . 1301. the Monument of Thomas de Savoy, who dy'd 1233. whereon was lying at the Feet of his Portaiture a Dog with a Collar about his Neck, inscrib'd Fert, as an integral Word, and from a Brass Coin of the said Earl's, on the Reverse whereof are Two Knots of the Model before spoke of, and the Word Fert in the midst. There is the Ectype of a Silver Coin of Pater de Sausy, (who erected in England the noble Pile of that Name in the Strand, temp. H. III.) wherein is represented the Devise Fert in Gothick Characters, the true Interpretation of which Word cannot be explain'd. This ancient Collar is still in vogue and daily worn, but now called The little Collar, fashion'd of Gold or Silver gilt, about an Inch broad, and of different weight. The Knights wear it about their Necks, close to the Collar of their Doublet. Duke Charles III. 28 he much restor'd the Splendor of this Order, Anno 1518. introduc'd the larger one, only worn upon high Days. It weighs about Two Hundred Crowns, and is compos'd of the Word Fert, interwoven with Knots, severed with Fifteen Roses of Gold, whereof Seven are enamell'd with White, and Seven with Red, and border'd with Two

Thoma. The Figure of the Annandistion is enamell'd in various Colours, pendane at three Chaleurs to another Rofecolour'd both White and Red. He first appointed the great Mantle of Orimion Velver, his swin being fure'd with Ermines, but the rest of the Knights with Miniver fring'd and border'd with Savoy Knoss in fine Gold; under this Mantle is worn a Surcoat of fine Damask. Duke Emanuel Philiber, his Son, alter'd the Colour of the Mantle to Azure, and line it with White Taffaty, of which Silk he made the Surcoate. Charles Emanuel chang'd the Mantle into an Ameranthus of Purple Colour, feeded with Roles and Flames in embroi-Here of Gold and Silver, and list'd with Cloth of Silver riflied Blue, now in wee; under which, instead of she White Taffuty Surcout, is now work a White Satin Suit embroider'd with Sik, the Mose gather'd upwards in the fashion of Trouses. categorisal manel 2 17 to 1 cm 155

24. The Thiftle in France.

Was instituted on New-Year's Day 1376. by Lewis IL. Duke of Bourbon, upon his Marriage with Anne, Daughter to the Count Daulphine in Anurque. The first Solemmities of this Order were perform'd at Noftre Dame de Maulins in Bourbonneis, where he founded a College of Twelve Canons, in Honour of the bleffed Virgin; the Intent was, to corroborate his Interest for the Aid of the Duke of Orleans, against the Faction of the House of Burgundy, and by joyning of Flowers de Lys and Thithes (the Symbols of Hope and Courage) emblematically to express the Nobleness of his Spirit against all the Power of Fortune. He ordain'd the Number of Knights to be Twenty Six, comprehending himself and his Successors, Dukes of Bourbon, as Chiefs, and oblig'd whem to wear daily a Belt, a Girdle of Watchel coloured Velvet, lin'd with Crimfon Sattin embroider'd with Gold, and therein the Word Esperance curiously wrought. The Girdle was fasten'd with a Buckle and Thong of Gold, bearded and chequer'd with Green, -enamel'd in Form like the Head of a Thistle. On the Anniverlary of the Festival (the Conception of our Lady) the Knights wore Caffocks or Surcoats of Carnation

mation Damaik with White Sleeves, girded as before's the Mantle of the Order was sky-colour'd Damask with broad Welts of Gold Embroidered on the Collar, and lined with Red Satin, but the Mantlet of Green Velvet. the Bonnet was also of Green Velvet; at the Point of the Band hung a Taffel of Crimfon Silk and Threads Gold, the Lining of Crimfon Taffaty, and turn'd up after the antique manner, whereon they had embroided the Golden Shield with the Word Allen ; the great Collar was of Gold, of the weight of Ten Marke. enamelled with Green, distended like Network, which was filled with Flowers de Lys (together with the Letters of the Impress) plac'd in a Lozenge of Red Enamel a at the Bottom of the Collar, in an Oyal of Gold (the Circle whereof was enamelled with Green and Red) appeared the Figure of the Patronels, the Virgin Mary, irradiated with Gold, and crowned with Twelve Silver Stars, a Crescent of the same under her Feet, enamell'd with Purple and Sky-colour; at the End of the Oval depended the Head of a Thiftle enamelled Green, but bearded White. The Founder took an exact Patern for the Order of the Garter, with which he acquainted himself while he was Prisoner in Windsor Castle.

25. The Order of the Dove

Was begun by John I. King of Cafile in Segovid, 1399. or, as others, 1379, to encourage his Nobles to profecute the Noble Acts of his Grandfather King Hemy III. but the Founder dying the same Year, before it had taken root, it became of small Continuance.

26. The Order of the Argonauts of St. Nicholas

Was instituted by Charles III. King of Naples, 1382, to preserve Amity among the Nobles, to compose Enmities and suppress Seditions. If any of these Knights, upon a Variance, refused a Reconciliation, the Enfigns were to be forfeited. Others say the Design was to advance Navigation, to which their Ensign alludes, being a Ship floating upon the Waters in the midst of a Storm, having this Motto, Non credo tempori. In the Convent

Congent of that sumptuous Church which St. Nicholat, Bishop of Smyrna, erected, was the grand Feast held on the Anniversary of that Saint. This King appointed a White Habit for the Knights, and prescribed them laudable Constitutions; but for want of a settled Revenue, their Splendor expired with their Founder.

27. Knights of St. Anthony in Hainault.

ALBERT of Bavaria, Earl of Hainault, Holland, and Zeland, defigning an Expedition against the Turks and Moors, instituted this Order, 1382. The Ensign thereof was a Golden Collar wrought after the Fashion of an Hermit's Girdle, at which hung a Walking-Staff, and a little Golden Ball.

28. The Porcupine in France,

Was erected by Lewis of France, Duke of Orleans, 1202, to honour the Solemnization of the Baptism of his eldest Son Charles, by his Wife Daughter to the Duke of He chose the Porcupine for his Devise, with this Epigraph, Cominus & Eminus; not only out of the aspiring Hopes conceived of this Child, but also to intimate something of Revenge against John Duke of Burgundy, his mortal Enemy; the Porcupine being an Emblem both Offensive and Defensive. Others make Charles aforesaid the Founder of this Order, 1430. in Imitation or Emulation of the Golden Fleece, instituted by Philip Duke of Burgundy. Their Number, including the Founder, was Twenty Five; their Habit, Surcoats of Violet Velvet, and over them Mantles of Watchet Velvet lin'd with Carnation Satin; the Collar was formed of Gold Chains, at the End whereof hung a Porcupine of Gold upon an enamelled Hillock of Grass and Flowers, which Creature was also embroidered on the Knights Belts.

29. The

or de la Jarra de S. Maria, of the Vessel of St. Mary,

Was erected by Ferdinand King of that Country, called the Infant of Antiquera, 1403: and dedicated to the Blessed Virgin: Favin ranges it under the Denomination of the Title of the Looking-glass of the Blessed Virgin in Castile, instituted in Memory of a Victory King Ferdinand obtained in that Kingdom against the Moors, 1410. whence he transplanted them with him into Arragon, 1413. when he received the Crown, where it flourished under the Sons of that King, and then the Line was extinct.

30. The Order of the Dragon overthrown in Hungary,

Was instituted, A. D. 1413. by the Emperor Sigifmond the Glorious, 1418. for the Defence of the Christian Religion, and to crush or oppugn all Hereticks and Schismaticks, and for the Satisfaction hie receiv'd in conferring Peace to the Churches of Hungary and Bohemia, by the Aid of the Council of Constance. It was in high esteem shortly after in Germany; but the Order and Founder had very near the same Period. The Knights wore daily, as their Ensign, a Green Cross flory, on solemn Days, a Scarlet Cloak, and on the Mantlet of Green Silk a double Chain of Gold (others say a Green Ribbon) at the End of which hung a Dragon dead with broken Wings, in posture of being overcome (the Symbol of Herely) enamelled with Variety of Colours.

31. The Equites Tusini in Bohemia, or else both in Bohemia and Austria.

This Order had its Name from Toca, a Cap or Coif. The Archdukes of Austria were its Founders; which they enacted to engage their Subjects in Defence of the Christian Faith against Turks and Hereticks, conferring upon the Knights towards their Support whatsoever they

they acquired in the Wars, which was a respite to themfelves, after almost Two Hundred Years; Charges, and Military Expence; indeed the Encouragement proved so good a Bait, that they cleared their Provinces almost of all. Turks, and Schismaticks that infested them. Their Badge was a plain Green Cross, and their Habit Red.

32. Ordo Disciplinarum,

Was inflituted by the Bohemian Kings, or rather the Austrian, to be a Curb upon the Turks and Hereticks, at least to prescribe the Confines of the Kingdom. The Collar of the Order had a White Eagle. These Knights stourished in Germany, in the Reigns of Sigismond and Albert Emperors.

33. Orde de la Scama, in Castile,

Was instituted by John II. King of that Realm, about the Year, 1420. to excite his Nobility to fight against the Moors, which produced so good Effect, that in a short time the Moors were shamefully overthrown. That King granted them Privileges, gave them their Statutes and Rules; but upon his Death the Splendor hereof was greatly eclips'd. Their Ensign was a Cross composed of the Scales of Fishes. They were obliged to defend Castile against the Moors, to dye in Defence of the Faith, and when the King went to War they marched before him. Their Ensign was a Cross composed of the Scales of Fishes, the Spanish Scama bearing the same Signification as the Latin Squama.

34. The Order of the Golden Fleece,

HAD its Original from Philip II. Duke of Burgundy, Sirnam'd the Good, the 10th of Jan. 1429. at his Marriage with Elizabeth, Daughter of Portugal, in the City of Bruges in Flanders, to perpetuate the Memory of his great Revenues raised by Wools with the Low-Countries. Some say in Commemoration of Gideon, who with Three Hundred Men vanquished a numerous Army of the Midianites; or of Jacob's Fleece, viz. the Party-coloured and

and streaked Fleece, after the Example of Jafor and his Argonauts, whose Expedition to Colches he intended to make his Patern by a Voyage into Syria against the Turks. He founded it to the Glory of the Almighty Creator, and Redeemer, in Reverence of the Virgin Mary, and St. Andrew the Apostle, who was Patron thereof, and whose Festival was celebrated on that Day, but afterwards translated to the 1st of May, by reason of the shortness of the Days, and the Fatigue aged Knights would find to convene in an intemperate Season. The Knights at first were Twenty Four, beside the Duke, chief and supream, who reserved the Nomination of Six more at the next Chapter; but Charles V. encreased them, 1516. to Fifty. Duke Charles and Maximilian, Sons to the Founder, annex'd many Privileges to them, which were confirmed, 1556. For their Habit Three different Mantles were ordain'd them at the grand Solemnity; the first Day, of Scarlet Cloth, richly embroidered about the Lower End, with Flints Aruck into Sparks of Fire and Fleeces, with Chaperons of the same; and the same Day, after Dinner, to proceed to Vespers in Mantles of Black, and of the Colour of Chaperons; the Day following they were to hear Mass habited as themselves thought fit; but Duke Charles aforesaid prescribed them Mantles of White Damask for that Day's Ceremony, and changed their Cloth Mantles into Velvet. The great Collar is composed of double Fufils, placed Back to Back, Two and Two together, in form of the Letter B, representing it both Ways, to fignify Bourgoigne. And these Fusils are interwoven with Flint-stones (in reference to the Arms of the ancient Kings of Bourgoigne) seeming to Arike Fire, and Sparkles of Fire between them, the Device of the Founder, at the End whereof hung the Resemblance of a Golden Fleece, enamelled proper. To the Flint Paradine ascribes the Motto, Ante ferit quam Flamma micet; and to the Fleece, Pretium non vile laboris. The Jewel is commonly worn in a double Chainet or Males of Gold, linked together at convenient Distance, between which runs a small Red Ribbon, or otherwise it is worn in a Red Ribbon alone. The Emperors of Germany descended from Philip Archduke of Austria, Duke of F 2 Burgundy

Initial Charles V. gave the Guardianship of it to the Kings of Spain, which he perform'd on the 25th of October, 1556. conferring it on his Son King Philip at Bruxelles, when he took the Collar from his Neck, and with his own Hands put it over his Son's Shoulders in the Bresence of divers of the Knights, with this Form, Accipe, sili mi, queme e collo meo detraho, tibi pracipum Anvei velleris torquem, quem Philippus Dux Bargandia cognomine bonus Atavus noster, monumentum Fidei Sacra Romana Ecclesia, esse voluit & hujusce Institutionis ac Legum ejus, fac semper memineris: Since which the Honour of being Chief of this Order remains at this Day in that Crown.

35. The Order of St. George at Genoa,

Was given by Frederick III. Emperor of Germany, in honour of St George the titular Saint and Patron of Genoa. The Enfign is a plain Crofs Gules, and worn by the Knights at a Chain of Gold about their Neck. The Dukes of Genoa are Chiefs thereof; and in regard their Dignity lasts but two Years, the Order is much impaired thro the Inconstancy and Alteration of the Times.

36. The Order of the Croissant, or Half-Moon in France,

Was erected in the City of Anjon, 1464. or according to the Sainste Marthes, A. D. 1448. by Rone of the House of Anjou, King of Jerusalem and Sicily, &c. Duke of Anjou, &c. The Intent thereof was the Honour of God, Support of the Church, and Exaltation of Knighthood; over which he declared himself and his Successors, Dukes of Anjou and Kings of Sicily, Chiefs. He also chose St. Maurice, Knight and Martyr, for Patron, and held the first Ceremonies in the Church of Angiers dedicated to his Name. The Symbol which the Knights wore on the right Side of their Mantle, was a Golden Crescent, whereon in Red Enamel was this Word L'oz, signifying L'oz en Groissant, whereby they were spur'd forwards

Digitized by Google

forwards to search after the Increase of Valour and Reputation. At this Crescent was fasten'd as many small Pieces of Gold, sashion'd like Columns, and enamell'd with Red, as the Knights had been engag'd in Battels and Sieges; for none could be adopted into this Order, unless he had well trod the Paths of Honour. The Knights were Thirty Six, others say Fifty, in Number. For their Habit they wore Mantles of Red or Crimson Velvet, and a Mantlet of White, with the Lining and Burcoat of the same.

37. The Order of the Ermin in Britanny,

Was erected by Francis I. Duke of Bretagne, to perpetuate the Memory of his Grand-father John the Conqueror, or else in Imitation of other Orders in France; and thereupon he new built his Castle of Ermin. The Number of these Knights were Twenty Five. Their Habits were Mantles of White Damask lin'd with Carnation, and the Mantlet of the same. great Collar was of Gold, compos'd of Ears of Corn in Saltire, bound above and beneath with Two Circles of Gold, imitating the Crown of Ceres, denoting the Care of Husbandry, and was sometimes called The Order of the Ears of Corn. At the End of this Collar hung the Mos Ponticus, or Ermin, passing over a Turf of Grass diaper'd with Flowers, at the Edge whereof was imboss'd this Epigraph in French, Amaire, the Device of his said Grand-father, by which he made known his Courage; and rather than fail in the least Punctilio of his Word, he would undergo any Misfortune. This Order ended when the Dukedom of Bretagne became annex'd to the Crown of France, by the Marriage of Anne, Dutchess of Bretagne, to Charles VIII. and Lewis XII. both French Kings.

38. The Order of the Ermin in Naples

Owes its Institution to Ferdinand I. King of Naples, at the Expiration of the War which he was engag'd in with John of Lorain, Duke of Calabria, 1463. being induc'd thereto by the Treason and Confederacy of his F 3 Brother-

Brother-in-law Marinus Marcianus, Duke of Seffa, who defign'd to murder him, and transfer the Kingdom to the Duke of Calabria: But the Plot being defeated, inflead of bringing him to Justice, he not only pardon'd him, but instituted this Chevalry, admitting therein all the Noblemen of Title and Figure in the Kingdom, and generously appointed him one of the first Knights. The Collar was of Gold, intermix'd with Mud or Dirt, to which depended an Ermin and this Motto, Malo mori quam fudari, alluding to the clean Nature of the Animal.

39. The Order of St. Michael in Naples,

HAD its Original from the same King Ferdinand, in honour of St. Michael the Arch-Angel, Patron of Apulia. The Habit of the Knights was a long White Mantle embroider'd with Ermins, and the Collar of Gold compos'd of the Letter O, to which hung in an Oval the Epigraph Decorum. By the Habit it seems to be the preceding Order, if that was dedicated to St. Michael.

40. The Order of St. Michael in France.

Lewis XI. King of that Realm, confidering how his Affairs were entangled, to re-unite the Affections of his Nobility to himself, instituted these Knights, 1469. giving them their Denomination from St, Michael the Arch-Angel, the titular Angel and Protector of France, in Reverence of whom their ancient Kings were wont to solemnize this Feast-day with great Magnificence, and keep an open Court. Their Number at first were to be Thirty Six, whereof the King and his Successors were Chief: But it afterwards proceeded to Three Hundred. The Collar is composed of Escallop-Shells of Gold, joyn'd one with another and double-banded, fasten'd on small Chains of Gold, at the End of which is annex'd an Oval of the same; and therein, on an Hillock, is the Figure of St. Michael combating and trampling down the Dragon. The Motto, Immeusi tremor Oceani. The Habit was a Mantle of White Damask

mask hanging down to the Ground, furr'd with Ermin, having its Cope embroider'd with Gold, and the Border of the Robe interwoven with Escallops of Gold; the Chaperon or Hood, with its long Tippet, was made of Crimion Velvet; but afterwards King Henry II. order'd this Mantle to be Cloth of Silver, embroider'd with Three Crescents of Silver, interwoven with Trophies, Quivers and Turkifo Bows, semied and canton'd with Tongues and Flames of Fire; the Chaperons of Crimson Velvet should have the same Embroidery. Their Grand Festival was to be celebrated on Michaelmas-day, at the Church of Mount Michael in Normandy; but after wards transferr'd to Bois de Vincennes near Paris. There is an Herald of Arms to attend this Order, called Monsique St. Michael. Upon the instituting The Order of the Holy Ghoft, not only Care was taken to preserve this of St. Michael, and to rectify it, but the Knights had the Privilege allow'd them, that if they thought fit they were made capable of receiving that of The Holy Ghost, which no Stranger or Native could be enroll'd in that had taken upon him any other Order. The Collar of St. Michael may be worn with that of The Holy Ghoft, and it is now frequently us'd. The Evening before any receive The Order of the Holy Chost, he is admitted into The Order of St. Michael.

41. The Order of the Elephant in Denmark.

KING Christian L being at Rome upon a religious Account, Pope Sixems IV. among other Honours, invested him with this Order, in Memory of the Passion of our Saviour; and withal ordain'd the Supreme or Chief in

his Successors, Kings of Denmark.

This King founded the magnificent Chapel of the Three Kings in the Cathedral Church of Roschilt, (Four Leagues from Copenhagen) where the Knights were to affemble upon the Death of any of their Fraternity. He admitted thereunto divers Kings, Princes and Noblemen. Its chief Ensign was the Figure of an Elephant, on whose side (within a Rundle) was a Crown of Thorns, with Three Nails all bloody, in Memory of the Passion. The Knights were oblig'd to Acts of Piety,

Digitized by Google

Alms-Deeds, and certain Ceremonies, of secially upon those Days on which they were the Ensigns. King John valu'd it so highly, that he were them on every solemn Festival. He advanced it to that Pirch of Grandeur, that our King Henry VIII. and James V. King of Scotland, accepted it.

Hertholm, a learned Dans, in a particular Freatise of this Elephantine Order, says, The Badge was meerly Military, anciently given as a Memorial and Incitement to the Danish Princes, who took upon them the Defence

of Christianity against the Moors and Africans.

HERETOFORE the Knights wore a Collar of Gold compos'd of castellated Elephants and Crosses, something like the Crosses aucress (Menenius calls them Spurs) at which hung the Picture of the Virgin Mary to the Middle, holding Christ in her Arms, and surrounded with a Glory of Sun-beams. But that long since laid aside, they now wear only a Blue Ribbon, at which hangs an Elephant enamell'd White, adorn'd with Five large Diamonds set in the Middle. These Elephants, in the Reign of King Christian IV. had in the same Place, within a Circle, the Letter C, and in the Center of it the Figure 4, denoting Christianus Quartus.

This Honour is usually conferred on the Days of the King's Coronation. Frederick III. brought into use, in Imitation of The Garter, an embroider'd Glory of Silver Purple wrought upon the left Side of their Cloak or Vest, on which was embroider'd Two Crowns within a Rundle, bearing this Motto, Deas providebit. The late King, his Son, chang'd the Motto to, Pietate & Institute; but all the Knights created by his Father are

oblig'd to continue the former Motto.

42. The Order of the Burgundian Cross at Tunis,

Was inflituted on St. Mary Magdalen's Day, 1535. by Charles V. Emperor of Germany and King of Spain, after he had reftor'd Mulleasses, King of Tunin, to his Kingdom, to reward those Commanders who had behaved themselves well in the Victory. It was the Day wherein he made his pompous Entry into Tunis, when clad in the Coat he usually wore in Battle, whereon was embroider'd

Badge, and added a Steel Ariking Sparks of Fire out of a Flint, with this Inscription, Barbaria; and for a mose ornamental Despration, gave a Collar of Gold, whereat hung this Badge.

43. Knights of the Holy Ghost,

WERE instituted by the French King, Hurry III. 1978, to unite his Nobles more firmly in their Obedience, to encourage them to persevere in the Ramish Religion, and to illustrate the State of his Nobility. It was so call'd by reason he was born on Whitsunday, 1550. elected that Day, 1573. King of Poland; and on that Day, 1574. came to the Crown of France. It was to confift of One Hundred Knights, besides the Sovereign or Great Mafter, which Office is inseparable from the Crown of France. A long Mantle of Black Velvet turn'd up on the left Side, and open'd on the right, was also appointed for the Habit, being at first embroider'd round with Gold and Silver, confifting of Flowers de Lys and Knots of Gold, between Three fundry Cyphers of Silver; and above the Flowers de Lys and Knots, were thickly powder'd Flames of Fire. This great Mantle was garnish'd with a Mantle of Cloth of Silver, cover'd with Embroidery made after the same Fashion, excepting only, that instead of Cyphers there were wrought Doves of Silver, and both these Robes double lin'd with a Satin of Orange-Tawney. The great Collar worn over the Mantle, was at first compos'd of Flowers de Lys, canton'd or corner'd with Flames of Fire, interwoven with Three Cyphers and divers Monograms of Silver; one was the Letter H and a Greek Lambda, both double, for the King's Name and the Queen's, Lovila de Lorain; the other Two were reserv'd in the King's own Mind. But these Cyphers were taken off the Colour and the Embroidery of the Robes by King Henry IV. and for a Mark of his Victories, Trophies of Arms were interlac'd instead thereof, with the Letter H crown'd (the Initial of his Name) whereout arose Plames and Sparks of Fire; and for the like Reason the H has been chang dinto L, both by Lewis XIII and XIV.

XIV. At this Collar hung a Cross richly enamell'd inthe midst, whereon was figur'd a Dove in a slying Poflure, as descending down from Heaven with full spread Wings: And that an Epigraph might not be wanting, some have attributed to it this, Duce on Anspice. Besides these Ornaments, the Knights wear a Black Velvet Cap with a White Plume; their Breeches and Doublets are of Cloth of Silver, and their Shoes White ty'd with Roses or Knots of Black Velvet. The Badges ordain'd to be ordinarily worn, are a Cross of Hellow or Orange-colour Velvet, like a Malta Gross, fix'd on the lest Side of their Breast, except in military Expeditions, and then they are permitted to wear them of Cloth of Silver or White Velvet, having a Silver Dove, and at the Angles or Corners, Rays and Flowers de Lys of Silver. They have a Cross of the Order made of Gold (like the Malta Cross) with a Flower de Lys in each Angle, to be worn about their Necks in a Blue Ribbon, and to be enamell'd White about the Sides, but not in the Middle. Such as are Knights both of St. Michael and The Holy Chaft, are to bear the Figure of St. Michael on one Side, and of a Dove on the other. The Anniversary is held on the first Day of the New-Year, but the first Part of the Ceremony begins always on the last Day of the Old, when it was inftir tuted; and the Place for celebrating thereof is the Church of Augustin Fryars in Paris.

44. The Order of The precious Blood of our Saviour Jesus Christ of Mantua,

Was instituted, 1608. by Vincentio de Gonzago IV. Duke of Mantna, and II. of Montferat, for Defence and Propagation of Christianity, and in Honour of Three Drops of Blood of our Redeemer; as also to set forth more nobly the Nuptials of his eldest Son Francisco. It was confirm'd by Pope Paul V. and consisted of Twenty Knights, the Founder and his Successors to be Great Masters. The Collar is compos'd of Ovals of Gold, some extended in Length, others in Breadth, alternately, and interlink'd with small Anulets: Those in Length have these Words rais'd in White Enamel, Domine

mine probafi; an the other in Breadth is a Grey Crucible fill'd with small Rods of Gold, and placed on a Trevet of Black Enamel over Flames of Fire, intimating, that they who incorporated in this Society, should hold inviolable Faith and Concord in the greatest Trials and Emergences of Life; at the End of the Collar is pendant a larger Oval of Gold, in which are figur'd two Angels standing upright, holding between them a Chalice crown'd, in the Table whereof are painted Three Drops of Bloods enamell'd Red, and round the Oval, Nihil isto triste recepto.

45. The Order of the Amaranta,

Owns its Inflitution to Christina, Queen of Sweden, about the Year 1645. in honour of a Lady of that Name, of great Beauty, Courage, Modesty and Charity. The chief Enfign is a Jewel of Gold compos'd of Two A's, adorn'd with Diamonds on both Sides, and join'd together by reverfing one of them, being fet within a Circle of Laurel Leaves wreath'd about with White, and on the Four Sides this Motto, Dolcenella memoria; which Jewel the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain, or a Crimson or Blue Ribbon, as they best like of. His Investiture is with this Ceremony: The Queen being seated under her State, an intended Knight kneels before her, when the acquaints him with her Inducements to confer on him this Honour, enumerating his Services and Merits! This done, he takes an Oath, skill kneeling and holding his Hands between the Queen's, to defend her Person from Harm, and the Persons of his Brother Knights; to incite Justice, Vertue and Piety, and discountenance its Opposers; after which the Queen puts about him (in the manner of a Baudrick) a Crimson Silk Scarf, with the Jewel fasten'd thereto. To an absent Prince or Personage, she sends the Jewel, accompany'd with her Letter, which supplies the Place of a personal Investiture. Among many others have been feveral Kings and Princes. Sir Bulftrode Whitlocke has been elected Knight of this Order.

46. The Order of the Black Eagle,

Was instituted by Frederick King of Prussia, and Elefor of Brandenburgh, soon after he had the Title of King conserr'd upon him.

§ 2. 1. In the West-Indies, Montenuma, King of Mexico, set Knighthood in the highest Splendor, ordaining certain military Orders, with several Badges and Ensigns. The most honourable among the Knights were those that carry'd the Crown of their Hair ty'd with a little Red Ribhon, having a rich Plume of Feathers, from which did hang Branches and Rolls of Feathers upon their Shoulders. They carry'd as many Rolls as they had done gallant Exploits' in the Wars; and the King himself and his Sont were of this Order; which Purthas calls Eagle Knights.

2. THERE was another Order, call'd Of the Lyons and Tygers, These Knights being commonly the most valiant in the Wars, always bore with them their Badges

and Armories.

3. OTHER Knights there were, as The Grey Knights, not so much respected as the rest. They had their Hair cut round about the Ears: They made War upon their Enemies with Ensigns like other Knights, and were only arm'd to the Girdle, while the most Honourable were Cap-a-Pee'd. All Knights might carry Gold and Silver, be array'd in rich Cotton, have the use of painted and gilt Vessels, and wear Shoes; but the common People only the earthen sort; neither might they carry Shoes nor Attire themselves, but in a gross Stuff. Every Order had their Lodging assign'd them in the Palace, distinguish'd by their proper Ensigns: The sirst was the Lodging of the Prince, the second of Eagles, the third of Lyons and Tygers, and the sourth of Grey Knights.

THE Province of Cinaloa (near New Mexico) created their Knights by giving a Bow, and setting them to en-

counter a Lyon or some other wild Beast.

THE Inguas, or Lords of Peru, dedicated their Children to Honour, by adorning them with Guarras or Enfigne.

Enfigns. They pierced their Eurs, whip'd them with Shings impared their Faces with Blood, in order they should be true Knights to the Ingua. Those of Royal Extraction, before they received the Order of Knighthood abflained Seven Days from all manner of Nutrement, except a little raw Grain and Water, and after being heartned and brisked up again, performed fome Military Exercises, also Racing, Wrettling, Leaping, Shooting, Slinging, throwing the Dart and Lance, eve. and enduring to be beaten on the Hands and Legs with Wands; these being as it were the Tests whether they could endure the Hardships of Was or no; for if they did not fastain them manfully, they were denied Knighthood. The Ceremonies being performed by boaring an Hole in the Ears, putting on gallant Shoes, and wearing of the Breeches, which before they were restricted, adorning their Heads with Flowers, and having the Privilege of an Herb that none but themselves' cou'd make use of, and lastly giving an Axe into their Hands. Menenius calls these Knights Oreiones, from the Spanish Orejas, flop or loll-eared, in the Latin Aurienlares, from the Leaf which they bore hanging in their Ears, or because they only negotiated Affairs with the Emperoe, and had his Ear at all times.

In Japan there's an Order of Knights called Mengoras, part of whom are called Bonzees, living in Fraternities, as our Religionists in Europe. Some of these have the Charge of their Idols, and the Service relating to their Temples, others follow the Wars. They profess Chastity with such Severity, that no Woman is allow'd to enter their Cities. They govern the Kingdoms they conquer, and are so very opulent that some of them possels 60000 Duckets per Annum; and have a publick Armory well stored to make use of upon any Exigence, which is maintain'd by a daily Contribution. Women have been excluded their Share in this Way of Honour, tho' their Courage and Valour have equalized the Amazons of old'; the Example is of the noble Women of Tortosa in Spain, or the Femme Cavaliers of the Torchi. Micheli barely calls them Chavalleros, or rather Chavalleras, seeing the Latins have had the Words, Equitisse & Milisiffe, to express, Virago's and Heroines.

Don

- DON Raymond, 12st Earl of Barcelone, having in the Year 1149. reduced the City of Torsofa from the Moors. on the Thirty First following they laid a fresh Siege to in hopes to recover it. The Inhabitants were at length reduced to great Streights; they defired Relief of the Earl, but he not being in a Condition to answer their Request, they had Thoughts of a Surrender; which the Women to prevent put on the Apparel of the Men, and by a resolute Salley forced the Moors to raise the Siege. The Gallantry of the Action the Earl acknowledged by granting them several Privileges, and perpetuate the Memory instituted this Order. somewhat like a Military one, and none were to be ad-. mitted, only those brave Women, and the Honour to derive to their Descendants, and assigned them for a Badge a Thing like a Fryer's Capouche, Sharp at the Top, after the Form of a Torch, of a Crimson Colour, to be worn upon their Head-Cloaths; that at all publick Meetings the Women should have Precedence of the Men, and should be exempted from all Taxes, and that all the Apparels and Jewels left by their dead Husbands should be theirs.

A more general Ornament of Honour peculiar to the Fair Sex is the Cordon, which some will have to be an Order, or Equivalent thereumo. The Institution is attributed to Anne Britaigne, Wife to Charles VIII. of France, who instead of the Military Belt or Collar, bestowed a Cordon or Lace on several Ladies, admonishing them to live chastly and devoutly, always mindful of the Cords and Bonds of our Saviour, and to engage them to a greater Esteem of it, she surrounded her Escutcheon of Arms with the like Cordon; from which Example the Arms of unmarried Ladies and Gentlewomen are usually adorn'd with them.

CAP.

CAP. IV.

Of the Castle, Chapel, and College of Windsor, &c.

TAving dispatch'd the several Orders of Knighthood, and trac'd them from their proper Fountains, we come now to treat of the most Noble Order of the Garter; an Order, that not only grants Merit, and Honourable, and Valiant Exploits at Home, but what Imperial Heads and Persons, sam'd for the Antiquity of their Race, or Gallantry of Actions, have always efteem'd a further Advancement to their Glory therein to be enroll'd. For the better Explanation, it will be necessary to begin with the Description of the Caftle. Chapel, and College of Windsor. The Place claims no greater Antiquity than of the Saxons, named by them Windleshore, and, as Cambden conjectures, had the Denomination from the Winding of a Shore thereabouts, as did Wandswarth in Surry, heretofore written Windtesworth. The first authentick Notice is from the Donation which King Edward the Confessor made thereof to the Monks of Westminster, (as the Charter expresses it) For the Hope of eternal Reward, the Remission of all bis Sins, the Sins of his Father, Mother, and all his Ancestors, to the Praise of Almighty, &c. he grants Wyndleshore, with all its Appurtenances, as an Endowment and perpetual Inheritance, to the Use of the Monks there. and at Westminster, that served GOD. Those Monks enjoy'd it not long, for King William the Conqueror, in the first Year of his Reign, being greatly enamour'd with the pleasant Situation and Commodiousness of the Place. fituate so near the Thames, and the Wood fit for Game, invited Eadwin, the then Abbot, and the Monks, to accept in Exchange for it, Wokendune in Essex, a Mansion called Ferings, with all its Members and Hamlets, together with Fourteen Sokemen and their Lands, and one Freeholder, and Three Houses in Colchester, all in Essex. fince which it has remained in the Crown.

The King being thus posses'd, forthwith built a Castle upon the Hill, which, in Doomsday Book, contain-

ed half an Hide of Land, and is there noted to be Parcel of the Mannor of [Clivore] Clure. This Castle King Henry I. rebuilt, and beautified with great Magnificence, and, in the Tenth Year of his Reign, held his Writfontide there with great State and Splendor. Shortly after, in a Charter of Peace between King Stephen and Duke Henry, (King Henry II. afterwards) this Castlewas called Mola de Windesor, the Fortress of Windesor. Within this Castle was King Edward III. born, (commonly called Edward of Windsor) and was baptized in the old Chapel; and so great was his Affection to that Place, that he constituted it the Seat of the most noble Order of the Garter; and to embellish it the more, he founded the College of the Chapel of St. George, and

much enlarged, and beautified the Caltle.

For this Work he appointed several Surveyors, whom he affigned to press Hewers of Stone, Carpenters, and fuch other Artificers as were thought useful and necesfary, as also to provide Stone, Timber, and all other Materials for them. William de Wyckham (who attained to be Bishop of Winchester) was one of these Supervisors. and had that Place conferr'd on him by Letters Patent. Ollober 30. Ed. III. And a Grant of the same Fee was likewise allowed to Robert de Bernham, viz. One Shilling a Day, while he was at Windsor, Two Shillings when he went elsewhere about that Affair, and Three Shillings per Week to his Clerk; afterwards he was chief Custos and Surveyor of this Caftle, of the Mannors of Old and New Windsor, and of other Castles, Mannors. &c. belonging to the King, to provide Workmen, and lock after the Repairs, and in those Mannors to hold Leets and other Courts, Pleas of Trespass and Misdemeanours,

About the 34th of Ed. III. it is presumed the most considerable Enlargement of the Castle was made, seeing there was then great Store of the ablest Diggers and Masons impress'd, by virtue of Writs directed to the several Sheriffs, with Command under 100 s. Penalty to send them to Windsor the Sunday after the Feast of St. George, to work at the King's Charge, from whence they were not to depart without Wyckbam's License, Security having been first taken by the Sheriffs, and returned into Chancery. London found Forty; Essex, in conjunction with Hersford, Forty; Wilts, Leicester, with Worcester.

Worcester, Cambridge, with Huntington Forty, Kent, Gloucester, Somerset, with Devon, and Northampton, one with another, found also Forty a-piece. And because divers of these Workmen, for Gain and Advantage, clandestinely left Windsor to the Hindrance of the Work. all Persons were forbid to employ or retain them under Forfeiture of all they had, and likewise to arrest those that withdrew themselves from the Work, and commit them to Newgate. A. 36. Ed. III. many of them being swept away by the Pestilence, the like Writs were directed to other Sheriffs, under a Hundred Pound Penalty, to fend able Men; whereupon the Counties of York fent Sixty, Derby Twenty Four, Salop Sixty, Hereford Fifty, Nottingham Twenty Four, Lancaster Twenty Four, and Devon Sixty. A. 37. Ed. III. The noble Edifice was ready for Glazing, and of Twenty Four of that Occupation impress'd for the King's Service, Twelve were to be employed at W indfor. In this Year and the next a great Proficiency was made, and vaft Quantities of Stone were amassed, dug out of the Quarries of Wellesfor, Newel, and Carby, and other Places. From the 37th to the 43d, the Building of the Castle was diligently pursued. We find no Addition to this august Pile till his 48th Year, and after that Time nothing more during his Reign, so that it is supposed this Famous Piece for Magnificence and Strength was then chiefly finished, viz. the Great Hall of St. George, the Lodgings on the East and South fide of the Upper Ward, the Keep or Tower in the Middle Ward, the Chapel of St. George, the Houses for the Custos and the Canons in the Lower Ward, with the whole Circumference of the Walls, their several Towers and Gates, as in the prefent Posture they remain.

In succeeding Times King Hen. VII. added that stately Fabrick adjoining to the King's Lodgings, in the Upper Ward. King Hen. VIII. re-edified the great Gate at the Entrance into the Lower Ward. King Edw. VI. began, and Queen Mary perfected the Conveying the Water, from Blackmore-Park in Wing field Parish, into a Fountain of curious Workmanship erected in the Middle Ward, which supplied all the Castle. Queen Elizabeth made a Terrace Work on the North ade of the

Castle; from whence there is a pleasant Prospect down upon Eason-bridge, the Thames, and the adjacent Country. King Charles I. A. D. 1636. built the Gate at the East end of the Terrace, which leads into the Park. And lastly, King Charles II. greatly beautified and repair'd the Fabrick, and furnish'd it with a curious Armory; and, in fine, every Thing is so fitty disposed and ordered, that they are worthy of the Notice of every nice and curious Traveller.

CAMDEN elegantly describes its Situation in Prose in this manner: From an Hill (says he) that rises with a gentle Ascent, it enjoyeth a most delightful Prospect round about; foreright, in the Front, it overlooketh a Vale, lying out far and wide, garnished with Corn Fields, stourishing with Meadows, deck'd with Groves on either side, and watered with the most mild and calm River Thames. Behind it arise Hills every where, neither rough nor over high, attired, as it were with Woods, and even dedicated, as one would say, by Nature, to hunting Game.

And thus Denham's Muse pourtrays it:

Windesor, the next (where Mars with Venus dwells. Beauty with Strength) above the Calley

(wells Into my Eye, and doth it lest present With such an easy and unforc'd Ascent, Chat no supendious Precipice denies, Accels, no hores turns away our Eyes;

But such a Rife as doth at once indite A Pleasure, and a Reverence from our light. The mighty Pasters Emblem, in whose

Face Sat Weeknels beightned with Wajellick Such seems thy gentle height, made only proud

Co he the Balls of that pompous Load. Than which a nobler weight no Mountain hears

But Atlas only that supports the Spheres.
This

This Castle is under the Government of a Constable so call'd in the Reign of King John, and has bore that Denomination ever fince: The Office is of great Antiquity, Honour and Power, but of small Revenue, for it is partly Military and Civil; as Military he commands the Castle and any Garrison placed therein, and is obliged to defend it against all Enemies whatsoever; all the Prisoners brought hither are committed to his Charge, and is answerable for all that is in the Castle to the King, under whom he is Commander, as a Civil Officer. Judge of a Court of Record held there by Prescription, for determining, by way of Common Law, all Pleas between Party and Party, arising within the Precincts of the Forest of Windsor, and Liberties thereof, which compriseth many Towns; and all legal Processes iffue out in his Name. He is allowed a Deputy learned in the Law, who is called the Steward of the Court of Record, and is Keeper of the Constable's Seal of Office. This Officer supplies the Constable's Place as a Judge of the Court of Common Pleas, from whose Judgment the Appeal is by Writ of Error returnable in the King's-Bench, or Common Pleas at Westminster. The Constable is likewise Forester and Warden of the Forest of Windfor, which is an 120 Miles in compass. He hath under him one or more Lieutenants at his Pleasure, and may imprison any Trespasser in Vert and Venison Convict, having a Prison in the Castle for that Purpose, named the Coalhole. He hath the Freedom of using the Sports of the Forest, which is granted to no Person without his or the King's License, and signs all Warrants to kill Deer, (except what the King signs) and is to fell Timber and Wood.

HE that was Chastelain (the French Word for Constable) in William the Conqueror's Reign was Walter Fire Other, from whom the Family of the Barons of Windfor are descended, and the Earls of Plimouth, bearing the Surname of Windfor, Temp. Cer. II, Prince Rupers was Constable

WE come next to the Chapel of St. George, which is fituate in the Lower Ward or Court of this Castle, and so named by King Edw. III. Shortly after he had founded the College mention'd in the next Section; he having

ving pulled down the old Chapel erected there by King Henry I. and dedicated to King Edward the Confessor, to raise a more stately Structure in its stead; to bring which Matter to Perfection, in the 24th Year of his Reign, John de Spoulee had the Office of Master of the Stone-Hewers, and had Power to provide Masons, and other Artificers, to whose Care they were entrusted, In Anno 25. Ed. I. John de Dorchester, Sub-Constable of the Castle, was appointed to keep a Controul upon all the Provisions bought for the Works of the Chapel, as well as on the Payments, and all other Affairs relating thereunto. To this Fabrick he erected several Houses adjoining, for the Custos and Canons to refide in; and afterwards King Hen. IV. gave them the void Place in the Castle call'd the Woodhall, night he great Hall, for building of Houses and Apartments for the Vicars, Clerks, and Choristers, and the other Ministers, assigned for the Service of the Chapel; but King Edw. IV. obferving the Walls and Foundation of the Chapel sapped and confumed, and esteeming the Fabrick not stately or spacious enough, designed another more noble and excellent in its Room: In order to it Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salisbury, was constituted Master and Surveyor of the Work, who had Power from the King to remove all Impediments, demolished divers of the Officiary Houses, and other irregular Piles and decay'd Walls, and dug up their Foundations, particularly those ancient Buildings on the East fide of the Chapel, which extended unto the Walls on the North fide of the Castle, where the Towers, viz. C'urey's Tower, and Le Amenery's Tower, and Barney's Tower, were fituated; as also on the South fide of the Chapel, unto the Belfry there, exclusively; the Materials whereof he might bestow upon any Buildings in the Castle, as he thought convenient. How well the Bishop discharged this Office, appears from the Preamble of his Patent, whereby that King conferred on him the Chancellorship of the Garter, in which is set forth, That out of meer Love towards the Order, he had given himself the Leisure daily to attend the Advancement and Progress of this goodly Fabrick.

FROM this Erection of K. Ed. IV. arole the elegant and beauteous Structure now standing, enlarged in Length

at least an Hundred Fathom (tho' it did not arrive to its Perfection until the Reign of King Henry VIII.) together with the Dean and Canons Houses on the North side of the Chapel, and those of the Petty Canons raised at the West End, in form of a Fetter-lock (one of King Edward the IVth's Badges) and fo vulgarly call'd. Temp. Henry VII. Sir Reginald Bray, Knight of the Garter, became a liberal Benefactor, finithing the Body of the Chapel, and rearing the Middle Chapel on the South thereof, which still retains his Name, and where his Body lies interred, as is manifest by his Arms, Badges, &c. cut in Stone, and by his last Will. Anno 21. Hen. VII. John Hylmer and William Vertue, Free Masons, undertook the Vaulting the Roof of the Choir (a curious Piece of Architecture) for 700 l. and finish'd it by Christmas, 1508. Anno 8 Henry VIII. the Rood Loft, and Lanthorn, were erected, with the Contributions raised by the Knights Companions. Near to the East end of this Chapel, was a little Fabrick of Free-Stone, raised by Cardinal Wolfey, call'd the Tomb House, in the Middle whereof he defigned to erect a Monument for King Henry VIII. and had almost finished it before he died; but this was demolished, 1646. by command of the Long Parliament; and all the Copper Figures, exceedingly enriched by Art, carry'd thence. This Place King Charles I. intended to enlarge, for the Interment of his own Royal Body, and those of his Successors; but those villainous Times drawn on, they with much ado afforded him but a mean obscure Place near the first high Place in the Choir of this Chapel, in the same Vault where the Bodies of King Henry VIII. and his last Queen yet remain.

In this Chapel, besides many of the Knights Companions, repose the Body of King Hen. VI. removed from Chertsey Abbey in Surrey, deposited under the Uppermost Arch at the South side of the Altar, without any Monument or Inscription, and likewise that of King Edw. IV. under a large Stone of Tuch, raised within the opposite Arch, at the North side of the Altar, but without Inscription, having on the outside of his Grave a Range of Steel gilt, to inclose it from the North Isles, cut excellent well in Church-work.

G 3

Over

Over this Arch hung this King's Coat of Mail, cover'd over with Crimson Velvet, and thereon the Arms of England and France quarter'd and richly embroider'd with Pearl and Gold, interwoven with divers Rubies; which Trophy had remain'd over his Monument ever since his Interment, till plunder'd by Captain Fogg, 1642, who at the same time sacrilegiously robb'd the Chapel of all its Altar-Plate.

WITHIN this Chapel were several Chantries endow'd with Lands and other Revenues, for Chaplains and Priests to sing Masses for the Souls of their Foun-

der's Kindred.

William of Wickham, Bishop of Winchester, in 3 Hen. IV. gave Two Hundred Marks to the Dean and Chapter, to buy Twenty Marks per Annum to maintain one Chaplain.

18 Ed. IV. The Feoffees of Richard, Duke of Glocefier, gave the Mannors of Bentfieldbury in Essex, Knapton in Norfolk, and Chetlesworth in Suffolk, for a daily Mass.

22 Ed. IV. Sir Thomas St. Leger founded a Chantry of Two Priests, who were to officiate in the middle Chapel on the North Side of the Church; and the said King, by his Will, ordain'd Two Priests to serve at his Tomb, with an Exhibition of Twenty Marks yearly a-piece.

of the Milliam Hermer, &c. who was to perform his Office at the Altar on the North Side the

new Church.

13 Hen. VII. Margaret, Countess of Richmond, founded a Chantry for Four Chaplains, to celebrate Mass in the East Part of the new Work of the Chapel.

18 Hen. VII. William, Lord Hastings, founded a Chantry for One Priest, on the North Side of the Choir,

about the middle whereof this Lord lies.

21 Hen. VII. Charles Somerset, Lord Herbert, (afterwards Earl of Worcester) left a Secular Priest for a daily Mass, &c. to be said in the South Chapel dedicated to the Virgin Mary, where he lies interr'd. Both these Lords have built Appartments adjoyning for their Chantry Priests, now to be seen and distinguish'd by their

their Arms, garter'd and cut in Stone over their feveral Doors.

To these we shall add the Foundation of the new Commons, erected over against the North Door of the Body of St. George's Chapel, by James Denton one of the Canons, Anno 11 Hen. VIII. for the Lodging and Dieting such of the Chantry Priests, Choristers and stipendiary Priests, who had before no certain Place where to hold Commons in, which he furnish'd with all proper Utensils, the Charge amounting to 489 l. 7 s. 1 d. in lieu of which the Choristers were to say certain Prayers when they enter'd the Chapel, commemorate his Death, and pray for his and the Souls of all the Faithful de-

parted.

In this Chapel of St. George there were heretofore several Anniversaries or Obits held and celebrated, which we pass over. And as it was usual for some of the military Profession to spend the Remains of their Lives in pious Speculations, for their King and Country, and the Salvation of their own Souls, Permission was allow'd to the well-dispos'd Knights of the Garten, who retir'd from the Noise and Bustle of the World, to make their Abode there; yet so as to maintain themselves out of their own Revenues. King Henry VIII. ordain'd that the Sovereign should assign them convenient Appartments within the Castle; and the like Favour he granted to other Knights, tho' not of the Order; but the Lodgings to be fuch as the Sovereign and Knights Companions should decree: However, we do not find the Knights Companions made use of the Benefit, but only for their better Accommodation at the grand Feast of the Order, oc. A Motion was made, 14 Car. I. that they might have Lodgings affign'd them in the great Court, which they offer'd to repair at their own Charge, fince all the Officers had Conveniencies in the Castle, but the Knights Companions none, which the King did not diffent to, provided it be without Exclusion of the great Officers of State.

§ 3. WITHIN the Chapel of the Castle, erected by King Henry I. was founded a College for Eight Canons, to be maintain'd by an annual Pension out of the Exchequer. King Edw. II. founded here a Chantry for G 4

Four Chaplains and Two Clerks; as likewise a Chapel in the Park of Windsor, under the same Regulation, for Four more Chaplains, whom King Edw. III. remov'd and joyn'd to those before settled in the Chapel of the Castle, and built Habitations for their better Accommodation, on the South Side thereof.

THE Foundation we treated of here was confirm'd by Letters Patent, dated at Westminster, Aug. 6. 22 Edw. III. three Quarters of a Year before he erected The Order of the Garter, when he laid the Foundation of the ancient Chapel a-fresh, in honour of God, the Virgin Mary, St. George and St. Edward the Confessor; and ordain'd, that to King Henry's Eight Canons there should be annex'd One Custos, Fisteen more Canons, and Twenty Four Alms-Knights, together with other Ministers, all under the Power of the Custos, and these to be supported out of the Revenues wherewith this Chapel should be endow'd: Upon which Pope Clement VI. 1351. by his Bull directed to the Arch-bishop of Canterbury and Bishop of Winchester, approved in part the King's Intention.

THE next Year the Statutes and Ordinances of the College commenc'd, by Virtue of the Pope's Authority, the King's Command, and Confent of the Bishop of Salisbury, in whose Diocess the Chapel is situate. By which Statutes, Winchester (one of the Pope's Delegates) instituted a College, within the Precincts of the Chapel of St. George, consisting of one Custos, Twelve Secular Canons, Thirteen Priests or Vicars, Four Clerks, Six Choristers, and Twenty Six Alms-Knights, besides

other Officers.

DEAN.

64. The first Custos was John de la Chambre, constituted Nov. 14. 22 Edw. III. to whom succeeded William Mugg, on the 18th of June following: Which Mugg is the first, if the Institution of the College bears Date by Papal, and not Kingly Authority. After him were others that were call'd by the same Title; till the last Year of King Henry IV. when Thomas King ston was prefented by the Name of Dean; and his Successor, John Arundel, observing divers Endowments granted to the College

College alternately, by the Name of Custos, Dean and Custos, or lastly of Dean only; and doubting this Variation of Titles in Time might bring Inconveniences upon the Foundation, petition'd the Parliament, 8 Hen. VI. whereupon the King, by Letters Patent under the Great Seal, granted that the said John should be Custos frue Decanus for Life, and his Successors Custodes frue Decani, Wardens or Deans of the Free Chapel of St. George, within the Castle of Windsor; and that the Custos, or Dean and Canons thereof, and their Succesfors, by that Appellation, should have and hold, to them and their Successors for ever, all Lands, Tenements, &c. Liberties, &c. devolv'd upon the College. at any Time before: So that here was a kind of new Incorporation, by the Title of Custos, or Deans and Canons only; at least this was a great Step to com-, pleat the Privilege they after enjoy'd, when thro' the Interest of Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salisbury, then also Dean of Windsor, and Chancellor of the Order, King Edw. IV. by Letters Patent dated Dec. 6. in the 19th Year of his Reign, model'd them by the Name of Dean and Canons of the Free Chapel of St. George. within the Castle of Windsor, one Body corporate in Thing and Name, with a perpetual Succession, and capable in Law to purchase, receive and take Lands, orc. in Fee and Perpetuity; to have a common Seal, and might plead and be impleaded by that Name; and for better Security, the Letters Patent of Incorporation were, within Three Years after, pass'd into an Act of Parliament now in force.

THE Authority of the Custos or Dean consists in being President over the rest of the College; to govern, direct and order them their Goods and Estates. He has all manner of Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over them, with a Reservation of Power of Appeal to the Chancellor of England, who is Visitor of that College.

WHEN any Persons lead Lives inordinate, he with the Chapter (in Cases where no particular Penalty is appointed) may reprehend or correct at Discretion; and in Matters of Discord, shall within Eight Days reconcile the contending Parties, or do Justice. After thrice Admonition, may expel from the College all

Sowers of Discord, Backbiters and Whisperers, that are below the Degree of a Canon. And that there be no defect of Government, when the Dean has Occasion to be absent above Eight Days, he shall appoint One of the Canon Residents for his Deputy, in whose absence he has the Title of Lieutenant, and on all Occasions to exercise his Office; for the Statutes allow him Sixty Days in a Year for Non-refidence; which space the Royal Visitation, 1552. enlarg'd to One Hundred and Ten Days; and the Lord Chancellor Hyde granted him Liberty of Six Weeks absence. But in the Vacancy of the Custos, the Chapter has all his Power conferr'd on them; which Chapter ought, within Two Days after the Vacancy made known, elect one of the Resident Canons, under the Title of Prefident, to govern the College until they be provided of another Custos.

CANONS.

THE Canons, by the Letters Patent of the first Ereation, were appointed to be Twenty Four, including the Custos; but upon the Institution of the College by the Bishop of Winton, there was ordain'd, as afore-noted, One Custos, Twelve Secular Canons, and Thirteen Priests or Vicars, in all Twenty Six, compleatly the Number of The Knights of the Garter: And for a fuller Distinction between these Canons Secular and the Priests, the first Twelve are, in a Bull of Pope Imocent VIII. nam'd Majores Canonici, the others Minores, or Petty Canons. To these Twelve Seculars were assign'd so many Prebendships in the Chapel of St. George (as also Stalls in the Choir and Place in the Chapter) together with that held by the Custos, whence they are frequently styl'd Prebends, and have a sacerdotal Power; for if they are not in full Orders before they are instal'd, they must, within a Year after they have enjoy'd their Prebendship, be ordain'd a Priest, or quit the Benefice.

By the Bull of Pope Clement VI. the Right of prefenting the Canons, Priests, Clerks, Alms Knights and other Ministers, were reserved to the Founder and his Successors; yet we find the first Canons were presented to the Custos, by the Founders of The Order of the Gar-

ter,

every one presenting singularly; yet this was but with the Sovereign's Permission, Pro bac vice; and that none of them should be entitled to it hereafter but the Sovereign alone. And because it might the more effectually be observed, the Custos was obliged upon every Canon's Death, to signify the same to the Sovereign, that he might pitch on One to succeed; which being nominated, he is approved, instituted, and instal'd, by the Custos or Dean, to whom he swears Canonical Observer.

dience, and Observance of the Statutes.

The principal Duty of these Canons (and of all the other Ministers of the College) is continually to attend upon the Service of God in the Chapel of St. George; and the Statutes run upon each Day's Omission of a Canon Resident, to be mulcted his quotidian Distribution 12 d. And the we find no License of Non-Residence granted them by their Founder, yet there is mention of Canons Resident and Non-Resident, for whom great Defalcations are appointed to be made, to prevent such Neglects, because the residentiary Canonsbear not only the Burden of that Duty belonging to the Chapel, but the Expence of Hospitality and other Works of Charity, occasion'd from their residing at Windser.

Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salisbary, obtain'd Power from Sextus IV. to make new Statutes, and dispensed with the old Ones; and in 1478. he gave to the Dean and every Canon Fourteen Days of Non-Residence in every Term, to wit, Fisty Six Days in the Year. By the Visitation, 1552, they obtain'd a Dispensation for Eighty Days; and the Lord Chancellor Hatton yet gave them a further Permission to Two Hundred and Two Days, which the Lord Chancellor Hyde consistency in the Year, in which the Canons ought to be resident with Hospitality, to be consonant to their Statutes.

THE Canons are particularly oblig'd to pray for the Sovereign, and for the happy Estate of the Order. If any Knight Companion, or other Person, should bestow Ten Pounds per Annum, in order to be Partaker of the Prayers appointed for the Benefactors of the College,

College, his Name was to be inscribed amongst them, and he also prayed for. Which Article, tho' King Hen. V. confirmed, yet with this Restriction, it should not be admitted without the Consent of the Sovereign, or the Knights-Companions of the Order. 4 Edw. VI. some one of them were enjoyned to commemorate the Benefactors in a Discourse upon the Tuesday next after the third Sunday in Lent, and on the first Tuledays in June, September and December, and not only to set forth the Munificence of the Founder, and of King Hen. VIII. but of all others, so as to excite their Auditors to an Emulation, in the Increase of Religion, and setting forth of God's Glory.

THE civil Obligations of these Canons are to attend the Sovereign (or his Deputy) and the Knights Companions at their grand Feast, and at the Feasts of the Installation, or when the Sovereign or Knights Companions shall come to the Chapel of St. George upon a Religious Account. On those solemn Days, over their Ecclessastical Habit they wear a Murrey Mantle, (at this Day a Taffaty Robe, in Fashion like the three inferior Officers of the Order) with the Arms of St. George

arched within a Rundle on the Right Shoulder.

PETTY CANONS.

Those now call'd Petty Canons in the Patent of Foundation went undistinguish'd with the Canones Majores: only in the Bull of Pope Clement VI. to the Archbishop of Canterbury and Bishop of Winton, for instituting the College, they are called Presbyteri; and by the faid Bishop in the very Words of his Statutes, Presbyteri feu Vicarii, by which last Name they are styl'd at the first Erection of the Garter. Their Number was originally Thirteen, only King Henry the VIIIth's English Statutes mention Eight petty Canons, besides Thirteen Vicars, (but the Latin takes Notice only of Thirteen Priests, some called Canonici Minores, others Vicarii.) Ann. 1. Edw. VI. Twelve Priests were appointed, and named Petty Canons, that is, Four to be added to the Eight mention'd in the Statute of King Henry VIII. Yet in Queen Elizabeth's Ordinances for the continual Charge, the Petty Canons thereby provided for are Thirteen.

Thirteen, agreeable to the ancient Number of Vicars; but at this Day they are reduced to Seven, and one of them Subchanter.

The Vicars at their Admission are bound to be Priests, at least Deacons, and at the next Ordination they must commence Priests. Their Statutes oblige them to continual Residence; and if absent from Matins or from the grand Mass, they are amerced 2 d. and for every Canonical Hour, the Mass of the Virgin Mary, or for the Defunct, a Penny: All which Forfeitures were to be deducted out of their Sallary, and divided among those Vicars that duly attend these Duties. But the Statutes I Edw. VI. State the Forfeit of Absence from Matins to be one Half-penny, and the like from Procession, Communion or Even-Song, to be paid to the Poor's Box. And not only they, but all other Miniflers of the Chapel, if they leave the College above Twenty Days, without Reasons sufficiently approved of by the Refidentiary Canons; or any of the Society that lead a vicious or scandalous Life, after the Fact manifestly proved before the Custos, are to be expelled; but an Absence less than Twenty Days, without Leave granted, is punishable at Discretion.

Each Vicar enjoy'd at first an annual Pension of 8 l. paid after this Manner, viz. every Kalendar Month 8 s. for their Diet, and at the Expiration of every Quarter Day the Surplus was confign'd for other Necessaries they stood in need of. King Ed. IV. encreased their Pensions to Twenty Marks a-piece; to which Queen Elizabeth (they being then called Petty Canons) advanced 13 s. and 4 d. per Annum to each out of the Lands confirm'd on the College by King Ed. VI. and now their yearly Sallaries are encreased to Thirty Pounds. Out of these Petty Canons is elected a Subchanter, (and commonly the same Person is the Dean's Vicar) who has the Cure of Souls, marries and bu-

ries, oc.

CLERK'S.

For the Service of the Choir at the Foundation were allotted Four Clerks, one whereof was to be inflituted a Deacon, and another a Sub-deacon before their Admission,

mission, and these two were design'd (upon Vacancy) to the Vicars Places. But for the other Two, Institution into lesser Orders, in which they were to continue, were sufficient. Each of the Two first fort had Eight Marks per Ann. and the other Two but Six. King Ed. IV. encreas'd their Number to Thirteen, and allow'd them 10 l. per Ann. They are mention'd to be Thirteen in Hen. VIII's Statutes. 1 Ed. VI. they were encreas'd to Fifteen; but here appointed to be Laymen, wearing Surplices in the Choir, each having the same Allowance. 4 Ed. VI. a Model was proposed to augment the Number of these Fisteen Clerks to Twenty. But in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth they were again reduced to Thirteen, as at this present they remain, (one of them as Organist hath a double Clerk's Place, and confequently reckon'd for Two) and an Augmentation to each of 21. 13 s. 4 d. three Farthings yearly; which being at first opposed by the Dean and Prebends, they at length (5 Eliz.) consented to allow them 40 s. per Ann. 2-piece, not out of the new Lands. but out of other Payments which the Dean and Chapter should otherwise receive; and 1662, they encreased their annual Penfions to 23 /. a-piece. They are obliged to be present in the Choir at Divine Service as well as the Petty Canons, and under the same Forfeitures; nor may they or the Petty Canons go out of Town above Three at once, left the Choir should be left unprovided.

CHOIRISTERS.

For the Service of the Choir were appointed Six Choiristers, and they to be of the Clerical Order at their Admission; to each of which was allow'd Five Marks per Ann. And as the Deacon and Sub-deacon were plac'd in the College only in Addition to the Vicars, and design'd to succeed them in their Vacancies; so also were there Six secular Children, endued with clear tuneable Voices, to succeed the Choiristers, when they perceiv'd a Roughness or Alteration in their Voices. King Ed. IV. encreas'd the Number of Choiristers to Thirteen, and allow'd them annually Six Marks a-piece, and which was again consirm'd by King H.VIII's Statutes.

Statutes. Yet the Injunction of 1 Ed. VI. reduced them to Ten; but Queen Elisabeth established the former Number, and gave in Augmentation among them all of 3 1. 11 5. 8 d. They are now reduced to Eight, and their present Exhibition is 12 5. per Mouth.

9. 5. The Alms Knights we shall treat of in a three-fold Estate: 1. Under the Foundation; 2. When disjointed thence by Act of Parliament; and, 3. As esta-

blished anew by Queen Elizabesh.

I. THEN, King Edward III. out of the great Regard he had to military Honour, and those who had bravely behav'd themselves in his Wars, yet after chanced to fall in decay, made a Provision for their Relief and comfortable Subfiftence in old Age, by providing for them in this his Foundation, and making a Coalition in one joint Body with the Custos and Canons; these he call'd Milites Paupares, and we Poor or Alms-Knights. The flated Number at first were Twenty Four, equal to the Custon and Canone at the first Erection. But shortly after, upon his instituting the Order of the Garen, Two more were added (as there was to the first Canons) to make the compleat Number of the Knights-Companions of that Order, which were Twent Oix, as we find flated at the Ordination of the College by the Bishop of Winchester; the Pope's Delegate.

This Intention of the Founder was for those that were real Objects of Charity, as he describes them, viz. poor Knights, insirm in Body, indigent and decay'd, or as the Statutes of the Gover qualifies them, such as thro' adverse Turns of Fortune were reduced to that Extremity that they had not wherewithal to sustain themselves, to live so genteelly as was suitable for a Military Condition, which for greater Caution was reiterated in the Statutes of King Hen. V. King Hen. VIII. and in the Orders of Queen Elizabeth; for it was express'd, in case any Bstate of 20 l. per Annual devolved on them, such Knights were to be discharged the College, and they were to proceed to a new Election.

Ar the first each Knight-Companion of the Order presented his Alms-Knight, but ever after their Election was to be at the Disposal of the Sovereign. Their Habit bit was a Red Mantle, with the Escutcheon of St. George, without any Garter to surround it. Their Exhibition, after their first Election was 12 d. a-piece every Day they were at Service in the Chapel, or resident in the College, besides 40 s. per Annum for other Contingencies, it being the stated Allowance appointed to each of the Canons Residents.

ABOUT the Beginning of King Hen. VI's Reign, their quosidian Distributions and Annual 40s, had been unpaid upon the Account of some Diffentions risen between them and the Dean and Canone; but upon Complaint of John Bishop of York, Lord Chancellor of England, and Visitor of the College, 10 Hen. VI. they were redreffed, and their Arrears of both discharged, without any Deduction, and likewise obtained this Clause, That if the Treasurer of the College became negligent in future Payments, he should lose his own Quotidians, from the Time of his voluntary Omission, and the same to be divided among the Alms-Knights. Their Duty was to pray for the Sovereign and the Knights Companions, to be every Day present at High Mass, the Masses of the Virgin Mary, at Vespers and Compline, and in default to be mulcted their 12 d. toties quoties, which was to be converted to the Use of the other Alms Knights, then refiding in the Castle of Windsor; notwithstanding which Decree, the Dean did afterwards break in upon them, and disposed of these Forseitures at his Pleasure, till 2 Rich. II. Adam, Bishop of St. David's, then Chancellor of England, and Visitor of the College, redress'd it, and another Complaint of like Nature being made of the Deans disposing of Donations and other Liberalities of the Knights Companions in wrong of the Alms-Knights, this Chancellor decreed an equal Distribution between the Alms-Knights and Canons, till the King and Council should otherwise determine.

These and other Differences between the Dean and Canons and Alms Knights, grew up to that height, that they became irreconcileable, insomuch as in the Act of Parliament, 22 Edw. IV. for incorporating of the Custos and Canons, by the Name of Dean and Canons, the Alms-Knights were not only omitted; but this Clause inserted, That she Dean and Canons, and their Suc-

ceffors,

teffors, fould for ever more be utterly quit and discharged from all manner of Exhibition or Charge of or for any of the said Knights. And this under the Cover, That the King has greatly augmented the Number of the Ministers of the Chapel, that the Revenue was insufficient to maintain both them and the Alms-Knights; but in the Dean and Canons Answer to the Knights Petition to repeal this Act, the Cause is alledged, For that some of these Knights used their utmost Endeavours before this Act, to incorporate themselves, and to be exempt from the Obedience and Rule of the Dean and Canons:

AFTER this Act, which struck off their Quotidian Portions and Fees affigned by King Edward's Foundation, how the Alms Knights subsisted we find not; but so soon as King Hen. VII. came to the Crown, they petitioned the King and Parliament for Repeal of the Act, 22 Edw. IV. and alledged it was obtained without their Knowledge, or being called thereunto, which Plea availed not at all; but on the contrary, the Dean and Canons, some Years after, got an Exemplification thereof under the great Seal, dated Feb. 4. 18 Hen. VII.

AND it is very evident from King Hen. VIII's Letter to the College, that what they did in this Nature after this Act commenced, was merely upon Courtefic; for he returns them Thanks for a Penfion of Twenty Marks conferred upon Peter Narbone, whom he had recommended to an Alms-Knights Place, and Promises to burthen them no more with Requests of this fort, but that he would settle Lands for their Maintenance. So great was their Caution, Narbone was by Covenants indented between him and the Dean and Canons, to relinquish his Pension upon that King's settling Lands on the College, for the Provision of such Knights. In the Interval between the Disunion of the College and Alms-Knights, to their Establishment by Queen Elnabeth, their Habit and Badge continued the same, and was so confirmed by Hen. VIII's Statutes. It may be collected by his last Will, there was an Intention to draw the Garter about the Escutcheon of St. George, which Projection came to nothing, and expired. In this Interval it is observ'd that several Persons of considerable Rank and Distinction became Alms-Knights; some of which Н

were rendred great Objects of Charity; among which Number was Sir Robert Champlayne, a valiant Knight, an Honour to our Nation, for his renowned and martial Services abroad. He was of King Henry VI's Party in the Civil Wars against King Edw. IV. Immediately after whose coming to the Crown he left England, and travelled into Hungary, (with an Equipage of Three Servants and Four Horses) where in the Assistance of Mathons Corvinius King of Hungary against the Turks, he behaved himself very gallantly; but prosperous Fortune not always attending him with Success, he receiv'd many Wounds; and at length was taken Prisoner, lost all, and forced to pay 1500 Ducats for his Ransom; for the Attestation of which he had the Great Seals of the King of Hungary, the Archbishop of Crete, Legate de Latere in Hungary, the Emperor of Germany, the King of Sicily, the Count Palazine of the Rhine, and the Duke of Burgundy; and lastly, a Declaration thereof under the Privy Seal of King Edw. IV. And being reduced to so low an Ebb of Fortune, he was, thro' Hen. VII's Favour, admitted an Alms-Knight.

But some obtained Admittance, probably out of Devotion, rather than Poverty, as Thomas Hulme, Clarenceux King of Arms, Temp. Edw. IV. Lodowick Carly, the King's Physician, and John Mewtes, Secretary of the French Tongue, both Temp. Hen. VII. and Bartholomew Westby made second Baron of the Exchaquer, I

Hen. VIII.

It is evident King Hen. VIII. defigned a Re-effablishment of half the ancient Number of Alma-Knights, viz. Thirteen; for which purpose he appointed by his Will 600 l. per Annum, in Mannors, Lands, and Spiritual Promotions, settled upon the Dean and Canons, and their Successors for ever, upon the Proviso's that they should find Two Priests to say Mass at his Tomb, to commemorate yearly Four Obits for him, and at every Obit distribute 12 l. in Alms, likewise to pay 12 d. a Week to those Thirteen Alms-Knights, who were to have once a Year a long Gown of White Cloth, and a Mantle of Red, besides Five Marks annually, to such one among them as should be constituted their Governor, and so much for a Sermon every Sunday throughout

out the Year. In Performance of which Will, King Edw. VI. in the first Year of his Reign, did confer several Lands upon the College; but 600 l. per Annum of theie Rents were by the Dean and Canons paid back, to be employed on erecting of Houses for the Alma-Knights, intended to be fettled by King Hen. VIII. This Work began not till the 3d and 4th of Philip and Mary. and was finished the 5th and 6th of their Reign, the Charge amounting to 2747 l. 7 s. 6 d. These Houses are fituate on the South fide of the Lower Ward of the Castle, and contain Thirteen Rooms, besides an Hall, a Kitchin, and a Pastry; the Stone was brought from Reading, the Timber from the Forest, and the Lead. and Apparels for the Chimnies, from Suffolk Place in Southwark. At a Chapter of the Garter, held the 1st of Jame, the 4th and 5th of Philip and Mary, the Houses being then near finished, a Debate arose about placing some Alms-Knights therein, if possible, by Michaelmas following, whereupon the Marquis of Winton, Lord-Treasurer, had Orders to assign Lands for their Maintenance; and towards the compleating of this the Queen. had nominated Nine of the Thirteen defigned; but fal-; ling fick in August, a stop was put to the Affair, till Queen Elizabeth coming to the Crown confirmed her Sitter's Grants to the Nine nominated Knights, and made up the Number full Thirteen, ordained by King Henry VIII. under which Establishment they still remain; for afterwards, viz. Aug. 30. in the first Year of her Reign, minding the Continuance of King Edward's Foundation, the Intent of her Progenitors, and Advancement of the Order of the Garter, and King Henry VIII's Will, for the Support of Thirteen poor Men decayed in Wars, to be called Thirteen Knights of Windfor; and having erected certain Orders for their better Regulation, and declar'd how and in what manner the 600 l. given by her Father should be employ'd for the Maintenance of these Knights and their Succeffors, she lastly declared, That the Dean and Canons should for ever cause these Rules and Orders to be observed.

Impr. That there be Thirteen Poor Knights, all Gentlemen, one whereof to be Governour, that have spent their Time in the Wars, or other Service of the Realm, having

having little or nothing to live upon, to be elected by

the Sovereign and Succeffors.

2. It. The Governour and Knights must be unmarried, yet that the Crown may dispense withal; and upon their marrying are to lose their Place.

3. It. None deformed, and convicted of Herefie, Felony, or any notable Crime, is to be admitted of the Thirteen, and after admittance, so convicted, to be

expelled.

4. It. Each Knight to have yearly, for their Liveries, a Red Gown of Four Yards, and a Mantle of Blue or Purple of Five Yards, at 6 s. and 8 d. per Yard.

5. It. An Escutcheon of St. George embroidered without the Garter, to be upon the Left Shoulder of the

Mantle.

6. It. The Charges of the Cloth, Lining, Making, and Embroidering, to be paid by the Dean and Chapter, out of the Revenue of the Foundation.

7. It. That the Knights attend, Morning and Afternoon, Divine Service, within the College, in their ordinary Apparel, without a reasonable Let to be allowed

by the Governour.

8. It. That they keep their Lodgings appointed, and Table in a common Hall appointed, and to have their Provisions by a common Purse, except for a reasonable Cause any be licensed to the contrary by the Dean, and that License not to endure above Twenty Days in a Year, excepting only for Sickness.

9. b. They are not to haunt the Town, nor Publick Houses, nor call any Woman into their Lodgings, with-

out reasonable Cause and License of the Dean.

so. It. Twelve of them to be obedient to him appointed to be Governour, and all Thirteen to the Dean and Chapter, in the Observation of these Statutes.

11. It. The Thirteen Knights to have Places within the Church, where the Dean and Canons shall think

best to hear the Divine Service together.

12. It. To be present at the quarterly Service, for the Memory of the Patrons and Founder of the College, and especially of King Hen. VIII. and Queen Elizabeth, and have each of them, at that Time, 20 d. and the Governour 2 s. The faid Service to be the Sundays next

before the Quarter-days, the Annunciation, St. John Bap-

tist, Michaelmas, and Christmas.

13. It. Any of the Twelve Knights disobeying the Governour, in any of these Statutes, to incur the Forfeiture the Dean and Chapter shall put on him, the Governour to report the Offence, which if more heinous, the Dean and Chapter are to give a Warning, and register the same, and after a second Warning Expulsion is to follow; the like Punishment to the Governour, disobeying the Dean and Chapter in the Observation of these Statutes.

14. It. The Penalties of the Punished to be imployed by the Dean and Chapter at their Discretion, upon any

of the Ministers or Choristers of the Church.

15. It. Upon the King or Queen's coming to or going from Windfor, the Thirteen Knights are to stand before their Doors in their Apparel, and do Obedience.

16. It. At the keeping of the Feast of St. George, they are to stand likewise in their Apparel before their Doors, at the coming and going out of the Lieutenant, and of other the Knights-Companions.

17. It. At every Feast of St. George they shall fit together in their Apparel at one Table, and have Allow-

ance of Meat and Drink at the Royal Charges.

18. It. They are daily in their Prayers to pray for the

Sovereign and the Knights-Companions.

19. It. They are always to lie in their Lodging, and upon lying out of them and the College, without License from the Dean, to forfeit 12 d.

20. Is. If Lands or Revenues of 20 l. per Annum fall to any of the poor Knights, he is to be removed, and

another put into his Place.

21. It. They are every Day (excepting Cause of Sickness) to be present at Divine Service in the College, as aforesaid, and receive a daily Distribution of 12 d. per Day, to be paid them monthly, if it may be, or at least in such fort as the other Ministers of the Chapel be paid; and he that shall absent himself one Day, without leave from the Dean, shall lose his Distribution of 12 d,

22. It. The Governour is to keep a Book, and register, the Absenters, and other Defaulters of the Statutes, whereof he shall deliver one to the Dean, and another to the Steward, or him that payeth the poor Knights, who by Order of the Dean is to make proper Defalcations at the Time of paying them.

23. It. The Dean once a Year is to appoint a Day and Hour, at which the poor Knights are to be warned to be present, to hear these Statutes read, and any Knight absenting after that Warning, and without License, is to

forfeit 6s. 8d.

24. It. Any elected poor Knight, before he take any Commodity of his Room, shall take a corporal Oath before the Dean, to be faithful and true to the Crown, and that for the time of their tarrying there to truly observe the Statutes and Ordinances upon the Penalties contain'd in the said Statutes.

THE 25th Article is a Dispensation for those poor Knights chosen before these Statutes, who were not certainly known Gentlemen, yet Men well reported for Honesty, and meet to be relieved; but with an Intent that none hereaster be admitted, unless a Gentleman

born, agreeable to the first Order.

The annual Allowance of each, upon this new Establishment, is 181. 5 s. to be paid by the Dean of Windfor, (but their Governour has 3 l. 6 s. and 8 d. more) besides their Gown and Mantle mentioned in their Statutes. King James I. doubled this Pension, and made it

payable out of the Exchequer quarterly.

To these Thirteen Alms-Knights, remp. Car. I. Five more were added, Two of the Foundation of Sir Peter la Maire, Knight, and Three of Sir Francis Crane, Knight, Chancellor of the Garter; for Sir Peter, by his last Will, dated Jan. 8. 1631. bequeath'd 1500 l. to charitable Uses, to be dispos'd as Sir Francis (who had marry'd his Sister) should think sit, within Four Years after his Death; whereupon Sir Francis, determining to erect certain Houses in Windsor-Cattle, for the dwelling of Five Alms-Knights, design'd the said 1500 l. towards that Use, and what was desicient made up at his own Cost, charging his Brother Executor, Sir Richard Crane, by his Will, dated Aug. 27. 1635. to see the Pile which

he had begun, finish'd. Sir Francis also bequeath'd 200 l. per Annum to be settled in Lands, by his Executors, for the perpetual Maintenance of Five Alms-Knights, after the rate of 40 l. per Annum to every one of them; but his Executor growing flack in the Performance, the Work being rather expos'd to Ruin, than forwarded by him; upon Complaints made to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions in Chapter, Orders were islu'd out to quicken him, and a peremptory Letter, dated Mar. 7. 1639. to go on with the Work faithfully; which Commands he evading, and bad Times coming on, the Building was totally neglected. Sir Richard Crane afterwards dying, by his Will, dated Sept. 20. 1645. he appointed that his Mannor of Carbrooke in Norfolk, should stand bound for ever for Payment of the said 200 % per Annum; whereupon, by Inquisition taken at Windsor, Mar. 4. 1652. (by Virtue of a Commission upon the Statute Anno 43 Eliz. for charitable Uses) the Mannors of Woodrifing and Wesfield, &c. in Norfolk, were found liable to satisfie for building and finishing the said Five Houses, and payment of the 200 l. yearly; and further, that the Arrears thereof, from Sir Francis Crane's Death, came at that time to 3200 l. some Contest ensu'd in Chancery; nevertheless the 200 l. per Annum was, Ju'y 19. 1655. decreed to be paid out of all the Lands which were Sir Richard's, and the building of the Houses out of his personal Estate. At Two Years Expiration arose that fair Pile of Building, between the Chancellor's and Garter's Towers, against the West Wall, in the lower Ward of the Castle, which was begun again and finish'd the next Year; the Expences amounting to 1700 l. But for a final End of this Suit, it was decreed, Jan. 27. 1659. the Mannor of Carbrooke should stand charg'd with 200 l. per Annum, payable half-yearly at Michaelmas and Lady-day, or within Thirty Days after, for the Maintenance of Five Alms Knights, together with 30 l. yearly for Repairs, payable also then; which annual Sum of 2301. Anno 12 Car. II. in a Chapter held at Whitehall, Jan. 14. the King decreed the Chancellor of the Order, for the Time being, should receive and dispose thereof thus: 200 l. per Annum among the Five new Alms-Knights quarterly, at H 4

the Four usual Feasts of the Year, and to employ the residue upon Repair of the new Buildings erected for their Lodgings; which Powers were inserted in the Patent for his Office, bearing date the 20th of the same Month. And it was moreover decreed, that these Five Knights should be subject to the same Rules and Government of the Thirteen of Queen Elizabeth's Foundation, and made equal Partakers of the same Privi-

leges, and wear the like Habits.

KING Charles I. taking into Confideration the Donation of Sir Francis Crane, which made the Alms-Knights Eighteen, (tho' they were not yet settled) intended to make up Twenty Six, as they were at the Institution of the Order; to compleat which Design, a Chapter was held at Whitehall, Apr. 18. 1637. for the Knights-Companions to consider the best Way how the same might be effected, and report their Opinions; but nothing was done thereupon, and this Affair waits a more propitious Opportunity.

of St. George, call'd Ministers in the Foundation Patent, are the superior Officers, viz. The Chantor, Steward

and Treasurer.

THE Chantor is elected from among the Canons, whose Office is chiefly to govern those that fing in the Choir, and such as are employ d about Divine Service. Before the Reformation he appointed who should begin the Antiphones, celebrate Masses, and read the Lessons, Epistles and Gospels. To his Care was committed all the Books, Crosses, Chalices, Vestments, and all the Sacred Ornaments of the Chapel. He receives the Offerings there made, and Accounts for them; for all which Services an annual Pension of 5 1. is allow'd him.

THE Steward and Treasurer are annually chosen on the Morrow after Michaelmas-day from out of the Canons Resident. To the Steward's Office appertains the Government of all the Revenues of the College, the Rents and Profits whereof he is to pay the Treasurer. In his Custody are repos'd all the Ornaments, Jewels, and other Treasure of the Chapel, not committed to the Chantor,

Chantor, under the Obligation of rendring an Account;

and his yearly Penfion is 5 %.

THE Treasurer is to distribute to the Custos, Canons, Vicars, &c., their Pensions and Allowances, which if he sail Eight Days after their presix'd Times of Payment, he is debar'd of his own quotidians, as Canon Resident, until such Arrears be discharg'd; as likewise the Steward, if he be found delinquent. His Pension is also 5 l. per Annum. There is one Treasurer to receive the Rents of the old Lands, and another chosen from the Canons to receive the new, who have been allow'd the like annual Pensions. The former is term'd Seneschallus veteris, the latter Seneschallus nova Dotationis.

MORROVER, there is a Steward of the Courts, and Clerk of the Lands, which is an Officer under both the before-mention'd Stewards. He keeps the Courts by himself or Deputy, and is a Barrester at Law, and the standing Council for the College. His yearly Penfion is 20 Nobles. But the Council in Spiritualibus is

usually a Graduate in the Law.

THE Chapter-Clerk enters and registers all Acts of the Chapter-House; he draws and engrosses all Indentures, Patents, Grants, Leases, &c. which pass the common Seal of the Dean and Canons. His Pension is 31.61.8 d. per Annum. The Under Stewardship and Chapter Clerkship heretofore were enjoy'd by one Person, but of late they are divided, and now he must be a Barrester at Law.

OF the Virgers Institution the Statutes of the College make mention, that in Procession and other Solemnities, they were to go before the Dean and Canons, bearing their Rods, for which Service they were to have annually a Robe, and 6 d. per Diem. And besides these, there are Two Sextons, Two Bell-ringers, a Clock-keeper, and a Porter who attends the shutting and opening of the Gates.

6.7. For the Endowment of the College we shall only treat upon those Lands given to the Maintenance of this Foundation by the Founder himself, or by his Successors,

Successors, or by Sovereigns of The Order of the Garter,

fuch as have been Knights-Companions.

King Edw. III. by his Letters Patent of the Foundation [22 Edw. III.] aforesaid, gave them [the Custos, Canons, Alms-Knights and Ministers the Advowsons of the Churches of Wyardesbury [Rasbury] in Lincoln, South-Tanton in Exeter, and Uttoxater in Coventry and Litchfield Diocess, in Frank Almoigne, free from all Secular Exactions; which License, to appropriate the same to the College, notwithstanding the Statute of Mortmain, he appointed as much out of his Treasure for their Support, as amounted to an immoveable Estate of 1000 l. per Annum; and lest there might be any Defect in the Knights Title to Uttoxater and South-Tanton, Henry Earl of Lancaster, 23 Edw. III. and Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick, that Year had special Licenses granted them in Right of Patronage to the faid TwoAdvowsons, and they to receive the same. Another such License, 28th of January, 24 Edw. III. was given to William de Behun Earl of Northampton, for affigning to the Custos and Chaplains the Advowson of Dodyngton in Com. Oxon, which he held of the King in Capite. The 28th of January following, this Royal Founder conferr'd on them (by the Name of Custos and Chaplains of his free Chapel at Windsor) one Messuage, Seventeen Acres of Land, one of Pasture, and 3 s. Rent, in Wyrardesbury in Com. Bucks, which had been convey'd to him by Richard de Gloucester, Heir to Isabel de Ditton; and the 22d of May ensuing granted unto them the Advowson of Dachet near Windfor.

Anno 25 Edw. III. the King gave them the Advowfons of the Churches of Eure in Com. Bucks, of Riston in
Com. Norfolk, and of Whaddon and Caxton in Com. Cantab. and in May that Year the Advowfon of Simondesbourne (furrender'd temp. Edw. IV. to Richard Duke of
Gloucester) and of St. Stephens of Saltasb. The first of
these Queen Philippa purchas'd of Sir John Darcy, and
the other of Edward the Black Prince; and gave them
both, first to the King, that by his Grant afterwards to
the College its Title might be more corroborated.
The same Year, October 26. the King bestow'd on them
100 Marks per Annum, out of the Farm of the Town
of

of Northampton, to be paid by the Bailiff of the Town at Easter and Michaelmas by equal Allotments: And it was at the Founder's Instance (therefore worthy to be inserted) that the Town of Yarmouth, 26 Edw. III. under their Common Seal, granted them a Last of Red Herrings yearly, well dry'd and cleans'd, to take the Corporation into their Prayers; tho' some say it was a Penance enjoyn'd them for murdering a Magistrate.

In the 26 Edw. III. the Founder granted them and their Successors the Mannor of Eure near Weybrigg, in Com. Bucks, the Mannor of Craswell in Bray in Com. Berks, and a Wear call'd Braybrook, fituated in the Thames, with all the Lands in that Parish convey'd unto him by Sir John Philibers, together with the Knights Fees, Advewsons, &c. belonging to those Mannors. gave to the Custos and College soon after the Seisin thereof, as also of a Wood call'd Temple-Wood in Stoke-Pogeys, convey'd to the King by John de Molyns: But deeming all the Lands too small for the End he intended, 28 Edw. III. the King granted the Custos and College, by Letters Patent, a Pension of 100 l. per Annum out of the Exchequer; and upon the vacating the same, 34 Edw. III. he gave them yearly Lands of 101 l. 11 s. 11 d. out of the Possessions of religious Aliens, which fell into his Hands by Occasion of the French Wars: But lest these Possessions should be again restor'd upon a Treaty of Peace, they were to receive the annual Sum of 101 l. 11 s. 11 d. out of the Exchequer, till they were provided of Lands of the like Value. Upon several Restrictions, he granted them 51 1. 9 s. 9 d. yearly to be receiv'd out of 126 1. which the Prior of Takkele paid him for the Farm of that Priory, it being then in the King's Hand by reason of the War with France. And by reason the Revenues did not amount to 1000 l. per Annum, as he design'd at the Foundation, in the 35th Year of his Reign, he granted them so much Money yearly out of the Exchequer, as would make up the Deficiency, till Lands or Rents of that Value should be settled on them. Laftly, 39 Edw. III. the Founder bestow'd on them a Piece of Ground in New Windsor, (whereon had stood an House of John of London) in lieu of the great Garden South of the Castle, formerly given them by him; and also a Garden opposite thereunto on the other side of the Way. Besides these Largesses of the Founders, there were others made by pious and devout Persons, said to be incorporated into the first Foundation, and made up that Revenue which William Bishop of Winchester adjudg'd sufficient for the Support of the College, which we shall silently pass over with the bare

mention only.

THE Mannor of Dodyngton-Castle; two Pastures call'd Frith and Ascroft; the Chapel of Langeley; the Parsonages of Estriton, Langeley-Maries, Wautynge, Shaldeborne, Wedonbeek, Glynde and Ryslepe; the Pensions of the Vicarages of Wantynge, Clysse, Tylthey and Gottesford; and the Portions of Bassyngborne and Prestwyke, in Haseley magna, Chalgrave, Adewelle, Aston, Rowhand, Sevyndon, Kyngeston and Henton, in Stoke-Basset, and Clopecote in Gatehampton; Whytechyrche, Maplederham, Retherseld, Esthenseth Stretham; of Thornecroft in Letherhed; of Totynbeek in Wodesdon; Evington, Woodmershthorne; of Fordham, Ethrope, Newenham, and in Tollesworth.

In succeeding Times other considerable Donations were made by the Sovereigns and Knights Companions (omitting others.) Some of which, as they fall

in our way, we shall speak of.

13 Rich. II. that King gave them a Croft in North-

molton, with the Advowson of that Church.

9 Hen. V. John, Duke of Bedford, third Son to King Hen. IV. conferr'd on them the Priory of Okeborne in Wiles (a Cell to Bec in Normandy) with all its Appurtenances: Which Donation was confirm'd by King Hen. V.

and afterwards by King Edw. IV.

7 Edw. IV. that King, who had a fingular Respect for the College, conferr'd on them the Mannor of Atherston in Com. Warwick, the Mannors and Advowsons of Chesingbury in Wilts, and of Quarle in Hansshire; the Church and Priorate of Uphaven, and the Deanry or Chapel of St. Burien in Conwall, with an Addition of an annual Pension, which the Abbot of Saurie discharg'd for the Church of Fulburne, to the Abbey de bona Requie, and another yearly Income of 20 l. paid by the Abbot of Rousford for the Mediety of the Church of Rotheram.

13 Edw.

13 Edw. IV. he confign'd to them the Mannor or

Priorate of Munclane, in Com. Hereford.

14 Edw. IV. he gave unto them the Custody, Patronage, and free Disposition of the Hospital or Free Chapel of St. Authory, London, (a Preceptory to St. Anthony of Vienna, with all the Liberties, Privileges, Lands, coc.) apon the first Vacancy. The same Year he endowed them with the Priorate of Brimsfield in Com. Gloucest. the Mannor of Blakenham in Suffolk; the Priorate of St. Elene in the Isle of Wight; the Priorate or Mannor of Charleton in Wilts; and all the Lands, erc. in Northmundon, Compton and Weleigh in Suffex and Southampton; the Mannor of Ponyngton and Widon in Dorfet, together with an annual Pention of 12 Marks, payable by the Priory of Monte acuto, with all the Lands, Tenements, Rents, Advowsons, e.c. annex'd to the said Priorates and The same Year he bestow'd on them the Mannor of Membury in Com. Dorfet; the Lordships of Prefion and Monkesilver in Com. Somerset; the Advowsons of Puryton and Wellavington in that County, together with the Knights Fees, Advowsons, Profits, Rights, oc.

18 Edw. IV. his Feoffees, the Queen, the Arch-Bishop of York, and others seised to the Use of the King, demis'd to them the Mannor of Wykecombe, call'd Baffersbury, the Fee-Farm of the Town of Great Wykecombe, the Mannor of Crendon in Com. Bucks, and the Mannors of Hafeley and Pyrton in Com. Oxon: And that Year the King gave unto them the Advowson of the Church of Cheffunt, being of his own Patronage, provided the Vicarige was sufficiently endow'd, and a compleat Sum of Money annually distributed among the poor Parishioners, according to the Diocesan's Ordinance. To these he united the Cultody or Deanry of the Free Chapel of Wolverhampton in Com. Staff. to the Custos or Dean of this College, and his Succeffors for ever; which Church, cum membris, is exempt from not only the Jurisdiction, e.c. of the Bishop of Litchfield and Coventry, but by a Papal Bull from all Legates and Delegates; nor is it subject to any terrene Power, but the King of England alone, and under it to the perpetual Visitation of the Keepers of the Great Scal, pro tempore.

20 Edw. IV. he refign'd to them the Advowson or Patronage of the Prebend of Ewern in Com. Dorfet, with all its Rights and Privileges: And lastly, in the 21st Year of his Reign, he granted them Two Parts of the Mannors of Old Swynford and Gannow, in Com. Wygorn. and the Reversion of the Third Part of them, with the Advowson of the Church of Old Swynford; nor was he thus munificent alone, but excited and spurr'd on others to the like Example, licenfing, in the first Year of his Reign, all his Subjects to confer what they pleas'd to the Dean and Canons, within the Value of 300 Marks per Annum, as well such as held of him in Capite or otherwise, notwithstanding the Statute of Mortmain; and afterwards increas'd this License to Lands of 500 l. per Annum Value, (which King Hen. VIII) extended to 1000 l.) Hereupon, Anno 20 Edw. IV. John. Duke of Suffolk, and Elizabeth his Wife, the King's Sister, were permitted to assign to them the Mannor or Lordship of Grovebury, otherwise call'd Leighton Busard, in Com. Bedford, the Church of Tinsagell in Cornwall, as also Nineteen Messuages, Seven Tosts, One Hundred and Forty Acres of Land, Fourteen of Meadow, One Hundred and Forty of Pasture, One Hundred of Wood, and Four Shillings Rent in Newford and Blanford, in Com. Dorset, and Seventy Messuages, Twelve Tofts, Five Hundred Acres of Land, One Hundred of Meadow, Two Hundred of Pasture, Forty of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in Stokeley, Northall, Edelesburgh and Rodenach, in Com. Bucks, and Twenty Messuages, Eight Tofts, Three Hundred Acres of Land, Sixty of Meadow, Two Hundred of Pasture, Forty of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in Compton St. John, in Com. Suffex, and Ten Messuages, Nine Tosts, Two Hundred Acres of Land, Twenty of Meadow, One Hundred of Pasture, Ten of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in Portsmouth and Burghegge, in Hampsbire, and One Messuage, Three Tosts, Sixty Acres of Land, Six of Meadow, Forty of Pasture, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in Sodeham, in Com. Hertford, held of the King in Capite, without any Restriction whatsoever, for which the Duke and Dutchess were to be had in the perpetual Orisons of the Dean and Canons. The same Year Sir

Sir Walter Devoreux de Feners, Knight, together with Sir John Devoreux and others his Feofees, made over to them the Mannor, Church, and perpetual Advowsons

of Sutton Courtney in Com. Berks.

All the before-mentioned Endowments are called the Lands of the old Dotation, to distinguish them from those confirmed on the College by King Edw. VI. which are term'd the Lands of the new Dotation; of which hereafter. But several of them given by King Edw. IV. the College never possessed, viz. Atherston, Quarle, Uphaven, St. Burien, Fulburne Pension, Brimfuld, St. Elen, Charleton, Blakenham, Ponyngton, Wedon, Old Swynford, and Gamow, and of some others they were seized but a short time, viz. Chefingbury, the Lands in Newford, Blandford, and Portsmouth. Besides these, the College was disposses'd of Gottesford, temp. Hen. VI. of Chesbunt, temp, Hen. VII. temp, Hen. VIII. or a little before of Wodemersbehorn, Tylthey, Retherfeld, Levyngdon, Stoke-Basser, Stretham, Toingbeek, Fordham, Elthorp, Newenham, and Tollesworth; afterwards they surrendred into the Hands of King Hen. VIII. Eure, Clyff, Ashton, Rowhand, King ston, Esthenreth, Northmundon, Compton, Weley, Compson St. John, and Shobingdon Portion; and upon the Reformation the College lost at least 1000 Marks per Annum, in the Profit made by St. Anthony's Piggs, which the Appropriation of the Hospital of St. Anthony's London brought to it, and no less then 500 per Annum, the Offerings of Sir John Shorne's Shrine at Northmarston in Com. Bucks, a Man of great Piety and Veneration with the People, and sometime Rector there. The Advowson of this Church was appropriated to the Dean and Canons, by the Convent of Dunstaple, temp. Edw. IV. in exchange for Wedenbeck in Com. Bedford.

The Dean and Canons having convey'd thato K. H.VIII. the Mannor and Rectory of Ivor in Bucks, the Mannor of Dammery-Court in Dorset, and other Lands, Rents, Portions, and Pensions in the Counties of Somerset, Hants, Middlesex, Oxford, and Sussex, to the yearly Value of 1601. 2 s. 4. d. for which they had no Recompence in his Life, that King, by his last Will, ordered them an Equivalent upon the Commutation and Agreement of an Exchange; which Will, King Edw. VI. his Son and

and Successor performed, as well for the Assurance of Lands, to the yearly Value of 600 L to the Dean and Canons for ever, to the Uses in the Will, as for the Asfurance of other Lands, of the annual Value of the faid 160 l. 2 s. and 4 d. wherefore by Letters Patent, dated the 7th of Ottober, in the First Year of his Reign, he granted them the Rectories of Bradnynche, Northam, Iplepen, Ilfington, and Southmolton in Com. Devon, the Tithe of Corn of Overy, in that County, as also Blossoms-Inn in St. Laurence-lane, London, the Tithes of Grain, &e. of the Rectory of Ambrosbury, in Wilts, and all the Tithes of Bedwyn, Stoke, Wilton, Harden, Harden-Tunriee, Knoll, Pathall, Chisbury, East-Grafton, West-Grafton, Grafton-Martin, and Wexcomb, the Prebend of Alcannyngs and Urchefounte, the Rectories of Urchefounte, Stapleford, Tytcombe, and Froxfeild, all in Com. Wilts, and all the annual Penfion of 8 1. iffuing out of the Manner of Icombe in Com. Gloucester, the Rectory and Vicarige of Ikelington in Cambridgesbire, the Rectory of East-Beckworth in Surrey, the Reversion of the Portion of Tithes of Trequire in Cornwall, and the Rent of 13 s. 4 d. reserved upon the same, the Rectory and Church of Plympton, and the Chapels of Plymstoke, Wembury, Shagh, Sandford-Spone, Plympton, St. Maurice and Brixton, in Com. Devon. the Rectory of Isleworth and Farickenham in Com. Middlefex, and Shiplake in Com. Oxon, the Reversion of the Rectory of Aberguille, and of the Chapels of Llanlawer [Llanbadock] and Llanpenysaunt, with the Rent of 30 reserved thereon, the Reversions of the Rectory of Talgarth, with the reserved Rent of II l. 6 s. 8 d. the Reversion of the Rectory of Mara in Com. Brecknock, and 6 %. Rent, and that of St. Germains in Cornwall, with 61 %. 12 s. and 4 d. Rent, to have and to hold, &c. for ever, except the Tithes of Woolpat and Fitzwaren in Wilts, the Vicarige-House of Ikelington, Marriage-Money, Dirge-Money, and Mass-Money, and the whole Profit of the Bedrolls of Ikelington; nevertheless to pay the Crown in the Court of Augmentation, for the Rectories of Aberguille, Talgarth and Mara, the Chapels Llanbadock and Llanpenysaunt 4 l. 2 d. 8 d. in the Name of Tenths, and for all Rents, Services, Oc. of the other Rectories, Oc. 48 1. 7 s. 4 d. annually at Michaelman. Moreover, within all

all these Premises, the King granted them Court Leets, or Views of Frankpledge, and to levy Fines, Amerciaments, Free Warrens, Waifs, and Felons Goods, and all other Profits, ec. whatsoever, and the said Rectories, Tithes, Pensions, Rents, and all other Gifts and Grants in the Possession of the Dean and Chapter, were consisted to them by Act of Parliament, 2 Jac. I.

THE ancient Rate of these New Lands in the King's Books was 661 l. 6 s. and 8 d. per Annum; but according to the improved Rents, as they were then turned over to the College, 812 l. 12. 9 d. out of which 160 l. 2 s. 4 d. was yearly allowed them in Requital of their Lands passed to King Hen. VIII. and 600 1. per Annum, for accomplishment of his Will; but the remaining Sum, viz. 52 l. 10 s. 5 d. was reserved in lieu of Tenths, to be paid into the Court of Augmentation; nevertheless, this last reserved Sum was not affented unto by the Dean and Canons to be so paid, because the Charges issuing out of the Lands were larger than were expressed in the Rental. And we find that, shortly after. the Rents of St. Germains, Northam, Ilfington, &c. part of the New Lands, were received and accounted. for, according to the old Rate in the King's Books, to wit, 162 l. 13 s. 4 d. per Annum, in Recompence for the Lands conveyed to King Hen. VIII. and out of which they paid a yearly Surplusage of 2 1. 2 s. 1 d. This Sum, together with the Rents of the rest of the New Lands, being upon the faid Improvement accounted to be 597 L 17s. 11 d. made in all 600 l. per Annum; and this was laid out by the Dean and Canons for some time towards erecting the Alms-Knights Apartments.

Thus stood the Lands accounted for till the Settlement made by Queen Elizabeth, who in the First Year of her Reign appointed the Dean and Canons to convert the Rents of these New Lands to such Uses and Intents as she had set down in a Book signed with her Sign manual, and annexed to an Indenture made between her and the Dean and Canons; by which Indenture they were obliged to apply the Rents and Profits of these Lands, as was prescribed in the Book, and to observe the Ordinances therein, and upon Desault, to a-

bide such Orders as the Crown, or any Knight-Companion, deputed by the Sovereign, shall set forth.

	l.	s.	d.
In this Book the Total of the Revenue reckon'd at the ancient Value	661	્દ	08
The Annual Charge and Disbursements therein set down	430	19	o đ
And fo Remains	230	07	02.

Which Remainder has been and is affigured for Payment of Tenths to the Crown, Vicars, Curates, Annual Stipends, Officers Fees, Reparation of the Premisses, and for the Relief of the Dean and Canons, in Main-

tenance and Defence of the said Lands.

And to the End the Queen might know how the Revenue was disposed of, she gave charge that her Lieutenant and the Knights-Companions should annually (at the Feast of the Order held at Windsor) state the Accompt, and see how the Income was expended, and that her Lieutenant should yearly be put in mind of it by one of the Officers of the Order. This Ordinance was renewed, 21 Fac. I. and the Chancellor of the Order was appointed to be the Remembrancer, and in Obedience thereunto, the Account of these new Lands (which begins at Lady-Day, as that of the old Lands doth at Michaelmas) was afterwards exhibited in Chapter, and in particular that Account, 9 Car I. which was submitted to the Sovereign and Knights-Companion's Consideration, who referred the Inspection thereof to the Knights-Commissaries, who were to consult over the Affairs of the Order.

6. 8. The Privileges of the Chapel and College are Ecclesiastical and Temporal: As to the sirst, Pope Clement VI. exempted the Chapel, College, Canons, Priests, Clerks, Alms Knights and Officers, from all ordinary Jurisdiction of Archbishops, Bishops, Archdeacons, and all Judges and Officers, and received them within the Protection of the Papal-See; and granted a farther Privilege, That the Custos should have Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over the Canons, Priests, &c. as also the Cure of their Souls, notwithstanding any Papal Consti-

tution, Provincial, or Synodical, yet allowing that the Custos should receive that Cure from the Diocelan of the Place In Confideration of this Exemption, the Custos was to pay annually, on St. George's Day, a Mark in Silver, to the Pope's Chamber. Two Years preceding, the Chapel was called the King's Free Chapel, which Title it still enjoys; for it owes Subjection to none but the Sovereign of England, the Supream of the Church, as heretofore it flood divided between the King and See of Rome. The Privilege of Exemption included in the Confirmation of Liberties, made by the Founder in his Charter, dated Anno Regni sui 47. and all other E-moluments granted by him, are confirmed by Act of Parliament, 8 Hen. VI. As the College has its fole Dependance on the Crown, it is visitable only by the Lord-Chancellor, whose Visitations and Power are referved to him by the Statutes of the College, and himfelf called in the King's Commission for Visitation, Rich. II. Governor of the faid Chapel, as well in Spirituals as Temporals, and, under the King, immediate Custos. And so jealous were the Dean and Canons, left the Power of the faid Exemption should be infringed, that when Sixens IV. had granted the Bishop of Salifbury, and themselves, to make new and interpret the ancient Statutes, they foon obtained a Revocation of that Authority, lest the said Bishop (in whose Diocess the College is fituate) being so unpowered, might by Degrees bring them under his Jurisdicton, in prejudice to their Exemption. And, A. D. 1485. to prevent such design, the Archbishop of Canterbury, &c. were commission'd to see the Bull revoked, and Salisbury enjoyned not to intermeddle further in the College Affairs. Moreover other Bishops, and the Chancellor of England, were to renew, alter, or new make fuch Statutes as might accrue to the Advantage of the College.

Is the Archbishop of Canterbury be present in the Chapel, he sits below the Dean, nor can he consecrate there, without his License. And this is very remarkable, that at the ratifying the Peace between King Charles L and Lewis XIII. A. D. 1629. in the Chapel at Windsor, Dr Wren, then Dean of the College, gave the

Oath to the French Ambassador, and not the Archbishop

of Canterbury, tho' he was then present.

THE Dean and Chapter are to weigh well and debate at their yearly Chapters all things fit to be dispatched in reference to the College Affairs, and whatsoever Determination they come to, not repugnant to their Statutes,

all Persons are firmly obliged to observe.

THE Dean's have no Institution from any Bishop, but his Institution, Investiture, and Installation into the Cultos-ship, Canonship, and Prebendship, is conferred from such of the Canons Resident, to whom the King (who collates) doth recommend him. Other Marks of Exemption appear in the constant proving of Wills before him, or in his Absence before his Lieutenant. using the Power of Excommunication within their Jurisdiction (the Precincts of the College) granting a Dispensation for eating Flesh in Lent, a farther Mark of their Privilege appears, that the Ordination for the Chantry Priests were confirmed by the Dean and Chapter, and not the Bishop of the Diocess, as were the Statutes of the new Commons. The Dean is exempt from paying all Synodals, or Procurations, nor can any of the King's Chaplains preach in the Chapel of St. George, unless he be a Canon there, or have License from the King, or from the Dean and Canons. They fend no Delegates to the Synod, and when the Point was debated, 1640. it was carried in the Negative, as being against their Liberties, and might intitle them to the Payment of Subfidies; nor are they intitled to any Share in the Government of the Church, more than the Colleges in the Universities, where there are many nominal Deans. In short, when by the Act of Uniformity, 14 Car. II. every Clergyman was bound to subscribe before the Archbishop or his Ordinary, the Canons subscribed before the Dean; and tho' some of them subscribed before the Bishop, yet was it with a Salvo, faving the Rights and Privileges of this Free Chapel.

THEIR Temporal Immunities and Privileges are these, as granted them by Charter, 6 Mar. 27 Edw. III. and

confirmed by several of his Successors.

THE Custos and Ca ons were free from paying Aid upon making the King's eldest Son a Knight, and marrying

ing his eldest Daughter, and exempt of all Aids to the

King's Contributions and Tallages.

WHENSOEVER the Clergy should give a Tenth, or other Imposition, out of their Spiritualties, or the Commons give a Tenth, Fisteenth, or other, out of their Temporalties, Subsidy, or the King tax his own Demean, or the Pope impose any Money to be raised upon the Clergy, to give it the King, this College and their Possessions were to stand freed thereof.

THEY were discharged from any Contributions of arraying Soldiers, and from sending them to guard the Sea-Coasts, and from every Fine and Composition of the like Nature. Their Houses within the Castle of Windson, as elsewhere, are quit from any Livery of the King's and Queen's Stewards, Marshals, Purveyors, Officers, and Servants, and from the like Officers of the Peers or Nobles, and the said Officers were not to intermeddle there, without Leave of the Custos and Canons.

No Duke, &c. or Nobleman, nor any Stewards, Marshals, Escheators, Sheriffs, Coroners, Bailiffs, or Officers, nor other Person of what Condition soever, upon any Pretence, were not to lodge or remain in their

Houses without their Consent.

THE Custos, Canons, and their Tenants, were not to pay any Toll, Paviage, Piccage, Barbicanage, Terrage, Pontage, Murage, Passage, Payage, Lestage, Stallage, Tallage, Carriage, Pesage, and from Scot and Geld, Hidage, Scutage, working about Castles, Parks, Bridges, Walls for the King's Houses; and from Suits to the County for Hundred Courts, and Wapentakes, or Court Leets, Murder, and common Amerciaments, before either King, Justices of the Bench, or kinerant, and from every like Custom had an Immunity.

WITHIN their Lands, Fees, and Precincts, the Chattels of all Felons and Fugitives were feized to their own Use. All Fines for Trespasses, and all other Contempts and Misdemeanors, Fines prolicins concordands, and for all other Caules, Americaments, Redemptions, Issues, and Forseitures whatsoever, Annum Diem Fastum er Greppum, and all Things which might belong to the

Digitized by Google

King and his Heirs, and all Wrecks, Waifs, and Strays,

were granted them.

No Purveyance of Corn, Hay, Horses, Carts, Carriages, Victuals, or any Goods, Chattels, or any thing whatsoever, should be carried off by any of the King's Officers, upon their or their Tenants Land.

They were to be free from paying any Penfion, Corrody, or other Suffentation to be granted to the

Crown.

THEY were to have free Warren in all their Demain Lands wherefoever, and that altho' they lay within the

Bounds of the King's Forest.

That they should enjoy for their Conveniency a weekly Market on Wednefday, at their Mannor of Ever in Bucks, and Two Fairs to last Eight Days, one on the Eve and Feast of St. Peter and St. Paul, and Two Days after the other, upon the Eve and Feast of St. Peter ad Vincula, and Two Days following.

THAT they should, in all their Lands have Socage and Sackage, Infangthef, Utfangthef, and View of Frankpledge, with Thewe, Pillory, and Tumbrel for punishing Malefactors, and Power to erect Gallows upon their own Soil for executing those apprehended in

their Jurisdiction.

THEY were to be exempt of all Suits and Pleas of the Forest, and of all Charges or Fees which the Officers of the Forest might demand, and from the Expeditation of their Dogs and Suits of Court there; as likewise all from Gelds, Dane Gelds, Knights Fees, Payments for Murder and Robbery, Building or Repairing of Bridges, Castles, Parks, Pools, Walls, Sea Banks, Canseways, and Inclosures; and of all Assizes, Summonses, Sheriffs Aids, their Bailiffs, or Officers, bearing of Treasure, and all other Aids whatever; as also from the common Affefiments and Amerciaments of the County, and Hundred, and all Actions relating to them; they were discharged from the Payment of Ward-penny, Averpenny, Tithing-penny, and Hundred-penny, and quit from Grithbreck, Forestal, Homesoken, Blodwite, Wardwite, Hangwite, Fightwite, Leyrwite, Lastage, Pannage, Assurt, and Waste of the Forest; so that such Waste be not committed in the Forests, Parks, and Woods

Woods belonging to the Crown, and then reasonable Satisfaction, without Imprisonment, should be accepted.

ALL Writs and Attachments were returnable to them, as well relating to the Pleas of the Crown as other, thro' all their Lands and Fees, and no Sheriff, Bailiff, or Officer, should execute any such there, unless in Default of the Custos and Canons, and they to have and hold Leets, and Lawdays, and Cognizance of all Pleas betwixt their Tenants, as well of Trespasses and Contracts, as others. And lastly, They were to have and hold Wards, Reliefs, Escheats, Forseitures, and other Profits, Issues, and Emoluments whatsoever, within their own Fees, from all their Tenants, which might appertain to the Crown, as if the Tenants did hold of the Crown or others in Capite.

CAP. V.

TE come now to treat of the most Noble and Illustrious Order of the Garter; which, if we confider either its Antiquity, or the Nobleness of the Personages, that have been enroll'd, it excels and outvies all other Institutions of Honour in the whole World. It owes its Original, as is confessed on all Hands, to Edward III. King of England and France; yet as to the Occasion, there are several Opinions which we shall rectifie. The vulgar and more general is, that the Garter of Joan, Countels of Salisbury, dropping casually off as she danced in a solemn Ball, King Edward stooping took it up from the Ground, whereupon fome of his Nobles smiling, as at an amorous Action, and he observing their sportive Humour, turned it off with a Reply in French, Honi soit qui mal y pense; but withal added, in disdain of their Laughter, That Shortly they should see that Garter advanced to so high an Honour and Renown as to account themselves happy to wear it.

Bur upon Examination of this Tradition, let others judge what Credit it bears to establish its Belief; for Sir John Froissart, the only Writer of the Age that treats of

of this Institution, assigns no such Original, nor for 200 Years after is there any thing to the Purpose in our other Historians, till Polydore Virgil took occasion to say something of it; but had it been Fact, some French Historian or other, would not have neglected to register it at a convenient Time with a Scots and Ridicule, since that Nation was so ready to deride King Henry V's Design of invading them with a Return of Tennis Balls.

In the Original Statutes of this Order, there is not the least Conjecture to countenance the Conceit of such a Feminine Institution, no not so much as laying an Obligation on the Knights-Companions to defend the Quarrels of Ladies (as some Orders then in being enjoyned;) nor doth the Author of that Tract entitled Institutio clarissimi Ordinis Militaris a pranobili subligaculo nunsupati, prefaced to the Black Book of the Garter, let fall

the manifest Passage to ground it on.

As to what Polydore fays, he is not so confident to ascertain the Person whose Garter it was; but cautiously declining that, says, it was either the Queen's, or the King's Mistress's; and if it were the latter, yet doth he omit her Name and Title, both which (on what Authority we find not) are supplied by modern Historians, who call her Joan Countess of Salisbury, the same elsewhere celebrated by the Name of the Fair Maid of Kent, (whom Edward the Black Prince, afterward married) whereas no Historian ever gave the least Inuendo that King Edward III. ever courted her as a Mistress. Selden points at her when he calls the Lady, from whom the Garter flipp'd, Countels of Kent and Salisbury: But about the Time when this Order was founded she in truth was dignified with neither Honour; for altho' she was Daughter to Tho. of Wooditock, Earl of Kent, and had been sometime the reputed Wife of Nilliam Mountague, second Earl of Salisbury, yet then she cou'd not properly be accounted Countess of saliebury. She was actually Wife to Sir Thomas Holland, (one of the First Founders of the Order.) Nor was the yet (tho' afterwards) Countels of Kint, because her Brother ohn Earl of Kent, at the Institution of this Order, survived, and died not till 26 Edw. III.

THAT

THAT there was a Countess of Salisbury with whom King Edward III. became greatly enamour'd, Froissatt reports after this manner, That this King having relieved a Casile of that Earl's in the North, wherein his Countess had been besieged by the Scots (the Earl himself being at that time Prisoner in France;) upon sight of her extraordinary Beauty be fell in love with her; but she so virtuously demeaned her self, during his Abode there, that he declined surther Solicitation. However, some time after, the King out of Defire to see her, proclaim'd solemn Justs in London, whither this Countess and other Ladies being invited, came up. This Castle it seems was Wark upon Tweed in Northumberland, which King Edward had sormerly bestowed on her Husband, for his good Service past, when he

first espoused her, being then but a Knight.

ALTHO' it should be admitted that this Countess of Salisbury was the King's Mistress, yet must it be remark'd, That she was Wife to William Mountague, Kt. created Earl of Salisbury, Anno 11 Edw. III. Mother to William the before-mention'd second Earl, that her Christian Name was Catherine, not Alice, as Froissart, not Joan, as others call her, Daughter to William Lord Granston, and that she expired 28 Edw. III. But that the whole may appear, what indeed it is, a meer Fable, we shall insert the Judgment of Dr. Heylin, who took great Pains in this Particular. This, says he, I take to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the Founder and the Order first published by Pol. Virgil, a Stranger to the Affairs of England, and by him taken upon no better ground than Fama Vulgi, the Tradition of the common People, too trifling a Foundation to so great a Building.

OF the same Contexture with the former is another Tradition in Andrew du Chesne, That the Queen departing from the King to her own Apartments, and he following soon after, chanced to espy a Blue Garter lying on the Ground (supposed to have slipp'd from her Leg) whilf some of his Attendants carelessy passed by it, as disdaining to stoop at such a Trisse; but he knowing the Owner, commanded it to be given him; at the Receipt of which he said, You make but small account of this Garter; but within sew Months, I'll cause the bit of you all to reverence it alike. Some suppose that the Morto was the Queen's Answer, when the King asked

her. What Men would conjecture of her, upon her lofting her

Garter in such a manner?

BOTH Relations are far distant from Fact; nevertheless it has thus far'd with other Orders of Sovereign Foundation, and an amorous, inflead of an honourable Account, has been falfly render'd of their Institution; as for Instance, The Order of the Annunciade, and that of The Golden Fleece,

THERE is a third Opinion grounded on a Relation made of King Rich. I. who, whilst his Forces were employ'd against Cyprus and Acon, and extremely tir'd and harrafe'd with the Siege, he, by the Affiftance and Mediation of St. George (as imagin'd) was inspir'd with fresh Courage, and bethought himself of a new Device, which was to tie about the Legs of a Number of Knights, a Leathern Thong Garter, for such had he then at hand, whereby they being emulated to future Glory, with Affurance of Reward if they prov'd victorious, they might be excited to behave themselves intrepidly and well, much after the Examples of the old Romans, among whom were distributed various Crowns for several Causes, to adorn the Soldiers: But if King Richard I. did make use of this Device in the Holy Land, as a Signal or Mark of Distinction of a Party, upon some warlike Exploit, yet that he took Occasion to create a distinct Order of Knighthood thereupon, there is not sufficient warrant to believe; (for it is only put down in the Preface of the Black Book, but not in any Part of the Annals of the Order; nor can it plead higher Antiquity than the Reign of King Hen. VIII. when written.) All the Advantage that can be made of it, is, to heighten the Reputation of that Saint among the English, by which Means the Garter came to be dedicated to him, and not that it contributed to its Institution.

§ 2. THE true Motive was therefore, neither the Ladies Garter, or King Richard's Leathern Thong, that it owes it Original to: But King Edward, being a Person of consummate Vertue, gave himself up to military Affairs; and being engag'd in War for recovering his Right to France, made use of the best Martialista

tialists of the Age, did thereupon first design (induc'd by its ancient Fame) the Restoration of King Archar's Round Table, to invite hither the Gallant Spirits from abroad, and endear them to himself; and adjudging no Place more requisite than Windfer, upon New-Year's Day, A. D. 1344. he issu'd out Letters of Protection for the safe going and return of Foreign Knights, to try their Valour at the Solemn Juke to be held there on Monday after the Feast of St. Hilary following (which happen'd Jun. 19.) And these Letters of Safe-Conduct continu'd in force until the Offaves of the Purification of our bleffed Virgin ensuing, being, the 18th Year of his Reign. At the Time appointed, he provided a great Supper to begin the Solemnity. and then ordain'd this Festival to be annually at Whitfouride; and immediately after these first Exercises were over, for a future and better Accommodation, be impress'd Workmen and Carriages for erecting a particular Building in the Castle, and therein plac'd a Table of Two Hundred Foot Diameter, where the Knights should have their Enterminment of Diet, at his Expence of 100 l. per Week; to which Building he gave the Name of The Round Table. And is at these great Conventions the Days were spent in all Kinds of noble Feats of Arms, Justs and Turnaments, so were a great Part of the Nights confum'd in publick Balls and dancing with the Ladies that attended the Queen thither; and perhaps it was hence conjectur'd, that at some of these Balls the Queen's Garter, or the Garter of Catherine, Countels of Salisbury, might flip off, and the King's taking it up occasion Smiles in the Byflanders; and afterwards, when the King had modell'd his intended Order, a Garter offering it self for its chief Enfign, might add to the Conjecture; but that it was the principal Cause, is a groundless Imagination. And the King Edward advanc'd the Honour of the Garter, as to denominate the Order, yet was it not to enhance Reputation to, or perpetuate an effeminate Occasion, but to adorn Martial Prowess, with Honours, Rewards and Splendor; to increase Vertue and Valour in the Hearts of his Nobility, that so true Worth, after long and hazardous Exploits, should not enviously

enviously be deprived of that Glory which it hath intrinsically deserved, and that active and hardy Youths might not want a Spur in their Progression in the Paths of Vertue, which is to be esteemed glorious and eternal.

Ir is further observable, that the French King, Philip de Valoys, in Emulation of this Seminary at Windsor, Tet up a Round Table at his Court, and invited Knights and valiant Men of Arms out of Italy and Almaine this ther, lest they should repair to our King Edward III. which meeting with Success, prov'd a Countermine to his main Defign; who perceiving that his Hospitality towards strange Knights, upon Account of reviving King Arthur's Round Table was too general, nor did fufficiently ingratiate them to his Person, but being unconstrain'd and at Liberty, did after their Departure take what Side they pleas'd in the ensuing Wars, he at length resolv'd upon a Projection more particular and select, and such as might oblige those whom he thought fit to make his Affociates, in a lasting Bond of Friendship and Honour: And having issu'd forth his own Garter for the Signal of a Battle, that was crown'd with Success, (which is conceiv'd to be the Battle of Creffy, fought about Three Years after his erecting the Round Table;) upon so remarkable a Victory, he thence fook Occasion to institute this Order, and gave the Garter Preheminence among the Enfigns of it, whence that select Number, whom he incorporated into a Fraternity, are styl'd Equites Aurea Periscelidis, and vulgarly Knights of the Garter. By this Symbol he defign'd to bind the Knights and Fellows of it mutually unto one another, and all of them joyntly to himself, as Sovereign of the Order; nor was his Expectation frustrated, for it did not serve only as a vehement 8pur and Incentive to Honour and martial Vertue, but also as a golden Bond of Unity and internal Society; and forthis Confideration Cambden aptly calls it a Badge of Unity and Concord.

By the Symbols of this Garter the Knights are reminded, with all Religiousness, Sincerity, Friendliness, Faithfulness and Dexterity, not to leave the Pursuit of whatsoever they take in hand, nor to enterprize any

Thing

H . 22 . 27 .

Thing contrary to the Statutes of the Order; neither to frustrate the Rights of Peace and Friendship, nor vilify the Law of Arms, or proceed in any Thing farther than Faith and Compact, or the Bond of Friendship will admit. Moreover, in the binding of the Leg with this enobled Enfign, there was given this Caveat and Exhortation, that the Knights should not pufillanimously (by running away from Battle) betray the Valour and Renown which is ingrafted in Constancy and Magnanimity. Nay, so exactly did the Founder contrive the whole Habit into the Signification of the Garter, that he ordain'd his and the Knights-Companions Robes and Ornaments to be all alike, both for Materials and Fashion, intimating thereby, That they ought to conserve brotherly Affection among themselves. The great Collar of the Order was made of equal Weight, and like Number of Knots and Links, in Token of the like Bond of Faith, Peace and Amity inviolably to be observ'd and remin'd amongst them: In fine, all Things were so defign'd, that every one might plainly perceive how much these Things tended to the Maintenance of Amity and Concord.

In further reference to the establishing this Order, the aforesaid King calling together the Earls, Barons, and principal Knights of his Kingdom, Freely, fays Froiffart, and obligingly declar'd his Mind to them concerning this Affair: To which all of them being well inclin'd, entertain'd the Motion with equal Joy and Applause, deeming it would prove a very great Advancement to Piety, Nobility and Vertue, and likewise an excellent Expedient for the uniting not only his Subjects one with another, but all Foreigner's conjunctively with them, in the Bonds of Amity and Peace. And 'tis very improbable the prudent Founder should fummon his Nobles to confult about the Grandeur of an Order, that had taken its Rife from fo flight an Occasion as the dropping of a Garter from a Lady's Leg. Now, to draw the Tye of Friendship more close, the King caused those who were (or should be) of the Order, to be call'd Fellows, Affociates, Colleagues, Brethren, and Knights-Companions, and the Order it self a Society. Fellowship, College of Knights, and Knight-Companionship; and their Habits to be all alike, to represent how they singht to be united in all Chances and various Turns of Fortune; Co-partners both in Peace and War, affifiant to one another in all forious and dangerous Exploits; and thro' the whole Course of their Lives to shew Fidelity and Friendliness one towards another. There are other Reasons affigu'd, much to the same Effect, That the Order was instituted to fortife the Confidence of the King, the Kingdom and Martial Vertne; that is to say, to strengthen the Faith of the Subjetts towards them, and for their greater Security, and because the Garter carries with it a Bond or Tye of Fellowship, and is a Symbol of Amicy between Princes, being Companions of the same Order.

In the last Place, if we look upon the Statutes of its Institution, we shall find the Injunctions wholly Military, and so are the Words of Admonition pronounc'd at the putting on the Ensigns of the Order: And the Ground of the Institution (in the Preamble to King Henry VIII's Exemplar) is said to be for the Howar of God and Exaltation of the Catholick Faith, joyn'd both with Piety and Charity, in establishing a College of religious Men to pray for the Prosperity of the Soversign of the Order and the Knights-Companians, and to perform other holy Duties; as also ordaining a Maintenance for a Company of Alms-Knights, who have not otherwise wherewith to support themselves; but not one Word relating to the Engagement on behalf of the seminine Sex.

And whereas King Edw. III. had laid Claim by his Title to the Kingdom of France, and in Right thereof affum'd its Arms, he from the Colour of them, 'tis faid, caus'd the Garter to be made Blue, and the Circumscription Gold: And it may, without straining, be inferr'd from the Motto, Honi soit qui mal y pense, that he retorted Shame and Defiance upon him that should dare to think amis of so just an Enterprize, as he had undertaken for recovering of his lawful Right to that Crown; and that the Magnanimity and Bravery of those Knights, whom he had elected into this Order, was such as would impower and enable them to maintain the Quarrel against all who thought ill of it. Consonant to this is the Conjecture of Harpsfield, that this Apophthegm was defign'd to put the Knights-Com-- panions

panions in mind, Not to admit any Thing in their Alliens, or among their Thoughts, derogatory to themselves and their

Honeur.

THAT Age did exceedingly abound with Impresses. Motto's and Devices, and particularly King Edw. III. was so excessively given up to them, that his Apparel. Plate. Bed, Houshold-Furniture, Shields, and even the Harnels of his Horses, and the like, were not without them, many of which now to descant upon would be a fruitless Attempt, seeing the Occasion of the Invention, and the Circumstances are lost, that should illustrate them; and others, by reason of their Beevity, feem'd infignificant, in regard something was defignedly omitted, and left to be understood, which cannot now be rightly supply'd, so as to arrive at the Mind of the Inventor. Of this Number may be this Motto, It is as it is, which was embroider'd upon a Doublet of that King; tho' there are others which feem more casty to be decypher'd; as that daring Motto wrought upon his Surcoat and Shield provided to be used at a Turnament,

Day, day, the Clythe Swan; By God's Soul I am the Man.

6 3. THE Time when the Order was instituted, Historians differ widely about; Selden, Comper, and others, from Froissart (who wrote temp. Rich. II.) would have it in the 18th of King Edw. III. But fince Freiffart errs, in making the Number of Knights-Companions no fewer than Forty, which is a grand Mistake, Why might not he trip in Point of Time, and confound the Year of its Erection, with that wherein the Founder renew'd the Order of The Round Table, Windfor being the Place for both. For should we admit. that during some Part of the Solemnity held in this King's 18th Year, when the Accident of the Lady's Garter flipping off happen'd, what other Inference can be made, but that he had only an Intention to put in Execution somewhat afterwards? Not that an Order was actually erected at that Time: Besides, the Jollity of the Season, the Greatness of the Concourse, and the

the Splendidness of the Festivity, it was too busy a Time to suffer much Consultation tending thereunto; or at least to mould and model a Defign so compleat and substantial, as it appears to have been even at first. If we joyn Fabian, he is plain, that the' the King de-agn'd the Institution at the End of the Festival, (which he places between Candlemas and Lent, in the 19th, and not 18th Year of that King) Yet was it not then, faith he, but afterwards established by him. Nevertheless, Mr. Selden elsewhere observes, it had its Original in the 24th Year of the said King. And our industrious Stow (with whom Lily, Speed, and Segar agree) telle us, That the first Feast of the Order was celebrated A. D. 1350. which exactly agrees to the 24th of Edward III. But Polydore Virgil places it after the 25th of Edward III. We must therefore have recourse to some other Proofs for elucidating this Point, fince this Chronological Æra of the true Time of its Institution hath wonderfully slipp'd the Pens of all Writers.

ADMITTING then that the erecting this Order was first thought of by King Edward, at some of those grand Assemblies of The Round Table, held after the French King had set up the like; yet was it not mature, or brought to any Persection, till after his glorious Victories and Triumphs over the French and Scots in the Battles of Cressy and Nevil's Cross, (in the last of which the Scotch King, David, was taken Prisoner) and until King Edward had Calais surrendred to him, as will

appear very conspicuous.

Among the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe, is one containing the Account of all the King's Liveries, from Michaelmas Anno 21, to the 31st of Jan. 23 Edw. III. In the same are divers Things mention'd to be adorn'd with Garters, which were provided against the first grand Feast of St. Gorge; and among the rest, the Royal Robes, viz. his Mantle, Surcoat and Hood; likewise a Bed of Blue Tassaty was be deck'd with Garters, containing the Motto, Honi soit qui mal y pense. There were made for the Sovereign Three Harnesses, whereof Two were of White Velvet, wrought over with Garters de blue diaspris per totum combedmein cum Woodhouses; and the Third de Velvetto Ynde cont. Lappekin

pekin quisseux & casigas, wrought over likewise with Garters. Had the Roll been divided into Years, or had distinguishing Marks of Time upon it, we might have been guided with more Certainty as to the true Year of the Institution. However, we may thence conclude it was not founded in the 18th of Edw. III. because that the Sovereign's Robes were not made until the 22d Year of his Reign at soonest; perhaps not till the Beginning of the 23d. But to put the Matter beyond dispute, the Founder's Statutes fix the Time of Institution to his 23d Year; so do the Statutes of King Henry V. and the Preface to the Black Book, Leland, Mills and Dr. Heylin. To conclude, when he had fix'd upon the Day and Place for celebrating the first grand Feast of this Order, he sent his Heralds into Germany, France, Scotland, Burgundy, Hainault, Flanders and Brabant, to invite all Knights and Esquires, (with Affurance of Safe-Conduct and Liberty for Fifteen Days, both before and after the grand Solemnity) to shew their military Prowess and other publick Exercifes there to be perform'd, proper to the Place and Occasion; agreeable to which Invitation, fundry Knights and Gallant Men came over to fignalize their Valour; and what made the Solemnity more glorious, King Edward's Queen was there present, attended with Three Hundred of the fairest Ladies, in all imaginable Splendor and Gaity.

§ 4. THE Patrons of the Order were several, under whose Protection (according to the Custom of the Age) King Edw. HI. put himself and all the Knights Companions, that the Affairs of the Order might be defended, preserved and govern'd.

THE first and chiefest which he elected, was the Holy Trinity, which in a more especial Manner was in-

vocated to the Aid and Affistance of this Order.

Secondly, King Edward III. intitled peculiarly the bleffed Virgin Mary, accounted then the general Mediatrix and Protectress of all Men; unto whom King Edward IV. was so strictly devoted, that he thought some additional Ceremonies requisite to her farther Honour, and thereupon ordain'd, that on her Five Solemnities

the Knights Companions should annually (as accurftom'd on the Feast of St. George) wear the Habit of the Order as long as Divine Service was celebrating, (unless they had sufficient Cause of excuse) bearing on the right Shoulders of their Robes a golden Figure of the Virgin Mary; and that they should go in the same Manner and Habit upon all Sundays throughout the Year; and lastly, that on the same Days for ever they should say Five Pater Nosters, with as many Ave Maria's.

Thirdly, St. George of Cappadocia, a most choice Champion of Christ and famous Marryr, was also elected one of the Patrons to this Order by King Edward III. not so much as he was a Professor of the Christian Faith, or for that he was an armed Soldier or Knight of Christ, but so much the more because in those Wars, which were waged by the Christians against the Infidels, he by several Appearances manifested his Presence as a most certain Encourager and Assistant to the Christians; the Relations whereof may be seen in Dr. Heylin's History, who hath laboriously and judiciously maintain'd the History of this Saint, against those that will not allow him a Place in Heaven, or a Being in the Church. In like manner the learned Selden hath avouch'd him to be the special Patron, Protestor, Defender, and Advocate of this Realm of England; and has made it plainly appear in what Veneration he hath been honour'd abroad, especially among the Eastern To whole corroborating Tellimonies we Nations. shall add. That this Title of Patron to our Nation, as given to St. George by the Founder of this Order, in a Patent granted to the Dean and Canons of the Chapel of St. Stephen at Westminster, and St. George at Windsor, which dischargeth them from Payment of Tythes; as also by King Henry VIII. in the Preamble of his Statutes. And tho' in general he is styl'd the Principal Patron of the Affairs of Christendom, and a sutelar Guardian of military Men, yet among all Christians the English did excel; and in this Nation the Founder of this Order, in making choice of such an approv'd expert Captain and Patron, in particular Respect of whom the Knights had the Title of Equit & Georgiani, St. George's Knights, and the Order it self came to be

call'd the Ordo Divi Santii Georgii, The Order of St.

George.

Ir is remarkable, that Da Chefie, a noted French HiBerian, acknowledges it was by the special Inyocation
of St. George that King Edward III. gain'd the Battle of
Cressy, which afterwards bringing to his Remembrance,
He founded, says he, a Chapel within the Casile of Windfeer. But if we may ascend a step higher, and give
credit to Harding, it's recorded King Arthur paul St.
George particular Honours, for he advanc'd his Picture
in one of his Banners, which was about Two Hundred
Years after his Martyrdom, and very early for a Country so remote from Cappadocia to have him in Reverence
and Esteem.

Lably, The Founder added a fourth Patron, whose Name himself bore, wiz. St. Edward the Confessor, his Predecessor, King of England; and we find he was wont to be invocated by this Founder, as well as St. Grorge, in any great Difficulties and Streights, Walfingham gives an Inflance at the Shirmila of Calque, A. D. 1249. When King Edward, in great Anger and Grief, drew out his Sword, and most passionately cry'd out, Ha St. Edward, Ha St. George; which his foldiers hearing, ran presently to him, and tushing violently upon the Enemy, put many of them to the Sword. These Four Patrons we find retorded together in the Presimble of the Foundation of Windler College by Hing Edward III. tho' in the Preamble to his Statutes of the Order, and to King Henry V's Statutes, St. Edward the Confessor is omitted; nevertheless he is enumerated with the rest in the Preamble to King Henry VIII's.

§ 5. As to the Honour and Reputation of this Noble Order, either in Compatison with others, or in Reference to it felf, it challenges the Precedency of Antiquity, before the eldest Rank of Honour of that Kind any where establish'd.

Second'y, The Statutes of the Foundation were to exquifitely and indiciously devised and compacted, upon such solid Foundations of Honour and Nobleness, that they afterwards became a Precedent to other Orders; and gave the Plan to those Two of The Golden Ileece and K 2

of Monsieur St. Michael, as is manifest by comparing their Statutes.

Thirdly, It is no small Honour that accrues to this Order, that the Number of these Knights-Companions were never encreas'd, but as they were Twenty Six with the Sovereign, so they now thus continue, ** Pretium faciat ravitas; for the infringing this Article hath split several other military Orders into Contempt and Ruin, as nothing more tarnishing, or throwing a sully on the Worth of Glory and Honour, than when render'd so vulgar, and indifferently disposed without Distinction and Merit, as is exemplify'd in The Order of the Star, and the now declining Order of St. Michael.

Fourthly, It has receiv'd more additional Lustre by being honour'd with the Companionship of divers Emperors, Kings and Sovereign Princes, who esteem'd it the Summit of their Glory, and the highest Trophy of additional Honour, to be enroll'd in the Number. fomuch that some of them with Impatience courted the Election. For we find recorded in the Register, A. D. 1672. Eight Emperors of Germany, Three Kings of Spain, Five French Kings, Two Kings of Scotland, Five Kings of Denmark, Five Kings of Portugal, Two Kings of Sweden, One King of Poland, One King of Arragon, Two Kings of Naples, besides divers Dukes and other free Princes; as One Duke of Guelderland, One Duke of Holland, Two Dukes of Burgundy, Two Dukes of Brunfwick, One Duke of Milan, Two Dukes of Urbin, One Duke of Ferrara, One Duke of Savoy, Two Dukes of Holstein, One Duke of Saxony, and One Duke of Wertemberg, Seven Count Palatines of the Rhine, Four Princes of Orange, and One Marquis of Brandenburg.

Fifthly, It entitles those Knights and Noblemen, whose Vertue hath rais'd them to this Pitch of Greatness, to be Companions and Associates with Emperors and Kings, a Prerogative of an high Nature, and a sufficient Recompence for the greatest Merit. We shall close up all with the high Elogy bestow'd on it by the learned Selden, That it exceeds in Majesty, Honour and Fame, all

Chivalrous Orders of the World.

CAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order.

RDER and Regularity is not only the Beauty and Symmetry of Government and Societies, but also greatly contributes to their Establishment and Perpetuity. Statutes and Rules are as well the Bounds to determine, as Bonds to unite Fellowship and Societies together; and if either fall into disuse, or be unadvisedly broken, they open a Field to Dissolution and Ruin.

Such like Confiderations mov'd and excited the victorious King Edward III. (after he had determin'd the Erection of this most renown'd Order of the Garter) to devise and institute several laudable Statutes and Ordinances, to be duly observ'd and kept within the said Order; which being collected into one Body, are call'd The Statutes of

Institution,

THE Original of these was ordain'd to be kept within the Treasury of the College of Windsor, but hath long since wholly perish'd; yet a Transcript of them is recorded in the Reign of King Henry V. in an old Book call'd Registrum Ordinis Chartaceum. Two more ancient Exemplars of this Body of Statutes are also in being; the one in the Library of the Lord Hatton, and the other in the Black Book of the Order; and comparing them together, I shall here give from the Latin the Heads they consist of:

1. THE King of England, his Heirs and Successors,

are to be Sovereigns or Superiors of this Order.

2. None are to be admitted, unless he be a Gentleman of Blood, and that he be a Knight and without Reproach.

3. The Knights-Companions were to be Twenty Six, each to have at Windfor a Mantle and Garter for the better Splendor of the Order; to wear the said K 2 Habit

Habit whensoever they go to the Chapel of St. George or Chapter-House, so hold a Chapter, or do any thing relating to their Order. In like manner they are to wear the Habit upon the Vigils of St. George, in their Procession from the King's Lodgings to the Chapel on Chapter-House, and returning back, and during Supper, continue so habited till it be over, and likewise on the Morrow of St. George's Day, at Chapel, Dinner-time, Supper-time, and afterwards all the said Day, until the Sovereign or his Deputy shall deposite the Ensigns of the Order, and decree their Departure.

4. THERE were to be Thirteen Canons Secular, who at the Time of their Institution, or within a Year, were to be Priests, and as many Vicars already Priests, or to be made so at the next Ordination, answerable to the number of the Knights-Companions; these religious Persons to be presented by the several Founders each one, and upon the Death or Vacancy of such presented, the Sovereign of the Order ever afterwards to have the Nomination of them, who were bound to pray for the good Estate of the Sovereign and his Kingdom,

5. THE Canons were to wear a Purple Mantle, with the Arms of St. George in a Roundle upon their right

Shoulder.

and particularly for this Order.

6. THERE were to be Twenty Six poor veterane Knights, each to have a competent Subfiftence, their Election to be after the manner of the Canons aforefaid.

7. THESE Knights were to have a Red Mantle, with the Arms of St. George; but without any Circle of the

Garter about it.

8. If the Sovereign could not be present at the solemn Festival of St. George, his Deputy was to supply his Place at the Charge of the Sovereign; but such Deputy was not to make any new Ordinances, tho' he has License to correct or amend the old Ones.

9. Every Year, upon the Vigils of St. George, the Knights-Companions within the Realm, or elsewhere, if conveniently, are to assemble, at Windsow Castle, and be present there at the Celebration of Divine Service, in the Habit of the Order, where placed regularly in their

their Stalks or Seats, directly over their Heads their Helmens and Swords, &c. are to be hung up, and remain as long as such Knights live, in Honour of them, and to signify the Defence of the Church, to which shey are obliged as a Military Order; but in case the Feast of St. George happens to fall within the Quindense or Fifteen Days after the Feast of Easter, then it was to be proroqued to the Sunday next following, accounting Fisteen Days from Easter Day, that every Knight-Conspansion might have reasonable time to come, nor be forced to ride upon any of the Three Easter

Holy-days.

10. THAT they meet in St. George's Chapel yearly, on the Eve of St. George, at the Hour of Three in the Afternoon; and if they come not at the Time affigned, wishout a just Excuse, which the Sovereign or his Deputy allows, their Penalty is to be according to the Ordinance of the Chapter; which is, That they shalk not enter into the Chapter Door for that time, but flay without, and shall have no Voice in any thing that is done in the faid Chapter; and if they come not before the Beginning of Vespers, they shall not enter into their Stalls, but shall tarry below before the said Stalls in the Choinfters Places during Vespers. The like Penalty is ordain'd for not coming to the Mass or Morning-Service betime, and at Vespers, on St. George's Day 3 and whosever shall absent himself wholly from this Solemnity, without sufficient Excuse and Leave from the Sovereign or Deputy, he is not to enter within his Smil the next Feath after, but shall stay below, and before his Stall, as it is faid at Vespers, and in the Morrows Precession must walk before the Three processional Croffes, [now the Chorrifters,] and at Mass [Service] shall set below until the Offering, and offer last. After which he is to come before the Sovereign, or his Deputy's Stall, and ask Pardon, which re-instates him in his Stall. Absenting the next second Time upon the Feath, without Leave, he has no Stall allowed him until he hath given and offered a Jewel upon St. George's Altar, to the Value of Twenty Marks, which is to be double every Year until a Reconcilizeion.

Digitized by Google

II. WHERESOEVER they be, they must wear their Blue Robes from the Beginning of the first Vespers, on the Eve of St. George's Day, to the second Vespers on the Morrow inclusive, exc.

12. Is any Knight-Companion appears publickly without his dignifying Garter, upon challenging the fame, is to pay half a Mark to the Cuitos and

College.

13. Ar the Times of Offering, each affociated with the other who holds the opposite Stall, are to march in Procession together to make their Offerings; but alone, when his Consort is absent, and so that in all Pro-

cessions the Sovereign goes last.

14. In the Morrow after the Solemnity of St. George's Feast is over, before their separating, a Mass de Requie or Office de Defunctis was to be used, at which the Knights-Companions were all entirely to be present, without necessary Impediment shown to the Sovereign or Deputy for Liberty to depart.

15. They were to leave their Robes at Windfor always, to be ready for them there upon any sudden Oc-

casions that might evene.

16. JOURNYING near Windsor, in Honour of the Place, unless lawful Cause obstructs, they must take it in their Way, and assuming the Habit of the Order the Canons wore, devoutly to meet and conduct them into the Chapel; where, if it happens to be time of Divine Service, they are to hear the same; if not, they are to be detained no longer than while the Canons shall say the Psalm de profundis for the Defunct, and during their own Offering: But if any had riden thro' the Town, without visiting the Chapel and offering there, for every Neglect he must go one Mile on Foot from the said Chapel, to show his Obedience, and offer an Half-Penny in Honour of St. George.

17. Upon first Notice of the Death of any of the Order, the Sovereign shall ordain a Thousand Masses, every Foreign Prince shall cause Eight Hundred, a Prince of Wales Seven Hundred, a Duke Six Hundred, an Earl Three Hundred, every Baron Two-Hundred, and every Knight Batchellor One Hundred Masses to be celebrated for the Good of the Soul de-

parted; which neglected for a Quarter of a Year after notice of such Death, the Masses are to be doubled; upon half a Year's Neglect, again doubled; and so from Time to Time in like Form till the End of the Year, and then the Year's to be doubled.

18, UPON fure Notice of the Death of a Knight-Companion, the Sovereign, or his Deputy, is to converse by Letters, the Remainder [not Strangers] that are within the Kingdom, to meet him within Six Weeks in some convenient Place, and elect another; which assembled, at least Six, with the Sovereign or Deputy, every of them present is to name Nine of the worthiest and sufficientest Knights without Reproof that he knows, whether native Subjects or Foreigners, sobeit they hold no contrary Party, or be against the Sovereign, viz. Three Earls, or of sublimer Title; Three, Barons, and Three Knights Batchellors, which Names the Bishop of Windsor, for the Time being, was to write, or, in his Absence, the Dean or Register, and, in their Absence, the oldest Residencer in the College, and after shew them to the Sovereign, who is to chuse out of them him that has the most Voices, and whom he esteems the most beneficial to the Crown and Kingdom. Every Knight failing to appear at an Election, without an approved Cause, was to pay to the Custos and College the Penalty of a Mark, and at his next coming to the Chapter shall kneel upon the Ground, in the midst of the Chapter, before the Sovereign or Deputy, until Reconciliation.

19. Soon after Election, the Knight-Companion electisto have a Garter, in token of his Election, and that he is a Fellow of the Order; and as soon as decreed to take Possession of his Stall, but not before, is to have a Mantle, which, if he dies before he receiv'd, he was not to be accounted as one of the Order, because he wanted Possession; nevertheless he was to have one half of the Masses abovesaid, because he had the Garter deliver'd to him and nothing beside. If he was not installed within a Year after his receiving the Garter, and especially if within the Realm, and without reasonable Excuse to be allowed of by the Sovereign or Deputy, his Election became void, and they might pro-

deed to a new one: Moreover, neither the Sword nor Helmet was to be put upon his Stall within the Cathe, before his coming; to the End, that if the Knight elect eame not, his Atchievements might not be unhandfoully taken down and abused, but honourably removed into the Choir for the publick Use and Profit of the faid

College.

20. Event Foreigner elected was to have Certificafion of fuch his Election from the Sovereign, at the Sovereign's Charge, who was to fend him the Garter and the Mantle, and a Copy of the Statutes of the Osder, under the Common Seal of the said Order, within Four Months after the Election, the better for him to advise on; which being accepted, of whatsoever Condition he be, he was obliged within Eight Months after to fend a sufficient Proxy, according to his State and Dignity, a Knight irreprehensible to be installed in his Room, and who was to bring with him a Silk Mantle of the Blue Colour of the Order, also a Sword and Helmet to remain at Windfor, which Mantle was be put upon the right Shoulder of the Proxy, by the Sovereign or Deputy at the time of Installment, when he is introduced to take the Stall in the Name of his Lord and Master; neither was he to deposite the same till the End of Divine Service; after which he was not to wear it, nor be admitted in the Chapter-House, or have any Suffrage, by virtue of any Powers veffed in him; but this Favour Foreigners elected by Proxy were to have, that could not personally come themselves, they were to be Partakers of the whole Maffes and Orifons of the Order; whereas, if they died before the Installation, they were to have but a Moity of them.

Dignity] Baron, or Knight Batchellor, his Successor, whether Earl, [or of Superior Dignity] Baron, or Knight, was to have a vacant Stall of his Predecessor, without any changing of Places, except the Prince of Wales alone, who was to have always the next Stall, and opposite to the Sovereign; so that it may happen for a Knight to have an Earl's Place, or an Earl a Knight's Place; and this because the first Founders might be

known.

was to give a certain Alms, according to their Eminence and Degree, for the perpetual Maintenance of the Canons and Poor Knights, wiz. the Sovereign Forty Marks, a Foreign King Twenty Pounds, a Prince of Wales Twenty Marks, a Duke Ten Pounds, an Earl Ten Marks, a Baron a Hundred Shillings, and a Knight Batchellor Pive Marks, that by these pious Donations they might justly entitle themselves to the Name and Privileges of the Order; wherefore, before these Payments were rightly performed, their Sword and Helmet [Atchievements] were not to be hung up, and for Foreigners the Sovereign was obliged to pay himself.

23. Upon the Death of any of the Founders his Arms, in a Plate of Metal, was to be fixed upon the Back of his Stall, and their Successors were to have the like, but to be placed underneath their Predecessors, and not to be so great as those of the first Founders.

24. Ar Admission every Knight-Companion must promise and swear personally, or by Proxy, faithfully to observe the Statutes of the Order, and none are to be installed by Proxy but Foreigners only, which can-

not conveniently come in Person.

25. If the Sovereign be out of England at the Inflallation of any Knight-Companion, or could not attend himself to do what appertains to him in that Point, he might impower and authorize any of the Fellows to officiate for him.

26. THAT there be a Common Seal or Signet Keeper.

whom the Sovereign was to affign.

of the Statutes under the Seal of the Order, the Original sealed likewise with the said Seal, to remain for evermore within the Treasury of the College, and upon the Death of any Knight-Companion, his Executors were to send back such Copy to be delivered to the Custos or Warden.

28. No Knight-Companion was to go out of the Realm and Dominion of England, without the Knowledge and Licence of the Sovereign, who of Grace and Favour is bound to grant it upon a Military Expedition, or other notable Act appertaining to the Honour of Knight-

Knighthood, in Preference and Advancement of this

Druler of St. George.

29. They were not to arm themselves against each other, but in the Wars of their Sovereign Lord, in his right and just Quarrel; and if it happen'd that any of the Order should be retain'd in the Cause and Quarrel of any Lord, and the adverse Party defir'd another Knight-Companion on his Side, that latter Knight is by no means to agree but to excuse himself in all Things, because his Fellow was armed on the other Side, and was retain'd before him. And every Knight was bound to except and agree, at his being retain'd, that he may have his Discharge from the Wars, upon any of the Order's being engaged in Arms before him for the contrary Party; and if the second retained knows not of it, upon notice that any of his Fellows were retained before him, and armed on the contrary Side, the second retained Knight was to excuse himself to his Master, and relinquish the Quarrel.

30. ALL Licences given to the Knight-Companions to travel in quest of Honour by Military Exploits; also all Certificates, mandatous Letters, Certificates, and other Writings whatsoever relating to the Order, were to be issued out by the Sovereign, under the Scal of the Order, to remain in the keeping of one of the Order, during the Sovereign's Pleasure. And if the Keeper of the Scal absent himself upon reasonable Cause, he was to leave the Scal with another of the Fellowship that the Sovereign should appoint, to the Intent that the Scal at no time be out of the Presence of the Sovereign, he being within his Dominion. And in like manner concerning the Scal in the Absence of the Sovereign or the Deputy.

31. If any Knight-Companion for Devotion fake should defire to dwell at Windsor, he was to maintain

himself at his own, and not at the College Charge.

32. Any other Knight, not of the Order, upon the Account of Devotion, that would reside there, was to be provided for at the Appointment of the Sovereign, and the Fellowship also. Any Knight or other Person giving 101. yearly Rents or Lands, or more, to the College, to participate of their Prayers and Suffrages,

he was to be registred in the Calendar of Benefactors, and continually be pray'd for by the Canons and Poor Knights.

33. Upon the Death of any Canon, the Custos or Warden is to certify the same by Letters to the Sovereign, if beyond Sea, to know whom he pleases to pre-

fent to the Canonship.

- 24. THERE was to be a Register appointed by the Sovereign and Fellowship, the most intelligent Person of the College, who was to be present at the Chapters, to record their Elections and the Electors, their Punishments, and Causes of them, with their Reconciliations, all Acts what soever administred in their Council, from Chapter to Chapter yearly; for the faithful Execution. of which Office he was to be fworn at his Admission therein; and whatsoever had been register'd was in the Beginning of the following Chapter, on the Vigila of St. George, to be publickly recited before the Sovereign and the whole Fellowship, that what was amise and incorrect might be mended and reduced to due Form.
- 6 2. Besides these Statutes there are Two other Bodies, or Exemplars establish'd fince, the one by King Henry V. the other by King Hen. VIII. King Henry V. finding the Glory of the Order declining, removed the Grand Festival and other Solemnities, and commanded a strict Observation of all the Founder's Statutes, and brought many more to like Persection, which he subjoined to such of them, where they might be properly and are as follow:
 - 3. That the Knights should mark their Obeisance in the Choir first to the Altar, and next to the Sovereign, or in his Absence to his Stall.

8. THAT the Deputy should elect, if To Article the Sovereign (when abroad) had not Six Knights with him.

> 9. THAT the Feast of St. George should not be kept upon St. Mark's Day, nor the Days of St. Philip and Jacob, nor of the Holy

Holy Cross, neither upon any Days which should happen in the Festivals of the Ascension or Pentecost, or other solemnia Feats ordeined by the Church to the interrupting their Divine Service.

ts. Thar when a Knight should ride out he might wear a Blue Silk Ribbon in-

stead of his Garter.

14. THAT the Order and Manner of Offering up the Atchievements should be as is there prescribed, viz. before they offer their Money, their Swords should be sirst offered by Two Companions, which the Sovereign or his Deputy should appoint, and afterwards their Helmets with their Crests, by Two others of the Order.

20. THAT Knights absent in the Sovereign's Service might be install'd by De-

puty.

To Article

31. THAT the Sovereign should take a Signet of the Order abroad with him, to be fixed to all the Acts he does in Foreign Parts relating to this Order, in Distinction to those done at home.

34. That no Charge should be admitted upon the College by the Custos or Canons, without the Sovereign's Confent likewise.

THE Statutes with these Additions (as the Statutes of Institution) this King caused to be translated into French, and transcribed into a Roll, which was ordered to be presented to every Knight-Companion under the common Seal of the Order. In after Times it was transcribed into Books; and by a Decree, Anno 3 Hen. VII. an Original Book of these Statutes and Institutions, fair written, was to be reposed in the College of St. George, and the Scribe or Register to have Transcripts of them in Readiness, to present the elected Knights withal.

The last and largest Body was first began, and received the finishing Stroke by King Hen. VIII. chiefly in regard some of the former Statutes wanted Explication and

and others Contraction. And for the compleating of which Purpose, on St. George's Day, Anno 9 Regni sui he summoned all the Knights-Companions to convene next Year at the Time of the Solemnity, about the Abrogation of what tended to darken the Honour of this Order (if any such were) and for the Advancement of what might promote the Grandeur and Luftre of it. But these Resolves came to no Persection till May 28. Anno 11 Regni sui, when he entred upon this Reformation with all magnificent Ceremony imaginable, for being accompanied with Nineteen Knights-Companions of the Order proceeding in Cavalcade to the Chapter-House, and taking into Confideration their former Statutes of Knights-Companions, with all due Reverence implored the Sovereign to reform and explain them as he should think convenient, which he brought to a successful Period, by the Advice and Consent of the Society affembled: That done, all present entreated the Sovereign, kneeling, that where any of them had been peccant against the Order, he would please to remit, and iffue out a general Pardon, which he granted and ratify'd in Chapter next Day. This was a Task of Three Years compleat before it rose to Perfection, viz. April 23. Anno 14 Hen. VIII. for then the Sovereign, out of right fingular Love, well-temper'd Zeal, and entire Affection to this most noble Order, to the Estate of Chivalry, and the Continuance and Encrease thereof; as also at the humble Request and instant Importunity of the then Knights-Companions, and by their Advice, Counsel and Consent, did interpret and elucidate all the Obscurities, Doubts and Ambiguities of the former Statutes and Ordinances. Divers Affairs contain'd in Fifty of them being explain'd and amended; he made likewise necessary Additions, the Original whereof being fign'd and seal'd, were commanded to be carefully laid up in the Treasury of Windsor College, to remain as a Standard to succeeding Times; yet they have not been seen there these many Years

THE Articles and Clauses added to the former Sta-

tutes, in this last Body, are these:

1. THAT the Interpretation of the Statutes, er. belongeth to the Sovereign.

2. THE Three Points of Reproach declar'd, and what is meant by a Gentleman of Blood.

4. Or the Prerogative of the Feast.

5. How the Feast is to be observed by absent Knights.

6. ATTENDANCE on the Sovereign, if

he be not at the Feast.

7. THAT the Sovereign's Deputy may correct Things in Chapter.

12. THE offering up of Atchievements,

and a Taper arm'd with an Escutcheon. 13. Canons to fit in the lower Stalls, when any Knights are present.

14. THAT Šix Knights make a Chap-.

ter.

To Article

20. THE Manner of Installation set

21. CLAUSE for a Foreign Knight's Deputy to be conducted from the Chapter-House to the Stall; and for making an Election void, if the Knight send not his Proxy within Seven Months.

23. For advancing and translating of

Stalls.

25. PLATES not to be larger than the

first Founders, except Strangers.

27. THE Time Three Months prefix'd for the Executor of a deceas'd Knight-Companion to fend back the Copy of the Orders deliver'd to him at his Admission, which might be also sent to one of the principal Officers of the Order.

28. Concerning the Collar of the

Order.

This Body of Statutes was compiled in Latin, and is recorded in the Black Book of the Order. It was tranflated into French and English by Sir Thomas Wriothesley, Kt. Kt. then Gatter King of Arms. The English Version annex'd here to this Treatise, is what hath since been deliver'd (instead of the former Statutes) to all succeeding Knights-Companions, according to the Injunction; but of late Times appointed to be sent to Foreign Princes and other elect Knights abroad, sealed with the Great Seal of the Order, affix'd to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold.

§ 3. THERE have been several Endeavours since the Reign of King Henry VIII. for reforming the Statutes. As first, King Edward VI. who as Sovereign, by the Orders themselves, had an undoubted Prerogative set him to alter and reform many Things which feem'd inconfistent with the Religion he establish'd. To which Purpose, at a Chapter at Greenwich, held April 23. in the Third Year of his Reign, the Lord St. John, the Earl of Arundel, and Sir William Pager, were to peruse and make them agreeable to the King's other Proceedings, by the Affiftance and Advice of the Protector, the Duke of Somerset, and other Companions. This was follow'd by a subsequent Order pass'd in the Charter at Greenwich the Year after, that the Statutes should be reform'd and corrected as they thought expedient: And for the better Accomplishment of their Defign, at the next Feast, April 24. 5 Edw. VI. another Order commenc'd, impowering the Duke of Somerfet, the Marquess of Northampton, the Earls of Warwick, Arundel, Bedford and Wilts, to peruse and amend the Statutes and other Books of the Oider, which were brought to some tolerable Degree of Perfection; for thereupon a new Body was collected (in general very much altering the Laws of the Order) and publish'd March 17. Anno 7 Edw. VI. But this King within Four Months after expiring, Queen Mary, his Sister and Successor, the very first Thing she transacted was to abrogate and make them void; wherefore we need not mention them, as never in use and unrevived. For the Execution of which Purpose, she conven'd a Chapter at St. James's, the 27th of September following; and it was then decreed, that the said Laws and Ordinances, as inconvenient, impertinent, and tending to Novelty,

should be disannulled, and no Account to be made of them for the future; and for the quicker Execution, Sir William Petre (that Day admitted Chancellor) had Orders to see them speedily expung'd out of the Book of Statutes, and forthwith defac'd, lest any Memory of them should remain to Posterity; and only those of her Father, Hen. VIII. and his Royal Predecessors, should be retain'd.

In this Affair King Philip, her Husband, appear'd no less zealous; for on the 5th of August, 1 and 2 Philip and Mary, (which was the 3d Day after he had been invested with the Habit) himself being present at a Chapter at Windsor, it was ordain'd, That all Acts and Decrees in the Great Book, [i.e. the Black Book aforesaid] which were repugnant and disagreeable, either with the ancient and receiv'd Statutes of the Order, or else with the Laws of the Realm, should clearly be abolish'd and erased, by the Marquis of Winchester, the

Earls of Arundel, Pembroke, and the Lord Paget.

No sooner was Oueen Elizabeth fix'd on the Throne, but soon after, viz. on St. George's Day, in the second Year of her Reign, a View of the Statutes was committed, by Commission, to Four of the Knights-Companions, viz. the Marquis of Northampton, the Earls of Arundel and Pembroke, and the Lord Howard of Effingham, who were thereby impower'd to peruse and confider those Statutes with the utmost Care and regard, if any of them were repugnant to the Religion, Laws and Statutes of the Realm; and if any such were recorded, to represent them faithfully to the Sovereign, that she, in Conjunction with the Knights-Companions, might establish such Decrees concerning them as she should think fit; but that any thing was done in pursuance hereunto, doth not appear; for the Transcripts of her Father's Body of the Statutes, throughout the Time of her Reign, were presented to the Knights-Companions at their Installations; and the Practice of her Time was pursuant to the Direction therein, except in some few Things now and then added or alter'd at future Chapters, when there arose fresh Matters for fuch Expedients.

King James I. her Successor, revolv'd something towards a new Regulation; and in order to put it in Execution, the 14th of May, in the 9th Year of his Reign, decreed, That Commissionary Letters should be granted to the Earls of Nottingham, Worcester, Penibroke and Northampton, to empower them to examine the Registers and other Monuments which pertained to that Order; and where any Passage should be found obsolete or obscure, to make it conspicuous and clear; where Contrariety appear'd, fitly to reconcile it; yet with no Defign of innovating any Thing, but an Intention of renewing all, as near as might be, to the first Standard and most ancient Institution of the Order; faving always Power to himself, as Sovereign of the Order, to add or diminish any Matter (according to the Occasion) as it should seem agreeable to his Prudence for the Honour of this Most Noble Order. What Progress they made in this Commission, the Memoirs of that Time are filent in; but some few Years after, this Affair was reviv'd, and another was issu'd forth, to the Earls of Nottingham, Worcester, Southampton, Arundel and Montgomery, and the Viscount Liste, all Knights-Companions, dated April 26. in the 16th Year of his Reign; which Six, or any Four of them, were thereby constituted to take an exact Survey of all the ancient Statutes and Articles of the faid Order; and authoriz'd to call before them all fuch Persons, whether Officers of the said Order, or others, as could give any Light or Information concerning that Affair; and after a serious Deliberation, to pen down what in them they conceiv'd meet to be explain'd, and what to be added, whereby to render the Order more illustrious, that the same being presented to the Sovereign and the Society, at a Chapter holden, might be resolv'd on in part, or in all, to be put in Execution, if it feem'd so good to that King.

THIS Affair mov'd very flowly; but towards the latter End of his Reign, the Earls of Worcester, Montgomery, Arundel, Surry and Leicester, Five of the Six Commissioners above-nam'd, having held divers Conferences, and debated several Matters represented to them, and at a Chapter convened at Whitehall the 19th

of May, Anno 20 Jac. I. did present to the Sovereign certain Articles, subscribed with their Hands, which, for the Honour of the Order, they thought requisite

to be duly observ'd.

By the first of which they made Provision for a further Progression and Advancement of the illustrious Institution, in proposing, that every Year a Commission from the Sovereign should be granted, or continu'd to fuch Knights of the Order as the Chapter should pitch on, to deliberate and weigh all Affairs that fell under the Order, and that the Year after, an Estimate, by the Knights in Chapter, should be exhibited, of their Refolutions and Proceedings by Virtue of the said Commission. This, with Eight other Articles, were confirm'd by the Sovereign and Twelve of the Knights-Companions, the 22d of May following, in a Chapter held at Whitehall; and so prosperously their Endeavours succeeded, that on the Feast-day of St. George, at Windfor in the ensuing Year, the Earl of Worcester, (being then the Sovereign-Deputy) with Ten Knights-Companions more, gave their affent to Eight other Articles (most of them concerning the Alms-Knights) which the Morning after had the Approbation of the Sovereign; and before the Celebration of Divine Service, by his Deputy and Companions affembled in the Chapter-House, the Observation thereof was duly decreed.

King Charles I. design'd and endeavour'd the most compleat and absolute Reformation of any of his Predecessors; and at the Solemnity of St. George, held at Windfor the 6th of October, in the 6th Year of his Reign, He commission'd Nine Knights-Companions, viz. the Earls of Mulgrave, Pembroke, Montgomery, Arundel, Surry, Salisbury, Carlisle, Dorset, Holland, Berk Sbire and Suffolk, with command to affemble Four Times in a Year, to take into their Confideration the Affairs of the Order; all which, but the Earls of Mulgrave and Dorset, met at Whitehall the 2d of January following, where some few Matters fell under their Consultation. This Commisfion was seconded by one of a larger extent about Three Months after, and directed to the said Knights-Companions, or to any Eight, Seven, Six, Five or Four of them, empowering them to meet and devife, and

and exactly preponderate all the Statutes and Ordinances of the Order, as well such as were established at, the Foundation, as those that had been since made, by Explanation or Addition, and to weigh advisedly, whether any Thing had been enacted, that had caused Doubt or Ambiguity, or flood in need of any Change or Amendment; and if upon mature Deliberation by them. thus conven'd, there should appear any Contrariety or. Defect, for want of plain Expression, or other Omission, fit to be supplied, tending to the Honour of the Order, That then the Sovereign might, upon Repura of their Proceedings, resolve upon some general Declaration in Chapter, to reform and reduce into one Body. all the Statutes and Ordinances thereof, that the same being compiled and fettled in one perfect Model, might be so confign'd to Posterity, free from all future Questions and Doubts.

Nevertheless not any thing was done upon this Commission, the it stood in force even from the other to the 13th Year of this King's Reign; but where the Neglect lay History does not fully inform us, the is

may be conjectur'd by what follows.

AT the Feast of St. George, celebrated by Prorogation at White-hall, for the Year 1636. upon the 17th, 18th, and 10th Days of April, 1637. divers Petitions for Raformation, and reducing of Matters to their pristing Constitution, were presented to the Sovereign by the Chancellor, and read; some of which, more especially, tending to let off and encrease the Honour of the Order, were received and decreed by the Sovereign, and the rest referred to the said Knights-Commissioners, The first of those Decrees which at that time had its Sanction; was to revive and renew the Powers given in the former Commission; and thereupon a new one, dated the 7th of May following, was issued under the Great Seal of the Order, and directed to the Earls of Mulgrave, Darby, Pembroke, and Montgomery, Arundel, and Surry, Kelly, Salisbury, Dorfet, Holland, Barkshire, Suffolk, Lyndfey, Exeter, Marquis Hamilton, Duke of Lenox, the Earls of Darby, Mereton, and Northumberland, or to Three or more of them, to meet and consult of any Matters contain'd in the Statutes, or for Honour of the

the Order. These Knights-Commissioners were endow'd with all the plenary Powers given in the foresaid Commission, dated 6 Car. I. unto which was granted a further Addition, for the better effecting the Sovereign's Care: That Three or more of them should meet at the Sovereign's Court, and begin to put the said Commission in execution in Whitfon Week next ensuing, attended and affifted by the Chancellor of the Order, and all, or any other Officers, or such of them as they should fix on, or find serviceable. And being assembled, to have free Liberty to hear, propound, and debate of whatsoever shall fall under their Cognisance, or that they should conceive conducible to the Honour and perfect Establishment of so Illustrious and Noble a Body. And to prepare all Matters of such their Refolutions and Debates to be laid before the Sovereign at the next Feast of St. George, and so successively at every Chapter so appointed by him, to receive his full Determination, Approbation, and Royal Assent, with further Power to adjourn from time to time, after the first Opening and Reading of the said Commission; their Meetings to be in such Places, and on such Days as should seem most convenient to them.

Now who wou'd suppose, that after so Noble an Intention of the Sovereign, and his earnest Solicitude to iffue forth a second Commission, his hearty recommending and exciting their Deligence for a speedy Dispatch, and lastly, his expecting an Account of their Transactions the next Feast, these honourable Persons, Companions of the Order, should need a Spur to ac-

complish so laudable a Design; but it was so.

For altho' the Commission was opened at White-hall the 30th of May sollowing, in the Presence of the Earls of Pembroke and Montgomery, Salisbury, Holland, Marquiss of Hamilton, and Duke of Lenox, Commissioners; yet Sir Thomas Row Chancellor, in his Letter to Dr. Christopher Wren, dated the 4th of June, 1637. sadly complained, That it was much as he could do to draw together Five of the Knights-Companions, to general read the Commission, and this quast in transium, was in Consusion and Hurry, and all that was transacted was to appoint another Convention at Court in Mid-

fummer Week then next ensuing, and charge the Chancellor to prepare Matter (for Propositions and Observations upon the Statutes) sit for their Consultations against that Appointment, according to the Tenor of the Commission. And in another Place writes, That he found such Difficulty to procure Meetings, and as certain non Chalance in every one, as if it were but a ceremonious Affair, and so see the and the Officers should wait to little Purpose: And so indeed it fell out; for albeit he attended in Midsummer Week, according to their Direction, yet there was nothing dispatch'd, save only the adjourning of their Meeting to London.

Some little Progress was afterwards made in this Affair at White-hall the 8th of February following, where Three of them were present, viz. the Earls of Berk-fire, Lindsey, and Northumberland, who order'd the Chancellor, Register, and Garter, to prepare an Abbreviation of the Statutes, and reduce every thing of one Head into an Act, to keep up to Method, and avoid

Confusion.

THE 1st of February after, another Assembly of Seven of the Knights-Commissioners was held at White-hall, in whose Presence a few Points were debated; but little or nothing concluded.

§ 4. As concerning the Annals of the Order, or the Books wherein the feveral Resolutions and Decrees occasionally made in Chapters, and wherein other historical and ceremonial Matters relating to it are recorded, it will not be amiss to give some Account of them in this Place.

THE first, in Order of time, is an old Paper Book written in French, call'd Registrum Chartaceum, hitherto fortunately preserv'd in the Paper Office at White-hall, which probably was begun by John Comingham; for we find him, 1414. (a little before the Annals commenced) made Canon of Windsor, and Register of the Order, and in regard the same Hand-Writing is carry'd on from the Beginning of the Book down to 16 Hen. VI. inclusive, where follows an Hiatus till Anno 23 Hen. VI. that the Annals began to be set down with another Hand 3

Hand; and that he shortly after died in 1445. Henceforward these Annals are entred with promiscuous Hands, which may be presumed the proper Hand-Writings of the Registers of this Noble Order, as they succeeded each other in the Office.

AFTER we find Richard Sidnor mention'd in the Register Anno 16 Hen. VIII. (who subscribed his Name at the foot of every Leaf) the Annals were pen'd in one Hand until Anno 26 Hen. VIII. that Robert Aldrydge, D. D. and one of the Canons of Windsor succeeded him; and then 'tis evident the Writing also was changed to an old set Roman Hand, which ran on to the End of 29 Hen. VIII. in which Year he was advanced to the Bishoprick of Carlisle; and this Book breaks off in the 31st of his

Reign.

Besides this there is another Book that goes by the Name of the Black Book, wherein the Annals of the Order are transcribed in Latin, concerning which there pass'd a Decree, Auno 3 Hen. VII. that it should be fairly copy'd out, and afterwards that the Sovereign should be put in Remembrance of it; but neither of these Decrees was put in execution, nor was this confirm'd till towards the End of the Reign of King Henry VIII. This Book differs very little from the Registrum Chartaceum, for therein is nothing enrolled relating to the Order (except one of the Exemplars of the Founders Statutes, and a Catalogue of the first Twenty-five Knights-Companions) before the 4th Year of King Henry V. the Annals of the Order, until that time, being entirely loft. It hath the same Hiatus or Intervals from 16 to 23 Hen. VI. from 7 to 10 of Edw. 4. from 4 to 7 Hen. VII. and from 10 to 14 Hen. 7. It also runs parallel therewith for the most part, and that it was compil'd by Dr. Aldrydge, whilst he continu'd Register, is collected from some Passages in the Preface of all the Sovereigns, ending with King Henry VIII. The Transcription of this Book was finish'd Anno 13 Hen. VIII. for so far is written, as also the Appendix, with one and the same Hand; (in a middle-fiz'd Text) but Anno 32 Hen. VIII. another Hand appears, which, with some Variation, is continu'd to the End of 5 Edw. VI. where this Book breaks off.

THE Register of the Order was oblig'd to provide Two Books, and therein to enter the Ordinanced Statutes, and Acts of this Noble Corporation, one to be lodg'd at the Chapter House at Windsor, and call'd, Inden Windsories, and the other being a Duplicate of the former, to remain in his own Cuttody, ready to expose to the View of the Sovereign, whensoever he should demand it; this latter was called Aula Registrum.

As to the general Directions for Compiling these Books, and the Particulars they are to confift of we are inform'd from the said Statutes and Constitutions & for besides the Entry of all the Scrutinies taken in Chapter and Elections made thereupon, it is his Office to record the Penalties inflicted on Knights-Companions, and the Reconciliation of all Delinquents with other Acts, and their Causes appertaining to the Order, all which are decreed to be recited before the Sovereign and Knights-Companions at the Beginning of the Chapter yearly, if Occasion be, to correct and reduce into Method. Moreover he is to record all the Policies in War, Exploits, Transactions, and memorable Archievements, both of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, according as he can best attain the Knowledge of them, by his own diligent Search, or the AL fistance of Mr. Garter, which having confign'd to Writing from Year to Year, is to be peruled at the next Chapter by the Knights-Companions, for their Approbation and Correction; and being reiterated the second time in the Chapter, he is to see that they be fairly engroffed in the said Book, for a perpetual Remembrance.

AND because the time perfix'd for Rehearsal of these Particulars in Chapter, had in succeeding Years been imploy'd in other Affairs. In one of those Articles which the Knights-Companions exhibited to King Jac. I. the 19th of May, Anno Jac. R. 20. and satisfied the 22d of May following, it was decreed that nothing of this Nature, or any other Act in Chapter, should be registred before it had been perus'd and pass'd the Consideration of the then Knights-Companions, or at least Four of them, who when they should set Times apart to consult of the Affairs of this Order (for which they

they were chiefly commission'd) might then also make Use of such Opportunities as should give this Bufiness Dispatch with more Conveniency. Upon mature Confideration had of those Injunctions, the then Register at a Chapter held 19 Nov. 22 Car. II. presented the Continuation of the Annals of this Order, which he had ranged in order to register in the Liber Carolinus, and submitted them to the Approbation of the Knights-Companions, whom the Sovereign had commission'd to inspect the Affairs of the Order; which Tender, when they declin'd, he propos'd that it might pass the Examination of the Prelate; but they not giving their Afsent to it, in regard the Register himself was under the Obligation of an Oath, to deal with the utmost Fidelity in his Reports, it was decreed, That the faid Annals should be fairly recorded in the Book, without any further Inspection.

Busides the abovemention'd Particulars, there were Materials of another Nature, decreed to be collected by the Chancellor of the Order and Garter King of Arms, to be digested first, and after entred by the Register; for whereas one part of the Chancellor's Duty was to make a Narration every Year in Chapter, at the Feast of St. George, of the illustrious Exploits of the Knights-Companions, as well as the Actions that tend to eclipse their Glory; so the Register was to note these, and record them from a perpetual Æra or Memorial of

their Honour or Difgrace.

AND it is part of Garter's Duty diligently to enquire after the Valiant, Fortunate, and Renown'd Acts, both of the Sovereign and the rest of the Knights-Companions, and relate them with all Exactness to the Register, for his Engrossing: But how sparingly these are put in execution, the Annals themselves bear witness. However, Sir Edward Walker Garter-King has drawn up an Account of the shining Actions and Characters of the Knights-Companions, beginning with Thomas Earl of Strafford, and continuing it down to his Son, which he deliver'd Dr. Ryves the Register, for the Use aforedirected.

Among the Articles established at the Feast of St. George, 21 Jac. I. the last is, That the then Register should should compose a Book, wherein should be orderly transferibed the Form and Manner of all the Solemnities, Ceremonies, and Processions, at the Celebration of the Order; as also of taking down and offering the defunct Knight's Atchievements, that the Knights-Companions might have free Recourse to it; but such Book never was extant.

For the Safety and Preservation of the Annals, the Knights-Commissioners determined the 22d of May, An. Jac. I. 20. That a secure and convenient Place within the Castle of Windsor should be appointed, in which all Acts concerning the Order should be reposed, and to which every Knight-Companion at all times might have access. And upon the Remove or Decease of the Register of the Order, the Book, containing the Account of all such Transactions, should be committed to one of the Knights of the Order.

The second of these Books is called the Blue Book, so call'd, being bound in Blue Velvet; it begins with the first Year of Queen Mary, and ends at the 18th of King

Fac. I.

The third being bound in Red Velvet, is denominated the Red Book; it commences where the Blue Book leaves off, and treats of the like Acts and Entries, and is carry'd down to 14 Car. I. having first given a sull Account of the Installation of the Prince, afterwards King Charles II. And as to great part of this Work, it was perform'd by the elegant and judicious Dr. Matthew Wren, Bishop of Ely, and Register of the Order, whose excellent Pattern his Brother and Successor Dr. Christopher Wren hath copy'd in its following Tract. This Bishop compiled a MS. A. D. 1631. wherein, by way of Comment upon King Henry VIII's Statutes, he hath compendiously shewn what Alteration there hath passed in the Law of the Garter, a Work performed with great Judgment, and exceedingly tiseful to the Curious.

The fourth and last Book is, Liber Carolinus, and commences 1640. wherein the Annals are brought down to the beginning of 1670. by Rives, then Register. And in a Chapter conven'd at Windsor the 16th of April, Anno 13 Car. II. it was decreed, That there should be Two of these Books compiled, the one printed in Lutin, in the Custos of the Register at Windsor; and the other in

Bnglfk.

English, to be reserv'd at Whitehall, and call'd, Registrum

C A P. VII.

The Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

HE Habit and Enfigns of this most Noble Order are most eminently distinguishable and magnificent, and consist of these Particulars, viz. Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, George, and Collar; for as the Romans were very exact and particular in affigning each Degree a peculiar Habit and Vesture, by which the Quality and Rank of their Citizens might be discernable, the Distinction of Apparel was afterwards taken up by divers other Nations, whence every Military, as well as Ecclesiastick Order of Knighthood, did appropriate to it self a peculiar Dress, Ensign, or Badge, as a Mark of Distinction one from another, to set off the Lustre and Honour of their several Societies.

The four first, viz. the Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, and Hood, were assigned the Knights Companions, by the Founder, and the George and Collar by King Henry VIII. and all these together are called the whole Habit or Enfigns of the Order, which we shall treat of succinctly,

beginning with the Garter.

The Royal Garter challengeth the Preheminence, for from it this famous Order received its Denomination: It is the first part of the Habit presented to Foreign Princes and Absent Knights, and that wherewith they, and all other elect Knights, are first adorned; and of so great Honour and Grandeur, that by the bare Investiture with this Noble Ensign, the Knights are esteemed Companions of the greatest Military Order in the World.

The Materials whereof it was compos'd at first, is an Arcanum; nor is it described by any before Polydore Virgil, and he but in general: As to the ornamental Part of it, it was adorn'd with Gold and precious Stones, and had a Buckle of Gold at the End, to fasten it about

MÉ

Surcoat. Digitized by Google



The present Habits, Ensigns and Badges, belonging to the Officers of the Garter.



The Prelate & Chancellors Mantle.

Registers, Garters & Black Rods, Mantle.

Garters Scepter. Black Rod.



Chancellors Badge





Garters Badge Black Rods Badge



the Leg; but there's no doubt but it was wrought with rich Embroidery, and the Motto rais'd with Gold, Pearl, and fundry Sorts of Silk, as may be guest'd from the Garters anciently plac'd on the left fide of the Knights-Companions Mantles, and those other little embroider'd Garters, wherewith their Surcoats and Hoods were heretofore embellish'd.

Bur of those wrought in the last Age, we have more particular Satisfaction; for we find the Garter fent to Emannel Duke of Savoy, Anno 1 and 2 Philip and Mary, was fet with Letters of Goldsmith's Work, the Buckle and Pendant of the same, and on the Pendant a Ruby. and a Pearl hanging at the End. The Garter made for Francis II. Anno 6 Elizabeth, was richly wrought with Letters of Gold, fet off and garnish'd with Stones, the Buckle and Pendant weighing Three Ounces and an half-quarter, was richly fet with Rubies and Dis-The French King Henry IV. had a Garter of Purple Velvet embroider'd with Letters of Gold, and deck'd out with Diamonds and Rubies. And the Garter of Christian IV. King of Denmark, was embroidered with Gold and Pearls: But that Garter fent to Gustavas Adolphus King of Sweden, outvied all others conferr's by former Sovereigns, each Letter of the Motto being composed of small Diamonds; and for every Stop, L Diamond within a Range of Diamonds, above and below, on the fides of the Garter, and belides other Dismonds on the Buckle, and about the same, to the Number in all of 411.

THE Garter which King Charles I. wore upon his Leg at the Time of his Martyrdom, had the Letters of the Motto compos'd likewife of Diamonds, which amounted to the Number of 412. It came to the Hands of Captain Presson (one of the Usurper's Captains) from whom the Trustees, for Sale of the King's Goods, received it, and sold it to breson, sometimes Lord Mayor of London, for 205 l. But after the Restoration, the King's Attorney-General proceeding upon an Action of Trever and Conversion, Verdict was given for the King against him for 205 l. and 10 l. costs of Suits, in Trimity Term,

16 Car, IL

THE

The Motto of King Charles II. was fet with Diamonda upon Blue Velvet, and the Borders wrought with fine Gold Wire; the Diamonds which framed the Letters of the Motro, were Rose Diamonds, much of a Size or Proportion; but those which framed the Stops, Table-Diamonds; the Total which set each Letter, compos'd the Stops, llot Holes, and adorn'd the Buckle; the Table was Two Hundred and Fifty; the Hinge of the Buckle was pure Gold, and on it the Sovereign's Picture to the Breast, curiously cut in Flatslitch, crown'd with a Laurel and the military Garb of the sirst Roman Emperors; the Table or Pendant was Gold, and on the back-side thereof engrav'd St.

George on Horse-back encountring the Dragon.

This noble Enfign, the Garter, was at the Erection of the Order appointed to be wore on the left Leg, a little beneath the Knee, which Usage still presides: And the placing it thus, on the Sepulchral Portraictures of Knights-Companions, was an early Custom; for on the Alabaster Monument of Sir William Fitz-warin, who was interr'd in the North-side of the Chancel at Wansage in Com. Berks, 35 Edw. III. he lies there with his Surcoat of Arms upon his Breast, and the Representation of a Garter (but without Motto) carv'd upon his left Leg. In the same Posture lies Sir Richard Pembridge, elected a Knight-Companion, temp. Edw. III. and is portraicted on his Monument in the South-side of the Cathedral of Hereford, below the Pulpit, and encompass'd with a Rail of Iron-Spikes.

THE next Monument whereon the Garter was depicted, was that erected for Sir Simon Barley, (beheaded A.D. 1388.) and rear'd in the North-Wall near the Choir of St. Paul's, London. Thence-forward the Practice became more frequent, and then the Motto began to be cut thereon; infomuch that it is now the conflant and just Practice to do it, whenfoever the Knights.

Companions are exhibited in Effigies.

AND altho' this Enfign was first design'd in Ornament to the lest Leg, yet it was not confin'd so solely thereto, but was anciently us'd to incircle the Escutcheon of St. George's Arms, worn by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions on their Mantles, who within a

fmall space after us'd it to surround their own proper Coat of Arms, which their Successors have retain'd as their peculiar Privilège, permitting it to none but to their principal Officer, the Prelate of the Order.

THE first Example that occurs, is the before-mention'd of Sir Francis Burley, where, on the Front, towards the Head, is his own Arms empaling his first. Wife's, set within a Garter, (wanting the Impress;) but another having the same Empalement, (plac'd below the Feet) is surrounded with a Collar of SS. of

the same Form with that about his Neck.

THE Monument also of Joan, Wife of Ralph Nevil, Earl of Westmoreland, on the South-side of the Choir, in the Cathedral of Lincoln, bears the Arms of Nevil, empaling those of Joan, his Wife, (who dy'd A. D. 1410.) Incircled within a Garter, and fix'd on this Lady's Monument, Daughter to John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, is there such a Collar of SS, placed about & Square; but the Paint being saded, was render'd un-

intelligible.

ANOTHER antique Instance is that Escutcheon, Sable, Three Ostrich Feathers Argent, surrounded with the Garter, affix'd in the Glass-Windows of Greenwich-Church in Kent, by Humfrey, Duke of Glocester, and supported with a Greyhound and an Antelope. It is reported, these Three Feathers were the Ensign of King Henry IV. which were conferr'd by John of Gaunt, his Father, who bore them for his Device, and placed in a Full Sable, as here, but the Pens were powder'd with Ermin, for a difference from the Black Prince's Feather, which were Argent, as the King's Pen was Or, and the Duke of Somerser's Compony Argent and Azure.

THE Arms of Sir Lewis Robessart, Lord Bourchier, Knight-Companion, temp. Hen. V. we find encompass'd with a Garter on each side his Monument, in Westmin-

Ster-Abbey.

Ar the Interment of Richard Duke of York, Father to King Edw. IV. at every Corner of the Majesty-Escutcheon (set over the Image of the Defunct) was an Escutcheon of the Arms of France and England quarterly, and Four Angels Gold, holding the same within a Garter. And so some of the Funeral Escutcheons of John Vi-

feount Wells. (who dy'd 14 Hen. VII.) were surrounded with the Garter, as others bearing his Lady's Arms.

Anothe Interment of Thomas Duke of Norfolk, in Thetford-Abbey, (who dy'd 16 Hen. VIII.) there was provided: a Shield of his Arms within a Garter, and a Coronet affix'd over it; a Target also of the Arms of George, Earl of Shrewsbury, within a Garter, was born at his Funnyal, Anno 33 Hen. VIII.

IT was the Custom, (begun about the Reign of Hm. VII.) when the Obsequies of any Foreign Prince were celebrated in England, to paint an Escutcheon of fuch Prince's Arms within the Collar of the Order, whereof he was Sovereign or a Fellow-Companions as those of the French King, Charles VIII. celebrated at St Paul's, London, had Eleutcheons of the Arms of France, within the Collar of the Order of St. Michael, so each End of the Hearle; and when the Obsequies of John King of Portugal were salemniz'd at St. Paul's. there was, among others, one large Escutcheon of his Arms within the Collar of the Golden Fleece. The Fuperal Rites of the Emperor Charles V. being perform'd in Westminster-Abbey, 22 and 23 Dec. 1558. there were Ten great Escutcheons compass'd with Garters, to shew he was a Fellow of this Order: And upon the same Account, where Princes were Sovereigns of one, and Companions of another Order, their Hearles were hung with Escutcheons of their Arms, surrounded with the Collars or principal Badges of both those Orders; as at the Interment of Francis I. the French King, celebrated at St. Paul's, London, T Edw. VI. the Escutcheons were the Arms of France, encompass'd within the Garter of St. George, and Collar of St. Michael. At the Obsequies of Hen. II. of France, Anne I Eliz. at St. Panl's alfo, there were fome Escutcheons of his Arms, incircled both with the Garter and Collar of the Golden Fleece, having been a Knight-Companion of both these Orders: Under the Joysts was a Majesty Escutcheon of Black Taffaty of this King's Arms, within a Garten crown'd with an Imperial Crown, and in several Places of the Hearle were fasten'd other Escutcheons of his Arms within this principal Enfign of the Garter.

KING

King Hen. VIII. was the first that introduc'd into his Great Seal the Eschutcheon of his Arms incircled within a Garter, as may be seen placed on either side his Portraisture sitting on his Royal Throne; since him, all succeeding Sovereigns have born their Arms after that Manner, not only in their great and Privy-Seals, but in those other appertaining to their Courts of Jastice, and generally in all Matters where their Arms were visible (except Coins); in Imitation of whom, the Knight-Companions have done the like.

Bur there were An. 21 Car. 1. certain Half Crowns stamp'd in the West of England, containing the Sovereigns Arms, so encompassed, regally crowned and supported; and this was the first Money whereon the Royal Garter appeared. After him King Charles II. having an Eye to the Advancement of the Honour of this Order, caused the irradicated Cross of St. George encompass'd about with the Royal Garter to be publickly stamp'd in the Center of his Silver Coin, struck upon

the Recoinage of it, Anno 14. Car. 2.

THERE were other Medals heretofore stamp'd upon several Occasions, wherein the Garter was defignedly express'd, and enclosing Shields of their Arms; as that in the Year 1619. Frederick Prince Palatine of the Rhime, was crowned King of Bohemia, and Robert Cecil Earl of Salisbury created Lord Treasurer, both Knights Companions of this Noble Order: Moreover, Gold Rings have been cast into the Figures of Garters; the Ground on the outfide enamell'd with a deep Blue, through which the golden Letters of the Motto appearing, set them off with an admirable Beauty. And it seems such Rings were in vogue fince the Preface to the black Book of the Order makes mention of wearing the Garter on the Leg and Shoulder, and sometimes likewise suboins the Thumb, interdum Pollice gestare; by which we may naturally conjecture, that Gold Rings were formed into the Fashion of Garters, and bestowed by some new installed Knights upon their Relations and Friends to wear in Memorial of so great an Honour conferred upon them.

Among the Officers belonging to the Order the Prelate is permitted to bear his proper Arms (impaled with M those those of his See) within the Garter, and the rest only to wear the Badges of their Offices, surrounded with

the same to express their peculiar Relation.

Besides the Manner of bearing Arms, within the Garter of this Order, the Garter either in whole or part, hath been by Way of Armory, but without the Motto; as in the Seal belonging to the Office of Garter King of Arms, where the Garter (enclosing a Crown) is placed on a Chief, between a Lyon of England and a Flower de Lys of France. And to instance in Family, we find Argent Three Demy-Garters Azure, buckled and garnished, Or, granted by King Hen. VII. to his Servant Peter Nerborne, and sable a Garter, Or, between Three Buckles of the Second, to be born by Buckland or Bowland in Com. Northampton.

6. 2. THE second Ensign of the Order is the Mantle, which is the Chief of those Vestments which the Sovereign and Knights-Companions make use of upon all solemn Occasions relating to the Order. That this Pattern was derived to us from the ancient Greeks and Romans, is not at all to be disputed, since it so little varies in Fashion from their Pallium or Toga; for the Gregian Pallium was a fort of long Cloak, which only wanted a Collar or Cape, and the Roman Toga as proper to them, as the Pallium to the Grecians, and the Custom as Antique as Romulus himself; for he is recited by Plut arch to have worn it. The Pallium is more fully described to be a kind of upper Robe that covered the whole Body, made fast on the right Shoulder with a Fibula or Clasp. It was usually worn over the Tunica or short Coat, whence the Proverb Tunica Pallio propior, and is more particularly observed to have been a Garment fashioned without Sleeves, that reached down to the Ancles.

In describing this upper Robe, called the Mantle, (the Sovereigns being distinguished from the Knights-Companions, only by a long Train) we shall first set down its various Appellations it is mentioned by in the Records of the Order; Secondly, the Materials whereof it consists; Thirdly, the Colour; Fourthly, the Quantity; and last of all the Ornamental Trimmings, that nothing be omitted to satisfy any curious Enquirer. NAME.

NAME.

In the Founder's Statutes it is called Mantellum, and in Hen. V. Manteau, both which we render Mantle. But the Exemplar of the Founder's Statutes entred in the black Book, and the Statutes of King Henry VIII. call it Trabea, which Rosinus reckons among the different Kinds of Mantles or Gowns. And in 20 Art. of King Hen. VIIIth's Statutes, it is applied both to the Mantle and Surcoat; sometime it is stilled Chlamyda; sometime Stola; but in other Places more pertinently, Pallium and Toga.

MATERIALS.

THAT Mantle prepared for the Founder against the first Feast of this Order, appears to be fine Woollen Cloth, and it is not improbable this Material was chosen, rather than any other richer, to the Intent the Founder might give the Preference to our native Commodity, altho' there's permitted in the Statutes of Institution a permission for the Proxies of Foreign Princes to bring over with them Mantles of Silk and Velvet when they came to receive possession of their Principal Stalls, either because other Countries were better stored with such Commodities than our English Cloth, or that it might be more agreeable to represent the State and Grandeur of Foreign Princes, as accounting Silk or Velvet the nobler Representation.

WHAT Duration the wearing Cloth had, is not directly set down, but the first time we discover their Mantles to be of Velvet, is about the beginning of the Reign of King Hen. VI. which Sort of Silk hath thence remained until this Day. About this Period, 'tis observed, that the Mantles of Foreign Princes were made here of Velvet, for so was that transmitted to the King of Portugal, elected Anno 1346. Concerning the Mantles of the Knights-Companions, there is no doubt but they were of the same Materials with those made for the Sovereign, wz. at first of fine Woollen Cloth, and when the Sovereign exchanged it for Velvet, they followed his Example; but we cannot meet with equal Satisfaction in this Point, because the Knights-Companions provided this Robe at their own Expence; and

M 2

their private Accounts herein passing thro's formany Contingences, were of no great Durability. But their Surcoats were of the Sovereigns Donation, and consequently the Particulars of them remain on Record in

the Rolls and Accounts of the great Wardrobe.

The Colour of these Mantles is appointed by the Statutes to be Blue, and of this Colour was the Founders; by which, as by the Ground-work of the Royal Garter, it is not improbable he alluded to the Colour of the Field in the French Arms, which a few Years before he began to Quarter with those of England. But the Colour of the Surcoat was changed every Year, as will appear by and by. Of the same Colour were the Velvet Mantles, made temp. Hen. VI. who tho' he altered the Stuff, did not vary the Dye. It is apparent, that the blue Colour was retained to King Edw. IVth's Reign, for when this Sovereign transmitted the Habit and Ensigns of the Order to Julian de Medicis, the Mantle was of blue Velvet.

But in King Hen. VIIIth's Statutes there's no mention at all of the Colour of this upper Robe, save only of the Mantle, which the Proxy of a Foreign Prince was enjoined to bring with him when he came to assume the Stall of his Principal; which, tho' it does not come directly up to the Point, yet it is to be observed to be of blue Velvet. And it's highly probable that the blue Colour remained still to be used; for within a few Months after the compiling the said Statutes, it's plain, the Mantle sent to James King of Scotland, was of blue Velvet, and in the ancient Form of Admonition and Signification appointed to be spoke at the Investiture of Foreign Princes, and then in Plea it is called the Mantle of celestial Colour. Likewise the Mantle sent to Emanuel Duke of Savoy, 1 and 2 Ph. and Mar. was of the same Composure.

In Queen Elizabeth's Reign, upon what Ground History is filent, the Colour of Foreign Prince's Mantles was changed from Blue to Purple, for of that Colour were the Mantles sent to the French Kings, Charles IX. Anno. 6 Eliz. and Hen. III. Ann. 27 Eliz. So also to the Emperor Maximilian 9 Elizabeth, to Fredrick II. King of Denmark, An. 24 Eliz. to Joh. Casimire Count Palatine of the Rhine, Anno 21 Eliz. to Christiern IV.

King of Denmark, An. J. R. IV. But that sent to Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg in the same Year, was a mix'd

Co our of Purple and Violet.

Thus the Purple Colour came in Request, and continued till about the 12 of King Charles I. when he determining to restore the Colour of the Mantle to the primitive Institution, gave Directions to Mr. Peter Richaut, Merchant, to provide himself with a Quantity of rich blue Velvets from Genoa; and upon their arrival into England, fignify'd his Pleasure by Sir Thomas Rowe the Chancellor, That all Knights-Companions should purchase as much of the said Velvet as would furnish them with new Robes against St. George's-Day next ensuing; compliance to whose Will, all the Knights paid Obedience, at the Rate of Thirty seven Shillings a Yard, being the Price the Sovereign paid to Mr. Richaut for the Velvet of his own Robes. And the first Essay of these Mantles was to honour the Installation of the Prince, afterwards King Charles II.

AND because there were many Knights-elect to be inflalled after the Restoration, it was ordained at the Chapter held at Whitehall the 14th of Jan. Anno 12. Car. 2. (called to consider of the Preparations of the grand Feast then at hand), That Directions should be given to the Master of the Wardrobe to negotiate Abroad for excellent Velvets of Skie Colour, and Crimson, and other Materials agreeable for the Mantles and Surcoats, both of the old Knights-Companions, and those that were then to be installed; which was accordingly effected, and they were transmitted in time to accom-

modate them at the said Feast.

Tho' the just Number of Ells of Cloth for the Sovereigns Mantle at the first Institution are not set down, yet in the Total for his Mantle, Hood, and Surcoat, there was allowed ten Ells of long Cloth. The Mantle of King Henry VI. took up one Piece, five Ells and three Quarters of blue Velvet; and those sent to Frederick II. and Christian IV. Kings of Denmark; and to the French King, Henry III. contained each twenty Yards of Velvet.

This we find to be the Allowance for Foreign Princes, and are the more full and extensive, by reason of their M 2 long

long Train, which being more scanty in the Mantles of Knights-Subjects, eighteen Yards was sufficient to make one of them. The full Length of King Charles II. from the Collar behind to the end of the Train, was three Yards the Length of the foreside, one Yard and three Quarters from the Foot along the bottom to the sixing on of the Train, was two Yards, and from thence the Length or Compass of the Train, two Yards.

THE left Shoulder of each of these Mantles have from the Institution been adorned with a large fair Garter, containing this Motto, Honi soit qui mal y pense. These were distinguished from the lesser Garters, anciently embroider'd upon the Surcoats and Hoods of the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, by the Name

of Garters Gross.

WITHIN this Garter was the Arms of St. George, viz. Argent a Cross Gules, and was heretofore wrought in Sattin, with Gold, Silver and Silk; but in descending Times greater Expence and Magnificence became the Practice of the Order, for it was embordered upon Velvet with Damask, Gold, and sundry Sorts of Purls, Plates, Venice Twists and Silks, and the Letters of the Motto and Borders of the Garter composed of fair Oriental Pearl. The Garter fix'd upon the Mantle of King Charles II. was encircled with large Oriental Pearl, so were the Letters of the Motto and the Cross within the Garter, the Diameter of which was seven Inches, but the Depth from the upper Part to the end of the Pendant, ten Inches.

Temp. Hen. VI. it scems to have been the Mode to embellish the Mantle with three or four Velts drawn down the sides, and round the bottom, as it appears by the Monument of John Talbot Earl of Shrewsbury in the South-wall of the Chancel of Whitechurch in Com.

Salop.

About that Time the Lining of this Robe was white Damask, and afterwards white Sattin; but of later Date it was lined with white Taffaty, which continues yet in vogue.

For exemplary Ornament, the Mantle had fixed to its Collar a pair of long Strings, anciently woven of blue Silk only (called Cordons, Robe-Strings or Laces); but

of later Days, twisted round and made of Venice Gold and Silk of the Colour of the Robe, at each end of which hung a great Knob or Button, wrought over and raised with a rich Caul of Gold, and Tassels thereunto of like Silk and Gold.

AND at the Collar was usually fixed an Hook and Eye of Gold for its firmer affixing of it to the Shoulders.

9. 3. The Third Enfign of the Order is the Surceast or Kirtle, which altho' we find no Place for it in the Founder's Statutes, is nevertheless as ancient as the Mantle or upper Robe, that is only taken Notice of there, for such a Vesture King Edward III, then made, together with his Mantle and a Hood to celebrate the first Feast of the Order in.

Irs Original it owes to the Greeks and Romans; amongst whom this Garment had its determinated Tunica, and was worn next under the Toga, but amongst them was both narrower and shorter; it was girt close to the Body with a Girdle, and so sitted, that the Hem of it reached a little below the Knee, or to the middle of the Ham. It was the proper Mode of the Roman Citizens, and by its trimming were the three Degrees among them known; for the Senators Tunicks were embroidered or purshed over with broad purple Studs, the Knights with narrow ones, and the Plebeians plain.

In fetting forth the Surcoat, which was heretofore annually bestowed by the Sovereign or the Knights-Companions, and therefore called his Livery, we shall, as in the Description of the Mantle, treat somewhat of the Name, Materials, Colour, Quantity and Garnish-

ing of it.

As to the Name in the old Rolls of the great Wardrobe, it is stiled Roba, but more properly as the Founder's first Surcoat is called Tunica, which Name it bears in the red Book of the Order. In English it is rendred Gown, Kirtle, Surcoat, Undercoat and Robe. The Appellation of Gown is attributed to Surcoats of the Sovereigns and Foreign Princes, Temp. Hen. VI. Edw. IV. and Hen. VII. But fince, and very lately, it hath been bestowed also on the Surcoats of Knights-Companions; and that of Kirtle sometimes given to those sent to Foreign

reign Princes, as appears by the Books of Warrants in the great Wardrobe, but the rest are Terms of a later Date: As the first Mantles, so the first Surcoats were composed of Woollen Cloth, and tho' the Cloth of the Mantles was in some space after changed for Velvet, yet the Surcoats continued afterwards to be of Cloth, at least till after the Office of Chancellor of the Garter was erected by King Edward IV. as is manifest by the Precedent of this Livery in the Sovereigns great Wardrobe; but in process of Time they became Velvet, which sort of Silk is yet retained.

THE Colour of this Vesture was anciently changed every Year, commonly into Blue, Scarlet, Sanguine in Grain, or White. But the Colour of the Mantles remained the same as at the Institution, until Queen Elizabeth's Reign, and then it commenced Blue: And 'tis remarkable, that the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions, were always of the same Colour with the Sove-

reigns.

THE Founder's first Surcoat was of the same Cloth and Colour with the Mantle, viz. Blue, but in the 34th Year of his Reign he altered it to Black, and of the same Colour were those he conferred that Year upon these following Knights-Companions, viz. the Black Prince, the Earls of Ulster, Richmond and Salisbury, Edmund of Langly, Sir Richard la Vacle, Sir Hugh Wrotesly, Sir Reginald Cobham, Sir Bartholomew Burghest, the Lord Mohun, Sir Walter Manney, Sir Nele Loring, Sir Walter Paveley, Sir William Fitz Warin, Sir Miles Stapleton, the Earls of Stafford, Warwick and Suffolk, and Sir Thomas Ughtred: The Motive that induced him to pitch upon this fable Colour, was conceived to be a kind of Humiliation, because the Pestilence began again to spread its Malevolence, which had furiously raged Eleven Years before. The Surcoats which the Sovereign gave the Dukes of Lancaster and Clarence, and Fourteen other Knights, Anno 37. Edward III. were of Cloth, Sanguine in Grain. Those Twenty four provided for the Feat of St. George, Anno 7 Richard II. were Violet in Grain, whereof one was for the Sovereign, the other Twenty three for the Knights-Companions, following John King of Castile, and Leonard Duke of Lancaster, the Earls of Cambridge,

Cambridge, Buckingham, Derby, Kens, Warwick, Stafford, Salisbury, Northumberland and Nottingham, the Lords Newil, Baffes, and John Holland, Sir Guy Biyan, Sir William Beauchamp, Sir Thomas Percy, Sir Nele Loring, Sir John Sulby, Sir Lodowick Clifford, Sir Simon Burley, Sir Richard Burley, Sir Bryan Stapleton and Sir Soldan de la Trane.

Anno 11 Richard II. there were ordered against St. George's Feast Twenty three Surcoats of white Cloth for the Sovereign, and Twenty two Knights-Companions; and the 12 and 19 Year of the same King, the Sovereign bestowed on the same Persons Surcoats of long blue Cloth, after the Original Model. The Twenty two Surcoats made up for the Feast of St. George, Anno-1 Henry V. were of white Cloth; Anno -- Henry VI. the Sovereigns Gown or Surcoat was of Scarlet, as was that sent to the King of Portugal in the 13th Year of the fame King. Anno --- Henry VI. the Sovereign had white Cloth; and so were the Surcoats given to Twenty Knights-Companions more in the --- Year of his Reign. Afterwards the beforementioned Four Colours began to be disused, for the Surcoat presented to Julian de Medicis, temp. Edward IV. was purple Velvet, and towards the latter end of the Reign of King Henry VIII. and fince, it is upon Record, the Surcoats of the Sovereign and all the Knights-Companions were Crimson Velvet, nor did the Colour suffer a Mutation in the Surcoat, tho' King Charles I. restored the Mantle to its first primitive Colour, Anno 12 Regni sui.

THERE has been some disproportion in the Quantity of the Cloth allowed in the Provision against one and the same Feast, for Anno 34 Edward III. the Earls of Stafford, Warwick and Suffolk, as also Sir Thomas Ughtred had then for each of their Surcoats six Ells of Cloth-perhaps the tallness of their Stature required it) when the other Fisteen Knights were allowed but sive Ells, being the same Quantity the Sovereign's Surcoat

THE Dukes of Holland and Clarence, Anno I Henry V, with the Earls of Arundel, were allowed Eight Ells apiece, the Dukes of Bedford, Gloucester and York, the Earls of Westmorland and Warwick, the Lords Grey, Fire

had contained in it at the same time.

Fire Hugh and Roos, fix Ells apiece; the Earls of Dorfets with fix Barons and five Knights Batchelors, but five Ells apiece. Afterwards, when the Number of Ells of Cloth, Garters and Furrs came to be afcertained for each Degree, all the Knights-Companions (even the Prince of Wales) were not to exceed five Ells: But fince Velvet came in Plea, the Allowance for Surcoat and Hood hath been eighteen Yards, when the Surcoat reached down to the Feet; but now it being the Fashion to wear it shorter, the Allowance is shinted to Ten. The Length of King Charles Il's Surcoat was one Yard and an half, and of the Sleeve one Yard wanting a Nail.

THE Ornamental Trimmings of these Garments are next worthy of Note, especially at the Time of Instituting this Order, for they were then, and a long time after, powdered all over with little Garters, embroidered with Silk and Gold-Plate, in each of which was neatly wrought the Motto, Honi soir, erc. Besides, the Buckles and Pendants to those small Garters, were Silver gilt; of these Garters there were no less than 160 upon the sirst Surcoat and Hood made for the

Founder.

In King Richard II's Reign, the little Garters that adorned the Surcoats of the Sovereign, and the other Knights were wrought in Embroidery upon blue Taffato with Cyprus, and Soldat Gold and Silk of divers Colours, and the Letters Gold. And as the Sovereign was not limited in the Proportion of Cloth or Velvet for his Surcoat, no more was he confined to the Number of Garters, wherewith to adorn it; nor do I find that any of the Knights-Companions were, until the Precedent of the Livery of the Garter was settled, for Anno I Henry V. the Dukes of Holland and Clarence, the Earl of Arundel, the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester had each of their Surcoats adorned with 120 Garters, but the Duke of York and the rest wore but 100. The Settlement in the Precedent of the Livery was, in relation to Degrees of Honour, a greater or less Number of Garters: Thus.

A Duke - - - - 120
A Marquis - - - 110
An Earl - - - - 100
A Viscount - - - 90
A Baron - - - 80
A Baronet - - - 70
A Knight-Batchelor-60

ABOUT the Reign of King Hemy VI. the Sovereigns Number of Garters did not much exceed those which the Founder allow'd to himself at the Institution; for the Surcoat and Hood of the said King confished of 173; and the King of Portugal, Anno 13 Henry VI. 120 Garters. But this Drapery of their Robes became at length quite obsolete, perhaps when Cloth was altered to Velvet, and the plain Surcoat hath to this Day continued in Use.

WHILE these Surcoats remained of Cloth, they were lined with Bellies of pure Minever Fur, only the Sovereigns was pursed with Ermin; and of these, it seems, a like Proportion was at first stated to all the Knights-Companions, wiz. 200 Bellies. Yet in the Reign of King Richard II. some Difference began in the Allowance to the Knights-Companions, for a Baron, and all Degrees upward had 200 Bellies; but under a Baron 120 only. However, Anno 1. Henry-V. the Barons were tantamount to the Knights-Batchelors, for all Degrees above a Baron were allow'd, a Fur of 200 Bellies. But the Barons and Knights-Batchelors Furs were only 120 Bellies.

AFTERWARDS, by the Precedent of the Gatter, there was another Proportion limited, the Prince, a Duke, a Marquis, an Earl, had each of them Five Timber of pure Minever allowed to a Surcoat; but the Viscount, Baron, Baronet and Batchelor-Knights but Three Timber apiece. In time these Furs were disused, and the Surcoats came to be lined with white Sarcenet, to which, temp. Elit. white Taffaty succeeded, and that

Mill continues.

WHAT became of the old Surcoats, fince the Knights-Companions had new ones every Year, the Black Book of the Order informs us, That on the Eve of the Feaf of St. George, the Knights wore to Vespers, the Sovereigns Livery or Surcoats, used by them the preceding Year, which after that Night they threw off, (for the new Surcoats were worn on the Feast-Day); but the Ensigns and Ornaments of this Kind we're disposed of

to the Use of the Colledge. THE Hood and Cap comes in the next Place to be spoken of, which Hood in King, Henry VIII's Statutes, and the Black Book of the Order is called Humerale; but in the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe, Capucium. In the French it is Chaperon, a Word used in the Statute, Anno 1. Richard II. C. 7. and also retained in the Old English Copy of Henry VIII's Statutes made of his Reign, and annexed to this Treatife. They were anciently wore for Defence of the Head against the Inclemencies of Weather, but of later Times Caps and Hats have supplied their place. How they sat upon the Head, may be observed in the Portraitures of the first Founders; as also with some Variety of Fashion in succeeding Ages: Yet is not the Hood quite thrown by, fince 'tis still kept reclining upon the Back, almost like a Pilgrim's Hat.

THIS Hood was ordained, and is yet retained as part of the Habit of this most Noble Order. And tho' neither it nor the Surcoat is mentioned in the Statutes of Institution, or in either its Exemplars, nor doth King Henry V. lay any Stress upon it, yet it is of equal Antiquity with the rest, as appears from the Rolls of the great Wardrobe, and Henry VIII's Statutes have made remarkable Observation of it, for the Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, and Collar are called the Habit of the Order: And in the Black Book, Anno 22. Henry VII. at the Investiture of Philip King of Castile, the Mantle, Kirtle, Hood

and Collar are expressly called Whole Habit.

Ir was heretofore, and now is generally made of the same Materials as the Surcoat, and was anciently trimmed and set off with a small Proportion of Garters lined with Cloth of a different Colour, and such as would best strike the Sight; but now with Taffaty, as is the Lining of the Surcoat.

As to the Cap, which was instituted to succeed the Hood; it hath been, and yet is, fashioned of black Velvet.

Velvet lin'd with Taffaty; but the Figure hath several Times varied; for Temp. Henry VIII. it was flat, in Queen Elizabeth's Reign it was a little raised in the Head; but in King James's Time they were much more high-crown'd. This Cap hath been usually adorn'd with Plumes of White Feathers, and Spriggs, and bound about with a Band set thick with Diamonds; so was the Cap for the Installation of King Charles II. and sometimes the Brims have been tack'd up with a large and costly Jewel.

THIS Custom of wearing Caps and Feathers at the Grand Solemnities of the Order, had, for some Time, about the Beginning of King James I. Reign, been omitted, and thereupon, in a Chapter held the 13th of April, Anno 10. Jac. I. this commendable Custom was

re-establish'd.

To these may be added the Cross of the Order encompass'd with a Garter, which by the Sovereign was ordain'd the 27th of April, 2 Car. I. to be worn upon the Lest Side of the Cloaks, Coats, and riding Cassocks of the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, of the Prelate and Chancellor at all Times, when they were not adorn'd with their Robes, and in all Places and Assemblies (but not embellish'd with Pearls and Stones) that the wearing thereof might be a sufficient Indication to the World, of that Height of Honour they arriv'd to from the said most Noble Order, instituted for Persons of the greatest Merit and Worth.

And it was not long after e'er the Glory or Star, as it was usually call'd, having certain Beams of Silver, that shot out in Form of a Cross, was introduc'd and annex'd to it, in Imitation (as thought) of the French, who after the same manner wore the chief Ensign of the Order of the Holy Ghost, being the Representation

of a Dove irradiated with such like Beams.

AND whereas some Painters affirm the Symbol of the Holy Ghost to be thus adorn'd congruous enough; yet censure it improper for a Garter, let them consider that King Edw. IV. erected his White Rose with the like Glory, whereof both the Stone Work and Wood Work of St. George's Chapel in Windsor, manifestly illustrate, whose Antiquity makes a Precedent for it long before

the Institution of the Order of the Holy Ghost; but this King assum'd this Device upon appearance of three Suns, which suddenly united together into one immediately, before his successful Victory at Mortimer's-Cross, a happy Era he thought himself oblig'd to perpetuate. And they mistake who suppose it to be the Garter that is thus irradiated, whereas it is fomething else more worthy of the Glory, for from it, not the Garter, do the Rays diffule, viz. the inclos'd Cross of the Order, celebrated as glorious, fince it darted its bright Beams from Heaven, when it appear'd to Constantine the Great; as the same is represented on a Silver Medal: On the one Side whereof was a Buft in profile, or fide Face of King Charles I. and on the Reverse, this Badge of the Order, within a Gatter, inscrib'd, Honi, &c. a Cross irradiated. dispersing its Beams in a Rhombular Form of Eight Angles, beyond the Orbit or bounding Lines of the faid Garter, having for Circumscription, Prisci deeus Ordinis Auffum, 1629.

§ 5. HAVING finish'd our Discourse concerning the Robes of the Order, we shall speak of the Robes and Hoods affign'd to the Queen, Knights-Companions Wives, and other great Ladies, by the Donation of the Sovereigns, fet off and embellished with Minute Garters, and lin'd with Rich Furs, which Robes they were adorn'd with during the Solemnity of the Feast of St. George, a Custom almost as ancient as its Institution. The first Mention we find recorded of the Feminine Habit occurs, Anno 7. R. II. when the Queen, the Sovereign's Mother, the Dutchess of Lancaster, the Countesses of Cambridge, Buckingham, Pembroke, Oxford, and Salisbury, the Ladies Philippa and Catherine, Daughters to the Duke of Lancaster, and the Lady Mohun had such kind of Robes and Hoods provided for them. They were made of Cloth, Violet in Grain, like as the Sovereign and Knights-Companions that Year, the Robes lin'd with Fur, but the Hoods with Scarlet, and both embroidered over with little Garters, and the Proportion of Cloth, Furs, and Garters, were Aated according to their several Ranks and Degrees; for the Queen had Eight Ells, and Half an Ell of Scarlet

Scarlet for the Lining of her Hood. The Sovereign's Mother had allow'd her one whole Piece, and a double Proportion of Scarlet; but from the large Quantity it is conceiv'd she had Two Robes and Hoods made at this time: Besides, the particular Number are but Eleven Persons, and cannot else reach the Total of the Robes that were made up and expressy set down to be Twelve. The Dutchess of Lancaster had the Allowance of Half 2 Piece, and Half an Ell of Scarlet; the Countess of Cambridge Seven Ells of Cloth and Half an Ell of Scarlet, and the rest of the Ladies the same Proportion of Cloth with the Knights-Companions, i. e. each Five Ells a-piece, and Half an Ell of Scarlet. According to their Cloth was also their Proportion of Mineyer; the Queen's Allowance was Two Furs, each containing Three Hundred Bellies of pure Minever; the Sovereign's Mother had twice that Proportion, the Dutchels of Lancaster, and Countess of Cambridge had the same Allowance as the Queen; but all the rest of the Ladies had only one Fur of Two Hundred Bellies. Befides the embroidered Garters to deck out the Twenty-four Surcoats of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, and the Twelve Robes for the Queen, and other Ladies, amounted to the Number of 2900.

AGAINST the Feast of St. George, Anno. 11. R. U. there were prepared Fifteen Robes and Hoods for the Queen and other Ladies, of the same Livery and suit with the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, wit. White long Cloth, and Blue Cloth for the Lining of their Hoods, bearing the same Proportion in all Things as the former, Anno 13. Rich. II. the Ladies Robes and Hoods were Sanguine Cloth, and the Lining of their Hoods Cloth in Grain. And in the 10th Rich. II. they were Blue Cloth, and long Cloth in Grain for Lining their Hoods. In both these Years we find the Dutchess of Aquitaine had double the Proportion of Cloth allow'd her (as had also the Dutchess of York) viz. Fourteen Ells, (the Queen having then but the former Allowance of Eight Ells) and yet her Proportion of Lining, both for the Robe and Hood, was no more

than allow'd the Queen.

Bur

Bur Anno I Henry V. the same Quantities of Cloth, Minevers, and Garters, were the same to Ladies of all Degrees, and that was to each Five Ells of White Woollen Cloth, only the Queen-Mother had Eight Ells of White Cloth and Eight Ells of Black Cloth, a Fee containing Two Hundred Bellies of Minever, and an Hundred embroidered Garters, and 12 Henry VI. the Master of the great Wardrobe was commanded to make ready the like Livery, both for Colour of Cloth, number of Ells, Bellies of Minever, and Garters, for the Countess of Suffolk, against the approaching Feast of St. George.

A plainer Narrative is made of these Liveries, Anno 16 Edw. IV. when at the Feast of St. George at Windesor, the Queen, the Lady Elizabeth, the King's Daughter, and Dutchess of Suffolk, the King's Sister, had for their Livery Murrey Gowns embroidered with Garters.

BESTDES these Robes worn by the Ladies at the Festivals of the Order, there seems to be some Imitation of wearing a Garter also on their Lest Arms, as the Knights did on their Lest Leg, as it is observed on the Countess of Tankervile's Monument, where she is so

pourtray'd.

AFTER a long Disuse of these Robes, Anno 14 Car. I. there was an endeavour to restore it; for the Deputy Chancellor sollicited the Sovereign in Chapter, That the Ladies of the Knights-Companions might be granted the Privilege to wear a Garter of the Order about their Arms, and an upper Robe at Festival Times, according to ancient Usage, upon which Motion the Sovereign gave Order that the Queen's Pleasure should be known herein, and the Affair left to the Ladies particular Request, and the Year ensuing, upon the Deputy Chancellor's Report at another Chapter at Windesor, it was then left to a Chapter to be called by the Knights-Companions, to preponderate of every Circumstance, how it were fittest to be effected for the Honour and Lustre of the Order; which was appointed to be held at London about All-hollantide next; But the unhappy War breaking out, this Matter entirely broke off.

6 6. THERE remains now the Collar and George, brought in by King Henry VIII. And first, of Collars in general, which is an Ornament not of late, but ancient Invention, and the wonderful Consent of most Nations plead for it: Sacred Writ sets down the Collar of Gold for one of the Ornaments Pharach conferr'd upon Jeseph. The Images of Isis and Ofiris were represented with such like Collars, in a manner, extending to their Shoulders, as Kircher informs us. Their Workmanship seems wonderfully curious, being intersected with various Lines, and divided with Tablets and precious Stones. Collar was of an illustrious Original among the Romans, and gave Denomination to the Family of Torquati, doscended from L. Manlius, whom the Soldiers surnam'd Torquatm, because he fought with a Champion of the Gauls, Anno V. C. 392. and, having foil'd him in fight, cut off his Head, and then pluck'd off his Collar, bloody as it was, and put it about his own Neck. In further Memory of which Action were found several Roman Coins referring to L. Torquatus, Consul with L. Cotta, Anno V. C. 688. And it's remarkable that when one of another Tribe was adopted into this Family, he did also assume this Badge of Honour, as in the Coin of D. Junius Silanus, tho' the Fashion of the Work somewhat differ'd from the former.

In pristine Times none but Kings and Princes wore Collars, and therefore their Use seems of Dignity and Power, as is evident from Daniel, where the Assurance Kings used this Ornament. Afterwards Men samous for Wisdom and Council, had them as a distinguishing Badge, as in the Example of Joseph, and from the Proclamation of Belsbazzar King of Babylon, who proposed it as a Premium to him that could interpret the Hand-Writing upon the Wall. And Men samous for Military Atchievements had it conferr'd upon them, in Recompence of their Merits; thus Collars were of the Number of the Dona & Premia Militaria among the the Romans, and the Honour of receiving them thought worthy to be consign'd to Posterity in Marble Inscriptions. From them the later Emperors received it, and we read of investing a Knight of the Holy Sepulchre with a

Collar at his Creation; where, as foon as the Ceremony of his Ordination is over, the Padre Guardian Kissesthe new Made Knight, and puts about his Neck (according to the mode of the Ancients) a Golden Collar, with a

Cross hanging at it.

. Most aptly therefore have the Sovereigns of Military Orders amnex'd this Ornament of the Collar to their Habit, and conferr'd it on the Fellows and Companions, many of whom have moritoriously deserv'd it for their great Wisdom and valurous Exploits, and for this reafon it was instituted in additional Glory to the Ensigns of the Garter, compos'd in a peculiar manner, in Relation to the Name and Title; to the wearing of which the Sovereign oblig'd both himself and Knights-Companions, and his and their Successors.

This Collar was ordain'd to be of Gold Thirty Ounces Troy weight, but not to exceed it; howbeit that Collar fent to Gustavus Adolphus, King of Swedon; weigh'd Thirty-four Ounces and a Quarter, and that of King Charles I, 35 Ounces and an Half; which, after his Sufferings, fell into the Hands of Thomas Harrison, one of Oliver's Major-Generals, and was by him delivered to the Trustees for Sale of the King's Goods: They, 1649. sent it to the Miss, with divers of the Rogalia, to set the Stamp on work for the first Gold that the upstart Common-wealth coin'd.

IT was appointed by King Henry VIII's Statutes, that this Collar should be composed of Pieces of Gold in Fashion of Garters, the Ground enamelled Blue, and the Letters of the Motto Gold; in the midst of each Garter, Two Roses plac'd, the innermost enamelled Red, and the outermost White, contrarily in the next Garter, the innermost Rose enamelled White. and the outermost Red, and so alternately; but of

later Times these Roses are wholly Red.

THE Number of these Garters are so many as be the ordain'd Number of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions; at the Institution they were Twenty-fix, being fasten'd together with as many Knots of Gold, and this Mode hitherto has continu'd invariable; nor ought the Collar to be adorn'd or enrich'd with precious Stones, (as the George may be) fuch being probibited by the Law of the Order.

Ar the Middle of the Collar before pendant, at the Table of one of the Garters in the Collar is to be fix'd the Image of St. George arm'd fitting on Horseback, who having thrown the Dragon on his Back encounters him with a Tilting-Spear. This Jewel is not encompast'd with a Garter or Row of Diamonds, as in the lesser George; but in round Relief. It is allow'd to be beautified and sett off with Diamonds and other Enrichments, at the Pleasure of the Knight-Companion who possessed it, and upon that Score it hath been frequently adorn'd with Variety of costly Work, whereon the Diamonds, and other precious Stones, being set to that Advantage as might, upon its Motion and Agitation, dart forth

resplendent Lustre.

BEFORE the Establishment of this Article by King Henry VIII. it appears that the Knights-Companions were invested with Collars at their Installations, for the Black Book makes mention of a Collar among the Endigns of the Garter, wherewith Philip King of Castile was invested, Anno 22 Henry VII. but whether a Collar of SS's, or of another Model, is not specifi'd: Nevertheless this Scruple is in part clear'd up by an old Memorial of the Ceremonies, at the Creating-Henry Lord Stafford Earl of Wilssbire, I Henry VIII. where it is said in the Annals, that after he was invested with the Robes of his State and Dignity, the Collar of the Garter was put about his Neck at constituting him a Knight of the Order. And to make it more conspicuous in a Vellum Book of the Statutes sent to Maximilian the Emperor, Sign'd 1508. by the Register T. Rowthale, and in another of Edward Stanley Lord Monteagle, elected ann. 6. Hen. VIIL the Forty First Article, enjoins a Collar to be worn by each Knight-Companion expressly called the Collar of the Order, which the it be not in all Respects consentient to that prescribed by King Henry VIII's Stasutes, yet there is not much Variation, and 'tis reported to be a Gold Collar coupled together by several Pieces of Links, in Fastion of Garters, with a Vermilion Rose, and the Image of St. Goorge hung thereat. The Reason of the Knights-Companions wearing it at the Times appointed, the License for putting it to mending, the Command not N 1

to enrich the Collar, but the George only; and under a Penalty not to fell, pawn or alienate it upon any Necessity whatfoever, are wholly the same as was afterwards enjoyn'd by King Henry VIII. So that he did but only annex to his Body of Statutes a Decree, which for the greatest part had been put in practise before. In the 11th Hen. VIII. upon Interpretation of the Eleventh Arricle of the Statutes, the Collar is there enumerated as part of the entire Robes that a Knight-Companion is oblig'd to wear, for a more convincing Proof, That the Collar of Garters was used before King Henry VIII's Reign, the Monument of Sir Giles Danbeny plainly Delineates (who departed 22 Henry VII.) in Wesiminster-Abbey, where his Portraicture in the Robes of the Order is adorned with fuch a Collar as King Henry VIII's Statutes do afterwards describe.

As the Garter sent to Gustarm Adolphus King of Swedin, so the great George (pendant at his Collar weighing Seven Ounces) was set with large and resplendent Dia-

monds, to the Number of Eighty-Four.

In what Regard this Noble Enfign of Honour the Collar, hath been with the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, not only of the Order of the Garter, but other Military Orders, may be collected from the Pictures of some of them, as well as from their Seals, Coins, and Medals, for in these they have been pleased to exhibit their Effigies and Escutcheons of Arms; and omitting Foreign Examples, the Collars, both of the Garter and Thisth, were expressed in the Coronation Medal of King Charles I. in Sotland, 1633. the in that of his Coronation at Westminster, and afterwards in that of King Charles II. 1661. the Collar of the Order of the Garter are only put over their Royal Robes.

THESE Ornaments of the Collars, have been affix'd fometimes encircling the Shields of their Arms; and in a Seal of Charles the Bold. Duke of Burgundy, Sovereign of the Order of the Golden Fleece, plac'd to an Instrument dated, 1470. it is worthy of Remark, that Collar adorns the Neck of the Lyon of Flanders; but the Sovereigns of the Garter usually encompass'd their Arms, not within the Collar of the Order, but the Royal Garter, that being its principal Ensign; and some-

sometimes, having no Shield of Arms, the void Space

within the Garter, exhibits their Arms.

OBSERVABLE is the Scal of Charles Count Palatine of the Rhine, wherein is a Shield quarterly of the Palatinate and Bavaria, obscuring the Lyon Guardant its Supporter, his Four SS's only appearing quadrangularly, and his Head a top enfign'd with an Electoral Crown; this Shield is encircled both within the Garter and Collar of the Order, and is the first Example wherein both these Enfigns are jointly together. It is very frequent to express the Collars of different Orders together: Thus I have seen the Arms of Robert Dudley Earl of Leicester, entour'd within the Garter, and a Collar of the Order of St. Michael, having been Knight of these Orders, and the Funeral Atchievement of the late James Hamilson Douglas Duke of Hamilton, had the Garter and a Collar of the Thiftle about it. And in a Plate under the Effigies of the Duke of Aspernons, a Shield of his Arms quarter'd, is encompass'd with the chiefest Ensigns of those Three Orders, whereof he was a Brother and Companion, viz. with the Garter and the Collars of St. Michael and the Holy Ghost. And the older the Order is in the Roll of Antiquity, whose chief Enfign is there represented, the nearer ought it to be plac'd to the Eleutcheon of Arms, being the more Honourable Post. A Mistake was committed in the marshalling these Collars, when the Duke of Chevereux affixed it over his Stall at Windsor, the Collars of St. Mithael, and the Holy Ghost are plac'd nearer to his Escutcheon than that of the Garter.

§ 8. And whereas we have spoke of another kind of Collar, call'd a Collar of SS's, worn as Badges of lower and inferior Honour, it will not be amiss to inform our Judgment in other Affairs concerning them. Wicelins informs us from a Book in the Library of Fulda, where (in the Life of the Two Brothers Simplicius and Faustinm, both Senators, and suffer'd Martyrdom under Dioclessian) there is a Description of the Society of St. Simplicius, consisting of Noble Personages in their own Families, and describing the Collar wore as the Badge of it says, thus: It was the Custom of those Persons to wear about their

their Necks Sibver Cellars, compos'd of double SS's, which denote the Name of Saint Simplicius, between these double SS's. The Collar consisted of Twelve small Plates of Silver, in which were engraven the Twelve Articles of the Creed, together with a single Trefoil: The Image of St. Simplicius hung at the Collar, and from it Seven Plates, representing the Seven Gifts of the Holy Ghost. As to the manner of their Martyrdom, they were bound together by the Neck to a Stone,

and thrown over the Bridge into the River Tyber.

Ar what Time the Collar of SS's came into England is not fully determin'd, but it will appear at least Three Hundred Years fince, and worn as an Ornament for Women, as well as Men; for on a Monument in the Collegiate Church of Warwick, the Figure of Margares, Wife to Sir William Peiso (faid to be interr'd Temp. Edw. III.) hath a Collar of SS's drawn about, and fet close to her Neck, which the Sculpture in The Assignities of Warwickshire, by mistake, represented like a Ruff. There was also a Collar of SS's about the Neck.

of Sir Simon Burley's Statue in St. Paul's London.

In the ancient Creation of an Esquire in England, part of the Ceremony was the King's putting about his Neck a Silver Collar of SS's. And Solden, in his Titles of Honour contemns not the old Ballad, The Tunner of Tamworth, to prove the Creation of Esquires in King Edw. IV's Reign, by conferring such Collars on them. But that the Golden one was the undoubted Badge of a Knight, as may be instanc'd by many undeniable Examples, deduc'd from the Monuments of fuch Persons, Temp. Hen. VI. Ed. IV. Hen. VII. Hen. VIII. and fince, and fo legally appropriate thereto, that in the Act 24 H. VIII. made for Reformation of Apparel, there is a Proviso entred, That Knights, notwithstanding, might publickly wear a Gold Collar of 88's, tho' fince it is grown obsolete and useless. Favin tells us that our Han. V. inflituted an Order furnam'd Knights of the 88's, on the Day of the Martyre St. Crispine and Crispinnus; which tho' he found nothing of it in our English Mistorians, yet from the Chronicle of Juvenal des Ursms, where he treats of the Battle of Agincours, he collected this following Relation.

THE

"THE King of England exhorted his Men, and commanded, That if any had trespase'd against anose ther, they should be reconciled and confess'd to the Priests, otherwise no good Success wou'd accrew to them in their Attempts. He advised them to be civil in their March, and to do their Duty well, and agreed upon these Conditions, That those of their Company who were not of gentle Extraction he wou'd make so from the Fountain of Honour, and give them Warrants, that for the future they should enjoy the Privileges the Gentlemen of England had; and to the End they might be distinguished from on thers, he granted them leave to wear a Collar powder'd with the Letter S."

Among the Variety of Collars of SS's now in vogue, there are these following: The Lord Mayor of London's Collar is compos'd of Gold, having a Knot (like one of those that tye the Garrers together in the great Collar of the Order) inserted between Two SS, and they again situated between Two Roses, with a White Rose, within a Red, and in the Middle before the Breast is a large Portcullis, whereat hanges most rich Jewel sets.

with large Diamonds.

THE Collars of the Lords Chief Justices of both the Benches, and the chief Baron of the Exchaquer, are (in Memory of the said St. Simplicians, a Senator, and consequently a Gownman) form'd of the Letter S, and a Knot alternately, having a Rose set in that part of it which falls out to be in the Middle of their Broaks, and another on their Backs; the Five Flowers of these Roses.

are constituted of Five large Pearls.

Those Collars, which appertain to the Kings and Heralds of Arms, as well as to Serjeants at Arms, having been bestow'd by former Kings, and renew'd to them by King Charles II. to be worn upon Days of solemn Attendance, are compos'd of SS's link'd together. In the Middle of the Breast is a Rese, at each of which hange Three small Drope of Silver; but the SS's in the Collars worn by the Kings of Arms are made somewhat larger than the other, and in that part lying on either Shoulder, is a Postcullis taken in between the SS's, which are wenting in the 19st.

N 4

THE general difference of the Collars appropriate to the before-named Degrees, is this; Knights have allow'd them Collars of Silver gilt, but Esquires only Silver; and therefore in the Creating of an Herald, in part of that Ceremony, he is made an Esquire, by putting on him a Collar of SS's of Silver; and so is a Serjeant at Arms.

THE Kings of England have sometimes been pictured with a Collar of SS's about their Arms, in like manner as the Garter doth surround them, as appears from an Impression of King Henry VIII's Privy Signet; whereon his Royal Arms crown'd are encircled with a Collar of SS's, to the lower End of which are affix'd Two Portcullisses.

5 9. WE come now to the leffer George of the Order; and we do not find that the Effigies of St. George was at any time worn by the Sovereign or Knights-Companions, before the Breast or under the Arm, as now used till the 13th of Henry VIII. But then that King decreed in a Chapter held at Greenwich, the Morrow after St. George's Day, That every Knight should wear loofely before his Breast the Image of St. George in a Gold Chain, or otherwise, in a Ribband, the same to be fasten'd within the ennobled Garter, for a manifest Distinction between the Knights-Companions, and others of the Nobility and Knights, who, according to the Mode of those Times, wore large Gold Chains, the ordinary Ensigns of Knighthood. And thus the wearing the Medal or Jewel, usually call'd the leffer George, to distinguish it from the other Work at the Collar of the Order, first receiv'd the Injunction, and hath fince been frequently used.

THIS George was, for the most part, pure Gold curiously wrought, but divers of them were exquisitely graved in Onyx's and Agats, and with such a happy Collection of the Stones, that heightned and received their Beauty by the Skill of the Artisicer, in contriving the Figures and History, the natural Tincture of the Stones have so fitted them with Colours for Flesh, Hair, and every thing else, even to Surprize and Admiration. In this Jewel is St. George represented in a Riding

Posture encountring the Dragon with his drawn Sword.

By the last Article of King Henry VIII's. Statutes, it was allowed to be enriched at the Pleasure of the Posseffor, (as is the great George) which for the most Part hath been curioully enamell'd, and the Garter about it fett with Diamonds. And of what weight and bigness these leffer George's were, may be gather'd from that fent to the French King Charles IX. being an Ounce and an half and half quarter Weight. The Variety of Workmanship in those Gold Chains whereat this Jewel hung, was usually great, according to the Fancy and Pleasure of the Persons for whom they were wrought. But within a short Space, wearing the lesser George in Silk-Ribbands, as well as Gold-Chains, was promiseuoully us'd and ad Libitum. (So were the Symbols of Foreign Orders, as divers Coins and Medals declare.) But the Colour of these Ribbands when they came first to be wore, was black. John Dudley Viscount Lisle, the Lords St. John and Parr, so used them at their Investiture, 35 Henry VIII, and several Pictures of other Knights-Companions about that time confirm the same. final Chain whereat hung the leffer George transmitted to Emanuel of Savoy, Ann. 1 & 2 Ph. & Mar. was formed of twelve Pieces of Gold, in every of which was lett three small Diamonds, and of twelve other like Pieces. wherein were three Rubies and twenty four Pearls.

It appears by a Letter of Sir Richard St. George, Kt. Clarencieux, dated July 10th, 1627. that the blue Ribband had some Years before been additional to the Ornament of the Order; and 'tis reported, that Robert Earl of Essex observing in France the Jewels of the Order of St. Michael and St. Esprit worn in blue Ribbands, upon his return was the principal motive those Ribbands whereat the George hung, were exchanged into that Colour. And in a Picture of Queen Elizabeth, drawn towards the Declension of her Reign, her lesser George is represented hanging before her Breast in a blue Ribband. And this Colour was more caressed, and grew in great repute, by reason it was the Ground of the Garter, and nearest the Colour of the Mantle of the Order; So that toward the latter End of the Reign of King

١.

James I. because the dye of the Ribband had not been peculiarly express'd in any Statute, and the blue and azure accustomed for some Years past, it was decreed, That for the future it should be always of blue, and no other; nor in time of Mourning it self, should

be changed.

THE Manner of wearing this Ribband in time of Peace, was of later Times pendant about the Neck, down to the Middle of the Breast, where the lesser George hung; but since, for the more Conveniency of Riding or Action, the same is spread over the less Shoulder, and brought under the right Arm where the Iewel hangs.

Bur where the Pictures of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions are drawn in Armour, there even to this Day the George is represented as fix'd to a Gold Chain instead of a blue Ribband, and worn about the Neck, not brought under the right Arm, as exhibited on the three Pound Pieces of Gold stamped at Oxford by King Charles I. 1643. and a Medal of Charles Count Palatine

of the Rhine, dated 1645.

Among the invaluable Jewels and other Curiofities of King Charles I. which came to the Hands of the Truflees appointed for Sale of his Goods, were these,

	L.s. d.
A George containing 161 Diamonds, Sold for	71 2 9
A George cut in Onyx, with 41 Diamonds? in the Garnish,	37 0 0
A small George with a few Diamonds	9 9 9
A George with 5 Rubies and 3 Diamonds, and 11 Diamonds in a Box	11 0 0
A George cut in a Garnet.	800
Total	136 2 0

THE George King Charles I. had athis Martyrdom, was curiously Engraved in an Onyx set about with twenty. One large Table-Diamonds in the Fashion of a Garter. On the reverse of the said George was the Picture of the Queen set in a Case of Gold, the Lid northy enamell'd with Goldsmith's Work, and surrounded with another Garter adorned with an equal Number of Diamonds, as

Was

was that of King Charles II. also sett with fair Diamonds; and after the Deseat given to the Scotch Forces at Worcester, 4 Car. II. was ilrangely preserved by Colonel Blague, one of that King's dispersed Artendants, who refigned it for safety to the Wife of Mr. Barlow of Blarg-Pipe-House in Stafford-shira, where he took Sanctuary; from whom Robers Milward Esq; receiv'd and gave it into the Hands of Mr. Isaac Walton, (all Loyalists.) It came again to Blague's Possession, then Prisoner in the Tower; whence making his escape, he restor'd it to King Charles II.

It is worthy of Remark, that besides the Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Gamer, other Princes of Christendom have assumed the bearing St. George encountring the Dragon in like Posture, the not so anciently, nor upon the same Grounds and Foundation as they; probably having elected him Patron and Guardian of their Countries or Families; such as the Emperous of Russa, the Dukes of Muntus, and the Counts Mansfuld in Germany, as their Scale and Coins plainly

demontrate.

for the Great Seel of Borice Feedorwicke, Emperous of Russa affined to his Letter sent to Queen Elizabeth, dated at Mosco, June 12th, 1602, was a double Headed Eagle displaid, having each Head crowned, and bearing an Eschutcheon with the Representation of St. George upon its Break. There is another of this Emperour's Great Seels, fixed to his Letter, dated May 31st. 1594 which he also fent to Queen Elizabeth. On one fide is the above-faid Eagle, having on his Breaft an Eleutebeen charged with an Horle current; the Reverle the Figure of St. George encountring the Dragon with his Speer. The Great Seal of Alexie Mighaelemich, Empenour of Ruffia, affixed to his Letters fent King Charles II. 1660. hath a like Eagle with a third Crown fituated between the two Heads, and bearing in a Cartouch-Compartment upon his Bread, the Figure of St. George; Which Representation of St. George and the Dragon, we find adigned for Arms, to Anne de Russe, Daughter to. Jerifless King of Ruffe and Muscovie, given in Elpoulal to Merry I. King of France, 1051. and thrus Blazon'd, D'in St. Marthe de Guenles, a un homme a Cheval, d'argent, tenant

une Lance en la main, qu'il dard en la gueule d'un Dragon

renverse.

THE Counts of Mansfuld have frequently stamp'd it on their Coin. On one fide is St. George encountring the Dragon with his Sword, with this Circumscription, San Et. Geo. Co. do. de Man. on the reverse, his Arms circumscribed, Mon. de Arc. Co. do. de Man. Of those of the Dukes of Mantaa, we may see one of Vincentius Duke of Mantaa and Montserat, a Knight of the Order of the Golden Fleece, wherein is his Effigies to the Breast, Vinc. D. G. Dux MANT. III. MONT FERU. on the Reverse St. George and the Dragon, Motto, Protestor nostra aspic. 1591. and Casal at the Bottom.

§ 10. When the Habit or part of it ought to be worn is the

next thing we shall speak of.

THE more solemn Days and Occasions which require a fuller conformity, and the wearing the whole Habit, i. e. the Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, Collar, Great George, and Cap, are first, The High Festival of the Order, commonly called St. George's Feast, whether it be solemnized on the 22d, 23d or 24th of April, annually, or any other Days within the Year by Prorogation, as is

apparent by all the Bodies of the Statutes.

For, First it is ordained, That the Knights-Companions should be Arrayed in the whole Habit on the Eve of St. George, before the Sovereign proceeded to the Chapter to hear Divine Service, and being so Robed, should attend on the Sovereign to the Chapter-House, thence to the Chapel, and return with him back in the same manner, until after Supper, as well those that minded to Sup, as those that should not Sup; nor might they distobe, until the Sovereign or his Deputy had put off his, or declar'd it seasonable for his or their doing so.

By the same Statute they were enjoined to wear the whole Habit on the Feast of St. George, both at their Progression in the Morning to the Chapter-House or Chapel, at their return to Dinner from thence to the Second Vespers, and back to Supper, as also till Supper was over, and until the Sovereign or his Lieutenant took

leave of the rest of the Knights-Companions.

Secondly,

Secondly, Ir is manifest from King Henry VIII's Statutes, That the Eve, the Day of St. George, and Morrow following, were to be observed with solemn Service, and holding of Chapters wheresoever the Sovereign was resident; tho' the Grand Feast were Prorogued to a longer Duration; and when by reason of such Prorogation, they should convene in any Place besides Windsor to attend the Sovereign for the Solemnization of St. George's Day, they then must Adorn themselves with the whole Habit from beginning of the sirst Vespers, until the last Evening Service of the same Day.

Thirdy, On such other Days of the Year whereon the Grand Feast is held by Prorogation, and during such Part of the Eve and Day of the Feast, as is before ap-

pointed when it is held on its proper Day.

Fourthly, By absent Knights, whensoever the Grand Feast of St. George should be celebrated, and wheresoever they should happen at that time to reside, (if at Liberty, and not under restraint) to keep it in like manner as if then present with the Sovereign, or his Deputy in the Place where he should Celebrate the Feast. The time of wearing the whole Habit in this Point extends but to the End of the second Vespers, as in the second Instance above.

Fifthly, THE Knights-Companions are to wear the entire Habit at the Feaths of Installation when they affish at that Ceremony; where, if it commence in the Evening, they are not to disrobe themselves till after Supper; and being the next Morning habited as before, then to proceed to the Chapter-House or Chapel, and not to devest themselves till Dinner is ended.

THE less folemn Occasions are those, which require the wearing the Mantle or Collar of the Order only.

And they are first, upon the Morrow after the Grand Feast-Day, when the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceed to the Chapel, and make their Offering; then it sufficeth, that they barely put on the Mantle, which, Service being Finished, they were wont to leave it at the Chapter-House-Door as they retired out of the Chapel.

Secondly, As often as Chapters are called, and in what Place foever assembled, either for Elections, or other Causes, as it shall please the Sovereign to nominate:

And

And as often as it is requifice for the Sovereign, on any of the Knights-Companions to enter into the Chapel of St. George at Windfor ; and in reference hereunto, is the Article 19 E. q. was that their Mantles should tomain in the Veftry at Windfor, that upon any funden emergences they might be in readiness: for in the inventory of the Chapel taken 8 R. 2. we find remaining at that time in the Velley, a Mantle appertaining to the Sovertign, another to John Duke of Britain, a third to John Holland Earl of Huntington, another to Edmund Langley Earl of Cambridge, and one to Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, all of them then surviving: And by a Decree past at the Grand Feat 1 H. S. the Mantle of the young Sovereign was appointed to be left at Windsor, as the Statutes required; and this Article was confirmed by King Henry VIII. by Virtue whereof, the Mantles of the Emperor Charles V. and Anna Duke of Montmorency, were left in the Custody of the Dean and Canons of Windfor. And heretofore in the Bill of drawing up Matters necess fary for the Installation of a Knight-Companion, there were usually two Mantles set down; one expressed to be left in the College, and the other for all other Occafions that might intervene.

THESE Mantles thus ordered to be reposed in the College upon emergent Occasions, were anciently committed to the Cuffody of the Black-Rod, as granted by Letters Patent with the Office 1 H. s. And after the Death of the Owners, devolved to the Dean and Canons of Windsor, either for the publick Use of the Knights-Companions when they cafually came to Windfor, or elfe fold fometimes to the Heira of the Deceased, or others who succeeded in the Order, as that of Charles V. was to the Earl of Bedford, and that of the Confeable of France lent to the Earl of Warning, Ann. 7 Ein. which appears from the Accounts of the Chanter of the College, semp. H. 4. H. 5. H. 8. Q. Elis, and Jac. 1. who in all times answered the full Benefit thereof to the College, as being a certain Perquifite to the Dean and Canons, which they accordingly had and enjoyed.

And yet we find some of the College made overbold with the Robe of Sigismond the Emperous, and sold it while he surviv'd. But the Archbishop of York, who, as Chancellor of England, visited the College, 1431. fecured the Money from being distributed among those that sold it, and reserved the Dividend to the Dean and Chapter that should chance to be living at that Emperour's Expiration; and commanded for the Future under Pain of Excommunication, That no Dean and Canon should imbezil or aliene any Knights-Companion's Mantle while he was alive, but the same should be decently and faithfully kept and preserved. But we are informed, that this Statute was altered, Ann. 9 Elizand one drawn up to this effect, That the Knights-Companions should be bound by Oath to take care by their Wills, that after their Decease, all the Ornaments which they had received should be restored, the Robes to the College, and the Jewels to the Sovereign that gave them.

In the last Place, the Times of wearing the Collar of the Order, with the Great George appendant, which is not only enjoined to be worn (as part of the Habit) at the grand Feasts and Feasts of Installation, but also at other times when not any of the rest of the Habit is ordered (saving the Garter) is to be worn, as in special, at the principal and solemn Feasts of the Year, and other Feast-Days: To which a particular Order in Chap-

ter, Ann. 4 Eliz. thus directs,

The Holy-days and Sundays within the twelve Days. St. Matthias Day. Holydays in Easter-Week. St. Mark's Day. St. Philip and Jacob's Day. Holy-days in Whitsun-Week. St. Peter's Day.

St. James's Day. St. Bartholomew. St. Matthew.. St. Luke. St. Simon and Jude.

St. Andrew. St. Thomas.

Besides these, the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions have been accustomed to wear this Ensign upon the Anniversary of the Sovereign's Coronation, of the Gun-Powder Treason, and, of later Times, on the Sovereign's Birth-day: So somerely upon some occasional Ceremonies not relative to the Order; as when a Knight-Companion hath been created into Titles of Dignity and Horour, he had the Collar of the Garter added to his In-

Inveltiture, as appears in the Case of Henry Stafford, created Earl of Wilisbire, Ann. 1 Hen. 8. And at a Chapter held May 22d. 1622. That such Knights-Companions as should afterwards affish at the Funeral of any Knight-Companion, should wear the Collar apert at the said Funeral. And it was so observed by the Dukes of Ormond and Richmond, the Earls of Manchester and Sandwich, at the Obsequies of George Monk Duke of Albemarle.

Howbeit, the Custom is otherwise as to wearing the Garter, the principal Enfign of the Order; for tho' it be injoyned to be wore at the grand Festivals, e.c. yet it does not imply that it might be left off: For indeed it ought daily to be worn both by the Sovereign and Knights Companions. And therefore was it decreed even in its Institution, That if any Knight-Companion should in publick be found without one buckled about his Leg, upon Challenge he should be mulct a Noble to the Dean and College of Windfor. By King Henry VIII. the Fine was raifed a Mark, payable as before to any of the five Officers of the Order, or to the Dean; befides which Fine, the Knight lies liable to a Check. But to alleviate the Strictness, and obviating other Inconveniencies, King Henry V. admitted of a Qualification; and in case of riding with Boots, ordained, That it might fuffice if the Knight-Companion wore some Ribband or Silk-Lace to represent the Garter; tho' in this very Article there is a Proviso, That no Knight-Companion should enter into Chapter, without his Garter buckled about the Leg.

In short, King Henry VIII. ordained, That the Gold-Chain whereat the lesser George (in that Age) hung, should be worn all other days in the Year, except the Principal and Solemn Feasts, whereon the great Collar was ordained to be worn, and except in time of War, Sickness, or long Voyage, in any of which Cases, a Silk-Lace or Ribband, with the Image of St. George thereat, was sufficient; and the blue Ribband having since succeeded in Place of the Cold Chain, the Injunction of

this Statute extends to it in all particulars.

CAP.

CAP. VIII.

ONCERNING the Officers appointed for the fervice of the Order, to give it a greater degree and augmentation of Honour, the Founder constituted a Prelate, Register and User, assigning them several Duties. Some of his Successors added the Chanchellor and Garter, and all of them Sworn to be of the Council of the Order; among these the Prelate and Chanchellor are usually nominated the Principal, the other three the inferiour Officers of the Order.

In this Chapter we shall give some account of their Institution, Oath, Habit, Ensigns, Privileges and Penfions; for as to the nature of their Offices and their Duties, they are for the general, Recorded in the Black Book, under the Title Constutiones ad Officiales Ordinis [Garterij] peculiariter attinentes, &c. Upon the Establishment, Anno 13. Hen. VIII. 1521. and annex'd to his Statutes, and more particularly their Duties, will occur in several places of the ensuing Discourse, where they

properly fall in to be Treated of, as follows;

THE Prelate is the first and primier Officer, and in the Founders Statutes, call'd Pralatus Ordinis; and that the then Bishop of Winchester, William de Edyngton was the first Prelate is very obious from thence; he is an Officer of Honour only, and hath neither Pension nor Fees allowed him by the faid Constitutions; this Office is vested in the Bishop of !! inchester, for the time being; and from the Annals of the Order it's manifest his Succeffors have continued Prelates to this Day, except the interruption only of a few Months, Anno 7. Ed. 6. immediately after the Publishing this King's Statutes; wherein the other Four Officers were constituted anew, to attend the Order, but the Prelate wholly laid by.

WHAT high reputation this See hath been favour'd with may be collected from an Act of Parliament, 31. Hen. VIII. concerning the Placing of the Lords in Parliament Chamber, and other Assemblies and Conferences of Council, whereby this Bishop had Place assigned

him next to the Bishop of Durham, who hath place by that Act, next the Archbishop of York; tho' before in respect of the prehemenence of this noble Order, he had precedence and Place granted above all Bishops, and next unto the Arch-Bishops. At that Officers admittance he is oblig'd to take an Oath in the presence of the Soveraign or his Lieutenant, which consists of these particulars.

- 1. To be present in all Chapters, whereunto he is Summoned.
 - 2. To report all things truly without Favour or Fear.

3. To take the Scrutiny faithfully, and present it to the Sovereign.

4. To keep secret, and not disclose the Councils of the Order.

5. To promote and maintain the Honour of it.

6. To withstand and reveal what is designed to the contrary.

THIS Oath is read in Chapter, by the Register of the Order, the Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, holding the Book, whilst the Prelate Kneels between the Sovereign's Knees.

Of the R O B E.

As the Knights-Companions had their Surcoats bestowed on them, at the Sovereigns charge, and therefore called the Kings Livery, fo had the Officers of the Order their Liveries or Robes out of the Sovereign's Wardrobe, and in particular the Prelate of the Order: For in the Rolls of the great Wardrobe, we find that William de Edyngton had allow'd him for his Robe of the Sovereign's Livery, against the Feast of St. George, Anno 37. Ed. III. one Cloth of Sanguine grain, and a large quantity of Furs for trimming it up: And we find this Robe so assigned the Prelate to be of the fute or colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats the same Year, viz. Sanguine in grain, and that he had a great allowance of Furr; for his being a Manthe was larger than any of the Knights Surcoats, tho' they are both call'd by the same name Roba in the Rolls of the Wardrobe. Anno 7. Rich. II. William de Wyckham then

then Prelate had the same allowance, one Cloth of Violet in grain and other Materials. But the Discrimination was in the Bellies of Minevers, whose Number was now much encreased, and that the same allowance was bestowed on him in the 11th and 19th Years of the said King. But in these three Instances the Colour of the Cloth was different; and suitable to the Knights-Companions Surcoats, those very Years, viz. Violet in grain, White and Blue, and Anno 12. Hen. VI. the Robe of Henry Beaufort, Cardinal and Prelate was White, as then were the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions, whence it is evident the Livery formerly allowed the Prelate annually varied in Colour, as did the Knights-Companions Surcoats.

In that ancient Precedent of the Liveries of the Garter, remaining in the great Wardrobe, wherein the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions are reduced to a Stated proportion in the measure of the Cloth, number of Furs and Garters, modeled out according to their flate degrees, there the Prelate hath the following al-

lowance for his Livery,

24 Yards of Woollen Cloth.

18 Timber pur 3 Minever.

3 Timber de Biss.

By all which it is manifest what Materials and colour the Prelate's Robe was of at the institution of the Otder, and for a long time after, nor do we find any variation until the Reign of King Hen. VIII. and then this Habit was ordained to be Crimson Velvet, lin'd with white Taffaty, faced with blue, and thereon down the opening before upon the bordures, fundry Royal cognizances on the right fide, the Rose of England Crowned, on the left fide opposite one of King Edw. IV's. Badges, viz. a Rose within the Sun Beams Crowned; and then the aforesaid Badges again vice versa, with more Damaskings; on the right fide the Flower de luce of France Crowned, and on the left fide King Edw. III's. peculiar Badge, viz. The Sun Beams issuing out of a Cloud, and those Badges re-Prated in akcouste fituations; every Badge interpolated, O 1

polated with an Area of Embroidered Damasking ; Forty of these Clouds wrought of Gold, Silver and Silk, having in the middle the Saxon Letter E of Gold, were provided to him several Garments made for that King 21 Edw. III. and Embellished with Stars. As the left Shoulder of a Knight Companions Mantle, so the right Shoulder of the Prelates Robe is injoyned to be Embroidred with a Scutcheon of St. George's Arms, encompassed with a Garter, and adorned with Cordons of blue Silk mingled with Gold. After a while the colour of this Robe became changed to Murray. The allowance of Velvet 16 Yards, of white Sarcenet for Lining 12 Yards, and a Garter for the Shoulder, Embroidred with Purls of Damask Gold. But 23 Eliz. for the Livery of Bishop Watson then newly admitted, the quantity of Velvet was encreased to 18 Yards; but the Lining and Garter remained as it was, so also the Cordon, having Buttons and Tassels of blue Silk, and Venice Gold; the like Robe in all particulars were made for Bishop Cooper, and Bishop Bisson, his Successars, Temp. Eliz.

ABOUT 12 Car. I. the Prelate and Chancellor Petition'd the Sovereign to restore them their ancient Rights and Privileges of Honour, in relation to their Ensigns and Robes upon their outward Garments, whereupon 13 Car. I. it was Ordered in Chapter, that the Knights-Commissioners (newly Established by that Chapter) should take into their consideration the Robes the Prelate and Chancellor were to be invested with, and certify the Sovereign the ancient Colour and Fashion; but nothing was effected untill after the Restoration, and then by Warrant under the Signet of the Order, Dated February 19. 13. Car. II. the Prelate had affigned him for his Livery of the Order, one Robe of Purple Velvet, containing 18 Yards, and 10 Yards of white Taffaty for Lining, as also the Arms of St. George within a Garter, wrought with Letters, and Purls of Damask, Gold and Pearls, having Laces, Buttons and Taffels of purple Silk, and Venice Gold; but what inducements the Sovereign had for so changing the Murray Colour for Purple, has not reached our Intelligence. sime he is obliged to Wear this Robe, is in express text

of the Constitutions, to be Yearly on the Vigil and Day of St. George, wheresoever he is at liberty, whether it be in Parliament, or any other solemn Occasion, or Festival whatsoever.

THE Honours conferred on this Officer, are, that his Post in all Proceedings and Ceremonies of the Order, is on the right Hand of the Chancellor; that he. hath the Privilege of Marshalling his Arms within the ennobled Garter, and accordingly hath it been customary to furround them, impaling his See. He hath allotted him convenient Appartments within the Castle of Windsor, in a Tower Situated on the North-side, called Winchester Tower; and as often as he shall Arrive thither, or to any other Place at the Sovereign's Command, upon the Affairs of the Order, he ought to have allowed him of the Court Livery for Himself and Retinue, according to the Stipends, that Earls resident in Court do possess. 2 Car. I. This Officer (so well as the Chancellor) had the Honour allowed him, to Wear upon the left Part of his Cloak, Coat, and riding Cassock, at all seasons, when he should not be Invested with his Robe, and in all Places, and Assemblies, a Scutcheon of the Arms of St. George, but not inriched with Pearls and Stones. But not long after there was some restraint upon this Act, tho' I do not find it repealed.

6 2. THE institution of the Chancellors Office, his Oath, Robe, Badge, and Pension, next follows to be handled. At the Erecting this Noble Order, the common Seal was ordained to remain in the custody of whomsoever the Sovereign should please to lodge it, but expresly to be one of the Knights-Companions; among whom in after-times, Sir John Robert Jack is Stiled Cuftos Sigilli Ordinis, having the custody of it by Decree, 1. Hen. VI. by 2 Proleptis of Speech, Styled Chancellor in the Black Book. But King Edw. IV. finding it requisite to fix the Office of Chancellor of the Garter, in a Person distinct from the Knights-Companions, and subservient to them, Decreed in a Chapter at Westminister, 16 Regni That the Seal of the Order should be refigned to Richard Beanchamp, then Bishop of Salisbury to keep during

during pleasure, and he to be called Chancellor of this most nobse Order; not long after by Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of England, Dated the 10th of Of. 15. Edw. IV. this King declared, that the this Office was not expressed by the Founder's Statutes, yet was it nevertheless very useful, and therefore for the Advancement, and good of the Order, he constituted an Officer named Chancellor: And forasmuch as this Office was of great Import and Concern, and required an expert and able Person, it was His further Pleasure, that none but a Bishop should Execute it; moreover confidering the Chapel of St. George at Windfor, was Founded within the Diocess of Salisbury, and having regard to the prudence and diligence of the said Beauchamp, who out of meer love to the Order, attended daily the progress of the Work, wherewith the King was then in hand for enlarging the Chapel at Windfor; he did therefore Ordain the said Bishop for the Term of his Life, Chancellor of the Order, and after his decease, his Successors, Bishops of Salisbury, should always have and hold the said Chancellor-ship; Nevertheless, provided that the King's Concession should be put in execution, by the Advice of the Knights-Companions, and without prejudice to the Bishop of Winchester, in those things which ought by the Statutes of Institution to belong unto him.

This Office thus conferred upon Beauchamp personally for Life, and perpetually to his Successors, Bishops of Salisbury, by vertue of this Grant continued Chancellors, nor doth it appear that any other Person had been invested therein, until Ann. 7. E. VI. that Sie William Cicil, then principal Secretary of State, was

made Chancellor.

For upon Reformation of the Order by that King, his Statutes wholly excluded the Ecclefiafticks, and appointed that the Chancellors-Office should be executed by a Knight qualified, with Honour and Reputation to manage a Post of that Care and Fidelity; 'he thereupon appointed Sir William Cecil, Chancellor; And here first entred a secular Person, notwithstanding which in a Charter to the Bishop of Salisbury, 4 Eliz. (containing the Charters of Queen Mary, H. VIII. and

H. VII. and in another 4. Car. I. the forementioned Letters Patents, made to Beanchamp, by King Edw. IV. are therein recited totidem verbis, and confirmed as a Tacit Reservation of the Right and Title of those Bishops, whensoever the Sovereign should have a benign and propitious Aspect towards that See. The first of these Bishops who concerned himself for recovering this high Station to that See, was Bishop Cotton, who upon the Death of Sir Edward Dyer, sometime Chancellor, Petitioned the Sovereign, 6. Jac. I. and prayed Restitution thereof to the Church of Salisbury; but before any determination, the two chief Justices, and chief Baron was advised withal, who were of Opinion, that this Office was not compleatly or fufficiently annexed to the Bishoprick of Salisbury by King Edw. IV. But Cook in his Institutes, reports the point Void, upon the incertainty of the Grant, for that a new Office was Erected, and not defined what Jurisdiction or Authority the Officer should Exercise; and there's assigned a third Reason, That the Grant was in the Sovereign's disposal, because the Patent was obtained without Fee; with one or more of these Opinions, the Sovereign's judgment being swayed, He forthwith nominated Sir John Herbert, one of His privy Council to the Chancellorship, and so this affair remained Silent, until Anno 12. Car. I. when John Davenant, Bishop of Salisbury, upon Sir Francis Cranes decease, remonstrated to the Sovereign his Claim to this Office, whereupon at a Chapter held at Windsor, 5th of Dec. that Year, the Sovereign propos'd to the Knights-Companions present, that tho' he had made Election of Sir Thomas Rowe for his Chancellor that time, yet understanding a Claim made by the Bishop of Salisbury, that the Place was annexed to that See, he commanded the Lords-Companions to take the pretence of right into their confiderations; to which proposition of the King's, they answered that they thought it not their duty to search for the Title of any Person, but that if the Bishop did produce his Evidence and Proofs, he might present it in Chapter to be confidered.

Upon this Encouragement, the Bishop presented a Petition, which was read in the Chapter at Windsor,

the 18th of April ensuing, to this effect, That King Edw. IV, by Letters Patent, had Erected this Office of Chancellor, and did then grant the same to Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salisbury, and his Successors for ever, in confideration that the Chapel of St. George was within their Diocess; that those Bishops had enjoyed the same, according to the Charter, which Charter had been confirmed under the Great Seal of England, by some other Kings and Queens, and lastly by the King himself. But that the use and exercise of that Office had for many Years been discontinued from them, praying therefore an Hearing, and Examination, that the right of the said Church might be preserved and restored. To the substance of which it was objected.

First, That the Great Seals of England did not work within, or upon the Statutes and Rules of the Order

of the Garter.

Second, That no Grant could prescribe the present Sovereign, it being a Law Fundamental within the Or-

der, Suprema Lex was Suprema Voluntas.

Third, THAT it did not appear by the Records of the Order, that the Office of the Chancellor was any otherwise conferred upon Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salis-

bury, than quam diu Regia celsitudini complaceret.

To the First, It was answered by way of Exception, as to the Grant of Offices, forasmuch as the Great Seal of England was took into, and became legal within the Order in like cases; and not any Patent for an Office, had past under the Seal of the Order, but under the Great Seal of England, and in particular the Office of the Chancellor-ship, which had not been transacted, if any legal defect had been therein.

To the Second, granting it was so as was Objected, it appeared that the Sovereign was as much at liberty to restore this Office to the See of Salisbury, as continue it

to secular Dignities.

To the Third, what was alledged out of the Records of the Order, related only to the time of delivering the Seals to Bishop Beauchamp: But afterwards when the Office was Erected by Letters Patent, it was then granted to him during Life. Something was replied from the Judges Opinions, even in this case, Ann. Jac. R. VI.

R. VI. But the Sovereign thought it was not then well canvass'd and weighed, to permit the Chapter Acts of this Order, wholly independant from other Laws, to receive construction and determination from the common Law, and therefore declared that the Bishop ought to be heard; and to that purpose, gave him Orders to prepare the Vouchers and Proofs of his pretentions in vindication of his Petition, and to fend them to be delivered to the Knights-Commissioners, elected for the affairs of the Order, for their confideration at the next Chapter, which was accordingly put in execution, and then refierred to them again to be confidered, prepared and abbreviated, to be perused by the Sovereign, for his final determination. But the Scotch War shortly after breaking forth, and troubles running high at Home, the further Prosecution was laid aside, and not revived until the 19th of Nov. Anno 21. Car. II. When Seth Ward, Bishop of Salisbury, took encouragement upon the former grounds, and the Sovereign's favour, to set on foot this Claim, by a Petition presented to the Chapter then held at Whitehall, where, after a full debate and mature deliberation had of its equity and just Foundation, he obtained a Decree for Re-establishment of this Office on the Bishops of that See, upon the first vacancy, Dated the 19th of Nov. 1669. and present his Majesty the Sovereign, the Dukes of York, and Or-mond, Earls of Oxford and Manchester, Prince Rupert, Earls of Bristol and Sandwich, and the Duke of Monmouth.

Of the O A T H.

THE Oath the Chancellor takes at his Admission which we find to be the same with the Prelates, and in the like humble Posture upon the Knee, and usually Administred by the Register of the Order. As to his Robe, it was at first the same with the Prelates, both for Cloth and Colour, but his proportion of Cloth far less, having allowed him but 5 Yards, when the Prelate had 24, nor but 3 Timber of Minever gross, where the Prelate had 19, beside a large quantity of other Furs; nor was the Colour confined to one kind, until the constitutions of this Office appointed it to be Crimson

Crimson, as was the Prelates, for no doubt it was before annually changed, as his was to the Colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats; however by the Picture of the ancient Habits of the Officers, it is conspicuous, it was debared the Royal Badges, wherewith the Prelates Rose was Embroidred; when the Colour of the Prelates Robe was changed to Murray, the Chancellors had the same Alteration and was Trim'd alike in all other particulars. The proportion allowed to Sir Thomas Smith for his Livery, Anno 14. Eliz. was 18 Yards of Murray Velvet, 12 Yards of Sarcenet for the Lining, one Garter wrought with Pearls of Damask Gold for the Shoulder, one Lace (or Cordon) with Buttons, and Tassels of blue Silk and Venice Gold, and the same Materials and Quantities were afterwards distributed out of the Sovereigns great Wardrobe, to the fucceeding Chancellors.

Bur Anno 13. Car. I. The Prelate and Chancellor endeavouring a Reformation in this Habit, the Dye both of the Prelates and this Officers Robe was changed into

Purple.

Besides this Robe, the Chancellor of the Order hath an honourable Badge of Distinction assigned him to wear, sirst granted to Sir William Peters and his Successors, the 9th of Oslober, 1 and 2 Pb. and Mar. viz. a golden Rose enclosed within a Garter, which he and his Successors, Chancellors of the Order, have ever since worn daily about their Necks; at first it was Pendant in a Gold-Chain, but since in a Purple Ribband. It seems something of this Design had been in Agitation a little before, so soon as the Chancellorship became vested in a Layman; for King Edward VI's Statutes did Ordain, That the Chancellor should wear about his Neck a Cross of the Order, with a red Rose, in a white, of Gold, all compassed within a Garland of red and white Roses.

And because it was suggested to King Charles I. That there were different Accounts and Uncertainties contained in some Books concerning the Wearing of this Badge, He, by Warrant dated at Oxford the 16th of December in the 21st Year of his Reign, 1645. ordained Sir James Palmer Kt. and Bart. Chancellor of the said Order, (and his Successors) sould wear about his Neck at

all times in Honour of his said Place, (that thereby he may be known to be of that Office and Dignity, as hath been accustomed) a Medal or Jewel of Gold enamelled with a red Rose, (within a Garter of Blue enamel, with this Sentence inscribed, Hony soit qui maly pense) or such an one as we or the rest of the Knights-Companions of the said Most Noble Order of the Garter do or sball from time to time hereafter wear in our Collars of the said Order in particular Reference to us or them. And in the Reverse thereof, he sball bear the Escutcheon of St. George enamelled within a Garter also in reference to the Order it self, which he only shall wear hanging by a light purple

Ribband, or in a gold Chain, as hath been accustomed.

Among the Officers of the Order, the Chancellor is feated next beneath the Prelate, and in all Proceedings and Sessions, goeth, and sitteth, on his lest Hand: And as it was ordered by the Constitutions of the Officers, That if the Chancellor hapned to be a Layman, he should be also a Knight, and have other personal Endowments. So did King Charles I. conceive it requifite to confer some further Mark of Distinction upon this Officer, in relation to Place and Precedence without the Order; to which effect, there passed a Decree in a Chapter affembled by the Sovereign at Whitehall, the 23d of April, 1623. present, the Earls of Mulgrave, Montgomery, Rutland, Carlisle, Holland, Suffolk, Pembroke, Arundel and Surrey, Salisbury, Dorfet, Bark-shire and Northampton, That Sir Francis Crane, the present Chancellor, and all others that should succeed him in that Place hereafter, shall, in right of that Place, in all Assemblies, and upon all Occasions, be ranked and placed immediately after Knights-Privy-Councellors, and before the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the Persons holding both Places, being in Pari gradu, and consequently before all others, whom the faid Chancellor is to precede, &c.

AND to the intent the Chancellor of the Exchequer's Place may be certainly known, May the 20th, 21 Jac. I. it was thus established, That the Knights of the Most Noble Order of the Garter, the Privy-Councellors, the Master of the Courts of Wards and Liveries, the Chancellor and Under Treasurer of the Exchequer, Chancellor of the Dutchy, the Chief Justice of the Court of King's Bench, the Master of the Rolls, the Chief Justice of the Court of Common-Pleas, the Chief Baren of the Exchequer, and all other Judges and Ba-

rons of the Degree of the Coif, should have Place and Precedency in all Places, and upon all Occasions before the younger Sons of

Viscounts and Barons, and before all Baronets, &c.

THE aforesaid Constitutions provide the Chancellor of the Order an Habitation within the Castle of Windsor, as well as the Prelate, which is the South-West Tower in the lower Ward of the Castle, call'd the Chancellor's Tower. The Possession thereof had been for some time in the Power of others; and therefore by a Chapter convened at White-hall, Nov. 5th, 5 Car. I. it was restored unto Sir Francis Crane, then Chancellor of the Order, and after his Decease, to descend to his Successors. These Constitutions also ordained him the like Liveries at the Table and Court of the Sovereign, as were allowed to the Prelate.

AT the first Erection of this Office, the Chancellor had no Pension awarded him, until the Constitutions in reference to the Officers were Established. At that time there was conferr'd on him a Penfion of 100!. per Annum, in consideration of his Employment, or else an allowance proportionate in Fees, Offices or other Promotions, over and above his Lodgings in the Castle, and Liveries at Court. But as to Fees and Perquifites, there are none to be Claimed by this Officer; and for that Reason, he not only possesses the said Pension, but all his disbursements allowed him, even to Paper, Wax, and Wafers; and indeed those who enjoyed the Office esteem'd it as a degradation of their Post, to receive either fee, or gratuity for any affair Transacted within the Order; and Sir Thomas Rowe, sometime Chancellor, affirmed That his Office was an Office of Honour, and not of Fees, and that he had always excepted against Fies, for the disbursement of the Sovereign's Money: Tho' he acknowledged some had bestowed on his Clerk a small gratuity, for the bare Ingroffing of an Alms Knights Patent, but nothing farther.

And because the Custody of the Seals of the Order, appertains to this Officer; it will be here the sittest Place to mention something of them. By the Statutes of Edw. III. they were to have a Common Seal. This is confirmed by the Statutes of King Hen. V. and since named the Great Seal of the Order. The use of this is

not

not only to Seal the Original Statutes, appointed to remain perpetually within the Treasury of Windsor College, as also those Copies of which each Knight-Companion is obliged to conserve one, but likewise all Letters of Licence to any of the Knights-Companions desirous of winning Honour abroad, and all Mandates and Certifi-

cates, relating to the Order...

AFTER what Model the first Seal was compos'd. we have no exact Relation. Polydore Virgil tells us, That when the Founder of the Order had fixed Choice of St. George for its Patron, he represented him Armed, and Mounted on an Horse, bearing a Silver Shield, and thereon a Red Crois, but whether St. George thus defigned, was on the first Seal, or only a Scutcheon of his Arms, as in latter times, is uncertain. But his Author observes that the Founder Habited his Soldiers in white Tackets or Coats, and on their Breasts and Backs sowed Red Crosses, parallel to the Arms assigned to St. George, as well as to the Kingdom of England, put under his Patronage, which Arms the Sovereigns of the Order, have ever fince exhibited in their Standards. But befides this Common Seal King Hen. V. in the 9th Year of his Reign, Instituted a privy Signet, in case the Sovereign should be called out of this Kingdom upon weighty Affairs. The intent thereof was to affix it to all Acts passed by the Sovereign beyond Sea, to distinguish them from those of his Deputies in England. King Hen. VIII's Statutes, Ordain the making both of a Common Seal and Signet, and direct that the Arms of the Order should be Engraven upon each of them. The Common Seal used in his Reign was a Garter, within it a Shield having the Cross of St. George, impaling the National Arms, the said Shield encompassed with two Branches hanging from the Regal Crown, which debruses part of the Garter; the Signet being defigned after the same manner, but less: Temp. Jac. I. it suffered no other alteration, but only in the National Arms, by admitting the Quarterings of Scotland and Ireland, and new-fashioning the Crown, omitting the sufpenfion of the Shield.

THERE was a Seal made at the beginning of the Reign of King Cha. I. which being eftermed too little for the Grandure and Honour of the Sovereigns Commissions.

missions, it was afterwards Decreed in Chapter, held 18th of April. 13. Car. I. That a new one sould be made of a larger Size, with the accustomed Arms and Motto, and the eare thereof committed to Sir Thornas Rowe, Chancellor; which Command he Executed with all due care and regard, as is manifestly evident by the nobleness of the design: One Representation being St. George, in Armour, adorned with a waveing Mantle, his Bever open, his Helmet plumed, holding a Shield of his Arms in his left Hand, and striking with a Sword in his right, his Body mounted on a bold Horse, Trampling over a Dragon, which Assails the Champion, the whole Figure is well contracted, and the Sun, a Rock, the Bones of devoured Men, and a Mountain in Lointon, in it is Circumscribed, Magnum sigillum Nobilis Ordints Garterij; having the enrichments of festons between every Word placed pentagonally: The other Representation, is the Royal Garter imperially Crowned, enclosing a Shield of the Arms of St. George, impaling the Sovereign's Arms, the same Bordered with Fret-work, and other Ornaments in Cartouche. the same decree, direction was given also for a new Signet, the former being thought too big for Letters, and this was an Oval shaped so from its Impression. which was the Garter Crowned, wherein was St. George, and the Sovereigns Arms impaled.

Ir was at the same Chapter further decreed; " That " all Legations to deliver this Order to Foreign " Princes, all other Acts, bearing the Stile of Com-" missions, all Patents of Offices and Fees, all Grants or Licences sent out of the Kingdom, should be Sealed " with this Scal, which should be henceforward called " the Great Seal of the Order; so also the Book of 46 Statutes, sent to Elect Knights or Foreign Princes, " being fixed to a Label of Blue Silk, and held ac-" cording to antient Cuitom; and that all Letters con-" cerning the Order, whether of fignification of Electi-" on, or Lieutenancy, or Summons upon prorogation, " or other Directions from the Sovereign, Thould only " be Sealed with the Signet: Moreover, these Seals were appointed to be thenceforth Born before the " Sovereign in all Publick Affemblies, during the " Celebration

"Celebration of St. George's Feast, or in other its So"lemnities by the Chancellor of the Order, in a Purse
of blue Velvet," and Command given to Sir Thomas
Rowe, to provid one accordingly; on the foreside of
which Purse was richly Embroidred (by a Gold-Smith)
with Venice Gold and Silver, Gold and Silver Purls and
Plates, and variety of Naples Silks, the Arms of St. George
impaling the Sovereign, surrounded with a Garter
Crowned, having a very fair Running Work, or Compartment round about it, the charge of which amounted to 13 l. 16 s. 10 d.

By the Statutes of Institution, it was ordained, That in case the Knights-Companions, to whose care the Sovereign did commit the Seal of the Order, should upon lawful Occasions, be absent from Court, it behoves him to leave it behind him, with some other Knight-Companion to present, to the Sovereign, to the intent it might be always in readiness; but if the Sovereign be out of His Kingdom, then the disposal of it, was committed to the Deputies, and the Signet of the Order should have a Warrant for all such Acts and Decrees as should be confirmed there.

THE distance from Court was by the Constitutions, restricted to 10 Miles, and by the Statutes of King

Hen. VIII. to 20. upon confideration whereof we find Sir Thomas Rowe Chancellor, having some occasions, Anno 13Car. I. to be absent above 20 Miles, tendred the Seals to the Sovereign, who was pleased to dispense with the Statutes, and permitted him to keep them nevertheless.

6 3. The Registers Oath, Mantle, Badge, Privileges and Pension, sall next under our consideration; he was one of the three, Constituted at the Institution of the Order, under the Title sof Registrator and Registratius, and so is called in the Statutes of King Hen. V. elsewhere in the Books of the Order, Scriba and A-Buarius. What were the first Registers, names we cannot discover, till the Reign of King Hen. V. But it may be presumed, they were Camons of Windson; because this Office was at first assigned to one of that College; besides the Registers from the Reign of King Henry V. to the beginning of King Henry VHIth Reign, were also Canons of this College, among whom

whom was John Coningham, (and the first found called so) as the Fragments of a Glass Inscription in Clare Church near Windsor, where he was Restor, attests. The first Dean of Windsor, Constituted Register of the Order was John Vefey, Anno 8. Hen. VIII. many of whose Successors in this Deanry, have since been admitted; nevertheless, as they were Canons not Deans of Windfor, and tis not improbable the Deans were Elected to this Office, as being enabled to support the Reputation of the Registership, with the Revenue of his Deanry, better than any of the Canons, with the addition of the Pension. But at a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 22d of April, 11 Car. I. The Sovereign thought it convenient that the Office of Dean and Register should concenter in one and the same Person, as formerly, and therefore commanded this his Pleasuer to be Enrolled among the Annals of the Order, that so it might pass in the future Times, from Example into Rule.

By the Constitutions of the Office, a secular Person is made capable of it, no less than an Ecclesiastick, how be it, He is to be a Man of singular integrity, eminent quality, a Knight, and fignalized for Experience and Learning; but if an Ecclesiastick, then must be a Person of consummate Erudition, a professor of Divinity or Law, either Canon, or Civil, and a Dignitarian in some

Cathedral Church, or else a Canon at Windsor.

THE substance of his Oath in the Statute of the Institutions was, That he should enter upon the Registry, with all Fidelity, the Scrutinies, Elections, Penalties, Reconciliations, and all other Asts relating to the Order, to which was added, that he shall faithfully Discharge his Duty in all things. But in King Hen. VIIIth Days, the Oath enjoyned him, differs nothing from that of the Prelates and Chancellors.

AT his Admission, he takes this Oath Kneeling, while the Prelate used to pronounce the Words as Anno 1 Mar. 5. and 6. Ph. and Mar. but in his absence, as Anno 3 Eliz. the Chancellor administred it. Anno 4. Car. L the Prelate, Chancellor, and Register, took their Oaths at one time, and then it was thus Ordered; first the Register took it Kneeling between the Sovereign's Knees, she Black Rod holding the Evangelists, and the Garter read

read the Words out of the black Book; this done, the Register read the Words of the Prelates Oath, when he was Sworn; and in the last place, did the like to the Chancellor; after this manner did Garter read the Words to the Registers, admitted 11 Car. I. and 12 Car. II. We cannot trace the Habit this Officer had assigned him at the Erection of the Order; but it afterwards appears, that his Allowance was the same with the Chancellors, confifting of 5 Yards of Woollen Cloth, and 3 Timber of Minever gross, equalent to what those Knights-Companions had allotted, who were under the degree of an Earl: The Habit he is pourtrayed in, at a proceeding of King Hen. VIIIth Reign, shews it to be Ecclesiastical, a black Gown, a Surplice over that, reaching to his Ancles, and thereon a Mantle of Furs; but the Constitutions of his Office restricted him to none, wherein there seems a defect, fince they have affignd Habits to the Garter, and black Rod. Notwithstanding by a Draught of the Officers in their ancient Dress, it is plainly demonstrable to be a Mantle, somewhat of a Russel colour, Faced with a Pane of blue, whereon is Embroidred a Flower-deluce Crowned Gold, then another Pane red, thereon a Lyon Passant gardant Crowned Gold, and so they are alternately placed to the bottom; to this Mantle belong. Cordons of Silk, blue and yellow.

SINCE that time, not only the Registers, but also Gazters and Black Rods, Robes, underwent some Alterations; for by a Decree in Chapter, called at St. James, Jan. 1. 4 and 5. Ph. and Mar, these Officers were assigned Mantles of crimson Satin, Lined with Tassaty, and a Scutcheon of St. George's Arms, Embroided on the left Shoulder, but not encircled with a Garter, having the same Buttons and Tassels as were appointed to the Prelate and Chancellor; the proportion of Satin assigned to each Mantle, was 14 Yards, and as many Yards of

white Taffaty.

And the registers Mantle was Ann. 27 Elin. composed of the preceeding Materials, and had like Trimming, yet they agree not in their Proportions, here being allowed 18 Yards of crimson Satin, and but 12 of Taffaty; from hence these Mantles continued immuta-

ble until the 20th of Feb. 13 Car. II. when there Issued a Warrant to the Master of the great Wardrobe, to prepare for this Officer, as also for Garter, and the Black Rod, for their Liveries Mantles of Scarlet Satin, each containing 18, and 10 Yards of white Taffary for Lining, but consonant in all other Punctilio's with the former; yet why the colour was altered, is not ex-

preffed. THE Register seems to have been represented with a Scrowle in his Hand, for his Badge, and by the proceedings in Queen Elizabeth's Reign, Pictured with a Book, both proper Symbols of his Office. In Dr. Chri-Stopher Wren's Registership, the Sovereign Commanded him to cover the red Book of the Order with crimson Velvet, and assigned for the Garter, two Pens in Saltire, interlacing the Garter above with these two Letters C R Crowned, all being richly Embroidred, (as also the Border) with Venice Gold and Silver, and various colours of Naples Silk, by Harrison the Sovereign's Embroiderer, with a Clasp, in Imitation of the Garter, surrounding the Representation of St. George, which cost 12 1, 17 5, 6 d. This Book he was Ordered to bear before his Breast, on all Solemn Occasions when he wore his Mantle, and for his better Convenience, he made a Belt and an Ouch to hang it by.

So high a Regard had the Sovereigns of this Order, not only to this Officer, but likewise to Garter and Black Rod, that they took them into a particular Protection, and by the Constitutions of their Offices granted them, " That they, their Goods and Servants " should severally remain under the Safe-guard of the " Sovereign; and if any Injury or Violence should " chance to be offered them either by Subjects or For-" reigners, whenfoever they should exhibit their Com-"plaint to the Sovereign, either himself or the "Knights-Companions should afford them Justice; but " if the adverse Party should refuse to submit his Cause "to the Sovereign, then the Sovereign and Knights-"Companions should shew themselves so far inclinable ".. towards those Officers, as to be ready to allow them all favour, countenance, cre." confident with Justice and Equits. : .

Upon the firength and Security of this ancient Privilege, to avoid the prolongation of a Law Suit, Dr. Christopher Wren Regulter, Petitioned the Sovereign in Chapter, held at Whitehall, the 19th of April, 12 Car. L against one Thornhill, who under Pretence of Digging for Salt-Peter, had so Undermined his Pigeonhoule, Built on the Rectory of Knoil Magna in Wilsh. that it fell down; and upon reading of the Petition, it was resolved by the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions, " That they would confider the Grant in the Con-" flitutions, and, until it was farther declared, the Chan-" cellor of the Order should have Power upon Infor-" mation of any rigour upon Controverse begun in " any other Court, to write Letters under the Signet " of the Order, that all vexation against them should " be superseded until Information of the cause were gi-" ven to and determination in the Cause resumed by the " Sovereign, or leave of him obtained to Proceed." After this it is fet down, that Thornhill was Summoned before the Lords Commissioners of the Navy, and his negative Answer given in, and represented to the Sovereign in another Chapter, conven'd the 4th of Ollober enfuing s whereupon it was ordered, " That the Chancellor. "Ihould write to the same Lords Commissioners, and " another to the Earls of Pembroke, Arundel and Dorfet, " three of the Knights-Companions, to Empower "them, that they or any three of them, should cause " the faid Thornhill to be brought before them, and like-" wife write to any of the Inhahitants of Knoil, to view " and testifie the Truth, to hear any further proof on " the behalf of either Party, and to give Sentence ac-" cording to Justice, that so a tedious Suit of Law might. " be prevented, and the Dignity of this most noble Or-" der protected," These Commands of the Chancellor being Executed, and Certificates returned from the Country, the Knighta Companions, in a Chapter held the 23th of May, 14 Car. I. were moved to perule them 3, but before they could meet, Thornbill fled, and the Prosecution of this business ceased. Upon the same footing was it, that the said Dr. Wren obtained from King Cha I. His Gracious Protection for himfolf, Servants, and Estate, literally expressed in the late War, as the Violaters

Violaters of that Order would answer this our contrary at their Peril, Dated at Oxford, under the Signet of this our Order the

rath Day of Dec. in the 19th Year of our Reign.

This Officer by the Constitutions hath a Pension of 50 l. per Annum, or proportionable in Fees, Offices, or other Emoluments; and Ann. I: and 2 Ph. and Mar. the same numerical Pension was conferred on Other Ogleshorp, Dean of Windfor, out of the Exchequer; until some Ecclesiastical Preferment of like value should devolve on him. The same was confirmed to Dr. Maxey, by Decree in Chapter, 16 Jac. I. and afterwards to Dr. Braumont, by Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of England, 20 Jac. I. but there needed no Allotment of Lodgings at Windfor to this Officer; as there was to the rest, since both the Canons and Dean were provided of Houses belonging to their Ecclesiastical Dignities within the College, at the Erection of the Order.

of 4. The fourth Officer of the Order is Garter. He was ordained by King Henry V. with the advice and consent of all the Knights-Companions, who for the Honour of the Order, was pleased he should be the principal Officer within the College of Arms, and chief of the Heralds. The Services enjoyned him, relating to the Order, were in preceding Times, performed by the Windsor Herald of Arms, an Officer created with that Title by K. Edward III. much about the time of his Erecting this Order, and an Annual Pension of 20 Marks, payable out of the Exchequer, by Letters Patent for Life, which was confirmed by King R. II.

SIR William Brugges was the Person first created Garter, and called in the Institution of his Office, Jartier Roy d'armys des Anglois, but elsewhere stiled Williamus Brugges, alias Distus, Gartier Rex Armorum. This Sir William became a great Benefactor to St. George's Church at Stamford, and in the Windows of the Chancel caused to be Represented King Edward III. with his twenty five Knights-Companions kneeling, Habited in their Mantles and Surcoats of Arms, but now much shattered and defaced; John Smert his Successor had this Office conferred on him by Letters Patents, under this Title Rex Armorum de Garteria, and John Wrythe was stiled Principalis

Principalis Heraldus, & Officiarius inclyti Ordinis Garterij, Armorung; Rex Auglicorum, but Sir Gilbe re Dethick leaving out Heraldus joyned Principalis Rex, which still continues.

In the Constitutions of his Office he is called Garterus, Rex Armorum Anglia, whom the Sovereign and Knights-Companions have decreed to be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of unspotted Reputation, and Born within the Kingdom of England; besides as King Hen. V. did before, so doth King Hen. VIII. declare that he shall be chief of all the Officers of Arms, dependant upon the Crown of England.

THE substance of his Oath administred by the Register at his admission, whilst he humbly kneeleth at the

Sovereign's Feet, in the Chapter House; is,

1. To yield Obedience to the Sovereign, and Knights-Com-

^ 2. To keep Silence, and not disclose the Secrets of the Order.

3. To make signification of the Death of each Knight-Companion.

. 4. To execute all things faithfully committed to his Care.

3. To enquire diligently after all the noble Alls of the Knights-Companions, and certific them to the Register,

6. To be faithful in the exercise of his Office,

And such an Oath Str Christopher Barker took at a Chapter held at Greenwich 28 Hen. VIII. when he was made Garter.

As for a particular Habit, we do not find any inserted in the Great Wardrobe, whence it is presumed, he was at first distinguished from the rest of the Officers of the Order, by his Coat Embroidred with the Sovereign's Arms, like as the Provincial King's then wore, But after the Constitutions of the Officers were Established, there was assigned him a Habit or Mantle in all respects, resembling the Register, (saving that the Ground whereon the Lyons and slower-de-luces were Embroidred, was entirely Red) and this to be wore only at the publick Solemnities of the Order. Queen Mary Commanded it to be made of crimson Satin, and so it remained till the Restoration, when the Colour was altered to scarlet.

Титз

THIS Officer is appointed to bear a white Rod or Scepter at every Feast of St. George, the Sovereign being present, gilded at both ends, and at the top the Arms of the Order impaling the Sovereign's Arms pourtray'd on an oblong Cube Crowned, but no directions are given in the Constitutions for this Crown, nor for that Ducal one on his Head wherewith his Effigies has been represented, and yet at all great Solemnities is never used that we can discover. There was assigned him by Queen Eliz. a Badge of Gold to be worn daily by him and his Successors, before the Breast, in a gold Chain or Ribband, and thereon Ennamelled the Sovereign's Arms, Crowned with an Imperial Crown, and both furrounded with the Garter: But Sir Edward Walker when made Garter, obtained the Sovereign's leave to Impale therein St. Georges's Arms, with those of the Sovereign's, which Badge is alike on both fides.

THERE is an House appointed for his Habitation within Windsor Castle, called Garters Tower. It was by Chapter annexed for ever to the Office of Garter, and restored to Sir William Segar's Possession, 2d of May, 1630. By the Constitution of his Office, he is to be allowed Barons Service in the Sovereign's Court, and his Table Served next after the Dean of the Chapel, with such Liveries as of old were accustomed.

Ir appears that King Hon. V. after his erecting this Office, died before he had settled a Pension upon Sir William Brugges, for supportation of his little Estate, which the Knights-Companions taking into consideration, and that he might more honourably comport himself to the Service of the Order, till the young King should come to Age, they being assembled in a Chapter, with the consent of the Prelate, decreed the said Sir William to receive of each of them at every Feast of St. George, as is set down, wa.

Of the Bishop of Winchester Prelate 5 Marks.

Dukes — — 5 Marks.

Control of Earl — 6 Nobles.

Knight Batchelor 2

THE first payment was agreed to be pay'd down, and so to remain in force annually with request to the abfent Knights, that for the Honour of the Order, and causes in the Instrument express'd, they would approve of their Ordinance which passed under the Seal of the Order, Dated at Windsor, 1422. Afterwards King Hen. VI. in confideration of his Services to his Father and himself, with consent of his Council, granted to the faid Brugges, by Letters Patent, a Pension of 201. per Annum, out of the Fee Farm of the City of Winchester during his pleasure, which Pension upon the surrender of his Patent he granted anew to him and Agnes his Wife, for their Lives and the longer liver of them; and when this Office upon Sir William Brugges death, was devolved on John Smert, Guyenne herald (3 April 28 Hen. VI.) he had the yearly Sum of 20 l. granted him therewith for Life out of the Exchequer: But his Succeffor John Wrythe, Norrey, obtained an increase of Pension to 40 l. per Annum, made payable out of the small Cu-Roms of the City of London; this annual Sum was afterwards confirmed to Garter by the Constitution of his Office, and an Augmentation from the then Knights-Companions additional to the Penfions granted by their Predeceffors, upon the Death of King Hen. V.

A Duke — — 4 Pounds,

A Marquess — 5

An Earl — — 4

A Baron — 6

A Knight Batchelor 4

In succeeding times the Sovereign thought sit to augment this Pension to 50 l. per Annum, (now payable out of the Revenue settled upon the Order,) and the Knights-Companions yet to enlarge their Sallery, which they did, (the Sovereign assenting) by the decree made in a Chapter held at Windsor 13, 14, and 15. Sept. An. 1617. Wherein it was ordained, That their Officer Sir William Sogar Garter Knight, King of Arms of that Order should then, and from thenceforth have renewed and paid unto him cortain annual Fees and Pensions, anciently enjoyed by his Predecessors, with a surplus of 10 l. per Annum, which his Majesty's Ast of Royal Bounty, hath given to P 4

his said Servant for his better support and maintenance, as also of Prince Charles, Prince of Wales, the Sum of 81, and of every Duke of the Blood 61. all other Estates, viz. a Duke not of the Blood 41. a Marquess 5 Marks, an Earl 4 Marks, a Viscount 7 Nobles, a Baron 40 s. and a Knight Batchelor that shall be of the Order, 26 s. 8 d. all which said Sums of Money, according to the several degrees of their Estates, are to be paid, (continues the Decree) unto the said Garter or his assigns yearly at St. Georges's Feast, or immediately after, as well by the Knights then present, as by those that shall be absent, or hereafter are to succeed in the said Order; and after the decease of the said Garter, to his Successions of the source of the source of the source of the source.

AT St. Georges's Feast, Celebrated at Windsor, 22, 23, and 24 of April, Anno 15 Car. II. Sir Edward Walker then Garter, representing by Petition, that the annual Penfion of the installed Knights then in Arrear for one Year, amounted to 94 l. 13 s. 4 d. according to their proper. proportion, the Sovereigns Share, (he being to pay for all stranger Knights) amounted at that time, to 321. 135. 4 d. and humbly praying that his Majesty would grant to him and his Successors an 100 l. per Annum, out of the Revenue settled to the use of the Order, in lieu not only of those said Pensions, payable from the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, both Strangers and Subjects; but for refigning his Claim to his annual Pension of 50 l. in confideration for preparing Scutcheons and removal This Petition the Sovereign was of Atchievements. pleased to refer to a Committe of the Knights-Companions, who, namely the Duke of Albemarl, the Earls of Lindsey, Manchester, Sandwich, and Stafford, who being attended by Garter, and weighing the event of the Petition, offered their opinions to the Sovereign, to grant him the said 100 l. per Annum in lieu of what he offered to quit, whereby the interest of this Office might be preserved in a more compendious Method than it was, his Majesty exempted from those small payments for Strangers, and the Knights-Subjects themselves were discharged from their annual Pension, and his Majesty ratifying the same shortly after, Sir Henry de Vic, the Chancellor, was ordered to pay unto Garter, and his Successors the said annual Pension of 100 l, which was accordingly

accordingly put in Execution, as an Equivalent for all Fees and Salaries relating to the Order of the Garter.

THE Duty of this Officer in general is, to perform, or cause to be effected all Transactions whatsoever, the Sovereign, or Prelate, or Chancellor shall enjoyn him, in relation to this Most Noble Order.

9. 5. THE fifth and last Officer is the Black-Rod. This Officer was instituted by the Founder, King Ed. III. but whether at the first Erection of the Order doth not appear. Howbeit, within a few Years after, 35 E. III. the King conferr'd to William Whitehorse, Esq; for Life, Officium Hostiarii Capellae Regis infra Castrum de Windesore, with a Fee of 12 d. a Day out of his Exchequer.

Anno 3 Hen. IV. this Office is called Officium Virgaril comisione de la Garter infra Castrum Regis de Windesore; and under that Denomination was confirmed to Thomas Sye, with the Fees and Emoluments thereunto expressed. In the Patent to his Successor, John Athilbrigg, Ann. 1 H. 5. it is stiled, Officiam Virgarij five Oftiarij, &cc. Afterwards it hath the Title, Officium Virge-bajuli coram Rege ad festum Santie Georgii infra Castrum Regis de Windesore. And ever fince it runs in the Patents by the Appellation of Virge-Bajulus, Virgarius, or Nigri-vergifer. But in the Constitutions of his Office, he hath the Title of Hostiarius; and under the restriction of these Qualifications, that he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, born within the Sovereigns Dominions; and if he be not a Knight at his admission into the Office, he ought then to be Knighted. As Garter was Entituled the Principal Officer of Arms, fo was the Black-Rod, for the Honour of the Order, appointed the Chief Usher in the Kingdom. And as heis so, and frequently called Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, so we shall wave, as we did in Garter, all things appertaining to his Employments, otherwise than what directly is included in this Most Noble Order.

In a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 13th of February, 6 Car. I. It was decreed, That the Office of the Black-Rod fould from thenceforth successively, as soon as the same should become void (James Maxwell, Esq; then enjoying it) be amnexed to some one of the Gentlemen-Usbers, Daily-waiters, whom the Sovereign bould appoint.

THIS

Tars was carried upon the Petition of the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, seconded by the Lord Chamberlain, the Earl-Marshal, and others, Knights-Companions; as is evident from another Petition of theirs to the Sovereign in Chapter, affembled at Oxford, the 17th of January, 20 Car. L. But some Years after this. 1642. the Lord Lanrick, Secretary for Scotland, had on Mr. Maxwell's behalf, obtained the Sovereign's Warrant for Letters-Patent under the Great-Seal, for two Lives, Maxwell's and Mr. Alexander Thayn, the longest Liver of them; whereby the said Decree was frustrate to the Gentlemen-Ushers; of which making Complaint in the last mentioned Chapter, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions (in regard this latter Grant was not only repugnant to the preceding Decree, and the Great-Scal furreptitiously gained, but ought likewise to have pass fed the Seals of the Order) order'd Peter Newton, Eles to be presently sworn into this Office. Nevertheless, after the Restoration, A. D. 1660. Newton being then dead, the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, Petition'd again, and Thayne was demanded to put in his Answer; and the result of the whole was, after mature Deliberation in a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 20th of Februa ary, 13 Car II, the Decree which fix'd this Office to one of the Gentlemen-Ushers Daily-waiters, was confirmed, and John Ayton, one of the Petitioners, was sworn Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, which was performed by the Register in the Presence of the Sovereign, the Chapter sitting.

THE Form of the Oath given to this Officer, semp. Hon. VIII. Was, Truly and Faithfully to observe and keep all the Points of the Statutes of the Order at to him belonged and

appertained.

HE hath the like Habit with the Register and Garter before described, but his Ensign and Badge is somewhat different from Garter's; for first, it was ordained, That he or his Deputy should earry a Black-Rod (whence he hath his Title) before the Sourreign, or his Deputy, at the Feast of S. George, within the Castle of Windson, and at other sociamnities and Chapters of the Order. On the Top of which there ought to be set a Lyon of England. This Rod serves instead of a Mace, and has the same Authority to

apprehend Delinquents, and such have offended against the Statutes of this Most Noble Order. And where he apprehends any one of the Order, as Guilty of some Crime for which he is to be expell'd the Orders the manner of it is by touching them with this Black-Rod, and his Fee for it, is 5 l.

Hz has affigned him a Golden Badge to be openly; worn in a Gold Chain, or Ribband, before his Breath, composed of one of the Knots in the Collar of the Order which tye the Roses together, and encompassed with a Garter, being alike on both fides; which was conferred on him and his Successors, by Decree in

Chapter, held the s4th of April, 8 Eliz.

'Tis as ancient as Hos. Vih's Reign, for there's a, House in Windsor Castle granted to this Officer by Letters-Patent, during Life. And the same Provision is made for him by the Constitutions of his Office. It is situate on the South-side of the Castle in the middle Ward. The said Constitutions give him Baron-Service; at Court, and Livery thereto appertaining; and besides these, the keeping of the said Castle, and the two Parks adjacent.

King Charles I. having taken into his Hands the little Park of Windfor, and bestow'd it upon James Maxwell, then Usher of the Black-Rod, He, at a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 5th of November, 1629. decreed, That as the Custody of the said Park was conferred on Maxwell in right of his Office; so the same should for ever after be annex'd thereto, and not to be disposed of but under the Great Seal of the Order, and that only to the Usher of the Order for the time being.

LierLy, this Officer had anciently a Fee of 12 d. per diem, which we find continu'd down in the Letters-Patents, whereby this Office was granted. Besides which, the Constitutions of his Office allow him an annual Pension of 30 l. heretofore paid him out of the Exchequer, but by King Charles I. assigned him out of 1200 l. per Ann. settled upon the Order; touching which, and the Payment of the Officers Pensions upon the new Establishment, is the next Section.

9. 6. King

6. 6. King James I. taking into his Royal Breast, the Constitution of this Most Noble Order, that it was in the Nature of a Distinct Sovereignty, govern'd by Laws and Conventions proper to the Body, and himself as Sovereign in Matters immediately relating thereunto, had the fole and uncontroulable Authority of revising, adding, or explaining; and finding that the Penfions paid to the Officers of the Order (as those to the Alms-Knights) and some other Expences, had been anciently made payable out of his Exchequer by vertue of the Great Seals of England, or otherwise by Privy-Seals; and conceiving it incongruous, that the Officers should claim their Penfions by vertue of any other Seal than that of the Order, for it is in some kind derogatory to the Honour of the Order, to permit other Seals to be used within the same: He thereupon with twelve Knights-Companions in a Chapter held at Whitehall, the 22d of May, 20 Jac. I. passed a Decree, That all things concerning the Order should hereafter be ratify'd under the Seal of the Order only, and in para ticular, that the Grants of poor Knights Places, after their being Signed by the Sovereign, should be passed under the Seal of the Order only, and none other. And the Year following, the Chancellor was ordered, That he sould take Advice of the Sovereign's Attorney-General how by Vertue of the Seal of the Order, the Pensions, (given to the Poor Knights) might be paid and receiv'd, His Majesty's further Pleasure being, That all Grants and Payments concerning the Order, should afterwards be confirmed under the Seal of the Order only, and by Vertue thereof.

As to the Alms-Knights Patents, this Decree was of Force and Validity, but in the other Generals, how farit was pursu'd we know not; for in some of them it grew obsolete and useless. But in a Chapter called at Windson, the 22d of April, 10 Car. I. a Debate arose about setting a Part of the Annual Summ of 1000 s. out of the Receipts of his Majesty's Exchequer, to be employ'd particularly in discharge of Expences towards the Feasts of the Order, Legations to Foreign Princes, Payment of the Officers Pensions, erc. disbursed for the Necessity and Reputation of this Noble Order. Afterwards at a Chape

Chapter held the 18th of April, 13 Car. L that Sovereign ratify'd his Royal Assignation, and increased his Bounty to 1200 l. per Ann. setling it for those designs in a Perpetuity for ever, and making it payable out of the Customs in the Port of London, but to be received by the Chancellor of the Order for the time being, as Treafurer of this Money, of which he was to give up an Account to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions yearly at St. George's Feath. And in pursuance of this Ratification, the Attorney-General had Instructions to draw up a Book for his Royal Signature to Warrant its passing under the Great Seal of England, which was dispatch'd, the Letters-Patent boaming refte at Westminster, the 23d of January, 13 Car. I. Immediately after, Sir Thomas Rowe, the Chancellor of the Order, presented a List of the ordinary Fees and Charges of the Order, upon which it was agreed to, That there should issue out a standing Commission to the Chancellor under the Great Seal of the Order to warrant the Yearly Payments, and he to be discharged according, as the faid Pasent had provided. This Commission passing the Great Seal the 3d of May, 14 Car. I. the Sovereign thereby impower'd the Chancellor to make payable out of the yearly Revenue of 1200 /. all and every the yearly. Fees, Pensions, Salaries, and other Payments due and payable to the Officers of the Order, Alms-Knights, or others, appertaining to the Order, either by Charter, Grant, or Affignation under the Seal and Signet of the Order, or by any other Lawful way whatsoever, and in particular,

Himself as Chancellor Register of the Order Garter Principal King of Arms Usher of the Black-Rod Thirteen Alms-Knights	1. 3. 300 0 50 0 per Ann. 30 0 237 5
Table	

AND Sir Thomas Rowe, and in his Absence beyond Sea, Sir James Palmer, Deputy-Chancellor receiv'd out of the Sovereigns Receipts of Subfidies, Customs and Imposts, the the 1200 l. per Ann. out of which they paid the Annual Pensions above-named, under the Title of certain and ord nary Charges, as also such as come within the Denomination of Accidental and Extraordinary Expences; of which kind in their time, were,

Mantles, when the Sovereigns pleas'd to bestow them on the ! Knights Comparions:

Plate for the Altar in St. George's Chappel at Windfor.

Embroidery of the Purfe for holding the Seals.

Removal of Archievements and Plates against Installations.

"Escuttheons for my at &. George's Feast.

Privy Seals and Fees disburst for receiving the 1200 l. per . Annue.

Pers for Installation of Foreign Princes and Stranger-Knighes.
Parchment used in Dispensations and Prorogations.

"Blue Wax for the Seals of the Order.

By which we are easily inform'd, what ought to be accounted extraordinary Expences, towards the Discharge whereof this Sum was to be employ'd as far as it would reach, to mitigate the Cost the great Wardrobe formerly flood taxed with, Provisions of the Order, both for foreign Embassics and Expences at Home.

'THE Matther of the Chancellor's patting his Account, as directed by the faid Commission, was thus done by Sili James Palmer, He humbly moved the Sovereign in Chapter held the 10th of Ollober, 15 Car. L. That it would please him to view the Disbursements made for the Expenses of the Order, which thereupon being Bxamined by the Knights in the Sovereign's Professe the fame were found agreeable to the Dibections of the Commission, and the Payments justify a but he Amuittance of every Officer to whom any Fee was due; no Payment having been made without the Sovereign's Hand first to Authorize it: All which being leen and allow'd, the Account (wherein his Disbursements exceeded his Receipts 371. 13 s, 10 s.) was esteemed Equitable and Just, and passed by the Subscription of Charles then Poince of Water, the Earls of Pembroke and Montgomery, Jaliobury, Holland Derk-Kire, Duke Hamilton, and the Earl of Northumberland, 6. 7. THE

9. 7. THE Executions of these Offices is the last thing here to be described: For tho' all the Officers are strictly obliged to give personal Attendance to their Offices; yet, in case of Sickness, Absence out of the Kingdom, or other emergent Reasons, the Sovereign is pleased to dispense with them, and constitute others to Officiate in their stead, who on such Occasions wear the Robe of that Officer whom they represent, so in case of Vacancy, the Absence of the Prelate at the Grand Feast celebrated at Windsor, 31 Hen. VI. is noted in the Black Book to have been upon just Cause, and the Bishop of Bangor officiated Divine Service, and next Morning celebrated the Mass pro defunctis. The following Year, his Place in these religious Duties was supply'd by the Bishop of Salisbury, as Ann. 36 and 37 Hen. VI. and at all times of the Prelates absence, the Sovereign hath made known his Will what Bishop should supply for him. The Office of Chancellor hath been executed by Proxies, and to this may first be referred a Passage in the Black Book, where Dr. Taylor hath the Title of Vice-Chancellor. Of later times, when Sir Thomas Rowe was employ'd in an Embafly into Germany, Sir James Palmer. Kt. (one of the Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy-Chamber) was deputed by the Sovereign to the Chancellor-ship during his Absence, having the Purse with the Seals deliver'd to him the 4th of May, 14 Car. I. being fworn by the Register of the Order durante deputatione & beneplacito Regis, which Clause was likewise annex'd in the Deputy Chancellor's Oath, 12 Car. II. Upon Sir Thomas Rowe's return, and indisposition, 16 Car. I. Sir. James was again deputed Chancellor, and a third time. 18 Car. I. continu'd Deputy Chancellor unto the Death of Sir Thomas Rowe, of which the Sovereign being inform'd at Oxford, 1644. referved the disposal of this Office 'till Sir James's return to Court, and then commanded him to wear the Badge and Ribband about his Neck, 'till a Chapter of the Order compleated his admittance. 10 1202

In the Vacancy of the Register-ship, Ann. 2 H. VIII. Thomas Ruthall Bishop of Durham, supply'd it: And Ann. 18 and 19 Elia. Dr. Day, Dean of Windsor, executed the Office, and attended at the Feasts of St. George,

28

as Deputy-Register; Dr. George Carew then Register, having Licence by his Patent to execute it by himself or Deputy, being dispenc'd with by the Queen in case of Sickness, or other Impediment. After his Decease, Dean Day was commanded to execute the Office during its Vacancy (being, 14 Years) which he effected 'till he was advanced to the Bishoprick of Winchester, An. 38 Elin. upon which, Dr. Robert Bennes (who succeeded him in his Deanry) was the same Year admitted Register. Afterwards, Dr. Beaumont, being much broken with Age, and other Diseases, Dr. John King, the junior

Canon, supplied his Place.

THE Office of Garter hath been supplied by Deputation: For in those Embassies with the Ensigns of the Order to Foreign Princes, where special Occasions detained Garter at home, some of the Kings or Heralds of Arms, have been order'd upon those Employments, upon the Recommendation of Garter to the Sovereign; whereof there are several Instances; the last of Gregory King, Esq. Lancaster-Herald, who lately carried over the Habit to the Elector of Hanover. So also in case of Vacancy; for we find that Clarencieux, King of Arms, executed this Office after Sir Gilbert Dethick's Death, in January, 27 Eliz. being then sent with the Earl of Darby to the French King Henry III. As also in Reference to the Preparations the 15th of April following, and Service performed thereat, and at the Feast of St. George enfuing.

THE Constitution of the Office of Black-Rod admit of a Deputy to bear the Rod before the Sovereign, where a lawful Occasion impedes his personal Service. And Sir Peter Young, (Chief Gentleman-Usher,) performed this Office at the Feast of St. George held at Windsor, Ann. 6 Car. I. James Maxwell, Esq. Black-Rod, was in France upon the Sovereign's Service; and after, being Mission'd by the King into Scotland, Peter Newton, Esq. Supplied his Place at the Feast at Windsor, 8th, 9th, and

10th of Odober, Anno 15 Car. I.

CHAP.

CHAPIX.

1. TATE come now to treat of the Election of a Knight into the Order, according to the Statutes of Institution, which Osdains. That whenfoever any Knight-Companion happens to depart this Life, The Sovereign (or his Deputy,) after certain Notice had thereof, should forthwith by his Letters, Summon all the Knights-Companions then within the Realm (who, were able to come) to meet him within fix Weeks after fuch Notice, in what convenient Place foever he pleafed to assign for the Eleding a new Companion into the Society. Thus did the Law of this Most Noble Order, in case of Death, and to prevent Vacancies, at first provide; wherewith we evidently find the Practice of elder Times did pun-Qually concur: For as foon as Garter, in Discharge of his Duty, had made Certificate to the Sovereign of a Knight-Companion's Decease, or otherwise to the Regifter of the Order, all fitting Diligence was used to fill up the vacant Stall, within the Space limited by this Statute, or immediately after, and for the quicker Difpatch, Letters of Summons were iffued to the Knights-Companions, to give personal Attendance at the Election. In an ancient one upon the Death of Sir Henry Fitz Hugh, Knight-Companion, Temp. Henry V. these particulars were no less pursuant to the Statutes, than worthy Obfervation to the library wed todays

"I. The Day whereon the defunct Knight-Compa-

" II. Direction is given for celebrating Maffes, ac-

" cording to the Tenor of the Statutes."

"III. Intimation that a Stall is become void by the Knight's Decease.

"IV. The Law of the Order vouched, which appoints an Election of another Knight within fix "Weeks after Certificate made of the Death of the

"former, to avoid as much as may be an interval in

" Succession.

" V. The

" V. The Sovereign's Power afferted where he fees " Cause to Prorogue the Election.

" VI. An Injunction to attend personally at the E-

lection, under a Penalty express'd in the Statutes.

With certainty appointed, to the End all might Ac-

"VIII. The End of coming is mention'd with full Disposition and Preparation to perform what the Sta-

tutes in this Cafe requir'd.

"IX. Lastly, Direction is there given to the Knight
fummoned, that in case his coming to the Chapter was
impeded, he should certifie the Reason of his Default
against the time of his Appearance, of the Validity
whereof the Sovereign was to be fole Umpire.

AND generally of these Topicks, and to this Purport were the Letters of Summons in succeeding times com-

posed.

THE before-mention'd Branch of the Statutes of Institution hath been sufficiently enforced by Incorporating it into the Statutes, temp. H. V. and H. VIII. nor hath it fince undergone any Alteration; howbeit fome further Addition and Explanation were annexed to them, 21 Jac. I. at a Chapter held at Windfor the 24th of April that year, where it was decreed, That the Sovereign being advertised of the Death of a Knight-Companion. the Knights-Companions remaining at Court Bould move him to declare his Pleasure whether he would that Letters should be fent to all the Knights-Companions within the Realm to attend his Person for the Croice of a new Knight, at a Day by the said Sovereign appointed, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, or be pleas'd to defer the Elellon until the Peast of St. George, at what time Elefibns have been most usually made : and according as he refolv'd in what Place it foodld be, fo is oughs (by Letters directed to the Knights-Companions within the Realtn) to be made knowle unto them.

This Deferring, or Prorogation of the Election, was no new thing, the not indulged by the Statutes, or declared Law, before this 21 Jul. 1. as is evident by the Letter of Summons sent after the Death of Sir Robers D'Uniferuil, Knight Companion, semp. H. 4. wherein Notice

tice is taken of the Limitation given by the Statutes, after Certificate of Death, viz. Six Weeks, within the Space whereof a new Election was to commence; yet where a Chapter for Election could not conveniently be summoned within that limited Time, it was sufficient if the Soveraign declared as he did in the said Placart and entered in the Black Book, That being then involved in other Business, he could not well assend this Affair, and therefore deferr'd the time for Election, unto the Eve of St. George next following.

But of later Date, this formal Way of Summons by Letter, hath been discontinued, and only remained to such as are remote, and warned only by a verbal Message. For the Chancellor of the Order having consulted the Soveraign's Pleasure, as to the Day and Place, usually acquaints Garter therewith, who thereupon goes immediately to the Knights Companions then at Court, and desires their Attendance at the Chapter, according to the

Soveraign's Defignation.

And here it is to be remarked, that no Knight Elect ought to be summoned to a Chapter of Election, or are rendered sufficient of giving their Votes therein, until they be complextly installed, either in Person, or by Proxy. Not indeed did any Necessity intervene, or require it till the late rebellious times, when the Caffle of Windsor being Garrison'd by the Parliament's Forces, it was not possible for the Duke of York and Prince Rupert, to take Pollettion of their Stalls, as the Law of the Order enjoined. Therefore the then Soversign, whose Right it is, did, 17 Jan, 1644, dispense with their Installations in St. George's Chapel, for the present, and invested them with the Privileges of the Order, among which the Power of voting in Chapter, was one: Provided those Princes should first take the Oath given at installations, and afterwards perform the accustomed Ceremonies, so soon as it should be thought convenient, and the Castle was restored to the Possession of his Man jesty. In compliance to which Proviso they both then took the Oath, and on the Eve of the first Peast of St. George after the Restoration, the Duke was installed; and on the Eve of the second Feast, 15 Car. s. by the Q a

((228))

Parls of Northumberland and Berk-Ibire; and the Prince by

1. The Place of Election.] Bur at what time foever the Ceremony of Election is purposed, the same ought to be Celebrated in Chapter, (for so is the Assembly of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions call'd, where or whensoever conven'd) whether at the Solemnity of St. George's Feast, the ordinary or most accustom'd Time, or on other Days specially set apart by the Sovereign; and when the Sovereign thinks sitting in the Interval of Feasts, to elect any Foreign Prince or other Person, Stranger or Subject, he often transacts it in peculiar Chapters called to that purpose, and then appoints both Day and Place, having that Prerogative. Some sew Examples both of pristine, and of late Time, make it manifest and apparent.

Day and Year. Knights elected. Alb., de Vasques Dalman Ban of the Lion & at July 11. dea, E. of Averancia. Lord Beauchamp. valing Breatford of Soul 34 H. 6. C Lord Hoo. 30 Son Bed-Chama Neva 27. 145 si berstWestminsten Cy. 25 H. 6. Within Cas Feli Sth. Lord Swine. Richard B. of Warwick of the Bithops Par 1129 H. b. Sie Thomas Kyriel. the wide. Sis Tohow Wenlock. P. Fower of Lon-701 August 8. CG. Ubalder, D. of Urbin 114 Ed. 4. H. Petcy, E. of North Edward Pr. of Wales. May: 15th. Richard Duke of Yorks 15 Ed. 4. T. Grey, Mar, of Dorfer. 6. So veneign's Bedin 1 - a Ferdinand K. of Spain n Chainber in the (Febr. 10. Mercules D.) of Ferrara. to Wardtobe, Lon Co 19 E. 4: 7. Grienwich, - Fuly 14, 15 H. 8. Lord Farrers. E.r.c

Place.

Place.

Day and Year. Knights elected.

OH. 27th. J. Montmor E. Beamon.
24 H.S. P. Chabot, E. of Newbil'

9. Hampton- Jan. 9th. Seward Symoun, Early
Court. J. 32 H.S. of Herrford.

10. Windfor. Sug. 63. 1'25 Emanuel Duke, of Sab.
11. Whiteball. Peb. Scho. John Casmirer, Count.
20 Elia. Palating of the Rignen

12. York. Sepr. 12. 16 Car. 1. Theman Earl of Strafferde

Bur for the most Part fince the Beginning of Queen! Blinabeth's Reign, Whitehall, the Sovertign's almost com stant Court and Abode, hath been the usual Place whereunto all the Khights Companions have been flesh cially Summon'd, and peculiar Chapters affembreifen Election in the Intervals between the Vacancy and Bil George's Feaft. However, while King Charles II. was it? Exile, and wanted the compleat Number of Knighte to constitute a full Chapter, he was necessitated not only to dispence with the Ceremony of Election in Chapter, but alfo in supplying the Defect of a Structury, by making his own Election; yet after his Restoration, Whithall recover'd her wonted Honour, and April the 1st 13 Cur. II. at a Chapter call'd'and held in the Bed-Chambon there, the Duke of Richmond, the Earls of Lindfey, Manchefter, and Strafford were elected,

6. 3. In the next Place we are to confider what Number of Knights-Companions ought to be affembridated make up a compleat Chapter of Election.

By the Statutes, there should be Six in Number at the least, besides the Sovereign of his Deputy; the due observance of which hath been so strict formerly, that Elections have been deserted where Chapters have been desiclent in that Number; for Proof of which, the Duke of Oloutested, Ann. 9 Hen. VI. then Deputy to the Sovereign (at that Time in Prance) for Celebrating the Frast of St. Carrie at Windsor, sorbore to proceed to Election.

lection, because the Number of Knights-Companions there. affembled was less than the Statutes required. And Am, 10 Hen. V. no Election was Solemniz'd, tho' one Stall was void by the Death of the Lord Clifford, and probably for that reason; for the Earl of Bedford, then the Sovereign's Deputy, had but three Knights present with him. Ann. 22, or rather 23. Hamphry Duke of Bucks being deputed to celebrate the Feart of St. George at Windsor. altho' there was at that Time four Stalls vacant, yet did no Nomination pass; one reason, because there was mos present a sufficient Number so compleas the Elettion. when the same King celebrated the Grand Feast personally at Windsor, Anno 31. Rogni sui, having but three Knights attending him thereat, the Election was Prorogu'd for the very fame Reason; in like manner 32, 33 and 44 Hen. VI. the Elections were retarded, for at the first of them there were present but two Knights-Companions, besides the Sovereign's Deputy; and at the Two last but four, besides the Sovereign, tho' the Registrum Cartaceum, Ann. 32. names five by adding the Duke of Samerfet. At the Feast of Su George celebrated at Windsor, A. D. 1471, Temp, Edw. IV. the Sovereign fully resolving to Constitute an Election, and having but five Knights-Companions prefent, Calys, Pursuivant at Arms, was dispatched to London for Sir John Aftley to repair thither and compleat the Chapter, rather than violate the Laws of the Order. January the 31st. 21 Car. H. being defign'd for the Election of Christopher Duke of Albemarle, and there being Conven'd but five Knighte at the Chapter, the Election was put off 'till the Third of February following, at which Time a proportionable Number of Knights being present, his Election receiv'd their Approbation.

5, 4. Yet in cases of Necessiry only, and to illustrate the Power and Prerogative of the Sovereigns, where the Exigency requires it, the not to be made use of where there is a possibility to perform the Rules and Injunctions of the Statutes, the Sovereigns for divers Reasons, have been induced to dispense with this Branch of the Statute for want of a plenary Number to complete a Chapter, And the first Liberty observed herein

herein, was made use of by King Henry VIII. Ann. 26. Regni fui, who upon the Death of the Lord Montjoy, very speedily assembl'd a Chapter at Whitehall, where no more than five Knights-Companions being present, the Absence of the rest were excus'd by special Grace and Favour, and the Injunction of the Statute (as the Annals Subjoin) concerning the Number of Nominators, were by the fame Clemency dispenc'd with, because of the Exigency of the Time and Place, and immediately upon taking a Scrutiny, James V. King of Scotland was elected into the Fellowship of this illustrious Order, but from that Time to the Rebellion, there occurs not any thing of this Nature; but the Wickedness of those Days created new Exigencies and Projections, which occasion'd, or gather inforc'd the Sovereign, King Charles I. most unwillingly to awaken and rouse up this dormant Prerogazive, which he put in Execution at a Chapter purposely affembl'd for the Election of Thomas Earl of Strafford, held at the City of York the 12th of September, 16 Car. I. where at that Time and Place he dispended with the Defect of Number of Six Knights-Companions, having then with him Four only, some of the rest being engag'd in his Service against the Scots.

AFTERWARDS when several of the Knights-Companions so much adhered to the Long Parliament, that all Summons were ineffectual to draw them to their Attendance upon their Sovereign, tho' but to celebrate the Grand Festival of their Patron (much less to the compleating Chapters of Election) to which they were obliged by the Oath taken at their Installment, the Sovereign was constrain'd to extend further his Supreme Authority; and thereupon at the Feast of St. George, celebrated at York, the 18th, 19th and 20th of April, Ann. 18. Regni fui, in a Chapter held on the Eye of the faid Feaft by himself and but four other Knights Companions, It was Order'd, That Letters of Difpensation should be drawn up for the insufficient Number (as wanting Six Knights) to hold a Chapter of Election, and for Authorizing the Knights then present to deliver in their Votes according to Custom in other Scrutinies, that fo the Sovereign might proceed to the Election design'd. By vertue of which Dispensation, the Duke

of York and Prince Rupert were elected Fellows of this

noble Society.

THE like Dispensation was made at Oxford upon the 2d of March, Anno 20. Car. I. there being but five Knights-Companions present with the Sovereign; at which Chapter, William Prince of Orange, and Bernard de

Foix, Duke of Espernon, were elected.

Last of all, in reference to the holding three feveral Chapters preparatory to the Feast of St. George, and grand Installation celebrated at Windsor the 15th, 16th, and 17th of April, 13. Car. II (one of which Chapters was held for the Election of Four Knights, and to deliberate with the surviving Knights-Companions) the Sovereign was pleased the 29th of March preceding, to pass the like Dispensation under the Signet of the Order, and his own Sign Manual, for this defect; and thereby made those three Chapters as legal as if the Number of Knights-Companions had been compleat.

\$. 5. We are now atriv'd at opening the Chapter, whereinto neither the Sovereign, nor any of the Knights-Companions are to be admitted without the Ornament, both their Mantles and Garters, as the Statutes ordain, and the Law is still in force, tho' the Chapter hath been assembled elsewhere than at Windsor. As for instance, one called at Whitehall for the Election of John Count Palatine of the Rhine, Anno 20. Eliz. the Earl of Huntingdon, and the Lord Grey of Wilson, not having their Mantles then at Court, were not permitted to enter into the Chapter to give their Votes.

KING Charles I. determining to call a Chapter for electing the forefaid Thomas Earl of Strafford at York, where neither he nor any of the Knights Companions then attending his Person, had the Robes of the Order with them; and taking into his Royal Consideration, the Statutes now mention'd, did by his Authority, as Sovereign of the Order, dispence with those Knights then present for coming into the Chapter without their Mantles.

AFTERWARD, upon other Emergencies that ow'd their Origin to the late Rebellion, "the Savereign did the like in some subsequent Chapters held at Oxford.

AFTER

Arren the Refloration, a Disponsation passed they Signet of the Order, dated the moth of January, 127 Car. In the Great Seal being under the Hand of the Graver but not finish'd) He was accessionted to make, use of his Supreme Authority for holding a Chapter the 14th of January following, in regard the Knights Companions then in being were not as yet provided of new Robes.

Parsumine then, that a full Number of Knights, in Obedience to their Summons) are attending their Sovereign habited in their Mantles and Garters, and entred into the Chapter-House at Windfor, or other Place appointed for this Affentbly, the Sovereign having taken his Seat at the upper End of the Table, and given leave to the Knights-Companions to fit, the Occasion, of their being call'd together is first declar'd either by the Sovereign himself, or the Chancellor of the Orders by his Command.

The next thing in Course, is to exhibit to the Sougre seigh Information of all the vacant Stalls; and if the Sovereign chance to be in Foreign Parts, an Information ought to be transmitted to him by his Deputy or Lieuritement; but if in England, and present in the Chapters then to be presented him by the Chapters, or in his Absence by the Register, or other Officer of the Orders.

AFTER this they fingly debate how the Place of the defunct Knight shall be supply'd, and sometimes (where two or more Stalls are found void) whether, they shall be all fill'd up at that time; or if not, how many Knightsy shall be elected pro bac vice,

Bur when the Scrutiny is intended to be taken in the Choir of St. George's Chapel at Windfer; the feor the like particulars (referring to Election), are commonly confider'd of on the Feath Day in the Chapter held image distrily before Vespers, wherein it is most usually order'd. That the Scrutiny shall be taken in the Chapel that following Assernoom. And so it was dorread on St. George's. Day, Anno 9. Edwi VI. vin. That the Elections of Knights should be taken that Exempling in the Chapele.

This being effected, the Chancellor begins to collect the Knights-Companions Votes, and this is frequently term defice taking the Scrutings: For the ampler, View View of the Nature of which Action and Coremony, we shall proceed to certain Confiderations proparatory thereunto, beginning with what concerns the Nomination of the Persons to be proposed to the Election.

6.6. Awn first, That Knights-Companions only present in Chapter, have the sole Right inherent in themselves, to nominate and propose Persons to the Sovereign's Election, consentaneous to the Bodies of the Statures, that even from the Institution of this Most Noble Order,

it hath not ever suffer'd any deviations.

Ir is worthy of Remark, that Anno 26. Eliz, the Feast of St. George being Celebrated at Greenwich, the Earl of Warwick, and Lord Busleigh were seized with a Fit of the Gout, upon the Feast Day, which retarded them from Evening Prayer, whilst the Scrutiny was taken; whereupon we find their Indisposition of Body, and Absence, noted in that Scrutiny, where their Nominations should else have been set down, had they been present. And upon the same Occasion was what Robert Cook, Esq. Clarencenn, King at Arms, informs us, That as for those Knights Companions who happen to be absent when the Scrutiny is taken, altho' this Absence is occasioned by Aquident of Sickness, or with the Soversign's Licence, nevertheless, in regard of this their Absence at that very time, their Votes may not be received.

Those Knights Companions that some late to the Chapter, forfeit likewise the Privilege of giving their Votes for that time, which so happened to Prince Rupers, and the Earl of Strafford, at the Chapter held for the Election of James Duke of Monmonth, in the Privy Cham-

ber at Whitehall, 29 Mar. 1663.

Altho' none of the absent Knights-Companions can give a Proxy to vote, or otherwise send their Suffrages into the Chapter or Chapel, there to pass in Momination; yet formerly, eires somp. H. 5. & H. 6. when diress of the Knights Companions were frequently employed in the Wars of France, and consequently so fixed to their Commands, that they could not personally attend the Feast of St. George at Windsor, it was usual for the Commander there in Chief, with Consent of those Knights Companions, to make a formal Certificate, or Present-

ment (but not to pass it by way of Nomination or Vote, for that the Law of the Order did not permit) to the Soveraign, or his Lieutenant and Knights Companions affembled at the Feast, of such Persons famous for martial Valour and Virtue, with an Account of their gallant Acts and Atchievements, (attested by other Persons of Honour) as were at that time, and in that Kingdom, in the Sovereign's Service, and seemed worthy Candidates for the Honour of the Election, to the intent victorious and brave Persons might be preferr'd to so noble and sublime a Post; an Example whereof we find preserved by the Industrious and Learned Dugdale.

MY Lord the Duc of Bedford remembreth, as by the Statutes of the Order of the Gartre, the Election " of the Stalls voyde. He faith in the Voyc of the Brethren, " and of the Fellowship, beyng at the tyme of the Fest, " in the Presence of the Sovernin or hys Deputy; that " thinkyth to my said Lord, that for hys Acquital to " Knighthood, that fytteth hym to give in Knowledge 44 to the Kyng Soverain of the Ordre, and to his Fel-" lowship of the same Ordre, the great Honours of the " notable Knights, that from tyme to tyme exercyfeth, " and have exercyfed in Knighthood; and especially " in the Service of their Soverain Lord. And of such " notable Knyghts as my Lord of Bedford, for the tyme " remembreth him of, he hath by the Advyce of them " of the Fellowship of the Ordre, being now in France, 44 in the Kyngs Service, and givyng in charge to the " said Garter Kyng of Arms, of the Ordre, to shew * theyr Names to the Kyng, and to expound Part of " theyr Deeds, Acts, and of theyr Worthynels. First " to expose the Honour of Sir John Radeelyff that hath " contynowed all the tyme of the victorious Kyng that a last dyed, whom Christe absolve, at the first lan-46 ding of hym, at Quies de Caux, where the layd Radeclyff * teteyved the Order of a Knyght, and after contynowed the Siege of Hareflew. And after with my Lord of Ex-46 cester at the Battaile of Vallemons, and of Quies de Caux. " And also fithen the deth of the sayd victorious Kyng, et Radecloff being Seneschall of Guyen, hath brought by " hys Labour in Knyghthood to hys Soveraign Lord's " obeylance, (236)

" obeysance within the Duchie of Guyen many dyverse "Cities, Towns and Fortresses. And in especial de-"Terved great and notable merits at the Siege of the City of Bazates, whych Siege was accorded, appointed. " and fet day of Battaile and of Rescous, the whych day, " was kept and houlden with great power on both Sydes, " and under Banners displayed, the Enemyes doubtyng to fyght with Radeclyff required hym of apointment. they to depart under faufe conduct from the faid. Field, the whych faufe conduct he graunted them for the term of eight days, like as they required the "honour and empruse rested in the said Radeclyff, and " to hys hygh meryte, for incontynent followyng was " delyvered to hym, the reddyssion and possession of the fayd Cytty of Eazates. And also the fayd Rade-"tynowed and exercyfed the Armys the Space of xxviii Wynters unreproched. And in the tyme of his " Elquierhood was at the Battaile of Shrewsbury and at. " the Journey of Husks with the Lord Grey at the dif-"comfiture and taking of Owenfon ...

Syr Thomas Ramfton, Syr Robert Harlyng, Syr Rauff Butler, Syr Gilbert Halfall. Syr William Oldegall, ...

Item, My Lord the Duc of Bedford beleecheth the. Kyng Soveraign of the Order to have also for fen commended to his good grace and highnesse other, of his Subjects and Servants now being in hya Sers " of his Subjects and Scruants now being in hya Ser, " vice in the Realme of Erance, whych hath done "and yet doth take great payne by their knyghtly and yet dotuliake governmente of worthynels, labour dayly to serve the merite of worthynels, Syr. and prowels, as Syr Robert Hungerford, Syr, Thomas Beamont, Syr John Popeham, Syr Nicholas Burdet, Syr Rauff New !!, Syr Ldward Wyver, Syr John, "Robefart, Syr Tyre Robefart, Syr William Bretton, Syr Thomas Kyngston, Syr Richard Hankford, and dyverle other of la celler at the Battaile of Linkums

Bur lest it may be suppos'd by some, that the Knights-Companions present in Chapter, can at their Pleasure : CONFINCE.

((3237))

pleasures nominate or propose to elect such Persons as they deem meet, so they be qualify'd according to the statutes, this Privilege is to be understood of Knight's Subjects only: For in all Cases concerning Strangers, the Sovereign doth but barely grant them Sufferance, and may direct and confine the Knights Companions to the Nomination of such as he are any time intends to Honoise with Diestion, which Prerogative was particularly Afferted. It is Elist and a Carl L.

In the First of these Inflances, the Blue Book of the Order recorderly, That at a Chapter held immediately before Vefpers on St. George's Day, the Earl of Huntingdon, then Lieutenant for the Sovereign, made known to the Knights Companions, Thus the Sovereign did permit thems, by leave is so their Pleafare to chafe into the Order whatforder Phieign Prince they floated by wheer Viotes approve of. Henn we have two Points that offer themselves to our Confideration. First, That the Knights-Companions have not the Liberty to nominate what Foreign Prince they please, but the same is derivative from the Soveseign, and only by his Permission: "Secondly, To weigh the Baragraph well, that Nomindre ought to be remdar'debrunderfood here by the Word Eligare, and that the Power delegated to the Knights-Companions from the Sovereign, was only to nominate, not elect; For it emmediately follows, That the Knights-Companions went From the Chapter to the Second Velpers; and while the Divine Offices were colebrating, the Prelate received their Nominations, and that very Evening the Lieutenant presented them to the Sovereign for her to consider of; which had been infignifichar and weles, if the Knights Companions had been impower'd by her Licence to have made the Choice themselves. But the contrary is evident; for the next Morning all the Knights-Companions attending the Sovereign in Chapter, the herfelf confirm'd there the Election not of any Foreign Prince, but of the Earl of Suffex, and the Lord Backburft: 1. In the other Instance, Anne 3 Car. I. the Sovereign in w Chapter held before Vespers on St. George's Day; fig. nify'd it to be his Pleasure (Three Stalle being then macant) that out of Foreign Princes, the Nomination of whom, (faith the Annals in that very Place) belongs only roube Sovereign,

Severeige, i.e. The Sovereign has the Presogative to disrect the Knights-Companions to name, or impose uponthem the Nomination of such Foreign Prince he pleaseth they, the Knights-Companions, should pitch upon s which must undoubtedly be understood to Nominate, or enter down into the Scrutiny, (not elect) Gustame Adelphas, King of Sueden, and Hany Prince of Orange. For a little stier, it is evident, when the Scrutiny was presented to the Sovereign, that himself, not the Knights-Companions, made Election of them.

And it is further manifelt, by the Scruting there inferred, that both those Princes were named by every of the Knights-Companions then present, according to the Sovereign's fignification (which has been usually done at all other Times upon the like Occasions,) But concerning the third Person then to be Elected, the Sovereign, (intending him to be a Knight-Subject) left it entirely to their Pleasure to Nominate whomsoever they thought worthy of their Votes. Since this Time. the Nominations in like Gases, have been sufficiently acknowledg'd by the Knights-Companions themselves to be a Prerogative belonging folchy to the Sovereign. For to the End they might more expeditionly and clearly show their Compliance, it was moved in a Chapter held at Oxford, March the ad. ap Car. L. That is might became a Custom for the Sovereign to declare before-hands whether he would elett any Foreign Prince, and whom, that fo she Knighes-Companions might be there so name him in the Scruting.

ehr Aft of Election, is appertaining to the Number, Qualifications and Dignatics of the Persons nominated, which may be more confpicuously resolved from another Branch of the before-mention'd Article, viz. That every one of the Knights-Companions present at the Election should nominate for himself nine very sufficient Persons, whom he should judge free from all Reproach and Scandal, whether Subjects to the Sovereign, or Boseigners, Provided they are known not to Favour or Abet any Party at entity with him 5 that is to say, three Earls, or others of higher Degree, three Berons.

(239)

and three Knights. Wherein the Things chiefly ob-

fervable, we rank under five Heads.

For the First of these, their Number. Every Knight-Companion assembled in Chapter, is sujoined to name Nine, neither more nor tele. So also such King Henry V's Statutes. Nor are King Henry Villth's, any ways dislouint. And in this particular, the Statutes have been kitchesto inviolably observed, except in one Case. As to Numbers, and the Mysteries wrapt up in them, we shall mot further insist upon. But why our Royal Founder selected this particular Number above all other, unless the had some Eye, and tacit Resection on the Nine Worthies, or a treble threefold Cord and Symbol of versett Stability and solid Amity, the Number Nine is accounted to signific, can with no great Facility or Certainty be decyphered.

As to the Second Point, they ought to be of un-Spotted Character. The Injunction in the Statutes of Ivillitation takes Order, that the Persons designed for Election, should be free from all Reproach, and of untaint. For Reparation; and according to those of King Henry V. are to be the best and most sufficient Knights, and freest from Reprosch. To the same purpose the Exemplar in the Black-Book, Such as are fittest, and whom they who Nominate believe to be free from Ignominy and Dishonour. And to this Act of Nomination belongs part of the Second Article in Howy Villth's Statutes, That no Knight-Companies flould name any Person whom he thinks or efteens in his Conscience to have upon him any Spot of Reproach. But on the Contrary in another Place of the fame Stututes it is Provided, That they be nominated and proposed out of the Number of the most worthy and select Knights.

How tender the Knights-Companions were in prifline Times of infringing this particular, is proved from a notable Passage which happen'd Ann. 39 Hen. VI. at a Scrutiny taken the 8th of February, in the Bishop of London's Palace, where John de Foix Earl of Kendal, a Cassed by birth, (which makes the Example more eminent, that a Stranger should have so great Regard to the Honour of the Order) not being acquainted with the Quality and Merit of Knights and Honourable Per-



fons

lous ashongst and to will and demonstrably as to nome nate fuch whom he was confident were irreprehentible, - forborero mention any Porsona at all, 1 And certainly. · seeing the Statutes put very confiderable Qualifications upon the Deputies and Propies, made choice for the Installation of Strangers (as elsewhere shown) much more Caution and Regard ought to be used both in the Nomination and Election of Knights into this radiant Hand illustridus Society and relief With the green THE third Head the Statutes render indifferently capable of being nominated or elected, either Knights Subjects, or Strangers, [Free Princes or their Subjects.] And it was to even at the Election upon the first Choice, where among the Twenty five Elected Knights Twenty three of them were Subjects. And this was the constant Cultom not only in the remaining Part of the Founders Reign, and during those of his three Successors, but bas continued ever fince, as appears from the Scrutinies taken and entred throughout the Annals of the Order. OF those who have gain'd admission into this Noble Order by Election, we shall in the last Chapter give an Account in a compleat Catalogue of them, and likewife sinfert the Names of fuch as have missed their Election, yet are not to be buried in Oblivion, out of this very respect, that by their standing Candidates, have the Fame of being enrolled in the Principal Register of Honour now in the Christian World. It cannot be supposed we should give a List of all, (for that were a Task too laborious, and wou'd prove too numerous) but only of those of eminent Quality in foreign Parts, with she Era when the Scrutinies were taken.

A CATALOGUE of some STRANGERS who have been nominated, but not elected.

Rambrith de Walfey

Johannes de Voyaada

Franciscus Sforza, Dux Medialani

Franciscus Secundus, Dux Britannia

Janus 128 Hen. 6.

Franciscus Secundus, Dux Britannia

Janus 12, 14, 15, 22 E. 4.

Hanticus Gurunus, Rex Legionis & Castil, 14 Ed. 4.

Matthia Coruinus, Rex Hungarie

19, 22 Ed. 4.

Fredericus Secundus, Dux Austria, 22 E. 4. 1 Re 3.

Phi-

Philippus quartus, Dux Burgundia Franciscus Maria, Dux Urbini Uladislam secundus, Rex Hungaria Christianus secundus, Rex Dania Dux Barriya Comes Galacia Alphonfus Dux Ferraria Ludovicus secundus, Rex Hungaria Maximilianus Sforza, Dux Mediolani Marchio Pescare Johannes tertius, Rex Portugallia -----Marchio Mantue Carolus Burbonus, Dux Vando me Gulielmus Dux Clivensis ----Dux Bavariæ Dux Alve Dux Medina Cali Comes Feren Franciscus secundus, Rex Gallia Franciscus tertius, Comes Palatinus Augustus Dux Saxonie Alphonsus secundus, Dux Ferrarie ----Dux Andegavensis Dominus Grabazenby Dominus Humers Dominus Johannes Mounte Dominus Harmibols Dominus Boyly

14 Hen. 7. 1, 2 Hen. 8. 1, 2, 6 Hen. 8. 6, 8 Hen. 8. 8 Hen. 8. 13, 15 Hen. 8. 13, 14, 15 H. 8. 14, 15, 16 H. 8. 17 Hen. 8. 17,18,26,28 H. 8. 18 Hen. 8. 24 Hen. 8.

Those Persons were render'd incapable of Nomination who were known to Act in contrary Interest to the Sovereign; as the Exemplar in the Black-Book expressed more copiously, Such as are not his Adversaries, or Abestors, or willing Defenders of his Adversaries. Sometimes the Knights-Companions being more wary and discreet in Nominating them, to put either disrespect upon the Sovereign, or offer Violation to the Statutes.

In the last Place, concerning the Degree, Rank and Dignity of the Nine Knights proposed to be Elected, the Statutes of the Institution set forth, That they be, First, Three Earls, or Persons of great Dignity. Secondly, Three Barons. And, Third'y, Three Knights: Or, as it

is in Henry V's Statutes, Trois Contes ou de greegnear estat, trois Banerets, & trois Batchelers. These Degrees are to be ranked in Three Classes, and they distinguish'd by Three Divisions, all including the Three Degrees aforesaid.

WHEREAS all other Bodies and Exemplars of the Statutes make positive mention of Earls only, yet the Statutes of Hen. VIII. in this Point are more ample, by expressing the first Class, Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, or Persons superior to these in Degree, wherein the highest

Dignity is comprehended.

We may observe the different Title, vin. Baneres that Henry V's Statutes hath given us instead of Baron; and not only in this Article, but in all other where there is Occasion to treat of Barons; and yet the Record intends by it no other than the Person it mentions: For tho' a Banneret had its Denomination à vexillo, it usually signify'd a Degree of Honour next below a Baron, both in a later and a modern Date; yet formerly among our Records, it is expressedly Synonymous to Baron, as is sufficiently clear'd up by our most Learned Selden; and in this Sense is to be taken here, and not as a distinct Title of lower Degree, because we observe the Bannerets rank'd in all Scrutinies before King Henry VIII. establish'd his Statutes (except one) with the Knights-Batchelors, not with Barons.

THE Title of the third and lowest Rank in this Classis in the Statutes of their Institution, are called Milites Bachalauri, and in those of King Henry V. Batchelors, and elsewhere Bachalauri & Bachelauri Equites, which in common Acceptation are the same with Milites, tho' thus render'd to evince their difference from Knights-Bannerets, who are of a superior Degree of Honour. And here we may observe, that there is no Place in a Scrutiny for any under the Degree of a Knight-Batche-And the Three of the Nine mentioned are fet down to be Barons, and Three other Earls, or of higher Degree, yet must these Six be such as have had conferred on them the Order of Knighthood, else their Names are rejected, and neither given or taken in Nomination; for the Words of the Statute expresly are, That each of the Knights affembl'd at the Election foall name nine Knights.

Thus King Charles I. Anno 6 Regni sui, designing to invest James Marquess of Hamilton with this Order, conferr'd the Honour of Knighthood upon him immediately before his Nomination: And the Annals in that Place put this commentary Remark thereupon, Because by the Statutes it is provided, that none should be eletted into the Order that have not been dignify'd with the Title of Knight.

YET the Ceremony of Knighting the Person defigned to be elected, was not so strictly regarded, but sometimes this Branch of the Statute was either wholly paffed, or elfe confounded with the fecond Article throughout the feveral Bodies of the Statutes, which prohibits the Choice or Election of any Person into the Society, as this doth the Proposal or Nomination. And theréupon perhaps it was conceiv'd, that altho' the Nomination, Election, and sometimes Delivery of the Ensigns of the Order was first dispatch'd and past, yet it was sufficient if the Honour of Knighthood was conferr'd afterwards; as in the Cases of William Earl of Derby and Thomas Lord Burleigh, Anno 43. Eliz. where the Regifler observes, That as soon as their Election was over, and they Usher'd into the Chapter, the Earl of Derby, (who it feems had not been Knighted before) was dubbed Knight with a drawn Sword, according to Custom, after which they had the Garter and George put on by the Sovereign her felf.

In like manner, Ulrick Duke of Holstein, and Henry Earl of Northampton, immediately after their Election, (the last Day of St. George's Feast, Ann. 3. Jac. I.) and before they receiv'd the Ensigns of the Order, had the Dignity of Knighthood conferr'd on them by the Sovereign; and in like manner the Earl of Sussex, Ann. 3 C. s. which the Red-Book of the Order recites, That as soon as it was understood that the Earl had not receiv'd the Order of Knighthood before, the Sovereign immediately drawing his Sword, Knighted him; which was not done till after his Election and Investiture with both the George and

Garter.

Thus did the Ceremony of Knighthood succeed the Election of Charles Prince of Wales, the 21st of May, Ann. 14 Car. I. for after he had been elected, and invested with the Ensigns of the Order by the two Senior R 2 Knights

Knights (the Earls of Pembroke and Montgomery, and of Arundel and Surry) were intreated by the rest of the Knights-Companions, to present his Highness to the Sovereign in the Name of all the rest, to be initiated a Knight-Batchelor. He was conducted by the said Earls (his Supporters) into the Presence-Chamber in Windsor-Castle, where before the Chair of State, he most Solemnly received the Order of Knighthood from his Father King Charles I.

To Honour which Knighthood, and the Memory thereof, Four of the chief Nobility then present were Knighted, viz. the Earls of Essex, St. Alban's and Elgin, and Viscount Grandison, being conducted from the Great Chamber to the Sovereign's State, each between two

Batchelor-Knights.

AFTERWARDS the Law in this Point began again to be more rightly understood; and by that Time James Duke of York came to be elected (which was the 20th of April, 18 Car. I. at the Feast of St. George celebrated at York) the Sovereign appointed, and accordingly conterr'd Knighthood upon him the Day before, which he receiv'd upon his Knees, being conducted into the Prefence-Chamber between two of the Nobility, who were also Knights, the Marquess of Hersford and Viscount Grandison. In Honour and Commemoration whereof, Four other Noblemen receiv'd the Honour of Knighthood at that time, the Earl of Carnarvan, the Lords George D'Aubignie, John Stewart, and Bernard Stewart, each supported by two Knights.

And thus Prince Edward Count Palatine of the Rhine, and George Duke of Buckingham, being defigned by King Charles II. to be admitted into this Noble Order, were both first Knighted at St. Germains in France, 1649. and afterwards had the Ensigns of the Order sent unto them, by the Hands of Sir Edward Walker, Kt. Garter, who, in right of his Office, invested them therewith.

YET in the Case of Prince Rupert, who was elected with James Duke of York, Ann. 18. Car. I. His want of Knighthood became no impediment, because he was a Prince in another Country, viz. Count Palatine of the Rhine, and Duke of Bavaria, and might therefore justly challenge a Privilege to come within the Rule of foreign Princes.

Bur the Sovereign, to arrive as near to the Intention and Observance of the Statute as he could, (where there was a possibility to do it, and the Honour would be well accepted by the Prince) thought it requifite by Commission under the Great Seal of England, to impower Thomas Earl of Arundel and Surry, and George Lord Goring, both being then in Holland, or either of them, to Knight the faid Prince before putting on the Garter (seeing it could not possibly be done before his Election) which was intended to be sent by him by the Hands of Sir John Burrough, Garter. But Death intervening, the Sovereign's Intention was frustrated; altho' the Prince, upon his coming afterwards into England, receiv'd both the Garter and the George from the Sovereign himself at Nortingham nevertheless without Knighthood, which to excuse, it may well be alledg'd, that the Sovereign might not recollect this Part of the Ceremony, it being a Time of so great Turmoil and Fatigue, occasion'd by the then ferting up of his Standard.

However, upon the 17th of January, 1644. when a Decree past in Chapter then assembled at Oxford, That both the Duke of York and the Prince, should enjoy all Emoluments and Privileges of the Order, tho' they were not as yet Install'd (which Ceremony was to be compleated assoon as Windsor was out of the Power of the Rebels.) The Prince, before he receiv'd his Oath, was conducted by the Earl of Berk-soire and Duke of Richmond and Lenox, unto the Sovereign, and had conferr'd on him the Honour of Knighthood, there being at the same Time two of the Nobility Knighted in Memorial of that Solemnity, the Lord Henry Seymour, Second Son to the Marquess of Herrford, and the Lord

Capell, conducted each between two Knights.

6. 8. We are now come to speak of the Scrutiny it self, in reference to which, we shall consider by whom it ought, or hath been usually taken, and the Manner and Form thereof.

By the Statutes of the Institution, the Collecting the Knights-Companions Votes, and entring them in the Scrutiny, solely appertains to the Prelate of the Order; and upon him is this Office devolved, not only by the R 2

other Bodies of the Statutes, but by the Constitutions of his Post, and the Obligation of his Oath, whose right we find duly afferted upon this Persons taking a Scruti-

ny, Anne 29 Eliz.

THE Statutes likewise provided, That if the Prelate was at any Time absent, then the Dean of Windsor, or the Register, or the Senior Residentiary of the College, or the Secretary, or Scribe of the Order, should undertake the Employment; and elsewhere it is mention'd expressly, In the absence of the Prelate, whose particular Dury otherwise it was. And among the various Examples enroll'd in the Annals of the Order, these Examples abundantly confirm it. The Prelate of the Order collected the Suffrages from the Knights-Companions, Anno 9 Hen. V. when John Earl-Marshal, and Four other Knights were elected. The like did Henry Beaufort, Lord-Cardinal, Prelate of the Order, upon the Election of John King of Portugal, Anno 13 Hen. VI. And when the Duke of Suffolk was chose, Anno 26 Hen. VI. the Prelate then also gather'd the Suffrages; which he likewise did upon the Feafts of St. George, Celebrated in the 12th, 13th, 14th, 27th, 28th, 3oth, 31th, 34th and 35th Years of Oucen Elaabeth's Reign. Sometimes the Scrutinies have been gathered both by the Dean of Windfor. and the Register of the Order jointly; as we find by the Election of John Lord Talbot, Ann. 2 Hen. VI. of Sir John Falstaff, Ann. 6 Hen. VI. and the Duke of Quinbery, Ann. 5 Hen. VI. all receiv'd at the Feasts of St. George, celebrated at Windfor:

It is more than a bare Conjecture, that the Dean at those Times received the Votes from the Knights-Companions on the Sovereign's side, while the Register collected those on the Prince's; for 'tis observed, that in King Henry Vth's Reign, in Posts of different Natures, one whereof was to signific the Sovereign's Pleasure to the Knights-Companions about their paying due Reverence, first to Goo, and afterwards to himself; and the other in a Ceremonial, which directs the Manner and Order of Mulching the Knights-Companions; in both which, the Dean perform'd the Service on the right Hand the Choir (the Sovereign's side) and the Register on the left.

SOME-

SOMBTIMES the Register of the Order took them alone, as at the Election of John Earl of Arundel, Anno 10 Hen. VI. and those of the Earl of Morteyn and Sir John Grey, Ann. 14 Hen. VI. Moreover it's plain, that when the Office of Register was not fill'd, and Thomas Ruthall, Bishop of Duresme, executed it during its Vacancy, the Bishop himself, Ann. 2 Hen. VIII. collected the Suffrages. The like did William Day, Dean of Windsor, in the Absence of George Carew, Dean of the Chapel and Register of the Order, at the Feasts of St. George held at Whitehall, Anno 18 and 19 Eliz.

THIS Duty was executed by the Register from the 15th Year of King Henry VIII. to the Period of his and his Son's Reign, as the Black-Book of the Order fully evinces; as also on St. George's Day, Ann. 1. Eliz. by John Boxhall; and at the Feast of St. George held Ann. 1 Jac. I. by Giles Thompson, who in the several Times were Registers, yet we must not mistake that what they officiated was on their own behalf, but supply'd the

Place of the Prelate.

In the Beginning of Queen Mary's Reign, we find the Chancellor of the Order began to perform this Service, being by King Henry VIIIth's Statutes adjoined to those other Offices before describ'd, to collect the Scrutinies in absence of the Prelate, and thereby made capable of the Employment, which afterwards is tacitly remark'd to be perform'd as if in his own right, when the Register has only effected it in the Chancellor's absence, tho' in reality it was no other, than as in the Instance of the Bishop of Duresme and Dr. Day aforesaid, who took the Serutiny in the Vacancy of the Office, and absence of the Register.

Anno 4 Eliz. the Régister in the Absence of the Chancellor (who was fick,) upon the Feast Day of St. George, collected the Suffrages. And Ann. 8. Eliz. George Carew, then Register of the Order, sook the Votes of the Knights-Companions in absence of Sir William Petre, Chancellor of the Order. So also Ann. 4. Jac. I. where the Cause of the Chancellor's Absence is noted to be Sickness, and

Ann. 6. Jac. I. to be Death. / ...

In the first of these Instances, we find the Prelate expressly set down to be there; in the two following, his R 4



presence is implyed, for it is said, that the FourOfficers of the Order did attend both Feasts, whereof, (the Chancellor being wanting) the Prelate must needs be one.

Now all these Passages seem to relate to the Right of the Chancellors rather than the Prelates by this Remark, That every of the Scrutinies were taken in the Absence of the Chancellor, which looks something like a cautionary Remark that denoted the Right of Execuing this Office to the Chancellor, rather than the Prelate.

WHEN a Deputy-Chancellor hath been admitted to Officiate in the Chancellor's absence, he, and not the Prelate, hath taken the Scrutiny, (tho' present) as at the Election of Charles Prince of Wales, the 20th of May, 14 Car. L and at another taken the 22d of May following, and the same when the Suffrages were collected for the Election of the Duke of York and Prince

Rupert at York, Anno 17 Car. L.

Bur there is one Passage more (upon taking a Scrutiny Anno 22 Jac. I.) which seems Advantageous to the Chancellor in this Point, where it is said, That when the Knights-Companions had given their Votes (as say the Annals) THE CHANCELLOR WHO, ACCORDING TO HIS OFFICE, was to receive them, presented them to the Sovereign. Howbeit, in truth there is no sufficient Foundation for the Register to insert this as done by the Chancellor, by Virtue of his Office, or any one Act or Chapter that hath suspended or made void, the Right of the Prelate, which is referved by him, even by the Patent, for erecting the Office of Chancellor; especially in those Affairs, which, respecting the Order, ought by the Statute of the Institution to appertain to him. But fince the flated Time of performing this Ceremony in the Chapel, the Prelate (if present) is presumed to be Officiating at the Altar, in discharge of another part of his Duty, upon this confideration hath the Service been then imposed upon the Chancellor, and others.

Lastly, We find the Scrutiny to be once taken by Garter, Ann. 16. Car. I. at the Election of Thomas Earl of Strafford. But this was at a Time, when not only the Prelate, but all the other Officers of the Order, excepting Sir John Burrough, Garter, were ablent, and con-

sequently

sequently this Service so executed, ought rather to be judged to have been done in the Prelate's than Chancellor's Right.

6. 9. Bur whosoever gather'd the Suffrages, the Time when they enter'd upon this Duty (in the Intervals of Feasts, where the Occasion requir'd a peculiar Chapter for an Election) was usually after the Chapter had been open'd, and the Matter of Election proposed by the Sovereign; after which he proceeded with all

possible Reverence and Respect.

Howbelt upon an extraordinary Occasion (in the Interval of the Grand Feasts) the Sovereign hath sometimes called an Assembly of the Knights, Companions, to be convened at the Castle of Windsor, who in the Choire of St. George's Chapel (not Chapter-House) after the more solemn Manner, have deliver'd in their Nominations, and returning thence into the Chapter-House, he there continu'd the Election. Thus did King Henry VIII. upon the 7th of June in the 17th Year of his Reign, in reference to the Election of the Lord Henry Fisz Roy, (so stil'd in the Scrutiny, and rank'd among the Barons; for as yet he was not created Duke of Somerset and Richmond) and Ralph Nevil, Earl of Westmorland.

On the 20th of May, Anno 14 Car. I. being Trinity-Sunday, the Sovereign caus'd a Chapter to be held that Afternoon in the Chapter-House at Windsor, for the Nomination and Election of Charles Prince of Wales; at the Breaking up whereof, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceeded immediately to St. Georges's Chapel, where at Evening-Prayer, (which was not within the Compass of the Feast, for that began not 'till next Day) the Scrutiny was taken.

And besides those Examples which shew the Nominations have been collected (upon peculiar Occasions) in the Choice at Windsor, there are one or two Instances they have been also taken in the Chapel at Whitehall, as on the 15th of May, Ann. 1 Car. I. at the Choice of Edmund Earl of Dorst, Henry Earl of Holland, and Thomas Viscount Andover, as on the 4th of July the same Year, whereat the Duke of Chevereux was pitch'd upon.

THE

THE Suffrages have commonly been collected at the Second Vespers, or in the Time of Evening-Prayer on St. George's Day, or on that Day whereon the Feast of St. George hath been celebrated by Prorogation; and with this Distinction of Time, the taking of divers Scrutinies are mark'd.

Howeven there occurs one Scrutiny gather'd in the Chapter-House at Windsor on the Eve of the Grand-Feast, at which the person immediately elected, was sent for in, and had the Ensigns of the Order conferr'd upon him, when immediately the Sovereign made his Progression to the Chapel, and after some small Interval, the Elect proceeded to his Installation. And this was the Case of James Marques Hamilton, Ann. 6 Car. I. who lying under an Obligation to commence his Voyage next Morning towards Germany (whither he had the Commission of General of 6000 Foot in Assistance of the King of Sweden) occasion'd this his Sovereign's Indulgence, and quick dispatch.

WHEN the Scrutiny first began to be collected in the Chapel, is treated of somewhat general and indefinite. Ann. 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9 Eliz. it was during the time of Evening-Prayer. And in like manner, Ann. 4 Jac. I. and 13 Car. I. And when the Feast of St. George was solemnized at Whitehall, the 18th of April, 13 Car. I. the Annals say, That the Sovereign recreated himself with the Melody of Evensong, during which the Chancellor collected the Votes of

the Knights-Companions.

Bur in some other Places, the Time when this Matter was transacted is restricted to a precise Time, or some particular Part of Evening Prayer, as Anno 26 and 27 Eliz. whilst the Choire sung the Service, and the like Anno 14 Jac. I. but 4 Car. I. while the Anthem was sung after the second Lesson, but more frequently after the first Lesson, as in the 2 and 9 Car. I. while the Anthem was singing, or whilst they were hymning the Anthem of the blessed Virgin called the Magnificat, and which is all one with that, Anno 14 Car. I. viz. associated the single view read, or at the sirst Lesson, which is remembred to be the usual Part of the Service, in which the nomination ought to begin.

5, 10. THE

nions Votes ought to be collected when the Scrutiny is eak in in the Choire, when the Register informs us, upon the Celebration of St. Georges's Feast at Greenwich, 28 Hen. VIII. as entred into the Black Book; "That he used his Diligence in going to and fro from one Side to the other, to demand and redemand the Suffrages from the Knights-Companions, according to the Variety and Disposition of their Stalls," which same Methods in eislem terminis the Chancellor observed, Anno 24 Eliz. and without question was generally performed at other Seasons, for the annals describe it to be perform'd de more's Eliz. or juxta Ordines Constitutionis Anno 26 Eliz.

THAT the Officer who collects the Scrutiny, is obliged to begin at the youngest Knight-Companion, and so proceed upward towards the Eldest, is evident from the Order mentioned to be in Vogue, An. 2 and 20 Elsz. as also 15 Car. I. But to give a more particular Account of this Cetemony, as it thou temp. Car. I. and doubtless long before, tho' not Recorded in Scriptu, is as follows.

First, THE Officer arose and went into the Middle of the Choire; directly over against his own Seat, he made two Reverences, first towards the high Altar, and next to the Sovereign, then he proceeded up to the Choire near the hank pace against the Stall of the junior Knight-Companion, and there made like Reverence; this done he went up to the Stall of the said junior Knight, and with a fingular Reverence to him, only demanded whom he pleased to nominate, which having taken, (making to him a second Reverence,) he descended into the Choire, and thence passed to the next senior Knight on the other Side, (unless by reason of the vacancy of the Stall he Sits on the same Side with the junior) and having received his nomination from the second Knight-Companion, he again croffed the Choire to the Third, and in like manner he afcended according to the Seniority of the Knights-Companions present, (always croffing the Choire where there was occasion) until he arrived at the senior Knight-Companion; and having having thus received all their Nominations, he returned into the Middle of the Choire, and after accustomed

Reverences, took his Seat.

THIS Method in collecting the Votes as to the general, and in the Choire, ought likewife to be observed when they are taken from the Knights-Companions in Chapter, they being ranked in due order on either Side of the Table, according to the Seniority of their Elections and fituations of Stalls in the Choire; the Officer beginning with the junior and thence gradually ascending to the senior Knight.

And that we may rightly apprehend after what form every Knight-Companion Ranketh the Names of those Persons he proposeth, and how each Classis is distinguished and divided, the following Scrutiny will manifest which was taken off, May, Anno 13 Hen. VI. upon the Vacancy of one Stall hapning by the death of Sir Henry Tanke Clux a German, and the first Scrutiny found Marshalled among the Annals of this most noble Order.

NOMINABANT.

	Principes.	Barones.	Equites.
Dux Exonic.	Duc. Norfolcia Duc. Warwici Com. Oxonia	Dom. Lovell Dom. Andley Dom. Dudley	Dom. S. Stanley Dom. J. Holland Dom. J. Steward
Marc. Suffolc.	Duc. Norfolcia Com. Devonia Com. Oxonia	Dom. Lovell Dom. Andley Dom. Foix.	Dom. J. Fengo D. R. Woodvyle Dom. A. Ogard
Com. Salopie.	Duc. Warwici Duc. Norfolcia Com. Oxonia	Dom. Audley Dom. Dudley Dom. Foix	Dom. R. Fengs Dom. T. Stanley Dom. T. Kiriell
Dom. Sudeley.	Duc. Norfolcia Duc. Warwici Com. Devonia	Dom. Foix Dom. Lovell Dom. Audley	Dom. R. Fengs Dom. J. Fengs Dom. G.Bonevile
Dom. Wil- longhby.	Duc. Warwici Duc. Norfolcia Com. Oxonia	Dom. Wells Dom. Lowell Dom. Laware	Dom. T. Kiriell D.J.Montgomery D. R. Shotesbroke Dom

Dom. Scales.

Duc. Warwici

Com. Oxonia

Com. Devonia

Dom. Laware

Dom. A. Ogard

Dom. Chyfford

Dom. A. Ogard

Dom. Duc. Warwici Dom. Boncer D.R. Hungerford Dom. Norfolcia Dom. Andley Dom. R. Roos. Falftaff. Com. Oxonia D.GrayRuffyn Dom. A. Ogard

J. Beau-Com. Devonia Dom. Lovell Dom. R. Fengs champ. Com. Oxonia Dom. Audley Dom. R. Ross.

In the first Column each Knight-Companion hath his own Name perfixt to those Persons for whom he condescends his Vote, to the intent it may appear by whom the Knights candidates are nominated, and these are

Ranked in three several Divisions.

THE first contains, The Degrees of Earls, Marquesses, Dukes, Princes, Kings and Emperors; yet at a Scrutiny taken Anno 24 Hen. VI. in a Chapter held at Brainford, Albro Vasquez. d'almadea, (who immediately sollowing, is Stiled Comes Averentia) is by a mistake Ranked; but in the second Division among the Barons, and twice among the Knights Votes of the Marquess of Suffolk, and Earl of Shrewsbury, but this Error perhaps owes its original for want of due knowledge, either of the Law in the Statutes or his Degree, the latter of which is the most seasible to conjecture; for being a Stranger, his Title might not be so generally divulged, nor is it taken notice of in the Scrutiny it self, tho' in the annals immediately after it was rectified.

And to shew the probability of this Point, the Earls of Oxford, Devonsbire, and Arundel, (whose degrees were sufficiently known) at a Scrutiny taken Anno 24 Hen. VI. are ranked in the second Division among the Barons, and Anno 1 Hen. VIII. the Earl of Darby is three Times so placed, and again 13 Hen. VI. the Earl of Devonsbire twice; but this happened not thro oversight or neglect of the Statutes, but because at these Nominations wherein they are so Ranked, the first Division to which they appertained, happened to be fill'd up with those other higher Dignities belonging to the same Class, viz.

Kings or Dukes, as when the beforementioned Earls of Oxford, Devenshire, and Arundel, were set down in the Place of Barons; the King of Portugal, the Dukes of Warwick and Norfolk, were put in the Class of Princes,

and so it happened in many other instances.

On the contrary, Anno 15 and 16 Eln. IV. the Lord Rich. Grey one of the Queen's Sons, by her former Husband, Sir John Grey of Groby Knight; in respect of his Alliance to the Royal Family, is Ranked in the first Division among the Princes, under the Title Dominus Richardus filius Regina, and afterwards Anno 19 Edw. IV. set only among the Barons, as well with the former Title as this Richardus Dominus Grey, but Anno 22 Edw. IV. he is thrice register'd among the Princes, and as often with the Barons, whence it is observable that to be Enrolled in the Rank of Princes, may be afforded of courtesse to Persons of high Eminency and Blood; but then as they can lay no claim to it by their Merit, so such of the Knights-Companions as Rank them lower, suffer no diminution in their Honour.

WHEREIN the fecond Division are Ranked the Burons and Viscounts, for Viscounts in all Scrutinies, after the first Erection of that Dignity, were on the same level with the Barons, until the 3 of Jac. I. (excepting only John Dudley Viscount Lifle, Anno 35 Hen. VIII. who by every Knight, the Duke of Norfolk excepted, is Ranked in the first Division of Princes) and in a Scrutiny then taken, Robs. Cecil Viscount Craneborne is the second Viscount in the Lift that has been Ranked with Princes, whence it became the frequent Practice in · fucceeding Scrutinies, until Anno 14 Car. I. And then (upon a Question put in Chapter convened at Westminster 23. May 14 Car. I.) whether Earls Sons and Viscounts were eligible with Barons, it passed in the affirmative, and that by general usage except in the two cases just mentioned; and about the same time we find it reiterated near that Time, for in two Scrutinics taken the 19th and 21st of that Instant May, the Viscounts are therein reduced to the second Division, and Ranked with the Barons.

THE Knights-Batchelors and Bannerets held the same
Rank

Rank in King Hen. VIII's Statutes, in all Scrutinies with Barons.

Bur tho' the word in King Hen. VIIIth's late Statutes is Baronessus instead of Baneressus, yet is this frequently obvious in some ancient Books and Records, as well as in those ancient Writers, long before the Title

of Baronet was conceived or brought into use.

In the last place he who demands those Suffrages) the Knights-Companions present) is by the Statutes of Institution to receive them in writing; for in a Scrutiny taken Anno 2 Hen. VI. at the Election of John Lord Talbote and Turnival, the Dean of Windsor, and the Register of the Order, wrote down the Votes and Nominations of every singular Knight present at the Day of Election.

And at another Scrutiny Anno 4 Hen. VI. to fill up that which by an Error in the Black Book is set down Sir Henry Fitzhugh, 'tis inserted, That the Dean and Register wrote down in Order, (according to their Seniority) the Votes of the Knights-Companions. And after the Scrutinies began to be entred in the Annals, it is evident the general Practice kept pace with the Injunction of the Statutes; only there are two instances of an Election confirmed without taking a Scrutiny in writing, one in the case of the Princes Henry and Christiern IV. King of Denmark, where the Knights-Companions in a Chapter convened at Whitehall, 14 of July 1 Jac. I. gavein their Votes viva voce, and immediately the Sovereign admitted them both into the Illustrious Society; the other was the Case of James Marquis Hamilton, Elected the 2d of Feb. 20 Jac. I. with the vocal consent of all the Knights-Companions.

IT is worthy observation, that this Method, and the omission of taking the Scrutiny in writing, is not only contrary to the Law of the Order expressly fet down for a more stable confignation of the Action, and more faithful transmission of it to Posterity, but exceeding prejudicial to Persons of Honour, and Distinction, whose Names would otherwise survive with great veneration among the candidates of this Illustrious Order, and of which Honour many deserving Persons will be hereaster deprived, if the Injunctions of the Statutes be not

observed in this particular respect.

SECT.

S E C T. XI.

The Presentation of it to the Sovereign.

THE Knights-Companions, having delivered their Suffrages, the Officer by whom they are Collected, humbly presents to the Sovereign the Nominations, for so it is recorded the Prelate of the Order acted in the oth of Hen. the Vth. If these Votes were taken in Chapter, the Paper usually was immediately presented to the Sovereign who made his Election, before the Chapter broke up; but if gathered in the Chapel, tho' it was given to the Sovereign, yet the choice was not made then, but the Morning after, and this was the manner in the 2d and 5th Years of Queen Eliz. Another time it hath not been presented till the Vespers were finished, but in the Practice of latter Days the Scrutiny hath not been given up to the Sovereign till the next Day at the opening of the Chapel before Morning-Prayer, as in the 13, 15, 20, 30 Years of Queen Eliz. demonstrates, and was the accustomed Practice of the 17th Year of King Charles the first of ever sacred Memory; the last presentation was transcribed in a little Book, and with all due Reverence offered upon the Knee, before any other Affair was transacted in the Chapter.

This has been the general Use as we are ascertain'd, Anno 2 Hen. VI. the Dean of Windsor, and the Register of the Order, having Collected the Vote of every Knight, they were immediately given into the Hands of the Sovereign's Deputy; and in the same nature were they presented on the 4th Hen. VI. when John Duke of Bedford was Lieutenant, in the 20th of Queen Eliz.; when the Suffrages were Collected by Sir Francis Walsingham the Chancellor, he gave them up to the Earl

of Suffex, then Lieutenant to the Sovereign.

Bur it's evident from several Passages in the Blue Book of the Order, that the Lieutenant afterward delivered them to the Sovereign, as is apparent from the Records of the 30th, 34th, 38th, and the 40th Year of Queen Eliz.

In the 12th Year of K. James I. some Exceptions arose upon the Chancellor's not presenting the Scrutiny to the Prince, (who at that time was the Sovereign's Lieutenant) but to the Sovereign himself, which was an Error he self into, as well as some of his Predecessor's; as the 2d, 3d, and 25th of Eliz. demonstrate.

The Sovereign's Confiderations upon the Qualifications of those to be elected.

\$ 12. As the Knights-Companions are under an Obligation, by the Statutes, to nominate no Person, but who can bear the Test of the afore-mention'd Qualifications, there's a Standard of Honour provided for the Sovereign, to measure the Extraction, Quality, and Merit of the Person proposed to be elected, least it might chance, thro'the Indulgence of the Sovereign, this Fountain of Honour might be mudded by the Choice of inserior and undeserving Persons, for the Statutes run--because this Order consists of Goodness, and honourable Virtue, doth not admit Unworthiness and Villany, and so by Consequence secludes

all Persons of mean Extraction and Merit.

The Qualifications for Election are exhibited in the 2d Article, as in the 18th are included those of Nomination: The Words of the Institution are, That none shall be ele-Hed into the Order; and refer only to the Act of Election: For if we consult the rest of the Statutes, and compare them with this Passage, they run according to this Tenor, That none shall be elected and chosen a Companion of this Order. These refer more principally to the Time of the Election, and not to the Investiture with Garter, and George, and Installation, from the Expressions of admitting and receiving Knights into this Order, as the Examplars of the Seatutes of Institution set forth. And this is farther illustrated, from another Passage in the 2d Article of Henry the VIII's Statutes, where the Word Reproach is mentioned, saith, The Guilt thereof so incapacitates a Man's Ele-Stion, that for the future it's a Bar, and utterly disqualifies him for that Honour,

There are Two Points requisite for Qualifications and Endowments; first, to be a Gentleman of Blood; and, 2dly, a Knight without Reproach. By the Statutes of Henry the Vth's Institutions, no Man ought to be elected, unless he

be a Gentleman born. The Examplar in the Black Book saith, Unless be be worthy upon the Account of Birth and Arms: And in another Passage, That he be one eminent for his Demeanour and good Report; which intimates the Conjunction of Blood and Virtue, which make up the noblest Composition. The Statutes of King Henry VIII. are more extensive than those, and say, He must be a Gentleman by Name, Arms, and Blood; and least this Character might seem intricate and perplex'd, A Gentleman of Blood is defin'd to be, One descended of three Descents of Nobles, viz. of Name and Arms, both by his Father and Mother's side.

It's certain Gentility does not receive its Perfection in the Person it was first devolv'd on, but is rather compleated by Succession: For, among the Romans, tho' the Father was Free-born, and of the Equestrian Cense; yet it was farther requisite, that the Grand-sather should be the same, or else they could not obtain the Ring, one of the Symbols of the Equestrian Order, as Pliny informs us. Gentility hath its beginning in the Grand-sather, its increase in the Father, and full ripeness in the Son; and consequently in the Constitution of Gentility, the Father and Grand-sather conveying a Lustre to the Son, make it entire and compleat; for its incongruous to suppose a ripeness in the Son, unless there had been a former encrease in the Father, and a longer Series from the Grand-sather.

The memorable Inftance of the Lord William Pager, who was divefted of the Garter five Years after his Election; upon Pretence of his not being a Gentleman of Blood by either Father or Mother, proceeded not wholly from the defect in Point of Extraction, as Haward relates, but rather from the Prevalence and Practice of John Dudley, Duke of Northumberland, by whose means he was most unjustly deprived of the Garter; repenting, perhaps, at the great Honours he had done this Lord, by his sair Character of him to King Edward VI. when he procured him a new Grant of those Arms, under the Great Seal of England, when he was Earl Marsoal, which he had some time before received from the Garter Principal King of Arms.

But, admit the defect of Blood and Arms, for three Defcents, were the true Cause of the recalling his Garter, that that it might be conferred upon the Barl of Warnick, eldest Son of the said Duke, who, out of courtesse, is called so, in which Relation both Haward and Stow have mistaken, for they were bestowed upon Sir Andrew Dudley, Brother to the Duke; for the he was put in the Scrutiny enter'd among the Annals of Edward VI. in the Sixth Year of his Reign, upon St. George's Day, yet was the

Earl neither then, nor at any other time, elected.

The Enfigns of this most Noble Order, as soon as Queen Mary ascended the Throne, were with as much Honour restored to the Lord Paget, and with as great and absolute an Authority, as they were disgracefully taken from him. And in Confirmation of this Lord's Restauration, he had the Garter buckled on his Leg, and the Collar and the Order put about his Shoulders, with the George depending, by two of the Knights-Companions present; and the Garter King at Arms was order'd, That he should -sake Care his Atchievements should be replaced over his Stall at Windsor, which is the 9th on the Sovereign's side. It is observable, that the very Records of the Order brand his Degradation as Injustice; as if it were inferable, That when Honour is conferred, upon the Account of Virtue and exquisite Endowments, the Consideration of these supplies the defect and obscurity of Extraction. The Sovereign, whose Prerogative it was to declare and interpret the Statutes, being present in Chapter, thought fit to qualifie the Law, and gave him this honourable Commendation, That be had highly deserved of the Nation, by his Prudence and Counsel.

And though there's only inserted in the Examplar of the Black Book, Virtue and good Report for a Qualification, yet the same was observed by the Sovereigns and Lieutenants in foregoing Times, with great Circumspection; and that the Magnanimity, Fortitude, Prudence, Generosity, Fame, Reputation, and other Virtues and Excellencies, whether innate or acquired, of the Person proposed to Election, have by prudent Inquisition been inspected, and brought to the Touchstone, before they have been admitted into

so noble and illustrious a Body.

Those Qualities were chiefly confider'd and esteemed by Henry V. for which Reason, at an Election in the 9th Year of his Reign, he gave the Preference, before others that were nominated and presented unto him, to S 2. John, John, Earl Marshal, William, Earl of Suffolk, John, Lord Clifford, Sir Lewis Robertsack, and Sir Heer Tank Clux.

Humpbry, Duke of Gloucester, Deputy to K. Hen. VI. trod in the same Steps, and did weigh, by the strict Rules of Fortitude and Prudence, the gallant and noble Actions and Deserts of John, Lord Talbos, before the Election. and gave in an Approbation worthy of his own Judgment, and that Candidate's Merit. And for this Reason it's expressed in the Annals of the Order, that such noble and heroick Qualifications should have the favour of Election preferrable to others, as is evident in the Matter of Choice of Sir Nicholas Carew, in the 28th of Hen. VIII. That he was a very fit Person, upon the Eminency of his Extraction and Fame, and the many noble and worthy Actions be bad performed; so as that all present did, without any delay. unanimously approve of his Election. And after this Tenure run the Commendation of Henry, Earl of Cumberland, at his Election, viz. The many famous and loyal Atchievements performed by bim, both at several other times, and then more especially, when the Tumult of Rebellion began to break

forth in those Borders where he had his Habitation.

The 2d Point to treat on is. That no one is qualified for Election, unless he be a Knight; or as it is expressed in one of the Examplars in the Hatton Library, Unless girded with the unstained Girdle of Knighthood; so singular a regard the Law of the Order hath to this particular Qualification above the rest: And least Chance or Inadvertency might let slip a Person not Knighted into the Scrutiny. were the Words inserted ut minimum, that he be at least a Knight before he be elected, when the Sovereign comes to make his Choice. It is evident from the 2d Article in the Statutes, that it hath long fince received this Construction, as appears by an eminent Instance. In the 17th of Hen. VIII. The Feast of St. George being celebrated at Greenwich, and the Sovereign being present, having elected the Lord Ross, afterwards Earl of Rutland, into the Society of this most noble Order; and being advertiled on the Morrow after St. George's Day, while the Mass of Requiem was celebrating, That be had not before received the Dignity of Knighthood, according to the Statutes. which positively enjoin, That whosever is elected into this S-ciety, should be in Degree at least a Knight; that is, actually Knighted before-hand. And the' the Lord Roos was.

at the Time of his Election a Baron of this Realm, which is a higher degree of Honour than a Knight; The Sovereign after Mass re-affembled the Knights-Companions, and annulled the Election, and commanded the Garter and George, so lately conferred, to be taken off, and in the same Place dubbed him a Knight; and then he was Elected again, with an unanimous Consent, and so declared by the Sovereign's own Mouth; and was restored to his Ensigns and Ornaments, by the Dukes of Norfolk and Suffolk. Agreeable to this, it's recorded in the Red Book of the Order; that none of the English, Stotch, or Welsh Nation, bow considerable soever otherwise, in the Prerogative of Blood or Virtue, can be Elected into this most honourable Society; but that he ought to be first ennobled and rendered

capable, by this first degree of Knightly Honour.

But this Law does not bind Foreign Princes; for by a Decree at Wnite-Hall, in 13 Charles I. these Words, ut minimum, are explained to relate to all Subjects, of what Degree soever, within the Sovereign's Dominions; but Foreign Princes ought not to be Knighted, as the Basis and first Degree of Chivalry. The Statutes of Institution, as to those before-mentioned, not only enjoyn them to be Knights, but to be free of all Infamy and Reproach. In Henry V's. Statutes, it stands, Chivalier fans reproche, which Answers in the Latin, Eques irreprehensus; and the Argument used by the Duke of Bedford, for promoting the Election of Sir John Radcliff, was, that he had continued and exercised the Armies, the space of twenty eight Years, without Reproach. King Henry VIII. determined this Word Repreach into three Species; first, when a Knight hath been convicted of Herely, against the Catholick Faith; or suffered any publick Punishment for such Offence: Here Herefy is reckoned among those defects, that deprive Men of Honour: because it bends its Force against the Catho. lick Church, which not only renders a Man, in the ballance of Honour, of no Weight and Esteem, but more than all other Sins, makes him Infamous. And therefore when by Tongue, Pen, or Actions, a Man endeavours to trample under Foot the sacred Law, he scandalizeth Government, and seduceth others.

The second Point is, when any Knight hath been arraigned, convilled, and attainted of Treason; however Q. Elizabeth qualified this Point by a Decree, made in S 2

the first Year of her Reign; that in case any Persons so convided, were pardoned by the Sovereign, and restored in Blood; every such Gentleman in Name, Arms, and Blood, and descended as asoresaid, being otherwise qualified, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, should be thence-forth accounted Eligible, and might be Chosen a Companion. This Decree, it's presumed, owes its Original, upon the occasion of restoring in Blood William Marquiss of Northampton, and the Lotd Robert Dudley, after Earl of Leicester, who had been attainted of High Treason in the first of Q. Mary: And we find that in the next Feast of St. George, they recovered their Privileges of Honour, and were preserved in Nomination, and on the last Day of the Feast, were Elected into this most illustrious Society.

Though the Marquels of Northampton had been formerly Elected in the 35 H. 8. and was restored in Blood, as I said before; it's very remarkable, that it was thought sit to descend to a new Nomination and Election, as appears from the Decree it self, as it was performed upon

the third of June Anno primo Eliz.

The last Point of Reproach, is, where a Knight Companion hath sted from Battle; in which the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, or other Captain, (having the King's Authority) were present; when Banners were displayed, and both Sides proceed to Fight. Now for a Person to behave himself cowardly in the Fight, abandon his Colcurs, leave his Prince, Friends, and Companions, in hazard of Life, are undoubtedly Concerns of a very high and reproachful Nature, and draw down Dishonour upon the Order, the Sovereign, and Knights Companions, and a sufficient indication of a pusilanimous Mind; that prefers to drag an infamous Life, and makes his Honour a Sacrifice to a reproachful Safety; for the Resolution of a right Martial Spirit, ought either to return decked with Victory, or die upon the Bed of Honour.

By the Laws of King Edward the Confessor, the Soldier that runs from his Colours, either in Land or Sea Service, his Life and Estate were made liable to answer the Offence; and our Acts of Parliaments have made it Felony, without Benefit of Clergy; for as much as such desertion endangers the Estate of the King, Nobility, and Common-

wealth.

But

But the danger is of a far more dismal hue, when Officers, or he that Commands in Chief, or who has any Post of Trust assigned him, either quit it, or is found defective in his Duty, as was Thomas Earl of Lancaster, who quitted the Army at the Siege of Berwick, the consequence of which proved an abortion to the whole Defign; and for which he was proclaimed Traytor, Anno 12 E. 2. And therefore whoever is culpable of any of these three Points of Repreach, is disqualified from being Elected into this most noble Order. Before we proceed any farther, it may not be improper to take notice of an Error which Polydore Virgil hath interwove with one, and which Erbardus Celius, in his History of England, hath copyed from that Author, but refuted by the learned Pen of Dr. Heylein, viz. that the Knights-Companions have certain Laws belonging to their Order, whereby they are obliged to belp one another, and in Time of Battle never to betake themselves to shameful Flight: The Statute Law of the Order is silent upon the first Clause, nor is the latter otherwise to be taken, than one of those Points of Reproach spoke of in the second Statute of K. Henry VIII. which nulls the Election of the Person nominated, if he be peccant in that Point: Now that which gives some Umbrage to the Knights murual Affistance and Defence, is founded upon an Article in their Statutes, which prohibits the arming themselves one against another, to create a mutual Affection, and to extinguish Feuds, which is the Life and Soul of Society, and which the Founder, to prevent Inconveniencies, had a great Regard to; and therefore he Ordained, which has been confirmed fince by other Statutes; That none of the Knights-Companions should Arm themselves against any of their Fellows, unless either in the Cause of his Sovereign, or his own just Quarrel: And this Clause it was, that gave the Handle to both Parties. that fided with the Houses of York and Lancaster; some firmly adhering to Henry VI. whom they accounted Sovereign of the Order; and others taking Part with Edward IV. as esteeming him Sovereign de Jure, though not de Fasto.

But more firmly to tye this Knot of Amity among this noble Fraternity, least they should unhappily engage in Factions one against another, and proceed so violently as might commence into Actions of Blood and Slaughter;

· Digitized by Google

it was ordained, That if a Knight-Companion should happen to be retained in the Service of a Foreign Prince, to take up Arms in his Quarrel; and after his Adversary defired to entertain another Knight-Companion on his Side also; he that was last invited, was bound to wave this Offer, and in no wise to give his Consent. And upon this, the Knights-Companions were obliged to make special Precautions in that their Engagements; that if any of his Fellows were retained on the other Side, and that if he knew not that another of his Fellows had been engaged with the Adversary, so soon as it came to his Knowlege, he was obliged to relinquish the Service he before had undertaken.

To these three Points of Reproach we have set down, we find in a Manuscript, that belonged to Henry Grey, third Marquis of Suffolk, a fourth added to these other three Points of Reproach; in these Words:

That if any knight of the Dider, from henceforth, by Prodigality or Ryot, wilfully oz negligently, Wispend, Sell, Altens, oz do away his Patrimony of Livelihood, by reafon whereof, he thall not be able bonourably to maintain himself, and his Estate, in fuch honourable Manner, as may Conferve the Donour of the lato Older, and of himself; in this Case he shall be Summonen by the Affier of Arms of the Dider, called the black Rod, by Commandment of the Soveraign, his Lieutenant, 02 Deputy; to appear before his Majetty, of his Committioners, and the Unights of the Ower, at the nert Chapter enluing; there to be examined before the Soveraign, or his laid Commiclioners, and the Unights and Companions of the said Dider; and if he be found in fuch areat default of Prodigality, infolent Riot, or wilful Negligence; that then the Soveraign, with the advice of the Company of

the laid Dider, may depilve and degrade him of the laid Dider, at the laid Chapter, if it be their Plealure.

Though this fourth Point is not inforted into King. Henry VIII's Statutes, yet the Substance thereof seems to be approved of before; for we find among some Orders, prepared by the Marquis of Exeter, and other Knights-Companions, at a Chapter at Windsor, the twenty fifth and twenty sixth Days of May, Anno 8 Henry VIII. one of them was something to this Purpose.

5. 13. Amongst the Number of these Candidates, the Sovereign is chiefly to regard those who have most Voices, or whom he conceives most requisite to contribute to the Homour of the Garter, and most Beneficial to himself, and of most Advantage to his Crown and Kingdom. We find the Law hath not always reserved the greatest Number of Voices, as will appear from the Annals; yet it has sometimes confirmed the Election, as in the Case of the Duke of Queenberry An. 5 Henry VI. where, after a due and sufficient Examination taken of the Scrutiny, the Duke, by the consent of most Voices, was Elected into the Stall of Thomas Duke of Exeter; and so was the Election of Sir Nicholas Carem, the twenty sourth of April, in the 28 Henry VIII.

It is remarkable in a fingular Instance, that when two Knights had on either Side equal Voices; which was the Case of Sir John Fastolf, and Sir John Raddiff; the first being esteemed more Worthy, by the Sovereign's Lieu-

renant, obtained the Election.

The second Inducement relates to such as, in all Appearance, may bring most Renown to the Order, and advance it to a higher pitch of Greatness; and these have in a great Measure been effected, by enrolling Foreign Princes into this illustrious Society, whose Valour and great Merit have proclaimed them deserving both of Nomination and Eledion. And upon this Consideration, K. Charles I. of blessed Memory, upon Consideration had of the glorious Atchievements, and high Renown, of Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden; judged it a Part of his Respect, not only to render him all Offices of Kindness and Fiend-

Friendship, as to a Prince nearly allied, and his most special Friend; but also to impart to him, as far as in him lay, the greatest and highest Honour that might be, and especially such, wherewith the military Virtue of so great a Captain was wont to be adorned.

But the principal Motive thought requisite to Elect Foreign Princes into this Society of Honour, hath been expressed in the Commissions of Legations, to be in Respect of their glorious Merits, ennobled by the lustre and grace of their Heroick Virtues, their eminent Nobleness, Grandeur, Prowess, and Magnissicence; the renown of which, Fame had divulged and spread Abroad throughout the World.

Where the Advantage of the Sovereign's Service was thrown into the Ballance, no Confideration could outvie its Pretentions, as in 2 H, 6. justifies; whose eminent Service for his King and Country, was the fole Motive that crowned his Election: And the great Zeal and Affection, which John Jaspar Perdinand de Marchin shewed for the Cause and Service, and the recovery of the just Rights of King Charles II. was the strongest Inducement that swayed that Sovereign to chuse him, in the tenth Year of his Reign, a Knight-Companion of this most noble Order. But the last inducement is of the greatest Latitude, for the Sovereign has a Power to reject who loever he pleases, though they do exceed in multiplicity of Voices. and in other Qualifications; and even to Elect a Person that's but once mentioned, as was shewn in the Person of Casimire, the fourth King of Poland, An. 28 Henry VI. who having only the fingle Vote of the Lord Scales; yet upon respect to the Sovereign, how advantageous he might be for his, and his Kingdom's Interest, obtained the Election.

And of later Date, (as the Preambles for the carrying the Enfigns to Foreign Princes set forth) the Advantages the Sovereign has conceived to possess himself of, in the improving, confirming, and establishing, of a most strict and inviolable Bond of Friendship, and fair Correspondence, between him and Foreign Princes, their Realms and Subjects, hath been a grand Inducement to Elect such Princes

into this most noble Order.

^{§ 14.} Upon the vacancy of any of the Knights-Companions Stalls, the Election of others to supply those, is a Prero-

Prerogative of the Sovereign, and in some Cases to his Lieutenant; for it's recorded in the Black Book of she Order, in Henry VIII's Statutes: That if any Stalls fall Vacant, it should belong to the Sovereign, to Elekt new Knights, wherefoever he was Resident; upon Condition, the Chapter confisted of fix compleat Knights-Companions; but if he chanced to be out of his Realms, and the Number was deficient, and that his Lieutenant held the Feast of St. George at Windsor; in such a Case the Elektion belongs to the Lieutenant, who is first to be certified of his Sovereign's Pleasure, and what Esteem he has for the Candidates, to the intent such Information may guide, or direct his Election.

This Power of Eledion is fully acknowledged, by the Knights-Companions themselves, to be in the Sovereign; as the fragment of a Letter demonstrates, sent from the Chapter, convened at Windsor, upon the Feast of St. George, to Henry V. then in France; viz. That the Sovereign, in what Place sover residing, may, as is most fitting, Eled into a vacant Stall, (there being a sufficient Number of Knights called to this Eledion) such as he shall judge serviceable to his Crown, or do exceed others in deferts, and nobleness of descent: And at publishing the Election of Duke Emanuel of Savoy, in the Reign of Philip and Mary, who were joint Sovereigns of the Order; it's styled, The Election of the King and the Queen.

This grand Prerogative of the Sovereign being not duly weighed by Polydore Virgil, occasioned his tripping in this Affair, and drew in Claudius Coterwus into the same palpable mistake; for writing of this Order, and the Succession of new Knights, reports in his History of England, That one Knight is received in the room of another deceased, by the Choice and Election of all the rest; and Erhard Celly in his Anglo-Wirtemb, does as falsely affirm, That no Person may be received into this Order, not so much as by the Sovereign, unless with the common Consent and Suffrage of

But these Passages are altogether erroneous, the Knights-Companions only nominate the Persons, but the right of

all the Knights-Companions.

Companions only nominate the Persons, but the right of Election remains solely in the Sovereign of the Order; for whosoever is honoured with his Choice, is immediately admitted; and pronouncing barely the Name of the Person in Chapter, constitutes the Election. After the Scrutiny

Digitized by Google

tiny hath been taken, and presented to the Sovereign, he peruseth it himself, or the Chancellor, or some other Officer of the Order that gathered it, reads it over to him; afterwards the Sovereign resolves forthwith, upon some one or more of the Knights, contained in the Scrutiny; and then publickly declareth the Name of him, or them, he does Elect; and by the bare Act of his Pronunciation, they Commence Elected Knights; except now and then the Sovereign is pleased to give his Reasons, why the Knight is Elected by him.

But though this Act of Election be solely in the Soverreign, yet the Consent of the Knights-Companions is frequently recorded in the Annals, and sometimes mentioned in the Commissions of Legations to Foreign Princes; not that the single Act of Election is, in truth, the Act of the whole Chapter, or is made invalid, without the joynt Consent of the Knights-Companions, present at the Election; but their Consent so expressed, is to be taken as an honorary Respect given them by the Register, intimating rather an Applause, or Commendation of their Sovereign's Choice, as being in their Opinions Just and Right, according to the Merit of the Elected, than a material Circumstance, tending to the Ratisfication of the Election made by the Sovereign, as if desective without it.

6. 15. Among other Duties incumbent on the Register. and expressed in the Statutes of the Order, this is one: That the Register's Office is to set down, and record for a Memorial, the Elections (or Scrutinies,) and Names of the Knights Elected: But in succeeding Times a Scruple arole, if this was not needless, when the Scrutiny should be taken, yet no Election made; to clear up which doubt, in a Chapter held in 5 Elizabeth, on St. George's-Day, it's recorded as the Sovereign's Will and Pleasure, that thenceforward it should be Enacted, and received as the Sanction of a Law, within this Order; That if any Nominations were taken from the Knights-Companions, the same should be entered into the Annals, though there were no Election made of any Person into the Order at that Time: Which we presume was so Decreed, out of great deference to those Princes and noble Personages, who, in descending Times, should, by the glory of their Exploits, appear but worthy of a bare Nomination into so resplendent

dent and illustrious an Order. And in pursuance of this Decree, there is frequent mention made of the delivery of the Scrutiny into the Hands of the Register, in order to be Recorded.

The Blue Book says, Anno 22 Elizabeth; That the Chancellor himself delivered the Knights-Companions Votes to the Register, to be committed to Writing, for a perpetual Memorial; and accordingly the Register, as his Duty obliged bim, transcribed them, and put them in their proper Place, with all Care and Fidelity. Anno 34 of the same Queen. tis said, the Votes were delivered to the Register, who took care to Record them, according to usual Order. Yet maugre this Law, the Entry of Scrutinies hath been sometimes omitted, either by the Register's forgetfulness of the Decree, or some accidental Milcarriages. In some Places of the Annals, in the room of Scrutinies, we find Excuses entered, as it's said, Anno 28 Elizabeth; that the Prelate, immediately after Vespers, presented the Scrutiny to the Sovereign; but because there was no Election made of any new Knights, in regard of hurry, or weighty and pressing Asfairs, it was laid aside, and through Neglect lost, or at least came not into the Register's Hands, to be inserted in its proper Place. And when the Dean of Windfor collected the Scrutiny at Vespers, Anno 18 Elizabeth, it's said. No Election was made, nor any thing else done: The like Excuse is made, Anno 5 Charles I. but the Fault is thrown upon the Chancellor; for though the Scrutiny had been taken by him, during the Vespers of the Feast-Day, yet would be not suffer it to be entered. In some Places we find, Anno 31 Elizabeth, the Votes being presented, they were left with her. And Anno 11 Charles I. the Scrutiny of Algernoon Earl of Northumberland never came to the Register's Hands.

But the Law yet remains in force, that all Nominations and Votes of the Knights-Companions ought to be enter'd among the Annals, whether Election be made or not, unless it shall please the Sovereign, upon some Emergency, to forbid it: As appears but by one Example of such a Prohibition, viz. Anno 40 Eliz. where, by the Queen's special Command, the Scrutiny then taken was not recorded among the Asts of this most Noble Order. But then it is declared, That the Register took care to set down all the Passages as they happened, the Names only excepted. And why

why the Scrutiny is not inserted in the Registry, An. 44 of Eliz, gives this Account: That upon affembling the Knights-Companions, it seemed good to the Sovereign, for several urgent Reasons, best known to her self, to give Commandment, That for that time, they would wholly forbear all Scrutiny of Votes, and Nominations of Persons; except which, there was nothing wanting to heighten the Solemnity of that Assembly: But this in the Annals is said to be prater morem, contrary to the usual Custom.

§ 16. Anno 27 of Eliz, there is a remarkable Occurrence, not to be passed over; for the Earls of Rutland and Derby, the morrow after St. George's Day, were desirous to have seen the Scrutiny, which was committed into the Custody of the Dean of Windsor, to be registred, in pursuance of the before-mentioned Decree, Anno 5 Eliz, but he returned a modest denial, and said, It ought not to be seen before it was register'd. The Earls, not satisfied with this Answer, requested the Opinions of the Knights-Companions, present at the Feast, on this Affair; who, upon mature Deliberation, adjudged the Point against them; and since it has been a standing Rule, that no Knight-Companion ought to see whom the other hath named.

§ 17. It hath chanced, that tho' the Nominations for Ele-Bion have been received, presented and perused, yet the Sovereign hath thought expedient to deser it, upon several Considerations, and principally where an intent was to keep an open Stall; but we must understand this of such Scrutinies as are taken of Course, at the Vespers on the Feast-day.

And the most memorable Example of this Kind, is that of the Emperor Sigismond, who expired in the 16th Year of K. Henry VI. whose Stall was reserved Twenty One Years, and then determined, that Prince Edward, the Sovereign's only Son, should fill it up, being at that time about Six Years of Age. This is the first Emperor, whose Election we find register'd in the Annals, being about the 7th of May, in the 4th Year of Henry V. styled Sigismundus Imperator Almanicus.

And keeping a vacant Stall was sometimes given as a Reason by the Sovereign for his deferring an Election, as is plain from An. 13. Car. I. when the Scrutiny taken

Digitized by Google

the Day before was read over in the Chapter-House, the Sovereign declared, That he would receive no Man into the Order before his Son Charles. Whereupon all the Knights-Companions gave their Opinions, That this Resolution was rather the effect of Justice, than Fatherly Indulgence; since they all acknowledged him, to be more a Prince by Merit, and towardliness of his Youth, than by the Fortune of his Birth. At which the Sovereign expressed his Satisfaction no otherwise than by Silence.

And in like manner, Anno 15 Charles I. when the Chancellor of the Order gave up the Scrutiny to the Sovereign, he declared----That be had a purpose to have Chosen Prince Rupert, his Nephen, a Knight of the Order; but being then a Prisoner with the Emperor, he would not Elect any at that Time; whereupon, a vacancy of a Stall was reserved. It has sometimes been the Sovereign's Pleasure to deser Elections, without expressing the Cause, as in the 13 of Elizabeth; though the perused the Scrutiny in Chapter, yet the Blue Book informs us; That the said Sovereign made no Election, though two Stalls were vacant. Thus was it in the 2, 3, 11, and 12, of K. James I. where no other mention is made than this; none were admitted into the Order this Tear.

Sometimes we find these Prorogations of Elections recorded, as folely done by the Will of the Sovereign; and at other Times by the Sovereign, and the approbation of the Knights-Companions; to the first of these we find a Memorial, in the 22 of Elizabeth, on the 24 of April; that the Knights-Companions had a Message sent to their Chapter, held before Morning-Prayer; That it was the Pleasure of the Sovereign to proregue the Election to the following Year. And so it was, in the 10th of Charles I. though the Nomination was taken by the Chancellor, and presented to the Sovereign in Chapter, the Sovereign did not think fit to make any Election at all. And for a Testimony of the second, we meet with this Instance, in the 27th of Elizabeth; that with the concurrent Approbation and Assent of all the Knights-Companions then assisting, the Sovereign thought fit to put off the Election to another Time. As to the seeming difference of the Sovereign's absolute Authority, and yet the Knights-Companions Approbation, we have cleared up that Point in the Act of Eleetion; for though it is bis unquestionable Authority and Prerogative, to Prorogue Elections ad libitum, yet out of Respect, and Honour to the Knights-Companions, their Approbation hath been sometimes exprest.

Summons, to appear at a Chapter of Election, and doth wilfully refuse, or withdraw himself, he was to be mulct a Mark for his Disobedience, which King Henry VIII's Statutes inlarged to twenty Shillings, payable to the Dean and College of Windsor, to pray for defunct Souls. And at his next appearance in Chapter, he was to remain kneeling in the midst of them, before the Sovereign, or Deputy, till he was restor'd to their Favour: Yet upon a just Cause signified to the Sovereign some time before, under the Seal of his Arms, he was excused, if it was found just and feasible; if not, it was rejected, and he remained Punishable.

And for greater Caution, this Clause was formerly inferted, in the Letters of Summons; where, after the Time and Place for Election was certified, and command given to observe both, the Letter concludes thus, et se estre ny poues nous Signifies soubz, &c. and if it cannot be accomplished, that is, if the Knight-Companion could not meet at the time affigned, to perform what the Statutes oblige, he should then signify to the Sovereign, under his Seal, the cause of his Impediment; so that he might perceive by his Excuse, whether it was worthy of Acceptance, or he in Fault or not.

CAP. X.

The Investiture of a Knight-Subject with the Garter and George.

F the Knight chance to be at Windsor, that is newly Elected, or where over the Chapter is held, after the Sovereign hath signified his Pleasure in the Election of the Person, the Garter is immediately dispatched out of the Chapter, to give him the Intelligence; as is apparent

rent upon the Choice of the Lord Howard, and Sir Henry Marney, Anno 2 Henry VIII: who was dispatched from the Chapter, to conduct them to the Sovereign's Presence, to be invested with the principal Enfigns of the Order.

the Garter and George.

And as Gaster hath been accustomed to fignify in Person the Election of a Knight, in like manner an Blection is fignified, by the Letters of the Sovereign, when she is pleased (for the greater Honour of the Person) to weave by verbal Notice: In such Cases, it's the Chancelor's Office to draw up the Letters, and they are to pass, both under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, and Signet of the Order. Such a particular mark of Distinction and Honour was conferr'd on our Sovereign of Blessed Memory, King Charles II. Sir John Burrough Gaster, carrying the Letter.

Charles Rex,

" Our most dear and entirely beloved Son, having, to " our great Comfort, seen and considered the ripeness of "your Youth, and conceived joyful and pregnant Hopes "of your manly Virtue, in which we are affured you "will increase, to your own Honour, both in Prowess, "Wisdom, Justice, and all Princely Endowments; and " that the Emulation of Chevalry will, in your tender "Years, provoke and encourage you, to pursue the Glory " of Heroick Actions, befitting your Royal Birth, and our ", Care and Education. We with the Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter, assembled in Chap-". ter, holden this present Day, at our Castle of Windsor; " have Elected and Cholen you one of the Companions " of our Order. In Signification whereof, we have sent " unto you, by our Trusty and Well-Beloved Servant, " Sir John Burrough Knight-Garter, and our principal " King of Arms, these our Royal Letters, requiring you " to make your speedy repair unto us, to receive the En-"figns of our most Noble Order, and to be ready for " your Installation, upon the zist Day of this present "Month. Given under the Signet of our Order, at our " Castle of Windsor, the 20th of May, in the 14th Year of " of our Reign, 1638.

To our dearly beloved Son Prince Charles.

This

This is the only Instance we have met with, where a Letter was sent to an Elect Knight, and he at the same time present at Court; but when an Election is confirmed, and the Person remote from the Court, then the general Tenure of the Letter is, both to signify his Election, and Summon him to his Investure, with the Garter and George, as was performed by the Earl of Derby, and Sir Edward Strafford, to King Henry of France.

But where the Sovereign is pleased to mention particular Services, to recommend the Election of a Knight, the Preamble of the Letter is worded accordingly; and as this is a Case not very frequent, it will not be amiss to execuplify it in the Choice of Sir John Falstoff, where the Letter runs thus. We considering the virtuous Fidelity you have shown, and the honourable Exploits you have done, in the Service of our thrice renowned Father, and that in our Service also, you (as many others) have given Proof of that Honour, and those Deserts, wherewith God hath endowed you, always suffering, as is the part of a good Subject, the Pains and Toils of War, for the vindicating and maintaining of our just Right, Claim, and Title, have Chosen you one of our Companions of our Order.

When the Letter barely fignifies Election, that is, when the Sovereign does not defign a present investure with the Garter and George, but defers it till he takes Possession of his Stall, the Day of his Installation is inserted towards the end of the Letter; and upon his appearance at Windsor, so soon as he appears in the Chapter-House, the Garter is first buckled about his lest Leg, then follows his Investure with the rest of the Ornaments of the Order, and lastly his Installation. And this was the Case of Henry Earl of Northumberland, Anno 29 Henry VIII. whose Investure of the Garter was deferr'd till his appearance at Windsor, and then the whole Ceremony was performed at once.

§ 2. If the elect Knight be at hand, where the Chapter is convened, and the Garter hath been sent to make known to him the Honour, and Conduct him into the Chapter-House, to receive the Garter and George, before they break up, Intimation being given of his approach, the Sovereign sends out two of the Knights-Companions to meet him, who, after a mutual Salute, Conduct him between them, to the Presence of the Sovereign, Garter geing

Thus was Ubrick Duke of Holflein, going before them. Anno 3 Jac. L. introduced into the Chapter, between Prince Henry, and the Earl of Dorset, and Christian Duke of Brunswick, Anno 22 Jac. I, between William Barl of Pembrook, and Philip Earl of Monegomery, to receive the Garter and George. The 6th of November, Anno 14 Charles II. Christian Prince of Denmark, being elected at a Chapter held at White-Hall, and then absent, the Garter King was dispatched next Day by the Sovereign, to inform him, and to defire his Presence the next Day, that he might receive his Investure; which accordingly was done, being conducted between the Barls of Lindfey and Manchester into the Chapter, Garter preceding them, and after three Obeyfances, they brought him up to the Sovereign. Among Knights-Subjects, we find the Lord Burley, and the Lord Grey, were conducted to the Sovereign by the Lord Clynton, and the Earl of Bedford, Anno 14 Elizabeth, cum multis aliis. Anno 4 Jac. I. Robert Earl of Salisbury proceeded up to the Sovereign's Throne, between the Earls of Nottingham and Dorset. In the Reign of King Charles I. the Earl of Northampton was conducted to receive the Garter in the Chapter-House at Windfor, between the Earls of Pembrook and Montgomery. And when King Charles II. appeared, upon his Letter of Summons, at the Chapter held in the withdrawing Chamber in Windfor Castle, to receive his Investure, two of the Senior Knights, viz. Philip Earl of Pembrook and Montgomery, and Thomas Earl of Arundel and Surry, were fent out to Conduct him in, who brought him between them unto the Sovereign, the Gentleman Usher of the Black Rod going before.

The Duke of Monmouth being elected at a Chapter held in the withdrawing Room at White-Hall, the 28th of March, Anno 15 Charles II. Garter was immediately fent to him in the Sovereign's Bed-Chamber, who being met at the Door by the Earls of Lindsey and Manchester, both the Garter and the Black Rod passed to the lower End of the Room before the Duke and the two Knights-Companions, whence they proceeded up to the Sovereign with three Reverences. At the Election of James Duke of Cambridge, in the same Room at White-Hall, (December 3. Anno 18 Charles II.) Garter was also sent forth into the Bed-Chamber, to acquaint him that the Earl of

Manchester, and the Duke of Monmouth, were appointed by the Sovereign and Chapter to bring him in thither; that done, the aforesaid Knights-Companions arose and went to the Duke, whom meeting at the Bed-Chamber Door, they took their compass about the rest of the Knights-Companions, (then standing) and brought him between them, from the lower End of the Room, close before the Sovereign, the Garter and Black Rod preceeding.

• 6.3. The Knight elect being thus introduced to the Sovereign, bows with all Reverence, and formerly a short gratulatory Speech was the vogue, that set forth his acknowledgment of his Sovereign's Royal Favour, and the grateful Respect he bore to the Knights-Companions for his Election.

Anno 28. Hen. VIII, we find Sir Nicholas Crew, after he had been conducted into the Chapter-House at Windfor, to receive his Investitute, thus to address himself: giving infinite Thanks both to the Sovereign and whole Society, for that they had wouthfafed to receive him into the Honour of this most illustrious Order, being a Person in his own Esteem most unworthy thereof: In the next Place professed, That whereas he was preferred in this Choice before many others, much more deserving than himself, it was not to be attributed to his Meries, or any Thing by him personmed, but meerly to the Sovereign's Bounty, and the Favour of the

Knights-Companions towards him. The conferring of so singular an Honour, being thus thankfully own'd, the Ceremony of Investiture begins the Garter first takes place, as the most ancient and chiefest Ensign, and then the George; but the compleat Investiture is not performed until the Bleck Knights are installed at Windso. Formerly the manner of robing of them was performed on this wife: First, the Elect Knight fet his Foot upon a Stool, and then one of the Knights-Companions, by the Sovereign's appointment, as his Substitute, buckled the enobled Garter about his left Leg, as may be Icen in the Antiquities of Warwickshire, in an old Draught of the Combars of Sir John Aftler, who was inrolled in this illustrious Body, and is to represented. But of later Date, the Elect Knight kneeled on his right Knee, whilft this Ceremony was performed, in which space the Words of Admonition and Signification, at this part of the Inve-Aiture.

Airure, were read. The Admonition, upon the buckling of the Garter, in the English Statutes of K. Hen. VIII. is set down on this manner:

SIR.

The loving Brothren of the Order of the Garter, have received you their Brother and Fellow; and in Token of this, they give and present you this present Garter, which God grant that you receive and wear from benceforth to his Praise and Glory, and to the Exaltation and Honour of the said Noble Order, and your self.

Afterwards it was decreed, at a Chapter held at Windfor, the 5th of August, Anno 1 & 2 Poil. and Mary, to this
effect: 'That not only the fame Advertisements, which
'were wont to be given to Strangers at their Investitures,
's should be likewise given to Knights-Subjects, that for
'the surre should be elected and install'd; and with a
farther Proviso, 'That among the Knights Companions
there should not be any difference either in Ceremony or
'Habit.

Hereupon the aforesaid Tenure ceased to be used upon the fixing of the Garter, and one Form remained at the Investiture of Strangers and Knights-Subjects, which is pronounced by the Chancellor, if the Sovereign of his Lieutenant be present, otherwise by the Register.

"To the Laud and Honour of Almighty God, his immaculate Mother, and St. George the holy Martyr, tye or gird your Leg with this noble Garter, wearing it to the increase of your Honour, and in Token and Remembrance of this most noble Order; remembring that thereby you being admonished and encouraged, in all just Battels and Wars, which only you shall take in Hand, both strongly to fight, valiantly to stand, and honourably to have Victory.

But against the Investiture of K. Charles II. the Words of the Signification being better weighed and considered, were thus methodized:

"To the Honour of God Omnipotent, and in Memotial of the bleffed Martyr St. George, tye about thy Leg, T 2 "for thy Renown, this noble Garter; wear it as the Symbol of the most illustrious Order, never to be forgotten or laid aside; that thereby thou may'st be admonished to be couragious; and having undertaken a just War, into which only thou shalt be engaged, thou may'st stand Firm, valiantly Fight, and successfully Conquer.

The Princely Garter being thus buckled on, and the Words of the Signification pronounced, the Elect Knight is brought before the Sovereign, who puts about his Neck the George, pendant at a Sky-colour'd Ribband, at which part of the Ceremony, the Admonition used at the adorning of an installed Knight with the Collar of the Order, (only changing the Word Collar for Ribband) is pronounced; but were alter'd upon the Occasion assign'd before.

"Wear this Ribband about thy Neck, adorn'd with the Image of the bleffed Martyr, and Soldier of Christ, "St. George; by whose Imitation provok'd, thou may'st so overpass both prosperous and adverse Adventures, that having stoutly vanquished thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou may'st not only receive the Praise of this transient Combat, but be crown'd with the Palm of evernal Victory.

Greater Respect is conferr'd upon foreign Princes, who receive their Election here, than abroad; because the Sovereign most usually performs the Investiture himself; as was solemniz'd upon Philip, King of Castile, when the Sovereign took the Garter from the King at Arms, and fixed it on his Leg, and Prince Henry sasten'd the Buckle.

Queen Elizabeth her self buckled the Garter about the Leg of John Casimier, Count Palatine of the Rhine, and hung about his Neck a Gold Chain with the George at it. And the like Honour did King James I. confer upon the

Duke of Holftein, in the 3d Year of his Reign.

Sometimes it happens, tho' very rarely, for the Sovereign, out of his special Grace and Favour, to condescend to Honour a Knight-Subject this way; tho', when Queen Elizabeth was pleased to adorn the Lord Burleigh with the Garrer, the Annals record it to be done as it were by the by. The same Favours she bestowd, tho' at different times.

times, upon Henry, Earl of Suffex, and the Earl of Shrewfbury. King James I. invested Henry, Earl of Northampton, with the principal Enfigns of the Order, as a Person worthy of so great an Honour: And the Blessed Martyr placed both the Garter and the George, with his own

Hands, upon King Charles II.

Sometimes the Sovereign hath but performed part of the Investiture, and laid his Commands on the senior Knight to do the rest. Thus, Anno 13 Henry VIII. the Sovereign reached out the Garter to the Marquis of Dorfet, and commanded him to buckle it about the Leg of the Earl of Devenshire; which, whilst he was about, the Duke of Norfolk gave him his Assistance, and the Sovereign put on the Gold Chain. At the Investiture of Christian, Duke of Brunswick, Anno 22 Jac. I. the Sovereign put about his Neck the Blue Ribband, whereat hung the Effigies of St. George; and the Earls, who introduced him to the Sovereign's Presence, buckled on the Garter. Thus did the Sovereign to William, Earl of Northampton, Anno 4 Car. I. and the Earl of Pembroke sasten'd the Garter

about his left Leg.

This Order of Investiture began to be inverted Anno 22 Fac. I. the George and the Ribband being first put on, and the Garter last. And so was it performed when the Prince of Denmark, Dukes of Monmouth, Cambridge, and Albemarle, received their Investiture in the Reign of King Charles II. The Garter, as it was the first, so is the principal and most worthy Ensign of the Order; and, in the Practice of all former Times, had always the Preference given to it. The Investiture with these two Enfigns, hath generally been performed by the two senior Knights, at the Command of the Sovereign; but always in his Presence, the Chapter sitting; but if absent, then by his Lieutenant. For, in 31 Eliz. the Lord Buckburst being elected at Whitehall, and coming to Court wholly ignorant of the Affair, and after the Sovereign was risen, (yet leaving the Chapter fitting) her Lieutenant invested him both with the Garter and George. After the Solemnity is compleated, the elect Knight renders most humble Thanks to the Sovereign, and with due Respects salutes the Knights-Companions, who re-salute the elect Knight, and joyfully receive him into their Society. If two or more elect Knights receive this Investiture at one time, as soon as the Senior is invested, and his humble Thanks presented, he moves downwards towards the Chapter-House Door, and there stands till the next Junior Knight is invested; and if there be more, so on until the Chapter break up.

44. Where a Knight-Subject, at the time of his Election, is far distant from Court, or beyond Sea, and the Sovereign determines to send him the Two principal Ensigns of the Order, the Charge of this Employ does of right belong to the Garter. For the Proof of which there are divers Precedents.

The Letters heretofore fent from the Sovereign, along with the Bnfigns of the Order, to the elect Knights, have, for the most parr, been drawn after the Form of those that certify the Election, and differs only in the last Clause, which requires the elect Knight to repair to the Sovereign: The difference lay not in the Body, but in the Direction of the Letter, which was always worded according to the Quality of the Person to whom it was sent. As to a Knight-Batchelor, the Direction was, To our transity and well-beloved; and to an Earl, Right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin; to a Duke, Right trusty, and right entirely beloved Cousin, &c.

The Forms of those Letters, sent upon like Occasions to Knights-Subjects, when King Charles II. was beyond Sea, were penn'd after another Model, and contained other additional particular Clauses; as, 1. Power to wear the Star of Silver about St. George's Cross; 2. The Great Collar of the Order; and, 3. To style themselves Knights, and Companions of the Order of the Garter, in as ample a Manner, as if they had been installed at Windsor; with an Assurance of receiving the whole Habit there, when the Sovereign was restored to the Possession thereof.

And it appears from some of these Letters, that by teason Sir Edward Walker, Garter, was otherwise employ'd in the Service of the Sovereign, when they were transmitted, the Sovereign ritch'd upon other Persons, to carry both the Letters and Ensigns' of the Order, and yet continued the Garter in the Rights' of his Office. 'However, Sir Edward esteeming this devolving his Employment on others, as an Invasion on the Rights of his Office; and having a just regard for the Interest of his Successors, no less than his own, humbly petitioned King Charles II. for Redress, and obtained his gracious Reference thereupon, to several Knights of the Order, to examine the Matter, and to give in their Report, what they found, and what they thought proper to be effected therein; and upon whose Report the Sovereign did him full Right by his gracious Declaration. For the Dukes of Buckingham and Hamilton, and the Marquis of Newcastle, to whom this Affair was referr'd, gave in their Report to the King at Breda, May 27, 1650.

We, George, Duke of Buckingham, William, Duke of Hamilton, and William, Marquis of Newcastle, Knights of the most noble Order of the Garter, having read and confider'd the within written Petition, do find the Allegations therein mentioned to agree with the Statutes and ancient Practices of the said Order; and that Garter King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters Papertaining to the Brethren of the said Order, and all Elections to the Knights elect: And we do therefore make this Report to your Majesty, to the end you may be pleased to mantain the Petitioner in his just Rights; and that no Example lately made may be brought in Precedent or ainst him, or his Successors in the said Office.

G. Buckingham.
Hamilton.

W. Newcastle.

It was formerly the Practice, to send the Book of Statutes, under the common Seal of the Order, together with the Letters signifying an Election; and the Ensigns of the Order, no less to a Knight Subject than to a Stranger, that he might peruse and advise thereupon, whether he would accept of the Election, or not; for so it appears, Anno 4 Hon. VI. by the Letters sent to Sir John Falssoff.

Within a few Days after Prince Rupert was elected into this Order, (being then in Holland) a Commission of Legation was prepared to be sent thither, with the Garter and George, by Sir John Burrough, Kt. to perform the Investiture with them; bur Sir John dying, prevented the Ceremony. Some time after the Prince had been in England, the then Sovereign thought six to lay his Commands on Sir James Palmer, Chancellox of the Order, to attend his

his Highness, to declare the Reason why the said Commission was not sent and executed, as was designed, as well as to deliver him the Commission it felf; to the intent (being prevented of receiving his Installation at Windsor, because that Castle continued in the Possession of the Rebels) it might remain with him as a Memorial of his Sovereign's Princely Favour, and Respect to his Quality and Merits, and for a farther Evidence of his being admitted into this most Noble Order, since there was no other Memorial thereof, but the Minutes of his Election, and this Commission. And accordingly on Monday, the 14th of January, 1644. the Chancellor, accompanied with Dr. Christopher Wiren, Register, and Sir Bdward Walker, newly made Garter, attended the Prince at his Lodgings in Oxford; who, having notice of their Defign, received them with all obliging Civility; and the Chancellor, in an eloquent Speech, made known to his Highness his Sovereign's Commands, and the Intent of bis coming; which was no sooner finished, but Sir James Palmer presented his Petition to the Prince, who gave his Majesty many humble Thanks for this gracious Message; and acknowledged his Majesty's Favours beyond his Defert; but promifed he would study to be more worthy by his Actions, than in return of Words; with many Thanks to the Chancellor, and other Officers of the Order, for their Trouble: Whereupon they took their Leave. and the Chancellor went immediately to his Majesty, and gave him a Narrative of what they had done.

§ V. It was an ancient Custom, and parx of the Ceremony belonging to the Investiture with the Garter, to give him an Oath, whether he was a Stranger or a Subject-Knight, which we find styled, The Oath in such Cases accustomed to be taken; and which was to this effect; That the Knight should well and faithfully keep and observe, so far as God should enable him, all that was comained in the Statutes of the Order: But this of late hath been disused, and not imposed, unless upon soreign Princes.

It is observable, that Anno 4 Hen. VI. a particular Commission was issued, to the Earls of Warwick, Salisbury, and Suffolk, with Power, to any Two, or One of them, to receive this Oath from Sir John Falstoff, upon his Investiture; which was besides the Oath his Proctor

was afterwards to take at the Installation, which Sir John empowered him to do on his behalf; which was, Such Oath as should be required at the time of Installation.

Altho we have fully treated of the Ceremony and Manner of inverting a Knight elect, with the Garter and George, we shall subjoin Two or Three considerable Instances, as

most proper to this Place.

When Philip, Prince of Spain, Anno 1 Maria, had these Ensigns of the Order sent him, the Sovereign joyn'd Garter King of Arms, with the Earl of Arundel, to perform the Investiture; who, upon notice of his arrival on the Coast of England, set forward on their Journey to Southampton; where, on Friday the 20th of July, they took Water, and meeting the Prince before he landed, entered his Barge, and gave him notice of his Election in a short Speech; which being ended, Garter having the Garter in his Hand, kiffed it, and so presented it to the Earl, who forthwith fasten'd it about the Prince's Leg; and after Garter had presented the Earl with the George, hanging at a Chain of Gold, he put it likewise about the Prince's Neck. The Ceremony of Investiture being thus performed, the Prince came on shore at Southampton; and on the uppermost Stair were ready attending his landing, the Marquis of Winchester, Lord High Treasurer of England, with divers other Lords: The Prince gave the Lord Williams his White Staff, and made him Lord Chamberlain of his Houshould; and Sir Anthony Brown, Master of his Horse, presented him, from the Queen, a Horse with a Foot-cloth of Crimson Velvet, richly embroider'd with Gold and Pearls, having the Bridle and all other Furniture suitable, whereon he rode to the Cathedral, and after Prayers to the Lodging prepared for him.

Concerning the Garter's Investiture of the Earl of War-wick, at Newhaven in France, the first of May, Anno 5 Elizists as follows: The Garter repairing first to the Earl's Lodgings, put on his Mantle in the next Chamber to the Earl's, and proceeded into the Earl's Chamber; where, having made Three Reverences, he buckled the Garter about his left Leg, and after put on the George and the Ribband about his Neck; reading to the Earl the Words of the Signification, appointed to be pronounced at the Investiture; which being concluded, Garter settir d into the Room

where he had put on his Mantle, and there disrobed him-

felf, and so the Ceremony ended.

It was the Custom about these Times, for the Nobility, Allies, or Friends, to the elect Knight, to send him by the Garter, several Garters and Georges, as Marks of Congratulation for the Honour he was to receive, which the Garter delivered to him when the Investiture was finished, and he had put off his Robe, with the particular Services and Respects of those Friends who had bestow'd them. For thus was it with the Earl of Warwick at Newbaven, and the Lord Scroop at Carlifle, Anno 26 Eliz. At the Garter's return to Court, he is obliged to deliver an Account to the Sovereign, how he hath discharged his Employment; and by special Direct ons from the elect Knight, who presents the highest Respects he can express, as well to the Sovereign as to the rest of the Knights-Companions, for honouring him with a Reception into so illugrious a Body.

We shall close this Section with a brief Account of the Investiture of the Duke of Gloucester, on Easter-day in the Morning, being the 14th of April, 1653. In reference to

which Ceremony there was provided:

1. A Garter with the Motto, to be tyed about his left Leg.

2. A George in a Ribband, to be put about his Neck:

3. An embroider'd Cross of St. George, with a Garser and Sear, to be sew'd on the left Shoulder of the Duke's Cloak.

4. A Velvet Cushion, whereon the Ensigns and Ornaments of the Order were to be laid.

For the Honour of the Order, and his said Highness, Sir Edward Walker, Garter, humbly proposed, That he might be assisted by Two or Four Knights in performing

his Dury.

That his Highnels the Duke might receive the Enfigns of the Order, in the Presence-Chamber of the Princess Royal, or in his own, accompanied with the Queen of Bohemia; her Royal Highnels, and some other Persons of Honour and Quality.

That his Highness having placed himself under the State, Garter should take the Cushion upon his Arms, on which

MCL

were to be laid all the particular Ornaments just now mentioned; being affished with the Knights, and a Passage left for him to make his Three Obeysances, he should proceed up towards the Duke, and lay the Cushion with the Ornaments upon a Stool set near his Highness for that purpose.

That he should signifie to his Higness, in few Words, the Cause of his coming, and then deliver into his Hands the

Sovereign's Letter.

That his Highness having receiv'd it, should break it open, and deliver it back to the Garter to be read; which he having done, should return it to his Highness.

That, after this, he should proceed to the Investiture of

his Highness with the Enfig: s of the Order.

Which being done, he briefly represented unto his Highness, in a Speech, somewhat of the Quality and

Splendor of the Order.

And, lastly, to kis his Highnels Hand, and so depart. And according to those Proposals, and in the same Order, were all Things performed.

6. The Sovereign of this most Noble Order desrays the Charges of the Garter, whensever, and as often as he is dispatch'd to any elect Knight Subject, either with Letters to signific his Election, or to invest him with the Gaster and George; and this is commonly proportioned according to the length or the shortness of the Journey. The Allowance for the Journey which Sir Gilbert Dithick, Garter, made into the Counties of Lincoln and Cumberland, first to the Earl of Rutland, and then to the Lord Scroop, when Queen Elizabeth was Sovereign, appears to have been 20 l.

Besides the Sovereign's Allowance to the Garter, he receives honourable Gratuities and Rewards from the elect Knight himse, after he has performed the Investiture; and these have usually been proportioned, according to the estimate of the Honour he receives, and the particular affection he has for the Garter, and the service done by him. Among whom, Anno 17 Henry VIII. we find the Earl of Arundel bestow'd on Thomas Wisorb sley, Garter, ten Poundes in Angelots, being then at his Mannor of Dimnley; and Ralib Earl of Westmo eland, elected at the same Time with the aforesaid Earl, being at Mile-end,

gave

gave to him fix Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence. The Earl of Northumberland, in the 23 of Henry VIII. bestow'd on the Garter, for the verbal certifying him of his Election, four Pounds, though he went no farther than the Chapter-House Door.

Lastly, Anno 26 Elizabeth, the Earl of Rutland honourably received the Garter at Newark, and the Lord Scroop gave him thirty Pounds in Gold, a Velvet Cloak, and a Gallaway Nag, and to William Detbick, York Herald, who

accompanied Garter to Carlisle, ten Pounds.

But since these Times, the Knights elect have enlarged their gratuities to Garter, for his Service upon this Occasion.

CAP. XI.

Of Preparations for the Personal Installation of a Knight.

HE Inauguration of a Knight of this most Noble Order, confifts in a Conjunction of many Ceremonies, and contains the most solemn part of those, which compleateth all the rest; and till this great Solemnity be regularly and duly performed, the Person elected hath not the Honour to be enrolled among the Number of Founders, but barely passes for an elect Knight, and no other: For the Statute expressy lays, That in Case a Knight elect die before his Installation. He shall not be named one of the Founders; and the reason assigned for it is, because he hath not had the full Possession of his Estate, and in this Point do the other Bodies of the Statutes agree. But when the Ceremonies of Installation are compleatly finished, without all doubt the Knight is amply vested, in Possession of all Honours and Privileges appertaining to the Founder of this most Noble Order. But to spur up each elect Knight, who is either a Subject to his Sovereign, or resides within the Realm, (and consequently is better able to provide for Installment, than one remaining

ing in Foreign Parts,) for the completion of his Honour, or elle to wave the Act of Election, he has the space of one Year allowed him by the Statutes for Installation. otherwise his Election is ordained to be absolutely null and void: Nor can there be any Motive sufficient to retard the Sovereign from proceeding to a new Election, unless the elect Knight send or produce an Extenuation or Excuse for such his delay, fit to be excepted by the Sovereign or his Deputy, and the whole of that resplendent Body, or that the Sovereign himself think fit to defer the Ceremony of Installation for some time longer. For which reason, when certain Articles, tending to the Honour of the Order, had been prepared by the Sovereign's Lieurenant and ten Knights-Companions, in a Chapter held the 24th of April, Anno 21 Jacobus I. ratified by the Sovereign, and ordered to be observed; one of them was for accelerating the Installation, after the Knight had been elected, yet qualified with this Exception: Unless for some special Cause the Sovereign shou'd think fit to defer the same until the Eve or Day of St. George next following, the Time of Election.

1 2. The Feast of Installation hath not been hitherto affigned to any certain Period of Time, but has always depended upon the Will and Pleasure of the Sovereign, to affix a convenient Day, which hath been granted upon the request of the Knights elect, or some other of the Knights-Companions, whole Favour and Esteem with the Sovereign was best able to prevail; such a one do we find Anno 35 Elizabeth; who, on the behalf of the Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumberland, obtained the 19th of June the said Year, to be appointed for the Installation. It sometimes happens, that though the Day of Installation be prefixed, yet something extraordinary intervening, it hath been prorogued to a farther and more convenient Season for the Sovereign's Affairs. And the most remarkable Instance is set down, Anno 2 and 4 Philip and Mary, when the Earl of Suffex, the Lord Grey, and Sir Robert Rechester, Knights elect, had their Installation, together with the Feaft of St. George, prorogued to the 10th of May in the Year aforesaid. But many urgent Affairs, relating both to the King and the Queen, fell out about that time; not only the Grand Feast, but the Solemnity of their Installation

lation were prorogued to the 5th of December, and flood so by several Prorogations, to the 20th of February next ensuing; yet it was ordered that the Earl of Suffex should be immediately installed, which was performed on the 8th of January, and the Lord Grey the 20th of April sollowing; but Sir Robert Rochester never obtained that Homour.

Though the time of Installation be arbitrary and uncertain, yet hath the Place, from the first Institution of the Order, been appointed only to the Sovereign's Free Chapel, of St. George, within whose Choice are erected the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions Stalls, and under its, facred Roof their Banners and Atchievements are affixed. as Monuments of their high Merit, and fo great Honour. For though the Celebration of the Grand Feaft of St. George. happened to be removed from Windsor, by a Decree of the I Elizabeth; yet the Featt of the Installation was excepted, and ordered to be Solemniz'd in that Place: For Anno 21 Jac. I. it was provided among the Orders, That after an Election made of a Knight of the Order, his Installation shou'd be performed at Windsor, according to the ancient Customs and Statut ? of the Order. When the Scvereign hath been pleased to prefix a certain Day for this Solemnity of Installation, there are several things to be obtained, previous to it. (1.), A Commission to admit and instal the elect Knighr, (2.) Letters to each of the Commissioners, and the elect Knight, to repair to Windfor. (3.) Warrants for the Sovereign's Livery. (4.) A Bill or Warrant for the removal of Stalls and Atchievements, all figned by the Chancellor of the Order, with the Sign Manual of the Sovereign: And lastly, the Knights own Preparations; among which his Atchievements are to be ready to be hung up, as foon as he is installed.

§ 3. No elect Knight can be installed, unless by the Sovereign of the Order himself, or by his Commission drawn up in Writing, ard passed under the Great-Seal of the Order, directed either to his Lieutenant or Knights-Commissioners. There is but one Instance to be found, where the Sovereign hath been pleased to Honour a Knight by initalling of him himself; and that was Philip of Castile and Leon, Anno 22 Henry VII. yet it is feasible enough that Sigismond the Emperor, and some other Foreign

reign Princes of Rank and Eminence, might be installed by other Sovereigns, though there's no Memorial lest upon Record. In reference to Installation by Commission, it was ordained by the Statutes of Institution; That in Case the Sovereign shou'd be absent out of the Kingdom, at the Time of Installation of any of the Knights, so as he could not perfonally perform those things his Office obliged him to, it shou'd be Lawful for him to Constitute, as his Deputy in this Affair, whomsoever of the Society be sould think fit; and be to have Power and Authority, in the Sovereign's Name, to Perform and Execute these Things, which it wou'd have been in his own part to have done, had be been Present. By Virtue of this Article, the Sovereign's Deputy, or Lieutenant, performed the Ceremony before the Reign of King Henry VIII. which was usually done at the Feast of St. George; but in the Commission given out for Installation, formerly the Lieutenant was first mentioned, and the Knights-Companions appointed for his Affistance at the said Feast. were joined with him in the Commission for Installation; but of late, the Commission hath passed to the Lieutenant alone. King Henry VIII. by his Statutes, enlarged the Power of his Deputy, and they run to two or more of the Knights-Companions, that shou'd Exercise the same by the Sovereign's Letters of Commission. And by the Privilege of this Article, whenfoever after, the Sovereign's did Constitute an Installation, otherwise than at the Feast of St. George, they then delegated their Authority to such of the Knights-Companions as were judged most proper to perform this Ceremony. The Year after the enacting this Statute, there's a Commission recorded to be issued out to the Marquis of Darset, and the Earls of Devenshire and Kene, to Instal the Lords Ferrers of Chartley, the substance of which is in our Annals. The particular Powers these Commissions have granted to them, are to accept and admit the Knight into the Order, to receive the Oath, and to Instal him; And their general Power is, to effect and accomplish every Point which belongs to his due Admittance, and plenary Instalment.

§ 4. Besides, the Commission impowering the Sovereign's Lieutenant, or Knights-Commissioners, therein nominated to the Installation of an elect Knight, it hath been a matter frequent with the Sovereign, to Issue out U Letters

Letters of Summons under his privy Signet, both to the Commissioners for Installation, and elect Knights, under the Signet of the Order; those to the Commissioners are directed severally to each, nominated in the Commission; who are to give them notice of the Instalment, and to require their repair to Windsor, against the Day affigured, that they may proceed to their Installation. Those directed to the elect Knights, pass likewise under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, and Signet of the Order; and if there be two or more Knights appointed to be Installed on the same Day, the like Letter is sent to each of them,

the difference being only in the Direction.

Besides these Letters sent from the Sovereign, the Chancellor (if the Sovereign be absent,) in his circular Letter to the Knights-Companions, gives them an intimation of the designed Installation, upon the Feast of St. George. And if the Feast be held either by the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, he dispatcheth a Letter to the Prelate of the Order, intimating the Sovereign's Commands for his attendance at the Day appointed; and if it be performed by Commissioners, he issues his Letters to the three inferior Officers of the Order, purporting the same Command; the conveyance of which appertains to the Garter, and are less to his Care, and Trust, by the Constitutions relating to the Order, whose allowances and rewards upon these and such like Services, in their due Place, shall be considered.

of the Order, is the Sovereign's Warrant, directed for the Master of the Great Wardrobe, for the Time being, to deliver so much Velvet for the Livery of the Order, as will make the Knight elect a Surcoat and Hood, and as much Sarcenet or Tasset as will serve to line them: Of such a Warrant there is an ancient Precedent in Latin, entered in the Black Book of the Order; where it runs, Nos ideo volumus & pracipimus, ut binc Tabelioni virgas Octodecem subrubri ostri de more tradas, cum tanto albo serico, quanto vestimentum inde consiciendum infusciri poterie, pro liverata (quam vocant) sua, &c. There is likewise inserted another Precedent in English of the like Nature, for the delivery of these Materials to Sir John Wallop Kt. elected.

Anno 38 Henry VIII. and in the same Form run all the

Warrants of Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth.

Over and above these, there is a Warrant and Scheme prepared for the Sovereign to Sign, wherein is described the Order of the Stalls of Windfor, as he would have them stand at the ensuing Election; by the Virtue of which, the Garter is impowered to fhift or remove the Plates and Atchievements of the present Knights-Companions, so that room may be made for the elect Knight, or Knights, and to fix the new Plates and Atchievements within, and over the Stalls, in such order as they are rank'd in the Scheme. As foon as the Sovereign's Pleasure is known concerning an Installation, Garter brings to the Chancellor of the Order, the Names of the present Knights-Companions, placed in the order they then fit in their Stalls, to the intent he may present them to the Sovereign; who, upon observing the series wherein they stand already, he may easier determine how to alter and place both them. and the new elect Knights. Anno 27 Elizabeth, the Office of the Garter being vacant, this employ was put upon the Clarenceux, and the Sovereign's Warrant for removal and placing of Plates and Atchievements, was delivered to him, five Days before the Installation of the Earl of Rutland, the Lords Cobbam and Scroop, who thereupon fixed them according to the direction given; upon what Ground this alteration and removal came to be made. and continues still in Vogue, though it was otherwise at the Institution of the Order, wherein we must have recourse to the Statutes, and the antique Practice grounded upon them: Among the Statutes, those of the Institution did ordain, That if any Earl, Baron, or Knight-Batchellor, shou'd depart this Life, he that succeeded in his Place, of what Condition or State soever, should possels the same Stall which his Predecessor held before, without changing: So that it might happen for an Earl, or a Duke, to succeed a Knight, and, vice versa, it was thus at first constituted by Edward III. that it might be known who were the first Founders of this most Noble Order.

Now how punctually this Article of the Statutes hash been observed, that none Chosen along time after the Institution of the Order, should interrupt or change this course, we shall demonstrate, conceiving it very material to eye those Tables, yet preserved in the Chapter-House

in Windfor, wherein are collected the Names of all those Khights-Companions who succeeded one another in each

Stall, until the beginning of Henry VII's Reign.

From which Series of Succession, we shall remark how exactly the Law in this Point hath been observed, even to King Henry VIII's Reign, when it received some alteration in this Point. For we find in the Annals several Knights defigned for the Stall of their immediate Predecessors, by the Honour only of Election, although prevented of Installation by Death, or other accidents; and the Starutes do not only bind him who shall chance to attain the Honour of Installation, but him who shall succeed or come after the Defunct Knight. First therefore we stall Instance in Foreign Kings, among whom we find Ericus King of Denmark, to have received Installation in Henry V's Reign, not according to the State and Dignity of a King, but into the Stall of that Knight-Companion whom he succeeded, viz. the Duke of Bavaria. John the first King of Portugal, a Knight and Companion, likewise in Henry V's Time, was installed in the second Stall on the Sovereign's Side, which belong'd to Henry Duke of Lancaster, his first Predecessor: And to this King did succeed, in the same Stall, his Son Edward King of Portugal, Anno 13 Henry VI. to whole Successor Humphry, Anno 34, and Casimir King of Poland were elected, Anno 28 Henry VI. into the fixth Stall on the Prince's fide, at that Time vacant by the Death of the Duke Conimbero, whose first Founder was Sir John Mohun. Alphonfus King of Arragon and Naples, Anno 38 Henry VI. was elected into the Stall of Don Altro Vasques Dalmedea Count d'Averence, being the feventh on the Sovereign's fide, Sir Hugh Courtney first polsessing it. Ferdinand King of Naples and Sicily, elected Anno 3 Edward IV. was installed on the third on the Prince's fide, Ralph Earl of Stafford having been first installed therein. And lastly, we find Alphonsus King of Sicily and Jerufalem, being elected by Henry VII. received his Installation on the Prince's side, whose Predecessor was Thomas Beauchamp Earl of Warwick.

In the second Place, if we descend to Foreign Princes, it is remarkable, that William Duke of Gueldres, elected by Richard II. was installed in that which Sir John Beauchamp possessed, and William Earl of Holland, Haynale, and

and Zealand, in that which appertained to Sir John Chandos. Philip Duke of Burgundy, in the Time of Henry V. into the Stall of Sir John Clifford. And Anno 28 Henry VI. Henry Duke of Brunswick was elected into the Duke of

Suffolk's Stall.

And as the Statute was carefully observed, with reference to the Blection and Installation of Foreign Princes, so no less in relation to the Princes of the Blood at Home; among whom let us observe, in the third Place, the ranking the Sons of the Founder of this most Noble Order; where we see Lyonel Duke of Clarence his third Son, to have been installed in the fixth Stall. on the Sovereign's side, whose immediate Predecessor was Sir John Beauchamp: In like manner John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, his fourth Son was installed in the seventh Stall on the Prince's side, having Sir Thomas Holland for his Predecessor and a Founder: His fifth Son Edmund Langley, Duke of York, posses'd the Stall Sir Hugh Courtney did before: And the fixth Son, Thomas Woodstock, Duke of Gloucester, enjoy'd the Stall Sir John Grey did before: This Rule was likewise observed strictly in relation to the Sons of King Henry VII.

If we review the aforesaid Tables, we shall find, that as the Knights-Companions of higher Dignity assumed the Stalls, (when they became vacant) though often of the lower sort, so some of the inferior rank among them have had the Honour to be installed in Seats of a superior

Class, and this by the virtue and due of the Law.

Amongst these Knights-Companions we shall enumerate Sir Philip la Vache, a Gascon, who, in the Reign of King Richard II. was first installed in the Prince's Stall, (being vacant by the Death of J. bn of Gaunt.) though afterwards removed to the third Stall on the Sovereign's side. Sir Nicholas Sarnessield, Standard-bearer to the Founder, who succeeded Hugh Earl of Stafford, and after him Sir William Arundel, immediate Successor to Sir Nicholat, were both installed in the second Stall on the Sovere gn's side: As likewise Sir John Robsart, Sir Gilbert Talbot, and Sir John Grey, &c. were installed in the second or third Stalls on the Sovereign's side.

Ú 3

Thele

These Infrances already afferted, are sufficient to manifest the Ulage and Practice, how the Knights Companions have succeeded in the Stalls of their immediate Predecessors, down to the Reign of Henry VIII. and was consonant and agreeable to the ancient Law of the Order.

But we are to observe, that tho' each Knight was, by the before-mentioned Article, constituted to succeed his immediate Predecessor, in the Stall void by his Death, vet there's an exception as to that of the Prince of Wales. This Stall is the first on the left Hand, at the entrance into the Choir of St. George's Chappel at Windfor, and wherein Edward the Black Prince was installed; from this Stall does the whole range of Stalls on the same side take their Denomination, and to which the Prince of Wales. as foon as he is elected into the Order, hath a due Title. Though this Stall de Jure appertains to that Prince, yet heretofore, when the Sovereign had no Heir, then was it for the present disposed to some other Knight, otherwise a defect in the full Number of Knights-Companions would have enfued.

The first that obtained that Honour, (besides the Prince of Wales,) was John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, decreed him. by K. Richard II. who never had Issue, and removed from the seventh Stall thither. But the first Companion that happened to be installed in it, was Sir Philip la Vache just mentioned, which was a great Honour done to one of his Rank: But it fell to him by the then Law of the Order. being elected into the Room of the faid Duke, who died possessed of it. But King Henry IV. coming to the Crown, and his eldest Son being created Prince of Wales, laid claim to the Stall by Virtue of that Statute, and had it affigned to him. Nevertheless, that the former Possessor might suffer as little diminution as might be in the Honour of his Session, he was removed no lower than to the Stall which King Henry IV. lately held, when he was Earl of Derby.

Upon the Death of Henry IV. Henry V. being Sovereign, Sir John Dabrichcourt supplyed the vacancy, and was installed therein; and he dying in the fifth Year of that King possess'd thereof, his Plate continues in that Stall to this Day, and the Emperor Sigismond succeeds Sir John

Dabrichcourt in the Prince's Stall.

Some

Some few Years before King Henry VI. died, he had a Son Born; and though the Emperor Frederick was elected into the Order, Anno 35 Henry VI. yet was that Stall referved for the Prince, (though he never possess dit) and the Emperor 37 Henry VI. was installed by Proxy in the Duke of Somerset's Stall, then lately deceased.

In Edward IV's Reign, the right of this Stall returned again to Edward his Son, the Prince of Wales, and in Henry VII's, to Prince Arebur, but upon his Death, to Maximilian, Son of Frederick King of the Romans, and after Emperor, enjoyed it. So did the Emperor Charles V. (his Grandchild,) in regard there was no Son as yet Born

to the Sovereign.

But Prince Edward being Born, while the Stall was possessed by Charles V. it chanc'd likewise that the King of the Scots died, which caus'd King Henry VIII. to referve his Stall for that Prince, although he never had Possession of it, or was elected into the Order, though we find him once registred in a Scrutiny. King Henry VIII. dying, Prince Edward became, both by Inheritance and

Succession, Sovereign of this most Noble Order.

From this Time, to the eighth Year of King James I. there was no Prince of Wales, who finding the Prince's Stall vacant, at his entrance upon the English Throne, did in a Chapter in the first Year of his Reign, advance the French King Henry IV. from the second Stall on the Sovereign's fide, into it; and appointed Prince Henry to be installed in that King's void Sear, where he continued till Anno 3 Jac. I. that Christierne IV. King of Denmark, came to be installed by Proxy, and the Prince was moved lower to make way for him, though he was Senior both by Election, and Installation. Anno 9 Jac. I. upon the Death of the French King, not the Prince, whose Right it was, fince he was created Prince of Wales, but the faid King of Denmark; was translated to the vacant Stall a and hereupon Prince Henry was returned again to the fecond Stall on the Sovereign's fide, which he enjoyed as long as he furvived, and upon his Death, Prince Charles was femoved into it, and there remained all King James's Reign:

When King Charles II. came to be installed, the Sovereign finding him prevented from assuming the Prince's Stall, the King of Dénmark being yet alive, assigned to him the second Stall on the Sovereign's fide, (wherein himfelf sat whilst Prince of Wales,) and where hitherto his Plate remains as a fixed Memorial of his Installation therein.

Although it has been made apparent, that the Knights-Companions, at their Election or Installation, succeeded the immediate defunct Knight in his Stall, yet we may obferve, that sometimes after Installation, as an especial fignal of Favour and Indusgence, the Sovereign hath been pleased, though very rarely, to advance a Knight-Companion to a higher Stall than that wherein he was first placed; and though there be no such Permission granted by the Law of the Order, yet we find John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, removed from the seventh Stall on the Prince's fide, to the Prince's Stall it self, and it's said to be done by the Decree of the Sovereign and the Knights-Companions. And no doubt but as this was done by so good Authority, and so upon no less enducements to the Sovereign, and the whole Society. We shall here mention a few of these extraordinary Cases. William Henalt, Earl of Oftervant, was advanced by King Richard II. from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's side, to the Duke of Britain's, being the second on the Prince's fide. Humpbry Duke of Gloucester, in the Reign of King Henry VI. was removed from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's fide. to the second on the same side; and Richard Nevil, Earl of Warwick, by the Consent of the Knights-Companions in Chapter, Anno 39 Henry VI. was translated to the Duke of Buckingham's Stall; the Lord Bonvil, to the Lord Scales's Seat; Sir Thomas Kyriell, to the Place of the Earl of Shrewsbury; and the Lord Wenlock, to the Stall of Viscount Beaumont. But King Henry VIII thinking it requifite for the Sovereign of this most Noble Order, to be impowered by a General, how to Act that at Pleasure, which the former Sovereigns did not, but by the Power of particular Acts, or Orders, in the Chapter; after he had confirmed the ancient Law of succeeding in the Stall of the immediate Predecessor, and not to suffer an alteration without the Sovereign's Licence, in the next Article he established this Pavilege upon Himself and Successors: That if there were any Place or Stall wild, the Sovereign, at bis own Pleasure, might Advance and Translate any Knight

of the Society into the void Stall, so that it were higher

than that, wherein he sate before.

This in Effect did vacat the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls, though at the same Time he teem'd to Confirm it to the Knights-Subjects, for afterwards Translations preceeding to Installations, became so frequent, that the Right an elect Knight had to his Predecessor's Stall, was seldom enjoyed. However, hereby he confirmed a Power to gratify such of the Knights-Cimpanions, as he shou'd think fit to advance, without having recourse to a Chapter of and from hence began the Custom to Issue out Warrants, under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, for the Translation of Stalls, and consequently the alteration and removal of such of the Knights-Companions Helms, Crests, Banners, and Plates, who shou'd receive a higher Exaltation.

Besides the Power established upon the Sovereigns of this most Noble Order, of translating Stalls, when a vacancy happened, they farther added this larger Prerogative: That the Sovereign, once in his Life, might, if it pleased him, make a general Translation of all the Stalls at his Pleasure, except of Emperors, Kings, Princes, and Dukes, who shou'd keep their Stalls and Places, unless advanced to a higher Room and Stall. In which Translation, the long continuance in the Order, and the Praises, Worthiness, and Merits of the Knights-Companions, were

to be considered and remembred.

But this Branch of the Sovercign's Prerogative, as far as we can find, was never put in Execution, though the Translation, Anno 27 Henry VIII. border'd something upon it, perhaps lest it might raise too great Feuds among the Knights-Subjects; for almuch as that of translating only, (when there happened a vacancy,) begot great Emulations; which at length introduced a Change, to which we shall pass, after we have taken notice of a Clause added in the twenty second Article of King Henry VIII's Statutes, relating to Princes.

It is observable the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls, in relation to them, was wholly alrered. For King Henry VIII. upon the Estab ishment of his Body of Statutes, not only appointed those Strangers, then present of the Order, to be leated next himself; but that all Emperors, Kings, and Princes, should hold their Stalls after their Estates, and the very next unto the Sovereign, tho

Knightsp

Knights-Subjetts, upon vacancy, become removable at Pleasure.

For this reason, the Emperor Maximilian II. and after him Rudolph II. his Son, had the Prince's Stalls affigned them after their Election into the Order; and several of the Kings of France were placed in the next below, being the second on the Sovereign's side. And when there chanced to be more than one King at a time in the Order, the second Stall on the Prince's fide was affigued him; for Precedency was measured now by Dignity and Stare, and not by the Antiquity of the Order; As appears from the King of Bohemia, Anno 19 Henry VIII. and the King of Spain, Anno 8 Elizabeth, Princes Strangers, according to their regality, and illustrious extraction, had their Scituation next to Kings, as is manifest from the Dukes of Savoy, Montmorency, and Holstein, Anno 3 Elizabeth, and Frederick Prince Palatine, and Maurice Prince of

Orange, Anno 11 Jac. I.

But notwithstanding these Affignments of Stalls to Strangers, they were nevertheless subject to removal, sometimes to Stalls higher than their own, upon the Death of a Stranger, who died possessed of a superior one; and sometimes again to others lower, for the advancing a Knight of greater Degree and Distinction, where the upper Stalls were already supplied; else they could not be so ranked, according to their respective Quality, as the Statutes enjoyn; nor indeed wou'd any Stranger King have accepted of an Election, unless he was placed in a distinguishable Stall, suitable to his Dignity. Ferdinand, Emperor of Germany, is an instance of Advancement in translation of Stalls; for after the Death of the Emperor Charles V. his Brother, he was advanced from the second Stall on the Prince's fide, into the Prince's Stall. Henry IV. of France, from the second on the Sovereign's fide, to the Prince's Stall, and Christierne IV. King of Denmark, Anno 9 Jac. I.

Among Princes Strangers, we find Emanuel Duke of Savoy, advanced from the third on the Prince's fide, to the second on the same fide, Anno 2 Elizabeth; and Frederick Prince Palatine, Anno 1 Charles I. was advanced from the second of the Prince's, to the second on the side of the Sovereign; likewise Henry Frederick, Prince of Orange, was advanced from the third of the Sovereign's, to the

second!

second of the Prince's upon the Death of the King of

Sweden, Anna 10 Charles I.

When the French King Charles IX, was elected, Anno 6 Equaboth, the superior Stalls were already filled with Strangers, and there was no Expedient left to give him the S all the Sovereign design'd him, but by the removal of some of those Knights-Strangers lower; and upon this, Emanuel Dake of Sansy was displaced so the third on the Sovereign's side.

But the French King was not installed, until the 16th of January, Anno 8 Elizabeth, and before that it was concluded to remove the King of Spain to the Duke of Savoy's Stall, as void before, and to instal the French King in the King of Spain's, which was accordingly done; so that upon this occasion, there were four Strangers, and five Knights-Subjects, removed lower, to make way for the

French King.

The 20th of April, Anno 2 Jac. I. The Duke of Wirtemberg was installed in the third Stall on the Prince's fide, and the Year following advanced to a higher.

The 26th of May ensuing, Ulerick Duke Holft, had assigned unto him that Stall from which the Duke of Wirtemberg was advanced: But against the Installation of Christianne, the fourth King of Denmark, the Duke was removed back to his Seat, wherein he was installed, and the Duke advanced into the vacant one. All which will appear more conspicuous, from the appointment of Stalls on these Occasions, which follow.

A remove of Banners and Plates, at the Installation of Frederick Duke of Wirtemberg, Anno Jac. I. Reg. 2.

JAMES Rex.

- 1. The Sovereign
- 2. The Prince
- 3. Earl of Nottingham
- 4. Earl of Ormond
- 5. Earl of Shrewsbury
- 6. Barl of Northumber.
- 7. Lard Sheffeild
- 8. Earl of Devonshire

- 1. The French King
- 2. Void
- 3. Duke of Wirtemberg
- 4. Earl of Dorset
- 5. Earl of Cumberland 6. Earl of Worcester
- 7. Earl of Suffolk
- 8. Sir Henry Lea

9. Earl

(300)

9. Earl of Suffex 10. Earl of Derby

II. Duke of Lenox 12. Earl of Marr

13. Void

9. Lord Scroop

10. Lord Burleigh

11. Earl of Southamptod 12. Earl of Pembrook

13. Void

The Order of Stalls at the Feast of St. George, Anno Jac. I. Reg. 3.

JAMES Rex.

I. The Sovereign

2. The Prince

2. Duke of Wirtemberg

4. Barl of Ormond

5. Earl of Shrewsbury

6. Earl of Northumber.

7. Lord Sheffeild

8. Earl of Devonshire

9. Earl of Suffex

10. Earl of Derby 11. Duke of Lenox

12. Earl of Marr

13. Void

t. The French King

2. Void

3: Barl of Nottingham

4. Earl of Dorset

5. Earl of Cumberland

6. Earl of Worcester

7. Earl of Suffolk

8: Sir Henry Lea 9. Lord Scroop

10. Lord Burleigh

11. Earl of Southampton

12. Earl of Pembrook

13. Void

A remove of Banners and Plates, at the Installation of Christian IV King of Denmark, the 8th of September, Anno Jac. I. Reg. 3.

JAMES Rex.

1. The Sovereign

2. The King of Denmark

3. Duke of Holft

4. Earl of Nottingham

5. Barl of Dorlet

6. Earl of Cumberland

7. Earl of Worcester

8. Earl of Suffolk

9. Sir Henry Lea

1. The French King

2. The Prince

3. Duke of Wirtemberg

4. Earl of Ormond

5. Earl of Shrewsbury

6. Earl of Northumber.

7. Lord Sheffeild

8. Earl of Devonshire

9. Earl of Suffex

10. Lard

10. Lord Scroop
11. Earl of Exeter
12. Earl of Southampton
12. Earl of Marr

13. Earl of Pembrook 13. Earl of Northampton

In this last Scheme, we find Prince Henry removed from the second on the Sovereign's, to the second on the Prince's side, to make room for the King of Denmark. And tho's the Duke Chevereux, Anno 3 Charles I. was advanced from the third Stall on the Sovereign's side, to the second on the Prince's side, that became vacant by the Death of the Duke of Brunswick; yet the Year after, upon the admission of Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, he was removed two Stalls lower, and the Prince Elector Palatine one.

We pass on now from the removal and translation of a Knight-Subject, after he had been installed, to the affigument of his Stall, at the Time of the Installation it self; where it is worthy of Remark, That on the 24th of April, Anno 6 Elizabeth, in lieu of the ancient Law, which appointed each elect Knight to succeed in the Stall of his Predecessor, a new one was introduced, being composed, as was conceived, upon a more just level than the former, and as far as was possible, to extinguish all danger that might arise from Emulation. The Words are: That all Knights, who for the suture were admitted into the Society of the Order, should take and be installed in the lowest Stall, according to the Course and Seniority of their Election, except only Stranger Kings and Princes.

Upon which it chanced, that when a Knight-Subjest elect was to be installed, all the Knights-Companions, between him and the vacant Stall, were removed higher, that the space might be supplied: And if two or more were to be installed together, they possessed the lowest Stalls, according to the Seniority of their Election. And though the manner and order in removals, is become a thing of course, and rendered familiar and easy; yet it cannot be effected, or the Atchievements, Banners, or Plates, displaced, unless by a Warrant issued from the Sovereign, to justify the Garter for such his removals; which will plainly appear by the insertion of these Schemes.

The

The Order of Stalls, as they stood at the Feast of St. George, Anno 29 Eliz.

ELIZABETH Rogina

- 1. The Sovereign
- 2. The French King
 - 3. The King of Denmark
 - 4. Duke John Casimire
 - 5. Viscount Mountague
 - 6. Earl of Shrewsbury
 - 7. Lord Hunsdon
 - 8. Void
 - 9. Earl of Huntington
 - 10. Lord Grey
 - 11. Earl of Pembrook
 - 12. Void
 - 13. Lord Scroop

- 1. Void
- 2. The King of Spain
- 3. Void
- 4. Void 5. Earl of Leicester
- 6. Earl of Warwick
- 7. Void
- 8. Earl of Worcester
- 9. Lord Burleigh. 10. Earl of Derby
 - 11. Ld. How. of Effingh.
- 12. Lord Cobham
- 13. Void

A Translation of Stalls made against the Feast of Installation, Anno 30 Eliz.

ELIZABETH Regina.

- 1. The Sovereign
- 2. The French King
- 3. The King of Denmark
- 4. Duke John Casimire
- 5. Viscount Mountague
- 6. Earl of Shrewsbury
- 7. Lord Hunsdon
- 8. Earl of Huntington
- 9. Lord Grey
 10. Earl of Pembrook
 11. Lord Cobham
- 12. Earl of Effex
- 13. Sir Christop. Hatton

- 1. Void
- 2. The King of Spain
- 3. Void
- 4. Void
- 5. Earl of Leicester
- 6. Earl of Warwick
- 7. Earl of Worcester
- 8. Lord Burleigh
- 9. Earl of Derby 10. Ld. How. of Effingh.
- 11. Lord Scroop
- . 12. Earl of Ormond
 - 13. Void

The first of these Schemes plainly evince, how the Stalls were ranked on St. George's-Eve, Anno 29 Elizabeth, and the other how modelled against the Installation of the Earls of Effex and Ormond, and that of Sir Christopher

Haston, the 23d of May, Anno 30 Elizabeth, which demonstrates those three elect Knights appear to be infalled in the lowermost Stalls, (as the last mentioned Decree enjoyes,) and by reason the Earl of Esex, and Sir Christopher Haston, were settled on the Sovereign's side, the vacancy in the eighth and twelsth Stalls of the same side became filled up; the Earl of Huntington being advanced into the eighth, the Lord Grev in the ninth, and the Earl of Pembrook in the tenth Stall, by the advance of the Earl of Worcester into the seventh on the Prince's side, the vacancy is there supplyed, and the other Knights seated below him, by a like removal, less the twelsth Stall for the Earl of Ormand, and the thirteenth woid.

The same Order was observed by King James, as appears by another Scheme of the Stalls settled on the 3d of July, Anno 1 Jac. I. at the Election of the Duke of Lenax, the Earls of Northampton, Marr, and Pembrook.

Stalls altered at a Chapter held at Windsor, the 3 July, Anno 1 Jac. I.

JAMES Rex.

- 1. The Sovereign
- 2. The Prince
- 3. Earl of Nottingham
- 4. Earl of Ormond
- 5. Earl of Salop
- 6. Earl of Northumberl. 7. Lord Sheffeild
- 8. Lord Hunsdon
- 9. Sir Henry Lea
- 10. Lord Cobham
- II. Earl of Derby
- 12. Duke of Lenox
- 13. Earl of Mare

- 1. The French King
- 2. Void
- 3. Void
- 4. Lord Buckhurst
- 5. Earl of Cumberland
- 6. Earl of Worcester 7. Ld. How. of Walden
- 8. Lord Montjoy
- 9. Earl of Suffex
- 10. Lord Scroop
- 11. Lord Burleigh
- 12. Earl of Southampton
- 13. Earl of Pembrook

From hence it is evident, that these elect Knights were installed in the lowest Stalls, and so continued throughout the series of his Reign, and since, except the Prince of Wales, and Charles Duke of Tork, Sons to the said Sovereign: For the Prince was installed on the second on the Sovereign's

Sovereign's fide, and upon that Election of the Duke of Tork, Anno Jac. I. the second Stall on the Prince's fide was affigned him, and the Morrow after St. George's Day, upon which he was elected, he made a folemn Progression to the Chapel, in order to take Possession of it. Upon Whitfunday following, at a serious Debate, it was determined in Chapter, that notwithstanding he was the Sovereign's Son, yet he shou'd have no more Preheminence than other Knights-Companions, and that his Atchievel ments, which had been set up over the second Stall on the Prince's fide, shou'd be removed to that Stall next above the Viscount Rochester's, and to be conserted with the Earl of Montgomery; before whom he had the Preference, on Whitsun-Munday, as they proceeded to the Chapter-House, in order to their Installation. And where it was farther Decreed, That all Princes not Absolute, shou'd Be installed thenceforth in the Prince's Place. But after this had passed. Endeavours were used to advance the Duke into the Stall he was first appointed to, and the Kings of Arms were consulted upon this Point; who certified, that Richard Duke of York, second Son to King Edward IV. was installed in the fourth Stall on the Prince's fide, and had Precedence of the Duke of Suffelk, and the Barls of Donglass and Esfex, who were elected long before him: That Henry Duke of York, second Son to King Henry VII. was installed in the third Stall on the Sovereign's side. and had the Preference of the Duke of Buckingham, and the Barls of Oxford and Derby, his Seniors; and in the last Place, that Henry Fiez Roy, Duke of Richmond, base Son of King Henry VIII. had Place and Precedence before the Dukes of Norfolk and Suffolk, and other Knights-Companions. Upon which Grounds it was thought requifite, that the Issue of the Sovereign should enjoy the same Privileges in this Affair, as those Princes that were Strangers; and therefore at another Chapter affembled at White-Hall, on Easter-Monday, being the 13th of April. Anno 10 Fac. I. the Order which passed the Year before, for making the Duke a Puisne, was abrogated, and he was translated to the second Stall on the Prince's side, and paired with Prince Henry, as may be seen by the Stalls then settled, and entered into the Blue Book of the Order.

We need not bring any more corroborating Circumfrances of the Observation of the Chapter Act, made Anno 6 Elizabeth, as it relates to Knights-Subjects, which has been punctually performed; but since Strangers are therein excepted, it will not be amiss to note, that the Rule and Practice continued as was established by King Henry VIII. viz. that they were installed in Seats next to the Sovereign, according to the illustriousness of their Dignity and Birth.

We shall mention one Instance, of the manner of placing both Strangers and Knights-Subjects at one and the same Time. At the first coming of King Charles I. to the Crown; there were of both Conditions to be installed in one Day, to wir, the Duke of Brunswick a Stranger Prince, the Earls of Salisbury and Carlifle, Knights-Subjects, elected by King James I. in the 22d Year of his Reign, and on the 15th of May following, the Earls of Dorfet and Holland were elected with the Viscount Andover, and the Dake of Chevereux the 4th of July after. And when the removal of Stalls was propounded for the Admission of these seven elect Knights, it was agreed too, that the Dukes of Brunswick and Chevereux shou'd be installed in the uppermoft Stall among Strangers, as King Henry VIII. had before ordained, but the Knights-Subjetts in the lowermost Scalls, according to the pristine Practice, as appears from the Decree, Anno 6 Blizabeth, and from the settlement of Stalls then made, and thus intituled.

A remove of Banners and Stalls, at the Feast of St. George, and Installation holden at Windsor, the 13, 14, 15 Days of December, Anno 1625. At which time were installed the Dukes of Brunswick, and Chevereux, the Earls of Salisbury, Carlisle, Holland, Dorset, and the Viscount Andover, as follows.

CHARLES Rex.

- 1. The Sovereign
- 2. The Prince Palatine
- 3. Duke Chevereux
- 4. Earl of Worcester
- 5. Earl of Suffolk
- 1. The King of Denmark
- 2. The Duke of Brunswick
- 3. Earl of Northumberl.
- 4. Lord Sheffeild
- 5. Earl of Suffex

6. Earl of Darby

7. Earl of Pembrook 8. Earl of Arundel

9. Earl of Kelly

10. Earl of Runland

11. Earl of Leicester 12. Earl of Carlifle

12. Earl of Holland

6. Earl of Mare

7. Earl of Montgomery 8. Earl of Somerfer

9. Viscount Wallingford

10. Duke of Buckingham 11. Earl of Salisbury

12. Earl of Dorset

13. Viscount Andover

After the Restauration of King Charles II. to his Crown and Kingdoms, when several Knights-Companions, both Strangers and Subjects, were to be installed, a Debate arose in the Chapter held at White-Hall, the 10th of April, Anno 13 Car. II. about placing their Atchievements over their Stalls; upon which the following Order was iffued our.

CHARLES Rex.

. Whereas divers elect Knights and Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter are, by our special Appointment, to be installed in the Chapel of our Castle of Windsor, upon the 15th Day of this Instant; and that some of them who are Strangers, do not as yet, nor are likely to appear, either in their own Persons, or by their fufficient Proxics at the said Instalment, and so might run the hazard to lose the Benefit and Advantage of their Pre election, in Point of Rank and Precedency, in respect of some of our Subject-Knights, who, though since elected, will be first installed, without some Expedient taken therein to prevent it. There being no reason, (nor is it our intention) that those noble Persons should suffer that prejudice, for want of that usual formality, and for which they are not in the fault, but others, who, according to the Statutes and uncient Custom, were to give timely Advertisement to the said Foreign etelled Knights, und to Summon them by themselves or Prexits, to assist as the said Instalment: Our Will and Pleasure is, you proaced forthwith to the placing of the Harchments of all the respective Knights and Companions of our Said Order, whether installed or elect, Subject or Stranger, over the Stall which we do in manner as followeth assign, and appoint them in our aforesaid Chappel.

1. The Sovereign

2. The Duke of York

3. Prince Elector of Brand.

4. Prince Rupert

5. Earl of Salisbury

6. Earl of Northumberl.

7. Duke of Ormand

8. Earl of Southampton

9. Earl of Bristol

10. Coune Marshin

11. Earl of Sandwich 12. Duke of Richmond

13. Earl of Manchester

1. Void

1. The Elector Palatine

3. Prince of Orange

4. Prince Edward

5. Emil of Barkshire . . . 6. Duke of Espernon

7. Duke of Buckingham

8. Marquiss of Newcastle

9. Prince Tarente

10. Duke of Albermarle

11. Earl of Oxford

12. Earl of Lindsey

13. Earl of Strafford

And for so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant. any Statute, or Custom, to the contrary netwithstanding: Given under the Signet of our Said Order, at our Court at White-Hall, the 1cth of April, 1666.

To our Trusty and Well-beloved Servant, Sir Edward By the Sovereign's Command Walker, Kt. Garter, and Principal King of Arms, of our most Noble Order of the Garter.

Hen. de Vic.

By which we find the Stranger Princes are placed in the upper Stall, nearest the Sovereign, according to their Dignities and Degrees, and all the Knights-Subjects as to the Time of their Elections. It is to be observed upon this Settlement, that though the Barl of Southampton did not receive his Garter and George, till the Sovereign, upon his happy arrival in England, conferred it upon him with his own Hand; yet, according to the Time of the Election, Place and Precedency were allowed him; which was in January, An. Dom. 1649. in the Isle of Ferfer, fome few Days before Duke Hamilton and the Marquils of Nameafile were elected.

It was ordered by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, convened in Chapter on the 10th of January, Anno 14 Car. II. That thenceforward all Princes Strangers, of what Condition soever, should have Precedence among themselves, according to the Seniority of their Elections and Х 2 InInstallations. Upon which the Sovereign, under the Signet of the Order, authorized the Garter, upon the 30th of March, to let up their Atchievements in St. George's Chapel, in the Order here exhibited,

CHARLES Rex.

- I. The Sovereign
- 2. Duke of York
- 3. Prince Rupert
 - 4. Elector of Brandenbur.
 - 5. Earl of Salisbury
 6. Earl of Northumberl.

 - 7. Duke of Buckingham 8. Marquifs of Newcastle
 - 9. Prince Tarente
 - 10. Duke of Albermarle
 - 11. Earl of Oxford
 - 12. Earl of Lindsey
 - 12. Earl of Strafford

- 1. Void
- 2. Prince Elector Palatine
- 3. Prince of Orange
- 4. Prince of Denmark
- 5. Earl of Barkshire
- 6. Duke of Ormond
- 7. Earl of Southampton
- 8. Earl of Briftol
- 9. Count Marthin
- 10. Earl of Sandwich
- 11. Duke of Richmond
- 12. Earl of Manchester
- 13. Duke of Monmouth

But upon mature Confideration of a Law made by Henry VIII. for placing of Strangers, and for another founded by Queen Elizabeth for Knights-Subjects; the Sovereign, by the consent of the most Noble Companions present, at a Chapter held the 19th of Nevember, 1699. was pleased to Ordain, first, That the Prince of Wales, and fuch Emperors and Kings that should be of the Order, shou'd be placed in the nearest Stalls to that of the Sonereign, according to their Elections and Installations.

Then, That all other Souereign Princes, and Princes of she Blood, shou'd be placed in their Stalls next unto the King's, according to the Seniority, in the Order. And thirdly, That all other his Majesty's Subjects and Strangers, not of the Dignity above-mention'd, should be installed in che lowest Stalls, according to their Antiquity in the Order,

and the ancient Practice.

. And whereas the Stall termed the Prince's had been long vacant, the Sovereign King Charles II. by the advice of the most Noble Companions, at the same Chapter, was pleased to order, That the present King of Sweden Shou'd. by his Proxy, be placed in that Stall, and his Atchievements bung up thereon accordingly, in convenient Time. Which order

beder was Arichly put in Execution, and the Stalls at the Feast of St. George, Anno 23 Car. II. were thus ranged.

CHARLES Rex.

- 1. The Sovereign
- 2. King of Denmark
- 3. Prince Elector Palatine
- 4. Prince of Orange
- 5. Pr. Elector of Saxony
 6. Duke of Buckingham
 7. Earl of Briftol
- 8. Count Marshin
- : 9. Earl of Oxford
 - 10. Earl of Strafford
 - 11. Duke of Albermarle
 - 12. Void
 - 13. Void

- i. The King of Sweden
- 2. The Duke of York 2. Prince Rupert
- 4. Eletter of Brandenbur.
- 5. Duke of Ormond
 6. Duke of Newcastle
 7. Prince Tarante
- 8. Bark of Sandwich

 9. Duke of Richmond
- 10. Duke of Monmouth
- II. Void
- 12. Void
- 12. Void
- \$ 7. Having dispatch'd the antient Law of Succession into void Stalls, and of Translation from one to another a we come now to consider what is farther to be prepared for the Knight elect, against the Day of the great Solemnity, at his own Expence; the chief of which are:
- r. A Mantle or upper Robe, with its Appurtenance.
 - 2. A Collar of the Garter and Great George.
 - 3. A Cap of black Velver, adorned with Plumes.
- 4. A Helmet, Creft, Mantlings, and Sword.
 - 3. A Banner of his Arms.
 - 3. A Plate of his Arms and Stile.
 - 7: A Cushion, to carry his Robes and Collar uponi
- 8. Lodging Escurcheons.

Though the Kirtle on the Surcoat was anciently given by the King to the Knights-Subjects, yet we do not find the Mantle of the Order was, nor indeed of a later Date, tinless now and then, as a distinguishing mark of Favour, But the Sovereign always bestows the Mantle upon Strangers, as well as the whole Habis, when he has elected them into the Society of the Order. And tipon fending of the whole Habit over by Gafter to the King of Par-X 4 tueale rugel, Anno 13 Hen: VI the Mantle, Surcoat, and Hood, avere accompted for in the Great Wardrobe, and is to this

Day practifed.

However of late the Sovereign hath been pleased, now and then, to confer the Mantle upon a Knight-Subject. Wittels King James I. Anno 21. did to James Marquis of Hamilton; and King Charles I. Anno 4. to Theophilus, Earl of Suffolk, and the Year ensuing to William, Earl of Northampton: And Anno 14. Sir James Palmer, by his Sovereign's Direction, paid for the Velvet and Taffety of the Earl of Kelly's Mantle and Surcoat, to Sir Peter Richaut, and put it upon the Account of the extraordinary Expence of the Order.

King Charles II. 23 a fignal Mark of his Favour, caused seventeen Martles (with the usual Liveries of Surcoat and Hood.) to be made ready against the grand Feast of St. George, Anno 13. which he confered not only among the new elect Knights, but upon the Earls of Salisbury, Burkshire, and Northumberland, that were three Senior Knights-

Companions.

The Collar of the Order, and the great George, the elect Knight is to provide himself, unless where the Sovereign is pleased to bestow the Mantle, which is always accompanied with the Collar, and then a like Warrant issues to the Master of the Fewel-House, as was used for providing the seventeen Collars, Anno 13 Car. II.

The black Velver Cap before-mentioned and described, with the Helm, Crest, and Mantlings, together with a Sword and Girdle, are to be got in readiness by the care and direction of the Garter, but at the Expence of the Knights elect; all which are to be set over his Stall, as

foon as his Installation Fees are paid.

This Honour, that every Knight-Companion shall have his Helm, Crest, and Sword, assisted over his Stall at the Chappel of St. George, is particularly provided for in all the several Bodies of Statutes; and are ordained to remain there during the Lives of the Possessian in Memory of bim that bears them, and a Testimony of the Defence of the Church, as the Oaths of Military Orders require.

The Helms upon this Occasion are composed of Sweet, and of a more than ordinary proportion; those for Sovereign Princes are framed open, with large Barrs; but those for the Knights-Subjects are made close. About King

Henry

Henry VIII's Reign, the Knights-Subjects Helms were parcel gilt with fine Gold in Oil, wrought with curious Works, and burnished with fine Gold. But in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, and fince that Time, it hath been the Custom to gild their Helms all over, and place the Arms of St. George in the Middle before the Vizors.

The Mantlings that hang down on either fide of the Helm, together with the Wreath, are in some places called Appendixes, and are all of Tissue, or Cloth of Gold, and formerly lined with Sarcenet; but in the Reign of Queen Mary they were exchanged for white Satin, for so were the Mantlings of Anthony Brown, Viscount Montague, and William Howard, Lord Admiral, lined.

At the bottom of these Mantlings hang a pair of gilt Knobs burnished with Gold, from which spring out Tofsels either of Gold or Silver, (consentaneous to the Metal in the Knights Court of Armour) mixed with Silk of the

chief Colour in his Arms.

Upon the Helm and Mantlings, is placed a Wreath of corded Silk, of the Knight's Colours, which was formerly

of Sarcener, but now of Taffety.

The Creft of the Knight is placed either upon these Wreaths, or Issuant out of a Crown, or Ducal Cap, turned with Ermin; and of what kind soever the Crest is, the same is neatly carved in Wood, and either gilt, or wrought in; Directly before the Helm, an armed Sword hangs down, the Pomel, Cross, and Chape are gilt; the Scabbard is made of the same Tissue or Cloth of Gold as the Mantlings are, as is the Girdle that belongs to it; but the Buckles and Pendants are of Copper Gilt.

The Custom of setting up the Helm, Creft, and Sword, over the Stall of the Knights, is as ancient as the Institution of the Order; but when the Banners were first hung up, we have not so clear a Conviction; for neither the Statutes of Institution, nor those of Henry V. make men-

tion of them.

The first time they occur to us, we find to be in Anno 2 Hen. VI. in the black Book of the Order, where the Banners of the King of Portugal is particularly spoke of, among the Archievements then set over the Stall: But they are more particularly mentioned in the Body of King Henry VIII's Statutes.

X 4 The

Digitized by Google

The Fastion of the Sovereign's and all the Knights-Companions Banners are square; yet it does no where appear what the exact Standard was; yet we find them in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth to be two Yards and a Quarter Long, and a Yard and three Quarters Broad, besides the Fringe, which is compoled of Gold, or Silver and Silk, of the Colours in the Wreath; and on them are wrought, upon Tassery-Sarcenet, double Sarcenet, or rich Tassery, with fine Gold Colours on both sides, the Paternal Coat of the Knights-Companion, together with his Quartering, or so many of them as he pleases to use, and the Garter is to take care they be warrantably Marshalled.

And because a single Coat was not conceived to stand fair enough in a Banner of this proportion, the Sovereign hath been pleased to grant a new Coat, to bear in Quarters his Paternal one, if he wanted it; as King James I. did to Robert Carr, Viscount Rochester; to whose Paternal Coat he first added a Lion Passant, Gardant Or, in the dexter Part, as an especial Gift of his Favour, and then invented a new Coat, to be born in Quarter therewith, viz. Quarterly Or and Gules, a Lyon Rampant

Sable over all, June 8. Anno 9 Jac. I.

These Banners of Arms are fixed to the End of long Staves, painted in Oil, formerly of the Colour of the Wreaths, but now Red; their Ends are put into Sockets of Iron, well fixed in the Wall, directly over the Knights-Companions Helms and Crests, and frequently lined with

Fustian to preserve them.

There is moreover to be provided a Copper Plate Gilt, whereupon are engraved, the Escutcheon of the Knights elect Arms in Colours Enamilled, with his Quartering, Helm, Crest, and Supporters, and underneath, his Style and Titles of Honour, encircled with a Garter. Which Plate the Garter usually takes Care to provide, and is to be fixed on the back of the Knights Stall, assigned for his Installation.

A Velvet Cushion is likewise to be provided, to carry the Knight's elect Mantle, Collar, Hood, and Book of Statutes, before him, in the Progress into the Choire, in order to his Installation. At the Installation of the Lord Treasurer Weston, and the Earls of Exeter and Lindsey, who were installed, Anno 6 Car. I. the materials and garanshing of these Cushions are recited severally, to contain

one Yard and a Half of Crimson Velvet, one Ell of rich Taffety for their Lining, four Yards of Fringe, and

four great Tossels.

Laftly, There have frequently been made ready a convenient Number of Lodging Escutcheous of the eleck Knights Arms, invironed with a Garter, and his Stile and Titles placed underneath; it having been an ancient Crastiom, for the Knights to distribute these Escutcheous at the Inns; in their Passage to, and at Windsor, as a Memorial of their Installation.

What falls under the Care of the Garter to prepare and make ready, the Expence sometimes has been cast up, and the Account stated and defraid before-hand; by which means, he was in a better capacity to surnish out the Ceremony, for so did the Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumber-

land, Anno 34 Eliz.

Besides these mentioned to be prepared and provided either by the Chancellor of the Order, or the Gartes, the Knight elect must take care of other Assars more particularly relating to himself and his retinue; such as are Apparel, the Number of his Attendants and Servants, with their Cloaths and Liveries, his Coach and Saddle Horses, both for himself and them, with other material Circumstances, to set off his Cavalcade and Proceeding with greater Pomp and Gallantry. The Provisions for Dyet at Windsor (if the Feast be kept at the elect Knight's Charge and Expence,) are to be considered of, and very often some Clark of the Sovereign's Kitchin is to be consulted, in the management of that Assarc.

The Hallor Room where the grand Dinner is to be kept, as well as the Chapter-House and Chappel, ought chiefly to be decked and adorned with rich and sumptuous Furniture, against this Solemnity, over and above what is commonly used. The Hall or Dining-Room is to be set off with rich Hangings; and if the Sovereign or his Lieutenant hold the Feast, there must be placed a Cloth of State at the upper Bnd of it. The Chapter-House is also to be hung, and a rich Carpet spread upon the Table, set about with Velvet Chairs and Cushions; and because in the late Times of Rebellion and Plunder, this Place was not exempt, and nothing was found there upon the Restauration; King Charles II. in a Chapter convened the 1st of January, Anno 14th of his Reign, caused Directions

to be given to the Mafter of the Wardrobe, to provide Velvet for Chairs, to furnish the Chapter-House, and Cushions to be used in the Choir of St. George's Chappel, which accordingly were prepared against the following Feast.

Against the Installation of Philip, King of Castile and Leon, Anno 22 Henry VII. The Table in the Chapter-House was covered with Cloth of Gold, and the Forms with Baudkin; before the Sovereign was laid a Cushion of Cloth of Gold, whereupon a Crucifix lay, and the Evangelist turned open to a place of the Cannon, with several Tapers burning on either Side. At the upper End of the Table, towards the Right Hand, was set a Chair for the Sovereign, under a golden Canopy, with Cushions of Cloth of Gold, and on the Lest Hand a Stool with like Embellishments, for the King of Cassile.

In St. George's Chappel, the High Altar is to be richly adorned with Plate, the Sovereign's Stall with a Canopy, and other usual Ornaments, and the Stalls of the Knights-Companions present at the Ceremony, with Velvet Cushicus. As to the Furnishing of other Places in the Castle of Windsor, on so solemn an Occasion, we shall relate the Account of the Ceremony of the Initaliation of the King of Leon and Castile, just now mentioned. The Words are

thele:

To wit of the gret rich Cobbotd, which was all guilt Plate, or of the gret Hall, which was all guilt Plate, or of the gret and rich Beds of Effate, hangings of rich Cloth of Gold, or of the rich and fumptuous Clothes of Artas, with divers Clothes of Effate, both in the king's Loggings, and in the king of Caftile's Loggings, so many Chambers, haulls, Chappels, Clotettes, Galleries, with odir Loggings, so richly and very well appointed, with divers odir things, that I suffice or cannot differn, and as I suppose sew or none that there were, that ever saw Castell or our Loggings, in all things so well and richly appointed, and the great

(315)

great continual fare, open bouhold, so many Roble wen foo well apparefiled and with soo hort Clarnying, heretotoze, as I think hath not been seen.

C A P. XII.

The Personal Installation of a Knight-Subject.

London to their Installation at Windfor, in the nature of a Solemn and stately Cavalcade, which was performed on Horse-back, with the greatest Grandeur, and exceeding Pomp, whether we refer to the great Number of their Honourable Friends, who, on gallant Coursers, rode along with them; or the multimade of their own Attendants well mounted, the magnificence of whose Apparel, Jewels, Gold Chains, rich Embroideries, and Plumes of Feathers, of their Lord's Colours, struck Amazement, and even dazled the Eyes of the Spectators.

Equivalent to this Pompous Show was the Feaft, which contained in it all manner of Stateliness and Plenty, as well of Provision, as other Incidents that might increase its Glory, in which the elect Knights, who kept it at their own Expence, strove not only to out-vie their Predecessor, but to Excel one another; That all Embassadors and Strangers esteemed it one of the goodliest and noblest Sights, that was to be exhibited in Christendom.

But to make the splendor of the Cavalcade no less conspicuous to the City of London, than to the Town and Castle of Windlor, the Knights elect have taken up their Lodgings, sometimes in the Strand, sometimes in Salisbury-Court, in Holborn, or within the City; and for intent they chose to pass through some Eminent Streets, that the People might the better Survey them, and receive the greater

greater Satisfaction. To illustrare which Matter, we shall

descend to some Particulars.

Anno 34 Eliz. Gilbert, Earl of Shrewsbury, in order to his Cavalcade, was lodged in Mr. Gresham's House, (now known by the Name of Gresham-College,) whence he Rode through the City, accompanied with many of his Honourable Friends, and a numerous and gallant Train-of Attendants and Servants, to Charing-Cross, where he met George, Earl of Cumberland, (his Companion elect) and thence both Rode together towards Windsor; within a Mile or two of which. Place, Garter King of Arms met them, and Marshalled their Attendants in Order; and then the elect Knights proceeded with their gallant Train through the Town into the Castle in this Order.

I. Trumpets, two and two.

2. Gentlemen in Blue Coats and Gold Chains.

3. Gentlemen of Note.

4. Garter.

5. Gentlemen Ushers.
6. The two elect Knights, Earl of Ormend, and Baron of Effingbam; with their Footmen about them.

7. Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen of Quality.

8. All their Servants in the Rear.

Custom and Peace contributed to make the Cavalcades more glorious, during the Reigns of Queen Elizabeth, and King James I. and especially that of Robert, Earl of Salisbury, and Thomas, Viscount Bindon, May 21st, Aune A Fac. I. who arrived at Windfor honourably accompanied, with a great appearance of Nobility, Knights, and

Gentlemen of Figure.

But the Fate of this Solemnity, much like that glorious Body of the Sun, (whose Lustre at such times it strove to outshine) had now and then its interpositions, and intermitting Clouds, at other times long Nights, and the Splender and Glory thereof but struck the Sight now and then; when the Pleasure of the Sovereign grew anspicious, or the Honour of the Order became fixed upon more generous Spirite. But to speak impartially, there may grow an Excels in such Solemnities, even to Shame and Surfeit; and the best Cure to prescribe for it, is a long Abstinence. Nor was this Festival at all Times free trent

from this Distemper, but then a quick Application of the Sovereign's soon rectified it by taking away the Cause,

and prohibiting Excels in their Attendants.

For this reason it was that King James I. observing those Excesses the elect Knights run into upon this Occasion, and willing to cheque the growing Inconveniences, at the Installation, of Francis, Earl of Rutland, Sit George Villars, Kt. (afterwards Duke of Buckingbam) and the Viscount Liste, Anno 14 of his Reign, forbid Livery Coats, for swing Charge, and avoiding Emulation; and shortly after, in a Chapter at White-Hall, Anno 16, with the Consent of the Knights-Companions then assembled, to put some restraint upon the Number of Attendants, decreed, That every of the Knights-Companions should have sifty Persons to attend him unto the Annual Solemnicles of the Order, and no more.

In the Installation of William, Earl of Northampian, Anno 5 Car. I. we find this stinted Number encreased to fourscore, who began his Cavalcade to Windsor, stone Salisbury House in the Strand, and certainly would have exhibited a more glorious Show, had not a continual Rain for three Days space impeded him. Nevertheless, that what he designed with so much Splendor and Gallantry might out-live the accident of foul Weather, the Order

of it shall be inserted here.

The Order of riding to the Installation of William, Earl of Northampton, 20th of April, 1629.

 Trumpets, whose Banners were of Damask, and had the Barls Arms, with his Creft and Supporters environed with a Garrer.

2. The meanest of his Servants; as Grooms and Yeo-

men, in Blue Coats, two and two.

3. His Lordship's other Servants, in Blue Coars; as Gentlemen, Esquires, and Knights, two and two.

4. Two Secretaries; Mr. Relph Goodwin, and Mr. Francis Meroffe.

5. Steward, Mr. Cuthbert Ogle.

6. Comptroller, Mr. William Goodwyn.

. 7. Two Pages.

8. His spare Horse, led by the Gendeman of his Horse.
9. His

9. His Chaplain to distribute his Alars.

10. Pursinvants at Arms, two and two.

11. Gentleman Usher, Mr. Walter Thomas, Barcheaded.

12. The Senior Herald covered.

13. The Earls of Berkshire, Northampton, and Salisbury.

14. Noblemen in their Places, two and two.

19. Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemen, which accompanied him.

16. The Commissioners Servants.

17. Other Noblemens, Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemens Servants.

Henry Earl of Danby, and William Earl of Morten, being to receive the Honour of Installation, Anno 10 Car. I. disposed themselves for their more commodious Passage, and the Peoples View; one was at Warwick House in Holbourn, and the other at Dorset House in Salisbury-court, and made their Progression severally through the Streets to Hyde-Park, each having two Noblemen to support him, with their Footmen in rich Coats on either fide them.

Their Gemlemen Ushers rode Bareheaded, and before them the Officers of Arms wearing their Coats, and their Servants in blue Coats and Cognizances, (as was the ancient Mode,) were all led on by Trumpers. The rest of the Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen followed after each Knight's elect Troop, according to their Rank and Quality foremost. The Proceeding of the Barl of Morrow, was Marshalled in this manner.

1. Trumpers, two and two.

2. Grooms in Coats, two and two.

3. Yeomen, two and two.

4. Gentlemen, two and two.

5. Secretaries.

6. Stewards.

7. Gentleman of the Horse.

8. Pages.

9. Four Officers of Arms.

10. Gentleman Usher bare.

11. Lancaster Herald covered:

12. Earl Morton, supported between two chief Lords:

13. Foot-men on each fide, in rich Coars.

14. Noblemen and Gentlemen, according to their Degrees. At

At Slough, (two Miles on this side Windfor,) they all made a stand, and being again placed in Order, they proceeded to Windfor Castle, where, alighting in the lower Court, the Knights elect were conducted to their several

Apartments.

The last Cavalcade this Age has beheld, was exhibited by Algernoon, Earl of Northumberland, May 13. Anno 11 Car. I. from Dorfet House in Salisbury-court, toward Windsor; nor was it the least in Pomp and Glory: Eight and forty Gentlemen preceded, then came the Pages, being Earls Sons, viz.

1. Mr. William Herbert, Mr. John Herbert, Mr. Philip Cecil, Mr. Algernoon Sidney.

2. Heralds at Arms, two and two.

3. Mr. Blundeville, Gentleman Usher, Bareheaded.

4. Norroy King of Arms. 5. Marquis of Winchester.

6. The Earls of Northumberland and Kent.

And somewhat behind him, the rest of the Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen in order; they had Priority according to their Quality, Riding two and two, and the

Coaches closing up the Troop.

There was a publick Cavalcade defigned from Somerset House in the Strand, to Windsor Cassle, when King Charles II. was to have been installed, which though it proved Abortive, yet ought not to be omitted, by reason of the Chancellor's Letter to each Knight-Companion, to make Preparation to attend him thither.

May it please your Lordship,

"HE King's Majesty, Sovereign of this most Noble

"Order of the Garter, having determined to Create

"the Prince his Eldest Son Knight, and to propose him

"in Election, to be a Companion of his Order; for the

"better Conveniency of his Installation, hath prorogued,

"by a Commission under the Seal of his Order, given

"the 25th of February, now remaining in my Custody,

"the Celebration of the Feast of St. George, from the 22,

"23, and 24 of April next, whereon it should have been

"Solemnized, unto the 21, 22, and 23 of May, immediately ensuing; and thereby given Command to all

"the

the Knights-Companions, and Officers of this Order, that they should attend his Royal Person, at his Palace of White-Hall, upon those Days appointed. In discharge of the Duty of my Place, and by special Order, I do signify unto your Lordship his Majesty's Will, and that it is his Pleasure, for the more Honour of the Prince, and the Noble Feast of his Election and Installation, that your Lordship shou'd be attended with your Servants and Retinue, according to solemn Custom, and be prepared to Accompany his Higness, from Somerses House in the Strand, unto the Castle of Windsor, upon the 18th of that Month, and affist at the Ceremony and Feast of his Installation, upon the Day sollowing: Praying your Lordship that you would be pleased to take knowlege hereby, both of the Time and Place designed, and of the Sovereign's Order, I humbly rest,

St. Martin's-lane, Feb. 27. 1637.

In all due Obedience,

and Observance,

Thomas Rowe.

When this Letter was iffued out, the Sovereign intended to create the Prince Knight of the Bath, which Ceremonies were intended to begin at the old Palace-yard in Westminster, upon the 21st Day of May, Anno 13 Car I. and to Solemnize the Feast of St. George, upon the 23d of the same Month at White-Hall, and to take the Scrutiny that Evening for his Election into this Order: The next Day was designed to invest him with the Garter and George, and the Day after to set forward the Cavalcade towards Windsor, wherein also the Knights of the Bath, (intended to be created with the Prince,) were to Ride with their Robes. But this Resolution being altered, stop'd the Progression of the Cavalcade, and in the room of a Knight of the Bath, he was created a Knight-Batchellor at Windsor.

Formerly it was the manner for the Sovereign's Lieutenant to Ride to Windfor, attended with a gallant and glittering Train, and no small Number of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen richly attired, and in every Punctilib fifty fet out, as was feen in the Cavalcade of the Duke of Norfolk, Earl Marshal of England, and Lieutenant for the Sovereign, for St. George's Feast, Anna 5 Eliz, who had attending him twenty of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen, at the Time the Barls of Northumberland and Warmick were to be installed; but this was never put in Practice, but when the Sovereign appointed the Installation and the Feast of St. George to be celebrated together.

The Lieutenant, and his Affiftams, or sometimes the Knights-Commissioners, (if the Feast of St. George be not then Solemnized,) being arrived in the Castle, immediately retire to their Lodgings, which for the most part have been prepared at the Dean's House, whose Rooms are the fairest in the Castle, and the best sixed for Accommodation, next to those of the Sovereign's in the upper Ward; and for the Knights elect, they were at all Times surmished with Lodgings in some of the Prebenda Houses.

The Offering in the Chappel, on the Eve of the Feaft.

§ 2. If it so chanced that the Installation was performed by Commissioners, and the Cavalcade proceeded from London, in the Morning of the Day preceeding the Installation, and arrived at the Castle of Windsor early that Afternoon; then the Knights-Commissioners have been accustomed only to put on their Mantles, and enter St. George's Chappel to offer; but without the Attendance of Heralds, or any solemn Procession into the Choir, save one of the Prebends; where having placed themselves in their Stalls with usual Reverences, and heard an Anthem, they passed up to the Altar with the Verger and Garter before them, and there made their Offering, both of Gold and Silver, according to the usual Custom. As soon as Velpers were finished, after the same manner they descended from their Stalls, and departed to their Lodgings; and in this case the Knights-Commissioners did not lay by sheir Mantles till Supper was ended.

In this nature was the Ceremony of Offering (on the Eve of the Installation) performed by the Lord Admital and Earl of Ormond, Commissioners for the Installation

tion of the Earl of Shrewsbury and Cumberland, Anno 34 Bliz. Bur at the Inftallation of the Earl of Rutland, and others, Anno 26 Eliz. the Lord Hunsdon (one of the Commiffioners for that Solemnity,) refused to make his Offering alone, though he arrived timely enough, on the Eveof the Feast at Windsor Castle, because he wanted the Company of Viscount Mountague, who was a joynt Commissioner with him, that arrived not till the Morning after.

This Offering of the Knights-Commissioners, coming to the Castle on the Eve of the Installation, is sounded upon an Article of Edward III. which runs to this Effect: That of any of the Knights-Companions, being upon a Journey, floor'd accidentally pass by Windsor-Castle, he is to turn in thisber, in Honour of the Place, and prepare himself to enter into the Chappel to Offer; first putting on his Mantle, wishout which he must never presume to enter into it; but upon Emergencies, and allowable Causes, he is to be excused.

After the Knight-Companion had entered the Castle. the Canons Refident were, by the aforesaid Article, appointed to meet and recieve him, and with due Reverence conduct bim into the Choir. If it was at the Celebration of High Mals, the Knight was obliged to stay and hear it, in Honour of God and St. George; but if he arrived in the Afternoon, he was to stay till the Canons, and the rest of the Choir, had sung the Anthem de Profundis, which no sooner was ended, but he proceeded to the High Altar and Offered, and returned to his Stall with usual Reverences, and then departed.

But if the Knight-Companion passed through the Town of Windsor, and neglected to Offer at the Chappel, as often as he omitted ir, he was bound, upon his Obedience, to walk a Mile on Foot to the Chappel, in Honour of St. George, and moon defailure, to offer a Peny, which by King Henry VIII's Statutes is inlarged to a Groat. Upon the Explication of this Article, there arose a Dispute about the just Distance intended from the Castle; and that the Knights-Companions might be sensible of the breach of the Injunction, it was thought requifite by King Honry VIII. to let down a certain Bound, which in his Statutes is declared to be two Miles; within which, if any of the Knigher-Companions come, and do not repair

to

to the Chappel and Offer, he is liable to the Mulch bee

fore specified.

Upon Hunting, or other Pastimes the Forest afforded, they used to send their Offering in Money to the Canons, which being received, the Knights took it for a Dispensation of the Ceremony enjoined by the Statutes.

Endeavours were used to have this Article interpreted with greater Latitude, which so far took Effect, that at a Chapter called at Windsor the 10th of Odober, Anno 15 Car I. it was ordered, that some Expedient might be found out, to save the Knights from the Breach of their Oath, if they came within the limited Distance of the Place, and passed thence without Offering. But no farther Progress being made in that Assair, the Law stands as it did.

The Supper of the Evel

§ 3. The Supper, after their arrival at Windsor, is but in the Namre of a private Meal, and prepared for the Lieutenant (or Commissioners) or Knights elect, most commonly at the Dean's House. Anno 26 Eliz. on the Eve of the Installation of the Earl of Rutland and Lord Cobbam, the Commissioners supped together with such Lords and Gentlemen of Figure as came along with them; and no Nobleman had above one Servant to attend him at the Table, and the rest provided for themfelves at their proper Inns. Sometimes they have been permitted to Sup in some Appartments of the Sovereign's Lodgings; for so it was at the Installation of the Lord Russel, and other elect Knights, Anno 31 Henry VIII. and likewise of the Earl of Shrewsbury, and Lord Hunsdon, Anno 3 Eliz. the Lieutenant and Knights supped in the great Chamber there, in the same Regularity that was used at other Times. And in the 34th of Queen Elizabeth, when the Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumberland were in stalled, all the Lords and Gentlemen supped together at one long Table fer in the Council Chamber.

The

The Order in proceeding to the Chapter-House.

f 4. Before we come to the particular Ceremonies of the Installation, transacted either by the Sovereign, (or in his absence by his Lieutenant or Commissioners,) we shall premise this general Remark: That since neither the Statutes of Institution, nor those of King Henry V. afford us a Formulary for the Personal Installation of a Knight elect; yet those enacted by King Henry VIII. do briefly exhibit the Order and Method of it. And we must farther observe, that if the Installation be appointed together with the Feast of St. George, then either the Sovereign, or else his Lieutenant and Afsistants are present; but if at any other Season, then it passet by Commissioners only.

After such time therefore as the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commissioners, have prefixed the Hour wherein to proceed to the Chapter House, in Order to the Installation, (which has generally been dispatched in the Evening,) all the Knights-Companions, and elect Knights, the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, the Prebends of the College, and Alms-Knights, are to give their Attendance, with the Knights-Companions, and elect Knights, and Officers, of the Order, on the Sovereign, in his inward Lodging; the elect Knights, and Officers of Arms, in the Presence Chamber, the Prebends and Alms-Knights, in the Great Chamber, where they waited the Sovereign's coming

forth.

The Attendance to be given upon the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and such of the Knights-Companions as are appointed for his Assistants, is by the Officers of the Order and of Arms, the Prebends and Alms-Knights, either at his Lodgings, or elsewhere he shall deem meet to appoint; from which the Knights-Companions are exempt. For though the Knights-Companions have sometimes proceeded to the Chappel before the Sovereign's Lieutenant, at an Installation, yet hath it been at such time only, as they accompanied their Sovereign to Windsor, to hold the Feast of St. George; and if the Sovereign, through any Indisposition, or weighty Assir, cou'd not pass down to the Chappel on the Eve of the Feast, yet they being obliged

by the Statutes to celebrate Vespers, did upon this Occasion proceed thither, though not upon the Account of Installation; as it sell out at the Installation of Prince Henry, and sour other Knights, Anno 1 Jac. I. when the Progression began from the Presence Chamber, and thence passed to the Chappel in the sollowing Order.

1. Alms-Knights.

2. Prebends.

3. Pursuivants.

4. Heralds.

5. Ulster King of Arms,

6. Lyon King of Arms.

7. Clarenceux King of Arms.

8. The four elect Knights.

9. Knights-Companions.

10. Garter.

11. Register.

12. Black Rod.

13. Chancellor.

14. The Sovereign's Lieutenant leading the Prince in his Hand,

At the Installation of the Duke of Brunswick, and five other elect Knights, the 23d of November, Anno 1 Car. I. the Knights-Companions likewise proceeded before the Sovereign's Lieutenants, tho' the Sovereign was at Wind-

for, but not in the Cavalcade.

Upon the Sovereign's Commissioners, neither the Knights-Companions, nor the Prelate, nor Chancellor, do give their Attendance; only at the Grand Feast of St. George, Anno 13 Car. II. the Chancellor then waiting on the Sovereign at Windsor, in the Duties of his Place, out of a singular Regard to his Royal Highness the Duke of Tork, attending the Commissioners in the proceeding to his Installation, for at that time he was Comptroller of his Houshould.

The Proceedings on this solemn Occasion have been generally order'd on Foot; yet upon extraordinary Incidents have been marshalled and disposed on Horse-back, in manner of a Cavalcade, as was used at the Installation of Philip King of Castile, Anno 22 Hen. VII. and that when the Lord Russel and other elect Knights were installed.

Saffed. Anno 31 Hen. VIII. King Philip (when the Barl of Suffex was installed, Anno 1 and 2. Pb. and Mar.) honoured him with his Presence, and riding on Horse-back, with feveral of the Knights-Companions, from his Lodgings in the Castle, down to the Cloister Door, at the East-End of the Chappel, and there alighting, proceeded directly to the Chapter-House. The Proceeding was on Horseback, at the Installation of the Earl of Shrewsbury and the Lord Hunsdon, Anno 3 Eliz. and at the Earl of Northumberland's and Earl of Warwick's, Anno 5, At the Installation of Francis, Duke Montmorency, the Viscount Hereford, and the Lords Burleigh, Gray, and Shandos, Anno 14 Eliz. The Sovereign's Lieutenant and Knights Affiftants did Robe themselves in the Sovereign's Lodging in the Castle; and meeting in the Presence Chamber, proceeded downwards towards the outer Hall-door, in the upper Ward of the Castle, when taking their Horses, adorned with Foot Clothes, they proceeded on Horse-back to the West Door of the Chappel.

If the Progression was begun on Horse-back at the beginning of the Feast, so it continued, as often as the Sovereign (his Lieutenant or Commissioner) went to the Chapter-House, or Chappel, and their returns were marshalied

in the like Order at their setting out.

The Servants and Attendants belonging to the Knights elect, (if they be taken into the Procession,) pass on first two and two in a Rank, according to their Quality; and those who are the most inferior, the foremost: Next the Alms Knights in their Habits and usual Order.

Then follows the Virger of the College.

After him the Prebends or Canons: But what attendance they have given heretofore at the Installations, the Memoirs of this illustrious Society is wholly filent in; for in those Schemes left us of proceeding to Installations, in the Reigns of King Henry VIII. King Edward VI. Queen Mary, and part of Queen Eizzabeth, we find them not inserted, though since they are next to the Prebends of the College, the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, proceed in a Body.

After them the Knights-Subjects elect, unless the Proctor of an ablent Knight-Subject, pass at the same time in this Proceeding, who take Place after the Provincial Kinga; And if it so chance, that the Proctor to a Stranger-Prince

be present at the same time, he is to proceed between the Knight-Subject's Proctor, and the Knights-Subject elect. But Prince Henry at his Installation, Anno 1 3ac. I. moved in a Place Superior to all the Knights-Companions, and was paired with the Earl of Nottingham, the Sovereign's Lieutenant for that Occasion. Where two or more elect Knights-prepare for their Installation at the same time, they take Place according to the Seniority of their . Election, going two and two together; and if the Number be odd, the Junior elect Knight passeth alone. Formerly the elect Knight passed in his ordinary Apparel, wearing over it in Days of Yore a short Gown, afterwards a Cloak, and of latter Times a Coat, as did the Earl of Northumberland, Anno 5 Eliz. and the Earls of Pembrook and Derby, Anno 16 Eliz, and the Annals of the Order make this remark upon the Earl of Suffex, and the Lord Buckburft, Anno 31 of Eliz. of Charles Dake of York, An. 9 Fac. I. But this was before any peculiar under Habit, was appointed to the Knights-Companions, for now there being a Cloth of Silver Doublet, and Trunk Hose, established to be worn at the Feast of Installation, and of St. George, the elect Knight proceeds in this Dress, as did the Duke of Albermarle, Anno 23 Car. II.

In this proceeding to the Chapter-House, he wears only the Garter about his Leg, and the George and the Ribbond wherewith he was invested, either about his Neck, or as of late drawn under his right Arm, which being omitted by Sir George Villars, and Viscount Liste, is noted

to be contrary to order.

The Earl of Rulland with his Fellow elect Knights, Anno 14 Fac. I. proceeded Bare-headed, as did the Duke of Lenox, Anno 9 Car. I. as well as the Duke of Alber-

marle, Anno 23 Car. II.

The elect Knight does not always make one in this Proceeding, but sometimes stays at his Lodgings in the Castle, as did the Earls of Shrewshury and Camberland, Anno 34 Eliz. or else at some other convenient Station adjoining to the Chapter-House, till he be sent for in thicther, to receive Investitute with the Surcoat, as the Duke of Montmorency did, and other elect Knights, Anno 14 Eliz. who went privately from the Sovereign's Lodgings, down to the House of Mr. French, (then one of the Prebends,) and rested in the Parlour, until they were sent Y 4

- for: Sometimes the Knight elect goes privately into the East-Isle of the Chappel behind the High Altar, and there remains till called in, as did the Duke of Monmouth, Anno

15 Car. II.

If the Sovereign be present at the Installation, the Knights-Companions proceed next after the Knights elect, according to the order of their Stalls; but if the Sovereign's Lieutenant, then his Affistants go in their Places; as at the Installation of the Earl of Shrewsbury and Lord Hunsdam, Anno 3 Eliz, makes plain, the proceeding being ordered after this manner.

1. Vergers.

2. Alms-Knights.

3. Officers of Arms.

4. Elect-Knights.

5. Assistants to the Lieutenants.

6. Officers of the Order.

7. Earl of Arundel, Lieutenant.

If the Installation be dispatched by Commissioners, then the three inserior Officers of the Order immediately sollow the Knight elect, and proceed next before the Commissioners, and they were thus marshalled at the Installation of the Earl of Northampton, Anno 5 Car. L.

- 1. The Barls Servants.
- 2. Alms-Knights.
- 3. Prebends.
- 4. Heralds.
- 5. Elect-Knights.

6. Officers of the Order.

7. The Sovereign's Commissioners,

Yet Anno 16 Eliz, at the Installation of the Earls of Pembrook and Derby, we find the Officers did precede the elect Knights, but it was through inadvertency; at the Installation of the Earl of Northampton, some Question and Debate arose, concerning the precedency of these three Officers, in this proceeding, where it was at length concluded, that from the Castle to the Chappel, they shou'd proceed before the Commissioners; but in returning from the Chappel to the Castle, they shou'd follow.

We

We prefume the Question, (whatsoever it was) chanced not to be propounded, till the proceeding was ready to pass on, and then started on a sudden, because the Heralds (as the Annals note,) did not quickly discypher the matter, that it proceeded more from surprize, than want of Ability to resolve.

This determination which took Place, was barely grounded upon Conjecture, and if feriously considered, will appear disconsionant to Precedents and Practice, both before and since; where all returns are marshalled answerable to their setting forth, unless the Condition of

any Person in the mean time suffer a Mutation.

It's observable, that when Installation pass by Commissioners only, these three inserior Officers wear their Robes, but bear not the Enfigns of their Office in the Proceeding. And this seems to be deduced from particular Injunctions, laid down in the Conftitutions belonging to the Officers of the Order, which appoint Garter and Black-Rod to bear the Enfigns of their Offices at the Feast of St. George, when the Sovereign or his Deputy shall be present; whence it may be inferred, that if either chance to be absent, they are under no obligation. to bear them: For at the Installations of Frederick, King of Denmark, and John Casimire, Count Palatine of the Rhine, Anno 25 Eliz. no Enfigns were born by the Officers; and so was it practised the Year after, at the Installations of the Earl of Rueland and Lord Cobbam, as the Red-Book of Order plainly fets forth, But if the Sovereign himself be present, or that he constitute a Lieutenant in his stead, the Register then carries the Red-Book. and the Garter and the Black-Rod bear each of them their Rods. It is remarkable, that in every proceeding to Installation, by Lieutenant, or Commissioners, the Garter carries the Sovereign's Commission in his Hand before them to the Chapter-House. At the Installation of the Earls of Derby and Moreton, the Officers of the Order proceeded before the Knights to the Chapter-House, not only without the Enfigns of their Office, but their Heads covered; and the reporter of this Installation gives this for a reason; because there was then neither the Sovereign, nor his Lieutenant, representing the King's Person. present.

The

The Sovereign sometimes being willing to conser additional Honours to some elect Knights, hath appointed their Installation at such time as he personally solemnized the Feast of St. George, as he did at the Installation and Election of Philip King of Castile, Anno 22 Hen. VII. which for its memorableness, and mixt proceeding on Horse-back, we shall insert in this Place: He passed from the Sovereign's Lodging in the Castle, to the South-Door of St. George's-Chappel, and was thus ordered.

1. Knights according to their Degrees,

2. Lords after their Degrees.

3. Knights-Companions in their whole Habit, bearing Company with some of the Knights of the Order of Forson d'Or.

4. Prelate of the Order.
5. Archbishop of Canterbury.

6. The Spanish Ambassador.
7. Forson d' Or, King of Arms, in Coat of Arms.

8. Garter King of Arms, in his Coat of Arms.

9. The Sword.

10. Philip King of Castile.

11. The Prince.

'12. King Hemy VII. Sovereign of the Order.

Anno 19 Jac. I. was another instance at the Feast of St. George, when the Sovergign, with several Knights-Companions, proceeded also to the Chapel, at the personal Installation of Frederick, Prince Palatine of the Rhine : we might add several other Examples, but shall only mention that of the personal appearance of King Charles II. at the grand Feast of Sr. George, held next after his happy Restoration, whereat twelve elect Knights were installed. At this Solemnity of Installation, the Sovereign proceeds in full Robes, having the Sword of State born before him by a Nobleman not of the Order, his Trainbearers, &c. following the Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Affiftants, as also the Commissioners proceed in full Robes, which is mention'd, Anno 31 Henry VIII. when the Earl of Arundel and his Affiltants installed the Lord Russel and two other elect Knights, but the Sovereign's Lieutenant only.

(431)

only bath his Train carried up, which is usually per-

form'd by some of his own Gentlemen.

The Proceffional way (if beginning in the Presence-Chamber,) is from thence in the upper Ward of the Castle. and through the other Wards in at the Cloyster Door, and so to the Chapter-House; but if from the Dean's House. they go only through the Cloysters, into which there is an immediate Passage from the Deansy: The proceeding having entred the East Door of St. George's Chapel, and past by the Chapter-House Door, makes a stand in the North Isle; while first the Officers of the Order, next the Knights-Commissioners, or else the Knights-Affistants, and the Sovereign's Lieutenant; or lastly the Knights-Companions, and the Sovereign with the Sword born before him, pals into the Chapter-Houle, but the Knight or Knights elect do not enter, but as they come in at the Chapel-Door, they fall off on the left Hand into the East Ide behind the high Altar, and there repose themselves, (on Chairs or Stools, with Cushions purposely prepared,) until they are called into the Chapter-House. This hath generally been the Cuftom, of which many Examples might be produced, but in respect to great Personages they have been sometimes (though rarely) admitted into the Chapter-House, with the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, among whom Philip of Castile and Leon, Anno 2/2 Henry VII. and Prince Henry, Anno 1 Jac. I. the latter was led in by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, when four other elect Knights installed with him fat till they receiv'd their Summons to enter.

Sometime the Sovereign and Knights-Companions wav'd going to the Chapter-House, and pass'd immediately into the Choir, as did King James Anno 9, when Charles Duke of York and others were installed; the like did King Charles I. but then a Chapter was held in the Privy-Chamber, before the proceeding set forward; and in the sormer instance, when the proceeding came as far as the East End of the Chapel, the Duke of York, &c. with Norroy before them, went out of the proceeding into the Chapter-House, and there reposed, while the Sovereign proceeded on to the South Door of the Chapel, and thence into the Choir.

The

The Ceremonies perform'd in the Chapter-House.

House, and opening the Chapter; Garter, with three Reverences, presents first the Commissioners of Lieutenancy to hold the Feast, next that of Installation, to the Lieutenant, (or if the Installation pass'd by Commissioners, then only the Commission of Installation to the Senior Commissioner,) which being received, he delivers it to the Register of the Order, who forthwith Reads it; for to him this Duty belongs, as is recorded in the Black-Book of the Order, on occasion of Garter's reading the Commission for Installation of Sir Thomas Branden, Anno 22

Henry VII. the Register being then absent.

When the Register hath read the Commissions, he returns them to the Lieutenant, (or Commissioners,) and he again to the Garter, as at the Installation of the Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumberland, Anno 34 Eliz. If the Sovereign be present, the Chancellor acquaints him the Knights elect are without, otherwise the Lieutenant, and Assistants (or Commissioners) consult touching the calling in, and receiving them, and Garrer is usually employed in this Service; who, with all due respect, compliments and conducts him to the Chapter-House Door: But in the instance of the Earls of Sbrewsbury and Cumberland aforesaid. Garter went to their Lodgings, and having delivered his Message, they forthwith repaired to the Chapter-House, their Train attending them to the Door: At the Installation of Francis Duke of Montmorency, the Earl of Leicester, then the Sovereign's Lieuxenant, as an evidence of fingular respect, sent from the Chapter two of the sour Affistants assigned him, who taking Garter, and the Officers of Arms before them, led him thence between them to the Chapter-House.

When there are two or more elect Knights, that wait in the East Isle, expecting to be called in, Garter first conducts the Senior by Election to the Chapter-House Door, and so the rest in their several Orders, as in 14 Jac. L by the Earl of Rusland, Sir George Villars, and the Viscount Lisle; and so again 13 Car. II. As soon as Garter hash conducted the elect Knight to the Chapter-House Door,

Door, two of the Commissioners, (when the Installation is performed by Commissioners,) or two of the Knights-Affistants, (when by the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) or two of the Senior Knights, (if the Sovereign himself be prefent.) receive him without, who is immediately conducted from the Chapter-House Door, up to the Sovereign, (his Lieutenant, or Commissioners,) to whom he makes humble Reverence; when the Lieutenant, (or Senior Commissioners,) in a short Speech, publishes the effect of his Commission, and declares to him the Sovereign's bounty and ready kindness, in a full admittance into this Honourable Society, which the elect Knight very humbly acknowledges and accepts. When Philip King of Castile and Leon was installed in Person, Anno 22 Henry VII. the Sovereign being present role from his Throne, and gave him Information of the Statutes and Ceremonies of the Order, and how he was bound by them; to all which he freely and readily affented.

These Ceremonies of receiving an elect Knight being over, he disrobes himself of his upper Garment, then the Surcoat and Kirtle is taken from the Table, with which he is invested; and during this Ceremony, the following Words of Admonition, entred at the end of King Hen. VIII's

Book of English Statutes, are read or spoken.

Take this Robe of Purple, to the encrease of your Honour, and in Token, or Sign, of the most Honourable Order you have received; wherewith you being defended, may be bold not only strong to Fight, but also to offer your self to shed your Blood for Christ's Faith, the Liberties of the Church, and the just and necessary defence of them that are oppressed and needy.

After this, his Sword is close girt about him over his Surcoar, by the Commissioners, (or the Assistants to the Lieutenant, or some of the Knights-Companions,) and sometimes in the way of assistance, Garter hath done this Service; and as soon as the Ceremony is over, the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, proceeds into the Choir, leaving the elect Knights behind them: The Hood was heretofore put on in the Chapter-House, (for so the Statutes of King Henry VIII. do appoint,) after the elect Knight hath been invested with his Surcoar, and before he proceeded to his Installation; but of late, because it must be taken

(334)

taken off again in the Choir, and laid alide, that the Mantle may be put on, it hath been esteemed a sort of diminution in the Investiture to take off any part of the Habit before the whole Investiture be compleated; so that in the beginning of the Reign of King James I. it was judged more convenient that the Hood should be carried on the Cushion by Garter into the Choir, together with the Mantle and Collar, and not be put on till after Investiture with the Mantle; and thus it was observed at the Feasts of St. George, 13, 15, and 23 Car. II. And though antiently it was laid over the left Shoulder, and so worn upon all Occasions, yet Anno 2 and 3 Phil. and Mar. the wearing it so being taken notice of to obscure the Escutcheon of St. George, embroidered on the same Shoulder of the Mantle, it was decreed in a Chapter held the same Year. 22 of April, that for the future the Knights-Companions should wear their Hoods on their right Shoulders, to the end that the Escurcheon might be the better seen and ap-

pear.

Nevertheless, there was a Question moved 12 Fac. L. whether the usage of wearing the Hood should not be reflored to the left Shoulder, but it seems it was over-ruled a and 23 Car. II. some of the Knights-Companions imagining it most proper to wear their Hoods on their left Shoulders, ran into that error, but upon better informasion the next Morning, altered them to the right. To Foreign Princes, there is liberty given by King Hen. VIII's Starutes to receive, if they please, their Habit wholly within the Chapter-Houle, before they enter their Stalls: by which it appears that this was the Custom in times pasta. an inftance whereof we have in Philip King of Castile. Anno 22 Henry VII. who was entirely invested in the Chapter-House with the Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, Hood, and Collar; the Sovereign himself putting his Hand to his Investiture with the Mantle. Hence King Philip, Grandson to the aforesaid King of Castile, was invested with the whole Habit of the Order before he assumed the Stall; in Philip and Mary's proceeding to the Chapel, he receiv'd his Investiture within the West Door, and there the Register delivered the Mantle to the Earls of Derby and Pembrook, who killing it, presented it to the Queen, who, assisted by the said Earls, personally invested the King therewith: Next Garter gave the Collar to the

Rarls of Arundel and Pembrook, who likewise presented it to the Queen, and she thereon put it about King Philip's Neck; and immediately the Knights-Companions, having robed themselves within the Chapel Door, proceeded before the King and Queen, who with joined Hands palsed into the Choir, where the Queen led him to the Sovereign's Stall, which ascending, they both sat therein. But as the aforesaid Statute leaves this to the pleasure of the Stranger Prince, and was permitted only for gaining Time, so none, who have received personal Installation at Windsor fince, have been fully invested before they entered the Choir. For instance, Francis, Duke de Montmerency, 14 Eliz. and Frederick, Prince Palatine of the Rbine, 10 Fac. I. were both invested with their Surcoats only in the Chapter-House, but they receiv'd their Mantles, Hoods, and Collars, in their Stalls, after they had taken their Oaths.

The proceeding into the Choir.

6. The Knight elect, habited as before, proceeds from the Chapter-House along the North Isle, and enters the West Door of the Choir in solemn Order; but his Place in this proceeding is changed, for here he is led between two Knights-Companions. This is noted in the Black-Book to be the Order wherein Albra Vasques d'Almadea, Earl of Averence, and two others, proceeded to their Installations, 24 Henry VI. And notwithstanding the Statutes of Inflitution, and those made by King Henry V. are filent in the Order of this Proceeding; yet for an elect Knight to be led to his Stall between two fellow Knights. is no modern Ceremony; fince we likewise find, that the Viscount Bourchier, 30 Henry VI. past to his Instalment between the Lord Hastings and Lord Beauchamp. But the Order of proceeding is precisely set down in Henry VIII's Statutes, viz. That the elect Knight, attended by his Gentlemen and Servants, shall be led between two other Knights-Companions, the Officers of the Order going before them. And this has been the constant Pra-Aice at all Installations since; the Knight elect proceeding, either between two of the Knights-Commissioners, when there hath been no Lieutenant, or between two of the Knights Knights Affistants, where a Lieutenant was conflicted; or lastly between the two Senior Knights-Companions; the Sovereign being present: But when there hath been three Commissioners named, then the two Senior Commissioners take the Knight elect between them, and the Junior Knight-Commissioner proceeds before them; which was observed at the Instalment of the Earls of Essex and Ormand, and Sir Christopher Hatton, 30 Eliz.

In all cases where the Sovereign is present at an Installation, after the custom of investing with the Collar in the Chapter-House was left off, it is generally to be obferved, that as loon as the Investiture with the Surcoat is finished, the Sovereign passes from the Chapter-House, into the Choir, with the whole proceeding before him, leaving the elect Knight behind; and when he and the Knights-Companions have taken their Stalls, the two Senior Knights-Companions, by the Sovereign's verbal Directions, descend from their Stalls, and stand under their Banners, whilst the Alms-Knights, but not the Prebends, Officers of Arms, and the three inferior Officers of the Order, pass out of the Choir, and proceed before them to the Chapter-House, from whence they introduce the elect Knight into the Choir to his Inftallation; but if there be more than one Knight installed, then the two next Senior Knights descend, and so the next, till all the elect Knights are conducted in: And this course is likewife observed when a Lieutenant is constituted, and hath been generally so practised since the Investiture with the Collar was performed in the Choir; and particularly at the Installations of the Duke of Lenox, the Earls of Pembrook, Marr, and Southampeen. 1 Jac. I. and of the Duke of Holftein, and the Earl of Northampton, 3 Jac. 1. In this proceeding to Installation, the Register usually carries a Book of the New Testament, for the elect Knight to take his Oath on, as likewise the Oath it self, fairly written on Parchment: Garter bears his Mantle fill he arrives at his Stall; and King Henry VIII's Statutes place this Service upon some of the Knights-Companiors likewise; but it never appears that it was ever performed by any of them. 'Tis probable, that about the time when this Injunction passed, it was the Custom for Garrer to beat the Mantle on his Arm; for so it was at the Installation of the Lord Ruffel, and others, 31 Henry VIII. but it was

not long after, that the laying it on a Velver Cushion began. The great Collar of the Order was likewise laid upon the Cushion, at the Installation of Sir Henry Sidney, 6 Eliz. the Earl of Shrewshury, 34 Eliz. and in this manner born before the Knights elect, 13 Car. II, before the Duke of Monmousth, 15 Car. II. and before the Duke of Albermarle, 23 Car. II. with these the Hood, heretofore put on in the Chapter-House, hath of late been laid on the Cushion, and also the Book of Statutes, and so born by Garter before Prince Henry, 1 Jac. I. and Frederick, Elect or Palatine; 10 Jac. I. and before the Knights Installation, 13 Car. II. and since.

And here it is to be observed, that when Garter bears the Ornaments and Ensigns on the Cushion before an elect Knight, or a Proctor, he is always placed between the Register and Black-Rod in the proceeding: Lastly, in this proceeding the Knight elect goeth Bare-headed, holding his Cap in his Hand; and so did the Duke of Albermarle, 23 Car. II. for it hath been thought incongruous to the Order of Investiture, as is before observed of the Hood; to put on any part of the Habit, or other Ornaments, that must be taken off again, before the Investiture is compleated; and the proper Place for putting on the

Cap is not till all the other is finished.

The Ceremonies of Installations

7. When the proceeding hath entered the Choir, the Alms-Knights, and Officers of Arms, make their Obeysances toward the High Altar, and the Sovereign's Royal Stall, in the manner hereafter described; then they proceed to the Steps before the Altar, and divide themselves; next the Officers of the Order make the same Reverence; and lattly, the two Commissioners, or Knights Assistants, or Knights-Companions, and Knights-elect, all three together. After this the Officers of the Order turn assist toward the Stall designed for the elect Knight; and approaching near it, stand below in the Choir, whilst the Commissioners; or Assistants, or Knights-Companions, pass into the lower Row of Stalls, sometimes called the midd'e Row, directly under the designed Stall, leading the elect Knight with them, who in this Place takes his

Oath, called in the Annals, the facred Oath of the Order of the Garter; during which time he ought to ftand between the two Knights-Companions who brought him thither, as at the Initaliation of Prince Henry, 1 Fac. I. and when the Earl of Shrewsbury was installed, 34 Eliz. tis observed, that the Senior Commissioner first entered the lower row of Stalls; but 31 Henry VIII. at the Installation of the Lord Russel, and others, the Junior Assistant went up first. The Knight elect being thus placed, the Register of the Order standing before them, but below in the Choir, reads the Oath; for it is part of his Duty to administer the same: And in this solemn Ceremony. the New Testament, whereon the Oath is taken, generally opened in some Place of the Gospels, is indifferently held by one of the three inferior Officers of the Order. or sometimes the Register hath held it, as at the Installation of the Earl of Derby, 16 Eliz. the Earl of Rueland, and Lord Cobbam, 26 Eliz. At other times the Garter hath held it, as 5 Eliz, when the Earl of Northumberland took his Oath; and to Car. I. at the Installation of the Earl of Moreton: But when the Earl of Shrewsbury was Sworn, 34 Eliz. the Uther of the Black Rod performed this Office.

Whilst the Oath is administring, the elect Knight holds his right Hand on the Holy Evangelists; and when the Register hath pronounced the Words, he immediately Responses, I will, so belp me God, and then takes off his Hand reverently, kissing the Book; and by this Ceremony seals his Obligation to the Statutes of this most Noble Order. The Čeremony used when Philip, King of Cafile and Leon, took the Oath, which was done in the Chapter-House at Windsor, 22 Henry VII. he laid his Hand on the Canon, under which was placed the Book of Statutes of the Order by the Prelate, to whom it was delivered by the Register, and having repeated the Words of the Oath, and reverently kissed all those things by which he Swore, he took a Pen from the Prelate's Hand. and Signed the Oath he had taken, and deliver'd it to the Sovereign then present.

The Form of the ancient Oath appointed by the Statutes of Institution, to be taken by a Knight-Su ject, was very short, but comprehensive: That he should well and faithfully observe, to the utmost of his Power, all the Statutes

Statutes of the Order; and this was all the Oath taken by the first Founders, and to which they also affixed their Seals; and so it continued without alteration or addition, till towards the End of Ring Edward IV's Reign; and then, at a Chapter held at the King's Wardrobe in London. it was decreed, That all the Knights-Companions then alive, and all such as should afterwards be admitted into the Order, should be obliged to subjoin the Words following: That they would aid, support, and defend, with all their Power, the Royal College of St. George, within the Castle of Windsor, as well in its Possessions, as all other things what soever; which being drawn in form, was enter'd in the Black Book; but has fince receiv'd many alterations: And there is an instance, I Eliz. when the Oath has been dispensed with; as by the Duke of Norfolk, and others, in regard the Rites and Ceremonies of Religion were then altered, and no new form of an Oath fettled, so that they only obliged themselves by Promise to observe such Statutes and Orders as should be decreed in the next Council of the Order, which was soon after settled, and recorded in the Red Book of the Order, and is the Oath taken by a Knight-Subject at this Day.

You being Chosen to be one of the Honourable Company of this most Noble Order of the Garter, shall Promise and Swear, by the Holy Evangelists, by you here touched, that, wittingly or willingly, you shall not break any Statute of the said Order, or any Articles in them contained; the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So help you God, and this Holy Word.

As soon as the Knight elect hath taken the Oath, he is led to his appointed Stall, through the Entrance next beneath it, and there placed before it. In the Interim, Garter advancing into the lower row of Stalls, to the Place where the elect Knight stood when he took the Oath, presents from thence the Mantle; Collar, and Book of Statutes, to those who led him, who invest the Knight elect first with the Mantle, by putting it on his Shoulders. There are some Examples where the elect Knight hath been invested before he went up to his Stall,

Digitized by Google

as in the case of the Earl of Northumberland, 5 Eliz. Francis, Duke de Montmorency, and others, 14 Eliz. the Earls of Dunbar and Montgomery, 6 Jac. I. and the Prince of Wales, 14 Car. I. among which may be numbered these installed at the Grand Feast of St. George, 13 Car. II. but this happen'd through a vast Concourse of People in the Chapel, that prevented the due Order.

In the Red Book it is observed, that the Investiture with the Mantle and Collar, hath been sometimes performed by the Black Rod; as at the Installation of the Earl of Northampton, 5 Car. I. the Lord Treasurer Weston, the Earls of Exeter and Lindsey, and the Marquis of Hamilton, 6 Car. I. Nevertheless, this is to be understood as this Officers Assistance to the Knights-Companions, whose Office it only is, and no otherwise. Whilst the Ceremony of Investiture with the Mantle is performing, the Words of Admonition proper thereto, are pronounced as follows.

Take this Mantle of Heavenly Colours, in Sign and Token of the most Himourable Order you have received, and to the increase of your Honour, signed and marked as you see, with a ted Escutcheon of our Lord's Cross, to the intent that you, being always defended by the Virtue and Strength thereof, may pass through your Enemies, and them also overcome and vanquish, so that at the last, for your worthy and approved Acts, you may, after this Temporal Chivalry, come to Eternal Triumphant Joys in Heaven.

But at the Installation of King Charles II. they receiv'd some alteration, and were put in the following Form.

Receive this R be of Heavenly Colour, the Livery of this mift excellent Order, in augmentation of thy Honour, enobled with the Shield and Red Cross of our Lord, by whise Power thou may'st safely pierce Troops of thy Enemies, and be over them ever Victorious; and being in this temporal Warfare Glorious in egregious and beroick Actions, thou may'st obtain Eternal and Triumphant Joy.

Next, the Commissioners, Assistants, or Knights-Companions, lay the Hood on the Knight's right Shoulder over the Mantle, and bringing the Tippet athwart his Breast, tuck it under the Girdle, at which his Sword hangs:

hangs: And lastly tye the Collar about his Shoulder, over his Mantle and Hood; and at this part of the Investiture, the following Words of Admonition are likewise pronounced.

To the encrease of your Honour, and in Token of the Honourable Order you have received; take this Collar about
your Neck, with the Image of the Holy Martyr, and Christ's
Knight, St. George, by whose aid you being defended, may
pass through the Prosperities and Adversities of this World,
that having here the Victory, as well of your Ghostly as Bodily
Enemies, you may not only receive the Glory and Renown of
Temporal Chivalry, but also at the last, the endless and everlasting reward of Victory.

This Form of Words receiv'd likewise alteration when King Charles II. was to be installed, to the Tenor following.

Wear this Collar about thy Neck, adorn'd with the Image of the Bleffed Martyr and Soldier of Christ, St. George, by whose Imitation provoked, thou may'st so overpass both prosperous and adverse Encounters, that having stoutly vanguished thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou may'st not only receive the Praise of this transfent Combas, but be Grawned with the Palm of eternal Victory.

Antiently at the Solemnity of Installation, when the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant was present, the elect Knight, after he had been invested with the Mantle in his Stall, was immediately conducted out of the Choir, back to the Chapter-House, where the Sovereign, or Lieutenant, used to remain till his return, there to receive the Collar of the Order from one of them, which done, he is said to have receiv'd the entire Possession of his Habit. This is contained in King Henry VIII's Scatutes, and appears to have been the Practice about that Time, as in the case of the Lord Mountjoy, and others, 18 Hen. VIII. and several others after, in the 1 and 3 Edw. VI. and the 3, 5, and 14 Eliz. The Proceeding back to the Chapter-House on this occasion, was much after the manner of what is before mention'd, except, that here the new in-Ralled Knight took his Place according to the Dignity of \mathbf{Z}_{3} his his Stall. But 'tis observable, that when the Sovereign's Lieutenant remained in the Chapter-House, while the elect Knight proceeded to his Installation, the Usher of the Black-Rod stayed behind to attend the Lieutenant; and as soon as the Investiture with the Collar was over, the Lieutenant proceeded to the Choir in the Rear, and the new installed Knight in Place according to his Stall, as in the case of the Lord Russel, and others, 31 Hen. VIII. and the Marquiss of Dorset, and others, 1 Edw. VI. The Proceeding having entered the Choir, and the Lieutenant and Knights-Companions taken their Seats, then the usual Ceremonies, the Service of the Church began.

But when the Installation was performed by Commissioners, the Collar of the Order was laid on the Cushion with the Mantle, and born before the elect Knight to his Stall, where, after his Investiture with the Mantle and Hood, he receiv'd Investiture with the Collar also, of which there are several Examples in the time of Phil. and Mar. and Queen Eliz. In like manner, at all Installations since, where the Sovereign has been present, the ancient custom of returning to the Chapter-House being laid asside, the Knights-Companions, who led the elect Knights to their Stalls, did there invest them with their Collars also; as the Earl of Rutland, Sir George Villars, and the Viscount Liste, 14 Jac. I. and the Earl of Suffolk, 4 Car. I. and hath been thus observed at all Installations since, the Sovereign present.

So soon as the Investiture with the Mantle, Hood, and Collar is over, those appointed deliver the Book of Statutes to the new invested Knight, which was observed to the Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumberland, 34 Eliz. the Earl of Rutland, Sir George Villars, and the Viscount Liste, 14 Jac. I. and so generally to all elect Knights since. This Book the Knight is to keep safe in his own Custody, for his Instruction in the Laws and Ceremonies of this most Noble Order. They likewise give him the Black Velvet Cap adorned with Plumes of white Feathers, and this in particular was observed to be the last Ceremony performed at the Installation of King Charles II.

All things relating to the full Investiture being ended, there remains only to compleat this great Ceremony, the Installation it self, which is performed in the manner following. The new invested Knight standing before his

Stall, and turning toward the High Altar, makes humble Obeysance that way, and then toward the Sovereign, or if absent, toward his Stall; which done, the Commissioners, Knights-Assistants, or Knights-Companions, receive and embrace him with great Civility, as their Fellow and Companion, and set him down in his assigned Stall with Professions of Esteem, and Wishes for his Honour and Happiness. Of this Ceremony, there is a notable Instance at the Installation of Philip, King of Castile, 22 Henry VII. where the Sovereign personally introduced him to his Stall, and there placed him, at which time there was a certain Form of Words pronounced relating to the elect Knight's Session, and Act of Installation, no less than at his Investiture, but the same are not repeated.

The Order to be observed when two or more Knights are installed in one Day.

§ 8. In this case it seems to have been the ancient Practice, when the Ceremony has been perform'd by two Commissioners, or two Knights-Assistants, that as soon as they had finished all the Ceremonies due to the Senior of them, they left him possest of his Stall, and forthwith returned to the Chapter-House in the usual manner, and thence conducted the next Senior elect Knight, and so of the rest: So it was at the Installation of Albro Vasques d'Almadea, Earl of Averenches, the Lord Beauchamp, and Sir Thomas Hoo, in the time of Henry VI. and so of the Earl of Huntington, I Edw. VI. when the two Assistants. after they had invested and installed the said Earl, returned to the Chapter-House for the Lord la War, and so for the Lord Cobbam, and Sir William Herbert. In like manner, when the Commissioners had given the Proctor to Emanuel, Duke of Savoy, Possession of his Principal's Stall. 1 and 2 Phil. and Mar. they proceeded back for William Lord Howard; so by the Earl of Pembrook, 16 Eliz. when they had first installed the Earl of Derby, and by the Earl of Cumberland, after the Earl of Shrewsbury had been installed.

When the Sovereign hath nominated three Commissioners, they have returned altogether to fetch in the other Knights singly, that were to be installed, and alternately Z 4 change-

changed their Places in the proceeding to the several Infallations, one of them always going single before; as at the Installation of the Earls of Esex and Ormond, and Sir Christopher Hatton, 30 Eliz. when the Earl of Woreester, the Lords Hunsdon and Grey, were Commissioners: And if the Lieutenant had four Assistants assigned him, which was necessary when many Knights were to be installed, the order of their Installation hath been as sollows.

First, Two of the Senior Knights-Assistants conducted the Senior elect Knight to his Installation, and the other two Assistants proceeded with the second elect Knight; the former then took the third elect Knight, and so alternately changed till all were installed: As at the Installation of Francis, Duke de Montmorency, and others, 14 Eliz. And the like manner of alternate change is observed if sour Commissioners be constituted, as at the Installation of Frederick, King of Denmark, and John, Prince Palatine of the Rhine, 25 Eliz. where the King's Proxy was conducted into the Choir between the Earl of Leigester and the Lord Hunsson, the two Senior Commissioners; and the Prince, between the Earl of Huntington and the Lord

Charles Howard, the two Junior Commissioners.

But some have been of Opinion, that the Commissioners named to this Employment, ought not to divide the Duty, and part of them to Instal one, and part the other, and by such an alternative to dispatch the Ceremony, as in former Cases; but all jointly aissift at each Installation: Of which Opinion there is an Instance at the Installation of the Earl of Salisbury, and the Viscount Bindon, 4 Jac. L. where the Earl having been brought into the Choir, invested and installed by the Earls of Nottingham and Suffolk, the two Senior Commissioners, the other two Commissioners who were left behind in the Chapter-House, to conduct the Viscount to his Stall, remembring that all four were joint Commissioners, apprehended that the Earl was not legally installed, because they, as Co-partners in the Commission, had not assisted; and this Opinion being debated, prevailed so far, that it was agreed to be imparted to the Earl of Salisbury, who submitted to descend into the lower Seats before his Stall, and there all four Commissioners gave him his Oath again, then led him to his

Stall, and a second Time invested and installed him; and

fo of the Viscount Bindon.

But this Method was not only new, but different from former Practice, as in all the cases before recited; and besides, where the Sovereign hath authorized his Lieutenant to perform this Ceremony, and appointed some of the Knights-Companions to assist, they, and not the Lieutenant, have done the Duty belonging to Installation. that part of it of investing with the Collar in the Chapter-House, the whole Duty at the Installation of Prince Henry excepted. And tis to be farther observed, that the foregoing case of the joint Assistance in the Installation of the Earl of Salisbury, was thought so little Essential, or worthy of becoming a Precedent, that at the very next Feast, when the Earls of Dunbar and Montgomery were installed, 6 Jac. I. and four Commissioners appointed, the two Senior initalled the Earl of Dunbar, and the two Junior the Earl of Montgomery; and so again, to Car. I. by the Earls of Danby and Moreton. But laftly, if the Sovereign be present, and consequently the Knights-Companions perform this Ceremony, then there is generally fo many of them as can go through the whole, without changing, after the manner used when done by Commissioners or Assistants; in which case the two Senior Knights-Companions descend from their Stalls, and passing thro the Choir to the Chapter-House with the Proceeding before them, conduct to his Installation the eldest elect Knight; and having performed that whole Ceremony, return and take their Stalls, and so the rest in due Order; as was practifed at the Installation of Prince Henry, and others, I Jac. I. and of the Earl of Rutland, 14 Jac. I. and at the grand Feast of St. George, 13 Car. II. but here the separate proceeding with each fingle Knight to and from the Chapter House, taking too much time, and the Day being far spent in the Ceremonies of the Dukes of Ormand and Buckingham; the Sovereign ordered, that with the next Proceeding, the rest of the elect Knights, being eight, besides two Proxies, should all be introduced at once; so that each of them being placed before his Stall, took the Oath, receiv'd his Investiture, and was led up to his Stall, and took Possession of it by solemn Installation.

And in regard so many Knights elect were introduced together, it was judged necessary, that their Mantles and Collars should be likewise brought in the proceeding, and each elect Knight appointed one of the Gentlemen that attended him, to bear the Cushion whereon they were laid, before him to the Choir Door, where they held them in their Arms, till Garter in due order fetch'd them into the Choir: And here we may insert this general Rule, that at all Installations, where some of the elect Knights are not sent for unto the Chapter-House, to receive Investiture with the Surcoat, before the Senior elect Knight hath been conducted to his Stall, but left to repose themselves in the East Isle of the Chaprel, as hath often happered, the Knights Commissioners, or Assistants, on their return to the Chapter-House, send Garter for the next Senior elect Knight, whom they receive at the Door thereof, and having invested him with his Surcoat, and girt his Sword about him, proceed with him to his Installation in the usual manner. And the same method is observed if there were more elect Knights to follow; and we find it 30 Henry VIII. 16, and 34, and 10 Car. I.

The Knight, or Knights, having now receiv'd a compleat Installation, the Knights-Commissioners, Assistants, or Knights-Companions, with marks of Respect, take their leave of the last installed Knight, and descending into the Choir, take their own Stalls; but the Senior Knight-Companion ascends first: But observe, that if the Stalls of the Knights-Commissioners, Assistants, or Knights-Companions, be on the same fide with the last installed Knight, then they descend not into the Choir, but pass directly to them along the Stalls, as in the 34 Eliz. The Ceremonies of Inftallation being finished, the Officers of Arms first, next the Alms-Knights, descend from the Steps of the Altar, and take their several Stations in the Choir; then one of the Prebends of the College, or, if the Sovereign be present, the Prelate, with the Serjeant of the Vestry before him, is conducted to the Altar by the Verger of the Chappel, and there begins the Service appointed by the Church, which being ended, the Proceeding passes out of the Choir in usual Order, either to the Rresence-Chamber, or the Lieutenants, or Commisfioners Lodgings, as the Occasion is.

Тbе

The Offering of Gold and Silver.

6 9. But if the Installation be solemnized in the Morning, the Service of the Church having proceeded as sar as the Offertory, two of the Prebends, appointed to recieve the Offering, are conducted to the Altar by their Verger, and first the Alms-Knights, then the Officers of Arms, ascend the Steps of the Altar again, and stand in order as before. After which, Garter Summons down the Knights-Companions to the Offering, who descend into the Choir under their proper Stalls, as does the Sovereign's Lieutenant, who offers first for the Sovereign, he receiving the Bezant from the Senior Knight, and then returns to his Stall: And at this instant, was the usual time heretofore for offering the Desunct Knights Atchievements, which was altered by King James I. as will be seen hereafter.

The Lieutenant, after a short stay in his Stall, descends again, and proceeds up to the Altar, to make his own Offering of Gold and Silver, and then returns, as do the rest of the Knights-Companions, including those newly installed, in their due order. But when the Installation passes by Commissioners, there is then no Offering made for the Sovereign, but the Commissioners offer sirst, and after

them the other Knights in due order.

The Ceremony of Offering at the Installation of Philip, King of Castile, 22 Henry VII. is remarkable. He descended from his Stall into the Choir, and standing before it, as the other Knights-Companions did, the Sovereign left his Royal Stall to proceed to the Offering, to which the King would have followed, but the Sovereign would not permit, obliging the King to proceed along with him, on his left Hand, though he defired to perform his Duty as a Brother of the Order, so that they made their Offerings so near together, where, though the Sovereign had the Precedence, yet 'twas hardly observable.

Of the grand Dinner at the Installation.

f 10. On the Day of Installation, there hath, from ancient Time, been appointed a Noble and Sumptuous Feast, and

and though it was agreed on in a Chapter, 3 Edward VI-That the Knights elest might, from thenceforth, be installed by Commission without a Feast 3 yet after his Reign, we find the old custom of a Feast at this Solemnity restored.

If the Sovereign appoint the Installation to be when the Peaft of St. George is also celebrated, and is himself personally present, the Feast is then kept at the Sovereign's Charge; and if in such case he constitute a Lieutenant, then the Installation Dinner is kept at the Charge of the Lieutenant; and is usually prepared in some of the Sovereign's Lodgings in the Caftle, but seldom in St. George's Hall: as was done by the Earl of Arundel, at the Initallation of the Earl of Shrewsbury, and the Lord Hunfdon, 3 Eliz. But when the Installation is kept at any other time of the Year, than that of St George's Feast, then the new installed Knights are at all the Expence; who generally have had the Dinner prepared in the Dean's Lodgings; however, be it where it will, the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, Commissioners, or Assistants, together with the new installed Knights, proceed thither in full Robes; which is observed in the Installation of 3 Eliz. above, to be according to the ancient Custom. At the Installation, 31 Henry VIII. the Sovereign's Lieutenant walked alone. after him his two Assistants, and lastly the new installed Knights.

The Lieutenant's Place at the Table is somewhat on the lest Hand the Cloath of State, there sat the Earl of Arundel, 3 Eliz. but the other four Knights-Companions, his two Assistants, and the two new installed Knights, sat toward the Table's End on both Sides, for that they could not well fit all on a fide. But of late Years, as at the Installation, 5 Car. I. a Question arose, whether the Lieutenant or Commissioners should sit at Dinner in their Habits, fince the Power given them seemed to expire when the Knights were elected; (though unanimously allowed the new installed Knights ought to do so,) and likewise Precedents quoted, as 29 Henry VIII. at the Installation of the Lord Cromwell, where the Knights put off their Habits, and dined in their ordinary Apparel; and so of the Earl of Rutland, and the Lord Cobbam. 26 Eliz. where the Commissioners did the same, and the new installed Knights kept on only their Surcoats: But what followed on this Debate is not mention'd; but the general Practice at other Times hath been of keeping on the

Habit till the Dinner is ended.

At the second Course, called also second Mess, or second Service, Garter, accompanied with the Officers of Arms, Proclaims the Stiles and Titles of Honour of the Sovereign (if he be personally, or by his Lieutenant, present,) in Latin, French, and English, and cries Largess thrice; next the Stiles of the new installed Knights in French, or English only, with two Largesses, and in that Order they were installed. And thus it was at the Installation of Charles, Duke of York, 9 Jac. I. of Frederick, Prince Palatine, 10 Jac. I. and the Earl of Rutland, and others, 14 Jac. I.

Philip, King of Castile, Dined with the Sovereign in his Privy-Chamber, 22 Henry VII. whose Stile was Proclaimed by Garter, not in the same Room, but at the Sovereign's great Chamber-Door, and in St. George's Hall. after Largels had been thrice cryed. When the Sovereign constitutes a Lieutenant, then is the Lieutenant's Stile also Proclaimed, and to his other Honours is added this of his Lieutenancy, and afterwards the Stiles of the new installed Knights, as 3 Eliz. But the Order of this Ceremony is more particularly observed at the Installation of the Duke de Montmorency, and others, 14 Eliz. where first Garrer cried Largels, and next Proclaimed the Sovereign's Stile, &c. in three Languages, then stepping two Foot back, Proclaims the Lieutenant's Stile in French only, with two Largesses; and after that, he cried one Largels for the Duke; and lastly, for all the other new installed Knights, only two Largesses, and the Officers of Arms did the like; and still as Garter had finished his Proclamation, the Heralds joined with him in crying Largels, and so with Reverence departed the Hall.

But lastly, it is proper to observe, that when neither the Sovereign, nor his Lieutenant, are present, then the Sovereign's Stile is not Proclaimed, nor those of the Com-

missioners, but only of the new installed Knights.

As foon as Dinner is ended, the Knights-Companions rife from Table, and withdraw to difrobe themselves, and therewith the Solemnity of Installation ends: And if at any time the Solemnity continues that Evening, and the following Day, it is only because the Sovereign (or his Lieutenant,) is present, on account of celebrating St. George's Feast, and not with reference to the Installation.

Of setting up the Knight's Atchievements.

§ 11. The last thing to be done at this great Solemnity, is setting up the Helm, Crest, Sword, Banner, and Plate, of the new installed Knight, over his Stall in the Chappel of St. George; to which purpose they are to be provided,

according to the Directions before given.

By the Statutes of Institution it is ordained, that the time for fetting up the Atchievements shall be when the elect Knight comes to Windsor-Castle, that is, to his In-Stallation, and not before; and the reason is there likewise given, lest it should happen, he nor coming for his Inftallation within the time limitted, and consequently the vacating his Election enfuing, that a new Election being made, those military Ensigns might not seem to be disgracefully withdrawn, and an occasion of Dishonour given. which otherwise could not be avoided, if they should be suddenly taken down from a Place so high; which demonftrates, that the intention of this Article extends to the finishing the Ceremonies of Installation, before the Atchievements ought to be fet up, by so carefully providing against the Dishonour of taking them down, in case the Election should become void; which must infallibly happen, if the Knight elect died but an Hour before he were compleatly installed. Accordingly, in the ancient Deputations both to Sir William Philip, and Sir John Falstaff. Power is given their Proctors first to demand, receive. and obtain their principal Stalls, and next to tender their Helms, and Swords, to be hung up in the Choir of Windsor, according to Custom: And for clearer Informa: tion of the course of this Ceremony, that the Sovereign impowered his Commissioners, first to give the Deputy Possession of his Principal's Stall, and after to receive the Archievements, and place them over it: This is to be considered as a Memorial of the Knights being installed a Companion of the Order, and 'tis incongruous in the Rules of Honour to have the Sign or a Memorial of an Action precede the Action it seit.

Again, the Statutes expressly provide, that the Knights Archievements shall not be hung up, till the Duties and Fees enjoined are first discharged; and 'tis certain, there.

are no Fees due, nor can be claimed, till the Ceremonies on which they become due are entirely finished. But to clear all Doubts which may arise upon this Point, it was at a Chapter held at White-Hall, the fourth of February, 22 Car. II. ordained, That not any of the Atchievements of an elect Knight's Stall be set up in the Chappel at Windfor, before he be installed, and the Fees of Installation paid.

And though this was the Practice anciently, yet were the Atchievements always prepared and brought to Windfor, and fet before the elect Knight's Stall; and in case of his not coming to receive Installation, then, being no otherwise placed, they might be the easier removed without the Choir, in as decent manner as could be, so that the Honour of Knighthood might be preserved entire; nevertheless, to be retained for publick Use, and the Be-

nesit of the College.

Where mention is made in the Annals of any Person employed to set up the Atchievements of a Knight, it is to be understood that he was his Proctor, and installed on his behalf: And there appears but one single Instance where one Person hath hung up a Knight's Atchievements, when another was installed for him; and this happen'd 14th of August, Anno 29 Hen. VI. where the Lord Rivers having been elected to the Stall of the Lord Hungerford, his Sword and Helm were soon after (sent) hung up by William Bobden, his Esq; and Guyen Herald, and he installed the 30 ORober following, by Sir William Crafford his Proctor; but this was contrary to the Law of the Order.

Where the setting up of a Knight's Archievements is barely mentioned, without taking notice of the Installation, it is to be understood, that such Knight's Installation was also solemniz'd at that Time: As in the case of the King of Portugal, of whom the Annals only note, that he had taken care to set over his Stall, Helm, Sword, and Banner, and all things belonging thereto, at the Feast at Windsor, 2 Henry VI. In what manner these Atchievements are fixed, appears by the Statutes; the Helm and Crest to be set over each Knight-Companion's Stall, and the Sword to hang directly under them; but the Plate to be nailed to the back of the Knight's Stall.

C A P.

C A P. XIII.

The Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy.

The Original Cause of making Proxies:

Here was no liberty given at the Institution of the Order, for a Knight-Subject to be installed by his Proctor or Deputy; but on the contrary, in the Founder's Statutes was inferted this express Prohibition. That none of the Knights elect should be permitted to be installed by Proxy, unless be were & Stranger. And this Law continued unaltered till the Reign of Henry V. when John Duke of Bedford, the Sovereign's Deputy for holding the Feast of St. George at Windsor, 7 Henry V. and other the Knights-Companions then present, took it into Consideration; that where a Knight-Subject, elected into the Order, was at that Time employed beyond Sea, in the Service of his Prince, and likely to continue in that Service sometime, it was agreed, that the said Duke should make an Address to the Sovereign, by Letters under the Seal of the Order, (he being then employed in the War against France,) that in the like cases his Majesty would Ordain, That Knights-Subjects might, as well as Strangers, be admitted into the Order, notwithstanding the Clause in the Statutes.

It likewise appears from that Letter, as well as from the Blue-Book, that Sir John Grey, and the Lord Bourehier, had been installed at the aforesaid Feast, by their several Proxies; which the Sovereign's Deputy concurr'd with, out of great Respect to their Persons; lest by a too rigid Observance of the Statutes, by their absence in the Wars, where they were then loyally employed, and might meet their Deaths, they should want the defired Suffrages of those Masses, ordained to be Sung for a defunct Knight; as had happen'd to several by unsuffected delays. But to clear this matter, for the suture it was Decreed, 9 Hen. V. That where any elect Knight was

actually in the Sovereign's Wars, or otherwise employed Abroad on his Sovereign's Affairs, he should posses the Privilege of a Stranger in this particular; which Decree was added to King Henry Vth's Statutes. And it was soon after enjoined the elect Knight, on notice of his Election, to take care timely to appoint his Proctor, that he might enjoy the Rights and Privileges of a Founder: Such an Obligation was laid on Sir John Falstaff, who, at the reception of the Garter, was in France, employed in the Sovereign's Service.

But King Henry VIII. befides his Confirmation of this Decree, for allowance of a Proxy in the aforesaid two Cases, farther enlarged it, to such as the Sovereign should either Command, or permit Licence to be installed by Proxy, which is to be understood of Knights elect within the Kingdom, as well as those beyond Sea: By Virtue of which Clause, the elect Knight, the Earl of Dorse being Sick, 1 Car. I. obtained the Sovereign's Licence to

be installed by his Deputy Sir Richard Toung.

Letters of Procuration.

§ 2. It is observed before, out of the Registrum Chareaceum, that Sir John Robesare, elected into the Order by King Henry V. was installed by Virtue of his Lerrer Missive, sent to Sir Thomas Barr his Proxy; but the same Register calls it, in another Place, a sufficient Procuration under his Seal of Arms, enabling him to perform

the Ceremony of his Installation.

The Copy of this Instrument is not extant; but that Letter Missive Sir John Grey directed to Sir John Liste, to take Possession of his Stall, and by Virtue of which he was installed, talls him be had Chosen him for his Proxy, and to take his Stall for him in his Name, &c. And omitting other Precedents, doubtless, in the case of a Knight-Subject, the Sovereign may, if he pleases, nominate and appoint a Proxy for Installation, where the elect Knight hath not done it himself; for here, all those Considerations of grand Respect, Forms of the Oath, &c. constantly afforded to Strangers, have no Place; which is evident from the Sovereign's Letters of Summons to the Commissioners named for Installation of the Lord Grey,

4 and 5 Phil. and Mar. who at that time was Prisoner in France, and his Deputy Sir Humphy Radeliffe, is therein mentioned to be appointed by the Sovereign

berfelf.

The first Precedent of Letters of Procuration, or Deputation, drawn into a solemn form, is that made by Sir William Phelip, 5 Hen. V. by which, having obtained the Sovereign's Licence, he impowers two Knights, Sir Andrew Butrely, and Sir John Henington, or either of them, as their Business would permit, to supply his Place, and take Possession of his Stall, in the Choir at Windsor.

Qualifications of a Proxy.

Knight-Subject, are the same with those requisite in the Proctor of a Stranger, of which something will fall in our Way hereaster; I shall therefore only in general observe here, that to neither Knight-Subject, nor Stranger, the Proctor is to be under the Degree of a Knight, enobled with Arms, and of an honest and untainted Reputation; it being judg'd proper chiesly in this Point, that a Knight-Subject should exactly observe the same Rule enjoined to Strangers; in respect of which, it is very remarkable, that Sir William Liste, though one of the Alms-Knights, yet in Degree a Knight, was not resused to be Proctor to Sir John Grey, 7 Hen. V.

Preparations for Installation.

94. The Day for Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy, being appointed by the Sovereign, there are to be provided for him, first, a Commission for Installation, which by the Chancellor of the Order is presented to the Sovereign for his Sign Manual; to which is after assisted, the Seal of the Order: And appoints, 1. To conduct the Proctor to Windsor-Castle. 2. To put him in Possession, as from the Sovereign, of the Stall assigned his Principal. 3. To invest him with all the Benefits, Honours, Prerogatives, Franchises, and Liberties thereto belonging. 4. To receive his Mantle, Helm, and Sword, and set them up in their appointed Places. 3. To add thereto

thereto all usual Ceremonies. 6. Lastly, an Injunction to all the Knights to permit all the Solemnity punctually to be performed: An ancient Precedent of this is found 5 Hen. V. in the case of Sir John Falstaff: Also 2 Edw. IV. at the Installation of the Barl of Wortester, and other elect

Knights, by their Proxies.

Of later Times, the Commissions granted on such Occasions differ from those made for the Personal Installation of the Knights themselves, only by premising the Cause of their Principal's Absence, and Service he is then employed on; authorizing the Commissioners to admix the Proxy into his Stall: Likewise where the Installation is performed by two or more Commissioners, the Sovereign directs Letters to each of them, giving notice of the intended Solemnisy, and requiring them to attend at a Day prefixt, to the end the Proxy may be put into Possession of his Principal's Stall.

And as there is, upon admiffion of an elect Knight, infalled by Proxy, the same ground for removal of Stalls, as in personal Installations; so the Sovereign issues out Warrants to Garter, some time before the Solemnity, to remove the Archievements and Plares, as usual, and place thom in the Order such Warrants direct. Anciently the Stall for an elect Knight, was affigned in the Commission issued for Installation, as in the case of Sir Henry Ingbouse, Proctor to Sir John Falstaff, 5 Henry V.

The reft of the Particulars to be provided against the Day of Installation, are at the Knight's own Charge, and

are agreeable with those in Personal Installations.

Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 5. The next thing to be considered, is the Proxies Place in proceeding to the Chapter-House, and this is immediately after the Provincial King of Arms, because as yet he hath not taken Possession of his Principal's Stall; which done, it gives him a Place in his return according to its Dignity. In this Order the Process of the Marquiss of Newcostle, and the Earl of Bristol, proceeded (Bare-headed,) 13 Car. II.

And though this be the Proctor's usual Place in this Proceeding, yet Sir Henry Sidney, Proctor to the Earl of A a 2

Warnink, 5 Bliz, proceeded immediately before the elect

Knights; which is the only instance of that kind.

Lastly, the Proctor, as in the case of an elect Knight, passes into the East-sile, behind the High-Altar, as soon as he comes within St. George's Chappel, while the Sovereign, Lieutenant, or Commissioners, proceed into the Chapter-House, and there reposeth himself till he is sent for in; as in the case of the Marquis of Newcastle and Earl of Bristel above: But if the Proxy pass not in the Proceeding, he then goes privately to his Place, before the Proceeding sets forward.

Transactions in the Chapter House.

§ 6. After the Chapter is opened, the first thing done, is for Garter to present the Commissions, which he carried in the Proceeding thither, as well that for the Lieutenancy, (if a Lieutenant held the Feast,) as of Installation, for admitting a Proxy, the Order of

which is observed before.

The Letters of Procuration, or Deputation, are next read, after which the Proxy is fent for into the Chapter-House by Garter, who conducts him to the Door, and there the Commissioners, or Alfstants, or Knights-Companions, receive him. But 5 Eliz. Sir Henry Sidney exhibited his Deputation, after he was called in : Or sometimes the Proxy produces his Deputation before the Proceeding to the Chapter-House, as Sir George Howard, Deputy to the Earl of Bedford, did, 6 Eliz. And in such case there is no need of admitting the Proxy into the Chapter-House, but that he may stay without, till the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commissioners, are past into the Choir, and he fent for thither; at which time the Mantle was wont to be laid on his right Arm at the Chapter-Honse Door, by the Knights-Companions appointed to introduce him.

Anciently, as soon as the Proxy was admitted into the Chapter-House, and the Letters of Procuration were read, the Manele of his Principal was usually laid on his right Arm by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, or Commissioners, and part of it spread on the Proxies Shoulders, the Escurcheon of St. George lying uppermost, and the Cordons

laid

laid fair to be seen; and in this manner he bore it in the Proceeding to the Stall, where he held it till Service was ended; but its now ordered otherwise, as by the direction of King Charles II. that the Mantle

should be born on the left Arm.

But 5 Eliz. the Earl of Warnick's Proctor had the Mamle born before him into the Choir by Gareer, in the same manner as is usual to Knights Personally installed; and not delivered him, till he had taken the Oath; and at the delivery thereof, the Words of Admonition were pronounced by the Register; as it was observed to the Proxies of the Marquits of Newcastle, and the Earl of Bristol, 13 Car. II.

Proceeding to the Choir.

- 5 7. The Proxy proceeds from the Chapter-House Door, between the Sovereign's Commissioners, &c. But touching the Order of this Proceeding, so much has already been said, that we shall give but one Instance, Anno 6 Elizabeth.
 - 1. Verger.

2. Alms-Knights.

3. Officers of Arms.

4. Officers of the Order.

5. Lord Hunfdon, Proctor to the Lord Cobbam.

6. Barl of Bedford.

Ceremonies performed in the Choir.

68. The Proceeding having entered the Choir, the Commissioners, &c. conduct the Proxy into the lower Stall, directly under that defigued for his Principal, where the Register reads the Words of the Oath, while the Proxy, laying his Hand on the Book, repeats them after him, and Kisses the Book: And this Oath his Deputation impowers him to take, in the Name of his Principal; the Form of the Oath having no difference from the Oath taken Personally by an elect Knight.

The Oath being taken in this solemn manner, the Proctor is led up to the Stall of his Principal, where both A a 3 the

the Knights, who conducted him into the Choir, first take the Mantle, and lay it on his Arm, next laying their Hands on him, in the Name of his Lord and Master, from whom he received his Depatation, set him down therein: And so the Ceremony of Installation being fully

ended, the Service of the Church begins.

If the Installation be performed in the Morning, there is an Offering of Gold and Silver; at which time the Proxy in his turn comes from his Principal's Stall, and stands before it, and when the Sovereign, or the Lieutenant for him, and for himself, or else the Commissioners, and the rest of the Knights-Companions present, have offered, then the Proxy (being joined to the Knight, sitting in the opposite Stall, if present at the Solemnity, and having two Officers of Arms before them,) proceeds to the High Altar, and there offers both Gold and Silver; and then seturns, and takes his Stall as the rest do. In this manner the Earl of Warwick's Proxy, joining with the Earl of Northumberland, installed at the same time, proceeded to the Offering, 5 Eliz. As likewise the Proctor to the Earl of Bedford, with the Lord Hunsdon, 6 Eliz.

The Ceremony of the Offering being finished, the Service of the Church goes on, which being over, the Proceeding returns in the same Order it came to the Chapter-Honse, except, that now the Proxy takes his Place according to the Dignity of his Stall. But in regard the Statutes expresly declare; That after the Proxy hath been admitted to his Principal's Stall, he shall neither wear the Mantle, nor have any Voice in Chapter, nor enter there in the absence of him that sent him; so that it was the ancient Practice to take off the Mantle from his Arm at the Chapter-House Door, in his return from the Choir, and delivered to the Verger of the Chappel, though sometimes to the Season, at other times to Garter, also to the Black-Rod, who hath taken it from off the Proxies Arm, and carried it into the Chapter-House; this done, the Proxy retires privately out of the Proceeding to his Lodging.

It appears however, but by what indulgence is not mentioned, that though Garrer took the Manela from Sir Henry Sidney, 5 Eliz. at the Chapter-House Door, on the Evening he returned from Installation; yet the next Morning

Morning he rode in the Procession to the Chapel, the Celebration of the Feast of St. George continuing, with the Mantle or his right Arm; and having entered the Choir, took his Principal's Stall, beasing likewise the Mantle in the grand Procession, at the Offering of Money, and during Divine Service, and from the Chappel to the Castle to Dinner: And the like in the Asternoon of the said Day, he rode on Horse-back in the Proceeding to the Chapter-House Door, but there the Mantle was taken from him, and laid within upon the Table, whilst he retired into the East-Isle of the Chappel, and at the rising of the Chapter, it was again delivered to him, whence he proceeded in his Principal's Place to the second Vespers.

Next Morning, the Lieutenant, and Affifants, having ended the Chapter, the Mantle was again laid on his Arm, and in that manner he passed to his Principal's Stall, and afterwards offered, as on the Feast Day. The Morning Service ended, the Lieutenant and Assistants returned to the Chapter-House Door, where they put off their Mantles, and at the same time the Sexton of the College

received the Mantle from him,

The Grand Dinner,

99. At Dinner the Proxy fits with the Lieutenant or Commissioners, and takes Place where his Principal should fit if he were pretent; and this was so observed at the Installation of the Earl of Warnick, 5 Eliz.

The Stile of the Knight installed by Proxy, is proclaimed in French, or English, in the usual Form and Place, as 25 Hen. VIII. at the Installations of the Earls of Beaument and Newblanke, by their Proxies; for they were Knight-Subjects, though not to the Sovereign, and therefore not improper to be made use of as an Instance. To conclude, the Proctor is to take care that the Atchievements and Plate of his Principal are set up in their proper Places, which appears not only from the ancient Letters of Procuration, but also by Commissions of Installation, which appoint that the Sovereign's Deputy should receive from the Proctor his Principal's Helm and A 2 4

Sword, (for there is no mention of the Banner till afterwards.) and place it over his Stall.

C A P. XIV.

The Signification of Election to Strangers.

Within what time, and in what manner, Certificate is made of their Election.

In Interest that Strangers e'ect, are for the most part Sovereign Princes, whose Assairs obliged them to abide in their own Dominions, and very rarely permitted them to receive Personal Installation, it was thought fit to allow them several Privileges, by the Founder of this most Noble Order, and principally, that of giving previous and timely Notice of their Elections, and convenient time of consideration for Acceptance; affording Investiture in their own Countries, and permitting their Installations to be performed at Windsor by their Proxies or Deputies.

It was therefore by the Statutes ordained: That when any such should be chosen into the Order, they should be certified of their Elections by the Sovereign; and befides, that, at his Charge, the Garter should be sent over to them, with the Mantle and Statutes of the Order, Scaled with the common Seal; so that they might have notice, at least within four Months from the time of Election, to the end they might advise and determine with themselves, from the Tenor of the Statutes, whether they would re-

ceive the Honour of this most Noble Order.

In Pursuance of these Directions, it became customary for the Sovereign, when he sent his Letters, to send also, and that by way of solemn Embassy, the Habit and Ensigns or the Order, with a Book of the Statutes; and in case the Election were accepted, Investiture might be received before the return of the Persons, by whom the Habit

Habit was fant. As upon the Elections of Edward, King of Portugal, at the Fealt of St. George, 13 Hen. VI. the Duke of Urbin, 14 Edw. IV. and several others.

The right of bearing these Letters signifying Election, and returning the Strangers Answer, belongs to Garrer, by the Constitutions of his Office. And though Certificate of Election was to be made within four Months from she time of Election, yet King Henry VIII. added this necessary Clause: That when the Sovereign had any great or high Impediment, he might defer certifying the Election till a more convenient Time. As may be seen in the case of Frederick III. Emperor of Germany, in the time of Henry VI. who having been elected 35 of that King, had not Letters sent him to signify it till the next Year. It likewise appears, that Letters to the same Effect were then likewise dispatched to the King of Arragon, the Duke of Brumswick, and King of Poland, who had been elected eight Years before.

And yet we find it recorded, that the Habit and Enfigure of the Order were fent by special Ambassadors to all three, 34 Hen. VI. two Years before: But perhaps this ought to be understood of their being but then design d, and ordered to be sent, and on second Thoughts might be stopped, or if sent, by some accident might have miscarried; otherwise it seems needless to have sent other Letters to give notice of their Election two Years after: But to clear this matter, we after find a second mention of sending the Habit and Ensigns to the King of Poland, 37 Hen, VI. by which it is demonstrable, that the first

Embzify took no Effect.

It does not appear that King Hen. VIII. or any of his Successors, ever made use of that Libercy granted by the aforesaid Article of his Seasures, for deferring the fignificatory Letters of Election beyond the time appointed by the Seasures of Institution, as we find by the many Instances of that kind. Francis the first King of France was elected Ottober 22. 19 Hen. VIII. and was installed the 25 January following; so that 'tis plain, the Letters of No. Pice, must needs have been dispatched within the limited Time. Junes, V. of Scotland, who was elected 20 Jan. 26 Hen. VIII. had notice of Election immediately sent him; and Hens II., of France, having been elected 24 April,

April, 5 Edw. VI. had Letters of Signification sent him in May following; and so in all Examples since. And when King Charles II. elected any Stranger whilst he was Abroad, Letters of Signification were sent them immediately after.

Of notice given of an Election, before fending the Habit.

§ 2. Here it is to be observed, with how much caution, more than the former, the Statutes of King Henry VIII. Ordain, to fend Letters that signify Election, and the Book of Statutes only at first; but not the Garter and Mantle, till the elect Stranger, having had time to confule the Statutes, certifies his acceptance of the Order; and then, and not before, it is Decreed to fend a folemn Embaffy with the whole Habit, George, and Collar: And consonant to this, the Practice hath sometimes been. As in the case of Henry II. King of France, 5 Edw. VI. Emanuel, Duke of Savoy, 1 and 2 Phil: and Mar. and in that of Frederick, Duke of Wirrembergh, to whom Queen Elizabeth sent Letters soon after his Election, and he returned Thanks, and Acceptation, by his two Ambassadors, who received Promise of sending the whole Habit foon after; however, the same were not sent during her Life.

Notice of Election sent with the Habit.

§ 3. When the Sovereign hath been well affured of the viest Stranger's acceptance, the same Embassy (as anciently before adding this Clause,) dispatched both Ceremonies. The Sovereign's Letter signifying Election, being sirst presented, together with the Book of Statutes, and an acceptance declared, then within sew Days, the whole Habit of the Order was solemnly delivered.

And thus it was directed soon after the Election of James V. King of Score, to the Lord Willam Howard; sent on that Embassy; and in like manner, at the Election of Christian IV. King of Denmark, 1 Jac. I. to the Barl of

Rutland

Rusland sent on that Embassy. As also to Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, and Henry, Prince of Orange, within two Months, their Elections following on April 24, 3 Car. I. and the date of the Commission for delivering the Order being on June 24. following.

The manner and order of the delivery of these Letters, signifying Election, when the Habit is sent, is thus.

" First. The Ambassador and Officer of Arms having " notice given them of the first Audience, present them-" selves to the Stranger Prince, in the accustomed man-"ner of Ambassadors; and delivering the Sovereign's "Letters Missive, with all due Reverence, the Ambas-" fador, after some short general Compliment from the " Sovereign, fignifying that his Master, and the Honourable " Society of the Garter, in respect of his renowned Prow-" els, Valour, Virtues, &c. and to establish and encréase " the Amity that is between them, hath elected him into 44 the most Noble Order of St. George; and that So-" vereigns do never elect any Stranger, but fuch as they " highly Honour; and therefore earnestly defires it may " be accepted as a true Testimony thereof: To which " end the Sovereign bath sent him over, and his Herald " there present, to perform the due Ceremonies.

But this Commission of Legation hath sometimes been obstructed by the multitude of Affairs lying on the Sovereign's Hands, particularly in the Time of Car. I. when engaged in that unnarral Civil War; so that when they sent their Letters of Signification, it was thought fit to Commissionate their Agent, or Resident at the Prince's Court, and Garter Principal King of Arms, to deliver part; but the two chief and most peculiar Ensigns of the Order, viz. the Garter and George, deserring the solemn Embassy till a more convenient Season. The first Precedent of which kind, was so Jac. I. when Sir Ralph Winwood, and William Scagar, Esq. Garter, were Commissioned to deliver only, for the present, the Garter and George, to Maurice, Prince of Orange, sive Days after his Election; and so to Charles, Prince Palatine of the

Rhine. o Car. I. and to William, Prince of Orange, and the Duke de Espernon, the same Reign. And so likewise during the unhappy Exile of King Charles II. it was usual. for want of more conveniency, to present the elect Knight. In confirmation of his Election, whether he were Strangers or Subject, with the Garter, George, Ribband; and sometimes a St. George's Cross, radicated within a Garter, to be fixed on the left Shoulder of their Cloaks, or upper Garments. But these things after returned into their proper Channel, as we may see in several cases since. of which we need not instance more, than that of the present Sovereign, and his Royal Highness the Prince: The former at a Chapter of the most Noble Order, held at Konsington, 18 June, 1701. 13 Will III. was elected, and on the 21 June, the Sovereign, by Commission under the Great Seal of the Order, constituted the Earl of Macclesfield, and Gregory King, Elq; Lancaster Herald. (then Deputy Garter King of Arms,) to carry the Habit and Ensigne, and to invest his then Electoral Highness therewith. The next Day after their arrival, at a private Audience, his Electoral Highnels received the Garter and George, with the usual Formalities; and two Days after, viz. 24 August, was solemnly invested with the whole Habit of the Order. On 13 March following, 1702-3. he was installed at Windfor by his Proxy Charles, Lord Mebus, with the accustomed Ceremonies. The same Order was observed at the Election of his Royal Highness the Prince, 4 April, 5 Queen Anne; when the Lord Halifax, and John Vanbruge, Esq;, Clarenceux King of Arms, (in the room of Sir Henry St. John, Knight Garter,) were Commission'd to carry the Habit and Enfigue. They had their first Audience, on this occasion, of the Prince, the 31 May, who afterwards received the Garter and leffer George, and on 2 June following, was invested with the whole Habit and Enfigns of the Order.

Certificates of Acceptation.

§ 4. After delivering the Sovereign's Letter, fignifying Election by the Ambassador, and the elect Stranger doth readily

readily accept the Order, he is obliged, by the Statutes, to return the Sovereign a Certificate of fuch his Acceptance, and defire of Ratification. And 'tis observable, before the additional Clause made by King Honry VIII. this ceremonious Course had been the Practice of ancient Times; and both expected from, and observed by the King of Denmark, who having been elected, 6 Hen. V. was the eighth of the same King taken notice of for not returning, before that Time, an Answer, whether he accepted the Honour or no: And it appears, before the next Feast of St. George, he sent over his ready Acceptance, both of the Honour of Election, and of the Ensigns of the Order; and thereupon Directions were given for his Installation by the Lord Fier Hugh, his Proxy.

But for an instance, after the said additional Clause, there is one remarkable enough, in the Preumble of the Sovereign's Credensial Letters to the Duke of Savoy, I and 2 Phil. and Mar. sent with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order; in which it appears: That the Sovereign having given notice of his Election into this most Noble Order, he had returned back his cheerful and ready Acceptance of, and singular Savisfaction in the said Choice; and therefore core

dially wished it might attain its due Effett.

In succeeding Times it was thought necessary, where the whole Habis was sent to a Stranger, together with the Sovereign's Letters of notice, to make a provisional Decrée, (which passed, 13 Can I) Thus Garter, and all others, whom he pleased to join in Commission with him, should be most punctually careful, that they delivered not the Business of the Order to any elect Stranger, till they were satisfied, by his Letters Parent, of his kind and grateful. Asseptance thereof; ot in case of refusal, to sorbear their Presentation.

And the same care was also taken, where only the Garter and George were sent; as appears by, the Instructions sent, 19 Car. I. to Sir William Bosmel, then appointed by the Sovereign to present those two principal Ensigns to William, Prince of Orange; where, among other things, he is expressly commanded, To take a Tesimonial from the said Prince, of his kind Acceptation thereof, before be should deliver those Ensigns of Honour to him: So likewise in the Institutions of the same Date, for delivery

livery of the Gener and George to the Duke de Bf.

Of an Election not accepted.

5, That sometimes this Honour bath not been accepted, appears in the fingle case of Philip II. Duke of Burgundy, who having been elected by King Henry V. then in France; had not, Anna I Henry VI. lent his Answer. It was therefore concluded on at the Feast of St. George held at Windsor the said Year, by Humpbry, Duke of Gloucester, then Deputy to the Sovereign, and by, and with the unanimous confent of the Knights-Companions present, to send Letters to the said elect Duke, by which he was defired to know, whether he gave his Acceptance or no? The Duke of Burgundy, it seems, made no Answer to this Letter: It was therefore again debated at the next Year's Feaft, and then thought fit, so fend Perfons over to him with the Nomination, who should press him for his final Answer. And then it appears, that the said Duke weighing the Statutes, and reflecting on the Quarrels between the Duke of Gloucester, and the Duke of Brabans his Unckle, made a plausible Excuse, refusing the Election, left he should be forced either distancerably to violate the pious Constitutions of the Order, or the obligations of Alliance; and upon this they proceeded to a new Election.

But this is the only inftance of this kind; and it hath been the conftant way of all elect Strangers, not only to accept, but to receive with the highest Marks of Sazisfaction, the notice of their Election, and the Investiture

of the Order.

CAP.

C A P. XV.

The Investiture of Strangers, with she Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

The Time for sending the Habit and Ensigns un-

Hough the Statutes of the Order appoint and prefix a time, wherein the Sovereign's Leavest of notice to an elect Knight ought to be fent, yet as to the sending a solemn Embassy with the Habir and Ensigns, they do not limit any certain time, but leave it wholly to the Sovereign's Pleasure, wherein his own Interest and Conveniency, as well as that of the eless sense ger, is to be considered.

Nevertheless, the Statutes of Institution direct, that this Legation shall be dispatched with convenient speed s which must be interpreted to refer both to the Sovereign's conveniency of sending, and the Stranger's capacity of re-

ceiving.

And therefore we find it fix Years after the Election of the Kings of Arragon and Paland, and the Duke of Brunfwick, e'er we meet with the first notice of the Sovereign's determination of sending over the Habit: For they having been elected 4 Angust, 28 Hon. VI. the preparations for the Legation were not made till the thirty sourth Year of the same King; and doubtless some cause, within the limits of that conveniency allowed to the Sovereign by the aforesaid Article of the Statutes, or the accident of Miscarriage might fall out; particularly in respect to the King of Poland, because three Years after the sormer Order of Legation, we find new Directions issued for sending the Ensigns of the Order to him.

But in King Henry VIIIth's Body of Statutes, this Clause of sending the Legation with convenient speed, is wholly omitted, and the Sovereign is not limited as to the Time; so that the Habit and Ensigns have happen'd to be sent sometimes sooner, sometimes later; as the So-

Acteido

vereign has thought convenient; of which sufficient hath been said already; and we find in two Elections of Strangers in the two late Reigns, viz. that of the present Sovereign and Prince; that the Legation was sent only a year few Days after their Election.

Preparations made for the Legation.

12. In reference to this solemn Embally, there are several things to be provided, before the Ambassadors, or Commissioners, take their Journey. As, (1.) Credential Letters. (2.) Commission of Legation (3.) Ware rants for the Habis and Ensigns. And (4.) other Necessaries.

The Credential Letters are, as to particulars, drawn suitable to the present Occasion, by the Chambillar of the Order, and directed to the Stranger elest; but the Substance, in general, is, That the Supereign basing elested him into the Society of the Order, hath sent his Ambassandars with full Power to present the Habit, and perform the Coremonies due and accustomed, as if himself were present. And farther, to desire him, To give Credit to all that his Ambassadors shall say, or perform, outhis behalf, in reference to their Comm ssion, as he would do so himself.

These Letters pass tinder the Sign Manual of the Sovereign, and Signet of the Order; but it is observable, that these to Emanuel, Duke of Savor, were figned both

by King Philip and Queen Mary!

The Commission of Legation is likewise to be present by the Chancellor of the Order, fully engrossed on Velom, and Sealed with the Great Sent of the Order, the Subflance of which, for the most part, hath been as follows.

First, The Merits and Worthiness of the slett Stranger, to deserve the Honour of Election, and the reasons of inducing the Sovereign to confer the same upon him, are

elegantly set forth.

Secondly, The Persons nominated for this Honourable Employment, are ordained, authorized, and deputed, and therein Stiled, Ambassadors, Procurators, and special Messengers, and so are acknowledged to be by the Seranger elest, in their Certificates of the Receipt of the Habit.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, Their Power, Authority, and special Command, is to address themselves to the Stranger elect, and present, and deliver him from the Sovereign, the Garter, Manele, and other Ensigns of the Order: Where observe, that there were four or five joined in a Commission, as it has sometimes happened, then any five, four, three, or two, were of the Quorum; whereof the Principal of the Embassy was always one.

Fourthly, They were impowered to require from the Stranger elect, his Oath, according to the Form prescribed in the Statutes; but this was a special case, and only inferted in the Commissions of Legation to Charles, Duke of Burgundy, 9 Edw. IV. and Ferdinand, Archdeacon of Austria, 15 Hen. VIII, and omitted in all Commissions

fince that time.

And lastly, To perform, and dispatch those things, which they should judge necessary, in the same manner as if the Sovereign were present in Person; and this Power it was thought fit to allow the Ambassadors, in case any thing should want to be performed which their Instructions had not sufficiently provided for.

The first Embassy on this occasion, recorded in the Blue-Book, is that to Edward, King of Portugal, 13 Hen. VI. to whom, for the greater Dignity of the Order, Garter was thought fit, by the Chapter, to be sent alone with the Habit of the Order: And hence is the original of Garter's

Claim to this Employment.

Nevertheles, in succeeding times, as the Order grew into Esteem, some one of the Knights-Companions was made choice of by the Sovereign to be Principal in these Legations; as were Galliard Sieur de Duras, sent to Charles, Duke of Burgundy, 9 Edw. IV. Arthur Plantagenet, Viscount Liste, to Francis the first King of France.

19 Hen. VIII. and others.

Sometimes other Noblemen, or Persons of Quality, though not Knights-Companions, (yet correspondent to the Degree of the Stranger elect, or to the Esteem the present Interest begat in the Sovereign,) were employed chief in these Embassies; among whom Sir Charles Somerfet, after Earl of Worcester, was sent to the Emperor Maximilian, 6 Hen. VII. Henry, Lord Mosley, to Don Ferminand, Prince of Spain, 15 Hen. VIII. and others.

11

In Embassies of this nature, it was heretofore usual, to join some Persons of Rank and Quality, or Office near the Sovereign, in the Commission; as Sir John Sess, Comptroller of the Houshold, and Sir Thomas Vaughan, Treasurer of the Houshold, both joined with the Sieur de Duras aforesaid: And Sir Nicholas Carew, and Sir Anthony Brown, with the Viscount Liste.

To these Persons, the Sovereign thought sit sometimes to add a Doctor of the Law, or a dignissed Clergyman, and such as had the Language of the Country, not only the better to make such Answers to Questions as the Stranger elect might start, on persolal of the Statutes, but likewise to inform him touching the Institution of the Order, or other Passages relating to the Founder, or matters touching the Honour of the Garter. Besides, a dignissed Clergyman was in those Times thought proper to Administer the Oath, and pronounce the Words of Signification, at the Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

And for these reasons, was John Ruffel, Doctor of the Civil Law, and Archdeacon of Berksbire, joined in Commission with the aforesaid Sieur de Duras, and Edward Lee, Doctor in Divinity, Archdeacon of Colebester, and the Sovereign's Almoner, sent over with the Lord Morley;

and others.

But of later Years the Sovereign's Ambassador, Resident with the Stranger elect, hath supplied this Place; as did Sir Thomas Smith, in the Legation sent over to Charles IX. and Sir Edward Stafford, in that of the French King Henry III.

and Sir Anthony Mildmay, to that of Henry IV.

Besides the aforementioned Persons, Garter was always joined in these Commissions of Legation, not only to keep on Foot his Right, but to manage the Ceremonious Part 3 and of this there are so many numerous Instances as are sufficient to justify the Privilege of his Office, and maintain the interest of an ancient Right. Besides which, if it were any way disputed, we find it decreed in a Chapter 13 Car. I. That the carrying the Ensigns of the Order to Stranger Princes, doth properly belong to Garter.

Besides those Persons joined in the Commission of Legation, there has frequently been appointed, either Norrey, King of Arms, or some one of the Heralds, to go in Quality of an Attendant in this Service, not only for the

Honour

Honour of the Sovereign, bur of the Stranger who is to receive the Habit, in regard the Ceremonies of Investigate with the whole Habit, require the Affiftance of two Officers of Arms, of which there are some Precedents.

Lancaster Herald attended the Embassy to Charles IX. King of France: Chefter Herald, and Rouge Dragon; Pursuivant at Arms, on that of Henry III. of France. A Herald likewise attended the Embassy to Emanuel, Duke of Savoy: York Herald, that of Maximilian, the Emperor:

And Somerset Herald, to Henry IV. of France.

And whereas there went only Norroy to Christian IV. King of Denmark, it was because no more of the Officers of Arms could then be spared from their necessary Attendance on the Sovereign's Coronation; fo in the Banbally to Maurice, Prince of Orange, one Herald sufficed, because the Garter and George only were sent him, and consequently there was but little Service then to be performed.

Concerning other Companions, and Attendants, in these Legations, they are both for Quality and Number such. and so many, as the chief in the Legation judges sufficient for the Honour of the Sovereign, and the Dignity of the Embassy; and with these have usually gone several Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen.

In the third Place, there is to be prepared for these Legations. Warrants for the Habit and Enfigns of the Order and these are also to be drawn up by the Chancellor of the Order, who is to attend the Sovereign for his Sign Manu-

al thereto.

One Warrant is to be directed to the Master of the Great Wardrobe, to deliver to Garter the Mantle, with the Bscutcheon of St. George within a Garter, embroidered on the left Shoulder, and Toffels belonging; and also the Surcoat and Hood.

There is also another Warrant drawn up, for the delivery of the Enfigns of the Order to Garter, vix. the rich Garter, and great Collar of the Order, with a George Pendant, and another George hanging in a blue Ribbond; together with Cases for them, lined with purple Velvet, and gilt on the outlide.

And sometimes these Ensigns have been delivered out of the Jewel-House, to the Herald of Arms, joined in the Legation in Gareer's Read, as were those sent to Charles,

King of Sweden, 20 Car. IL but those provided for John George, Duke of Saxony, to Sir Thomas Higgons, the Principal in the Legation; for which they gave their several

Receipts.

The Sovereign's Warrant for the delivery of the Enfigns fent to Maximilian the Emperor, was directed to the Lord Treasurer, for which Garter gave his Receipt. But for those sent to the French King, Henry IV. the Warrant was directed to the Master of the Jewel-House; and out of this Office have all the Ensigns of the Order been since delivered.

There are several other necessaries to be provided, which may pass as Appurtenances to the former, and are sometimes incerted in the Sovereign's Warrants for the Habit of the Order, and at other times issued by particular Warrants: As a black Velvet Cap with white Feathers and a Heron Sprig, a Girdle and Hangers with the same coloured Velvet, with the Surcoat. A Yard of purple Velvet hath usually been allowed out of the Great Wardrobe, for covering the Book of Statutes, sent to the elect Stranger: And for the Velom, Writing and Binding the said Book, there is a Fee paid by the Sovereign to the Register of the Order, which hath generally been proportioned to the Dignity of the Receiver; for this Officer had allowed him for the Book sent,

and a second second	6.	5.	a.
To the French King, Henry IV.	5	0	0
To John Casimir, Count Palatine	4	0	0
To the Duke of Holftein, 3 Jac. I.	3	6	8
To the King of Sweden, 3 Car. I.	3	0	0

But to be more particular, we will insert the Bill of Charges for the Book of Statutes, sent to James VI. of Scotland, 26 Hen. VIII.

	l.	s.	d.
For Velom	Ó	5	0
For illumining the Arms and Letters	0	10	6
For Writing	1	0	0
For Binding and Gilding	0	2	8
For half a Yard of purple Velvet	b	7	0
For half a Yard of purple Velvet For half a Yard of crimson Sattin	ò	7	0
For the purple Silk for the Laces	0	ó	4
For the white and green Silk for the Seal	0	1	ŏ
D. Commission of the Commissio		F)ť

\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	l.	· s,	d.
For red Silk for the Strings, and garnishing the Book	}°	1	0
For an Ounce and half of Venice Gold	Ŏ.	5	0
For shaping, making the Bag, and garnishing	0	3	4
For red Sarcener for lining the Bag	b	1	4
For a Box	•	0	8
Total	3	4	6

This Book of Seatures ought to be Sealed with the common Seal of the Order, which not only the Initiration, but all the other succeding Bodies of Statutes appoint. Besides, at a Chapter held at White-Hall, 13 Car. I. the Law was confirmed; and thereupon it was again decreed, That the Book of Statutes sent to any Stranger Prince, should be Sealed with the Great Seal of the Order, affixed to a Label of blue Silk and Goid.

There is also to be provided a large purple Velver Cushion, to carry the Robes on, when they are to be prefented; this is likewise put into the Sovereign's Warrant, and provided by the Master of the Great Wardrobe; usually containing one Yard and quarter in length, adorned with Fringe, Cauls, and Tossels of Gold and purple Silk, and within it a Pillow of Fustian filled with Down.

There were two Velvet Cushions prepared for the Service of the Duke of Wirtembergh's Investiture, 1 Jac. I. one of Purple, for the Sovereign's State; and another of Crimson, for the Duke; so the same Year to Christian IV.

King of Denmark.

Two Majesty Escutcheons are likewise to be provided; painted in Oil, and gilt with Gold; one to have the Arms of the Sovereign surrounded with a Garter, under an Imperial Crown; the other of the Scranger's Arms, within a Garter also, and such a Crown as is proper to his Dignity. Both these are to be put in Frames, painted and gilt, with their several Stiles sairly Written under the Arms, and set on the back of the Sovereign's Stall, under the State, as also on the back of the Stall of the Scranger elect: But there were three Majesty Escutcheons sent over in the Legation to Henry, Prince of Orange, in regard that at his Investiture, Frederick, Elector Palatine, was present.

fent. In case the chief Person in the Legation be a Knight of the Order, then he is to have a like Escutcheon of his own Arms, set over his own Stall; for so had the Barl of Derby provided for him at the Sovereign's Charge, when he was sent with the Habit to the French King, Henry III.

The remaining Necessaries, are such as relate to the

Transportation of the Habit of the Order, viz.

One Pair of fine Holland Sheers to fold the Habit in.
Two sweet Bags of Taffaty to lay amongst them.
Two Trunks to put the said Parcels in.
One Sumpter Saddle.

All which are to be provided at the Sovereign's Charge,

and is also his Gift to the elect Prince.

What farther Warrants are to be obtained from the Sovereign, relate to Garter, and such other Officers of Arms, as are appointed to attend the Legation; as first a Warrant, whereby the Sovereign aftertains a Warrant for their Diet, and Reward, during their Journey, and till their return; and on which, most commonly, for greater certainty of its Payment, the Sovereign's Privy Seal is obtained.

The Allowance to Garter in the Reign of Edw. VI. was ten Shillings a Day for his Dier, and Ten Shillings a Day more as a Reward: And this we find allowed to Sir Gilbers Deshick, in the Embasily to Henry II. King of Irance, 5 Edw. VI. and the like in his Legation to Maximilian the Emperor; and to Frederick II. King of Denmark, 24 Eix.

And when Clarenceux was sent in the Blace of Garter (the Office being void by the Death of the said Sir Gilbert) to the French King, Henry III. the same was also allowed him, and commenced nine Days before his setting our;

and of which there are other Precedents.

Of this daily Allowance, Garter hath usually obtained an advance before-hand, for his better support by the

way.

When any of the Heralds were sent in Garter's Place, the same Allowances were made them, as if Garter had gone in Person; as had Henry St. George, Esq. Richmond Horald, sent with the Earl of Carliste, to Charles, King of Sweden,

Sweden, 21 Car. I. As also to Thomas St. George, Esq. Somerfee Herald, sent with Sir Thomas Higgins, to the Duke

of Saxony, soon after.

As to the Allowance to such Officers of Arms, as are not joined in, but appointed to attend any of these Legations; it was usually, if a Herald, the Moiety of what was given to Garter: And if a Pursuivant at Arms, half as much as a Herald.

Agreeable to which, was the Allowance given to Cheffer Herald, and Ronge Pragen Pursuivant, in the Embasy to Henry II. King of France, 5 Edw. Vs. and there called the old Rate; to also to Somerfee Herald, to Frederick II. King of Denmark, and the French Kings, Henry III. and IV. And both the Herald and Pursuivant had also a proportionable part of their daily Allowances before-hand.

Befides which Allowances mentioned, Garter hath also Allowance for Postage, both Outward and Homeward, for Himself and Servants; and for Transportation of the Habit, and other Things necessary for the Voyage. And this by a Clause added in the Sovereign's Warrant, is left to Garter at his return, when he gives in a Bill of particulars, subscribed with his Hand, to the Treasurer or Chamberlains of the Exchequer, to have been disbursed by him.

The Warrant to furnish Garter, or the Herald, with Post Horses, and convenient Shipping to carry them over, is usually had of the Privy Council, or Secretary of State; either before, or after the Lord Ambassador; and is not

provided for in the same Ship.

The Ceremonies of Investigure.

§ 3. The Ceremonies performed at a Stranger Prince's Receipt of the whole Habit and Enfigns of the Order, are highly Solemn, whether we confider the manner of Investiture performed by the Sovereign's Ambassadors, on the Festivity and Triumphs, added by the new invested Prince.

First, the Commissions joined in the Legation, receiving notice of their first Audience, are to present themselves in the accustomed manner of Ambassadors, Garter, or his Deputy, going in breast with the chief of the Legation,

if there be only himself joined in Commission with the Lord Ambassador, and in this Place William Segar, Esq. Norroy King of Arms, (sent in the room of Garter) proceeded with the Earl of Rutland at their first Audience before Christian, IV. King of Denmark.

Being arrived near the elect Stranger, they present the Letters, certifying Election, or their Credential Letters from the Sovereign; and after some short general Compliment by the Ambassador, he makes known to him, his Election in the usual Form, which is before sufficiently

fpoke of.

After the Formality of this Address is over, and that the Stranger hath by his Answer accepted of his Election, and consented to the Reception of the Order; the Ambassador immediately delivers him the Book of Statutes, that he-may, if he pleases, peruse them before he assume the Habit, and defires his Consideration thereon. Next, both the Commissioners in the Legation present him with the George and Ribbond, and put it about his Neck, as in several Instances hath been shown.

In the interim, before the Day of Investiture, Time is usually set apart for Conference between the Sovereign's Ambassador, and some of the elect Prince's Council, touching the ordering of the Ceremonies, and wording the Oath to be by him taken. Garter is likewise to confider what Places in the elect Prince's Court are fit to perform the Ceremony, and to see them made ready, and to instruct his Officers, what Duries and Services they are to undertake.

If the great Hall, or other large Room, be appointed, there ought to be prepared a Table, with a rich Carper, whereon the Habit and Enfigns of the Order are to be laid, while the Sovereign's Commission of Legation is read; another Table should be prepared for the Stranger who receives the Order; and a third for the Sovereign's Ambassador.

In the Church or Chappel where they are to proceed to hear Divine Service, a Stall is to be erected under a Cloth of State, on the Right Hand Entrance of the Choir, for the Sovereign of the Order, wherein is to be fixed the Majesty Escutcheen of the Sovereign's Arms; another Stall is also to be placed on the same side of the Choir for the invested Stranger, at the same distance from the Sovereign's

reign's Stall, as is that for the elect Stranger in the Choir at Windfor; in which is to be fixt the Majesty Escutcheory of his own Arms, brought likewise over by Garter or his Deputy; a third Stall is to be erected for the Lord Ambassador, who (if a Knight-Companion) hath an Escutcheory of his own Arms within a Garter set over it; for so had the Marquiss of Northampton, at the Investiture of the French King, Henry II. Anno 3 Edw. VI. and the Earl of Derby, at that of Henry III. under all these Escutcheons of Arms, the Stiles and Titles (fairly Written) of the Sovereign, and each Knight-Companion, are to be affix'd.

Where there is no solemn Proceeding to Church, the Sovereign's Escutcheon of Arms, with his Titles, have been set up at the upper end of the Room, where the Investiture is performed; so also the Stranger Knight's at due distance, as at the Investiture of Sustanta Adolphus, King of Sweden, in his Tent at the Leaguer, near Darshaw, in

Prussia, 23 September, Anno 3 Car. I.

Befides the before-mentioned Preparations; the Church or Chappel, into which the new invested Stranger proceeds, is to be richly adorned, as we find by several Instances; as at the Investiture of King Henry III. when the Church of Augustine Fryars in Paris, was hung with rich Arras, and all the Choir and Stalls with Cloth of Gold. On the Day the Solemnity of Investiture is celebrated, the elect Stranger sends his Coach, and some Persons of Quality, to Accompany the Sovereign's Ambassadors to his Court. At the Investiture of Henry, Prince of Orange, Frederick, Prince Palatine of the Rhine, sat with the Viscount Charleson, in one Boot of the Prince's Coach, and Sir William Segar in the other; and were met by the said Prince at the Foot of the Stairs of his Court, and conducted thence into his great Chamber.

After such time as the elect Stranger, and the Sovereign's Ambassadors, have a while retired; the Stranger usually first enters the Room appointed for the Ceremony, and stands under his own State, expecting the coming in of the Ambassadors, and notice thereof being given them, they (reposing in a Room near) proceed in manner

following.

Servants to the Lord Ambassador, two and two.

The Herald in his Coat of Arms, bearing the Mantle, Surcoar, Hood, and Cap, in his Arms; and if a Pursui-

voins amend the Embassy, he (wearing his Coat) proceeds

before him, bearing part of the faid Habit.

Garter vested in his rich Coat of his Sovereign's Arms, also (but at the Investitute of the Duke of Wirtemberg, he wore his Robe of Crimson Satten, as did Clarenceux, at the Investitute of the French King, Henry III.) bearing on a Cushion the Garter, and Collar of the Order, with the great George, the Book of Statutes, and the Commission of Legation.

Lastly, The Lord Ambassador, or chief in the Embassy, who, if a Knight-Companion, proceedeth in his compleat

Habit.

If any o her Knight-Companion is present, he also wears his whole Habit of the Order, as did the Constable of France, at the Investiture of the French King, Henry II. The said Constable also pair'd in the Proceeding with the Sovereign's Ambassador.

In going up to the Sovereign's State, they all make three Reverences, and drawing near, the Ambassadors Servants fall off on either side for the Herald to pass up to the Table, set before the Sovereign's State; whereon

(with a fingle Reverence) he lays the Robes.

Then Garter draws near the Table also, and with a like Reverence towards the Sovereign's State deposites the

Ensigns of the Order.

The Lord Ambassador follows, and makes his Reverence towards the Sovereign's State, and after turning to the Stranger elect, and doing him Reverence, he (or some other six Person) delivers himself in a short, but grave, and searned Oration; "in which he not only sets forth the Praises of the illustrious Order, and of the King the Sowereign, but also the Virtues, the memorable and praise-worthy Actions of the elect Stranger; to whom the Habit and Ensigns of the Order are sent: Neither are his Ancestors (if any of them have attain'd the Honour of this Order,) past over in Silence, that thereby his Heart (already breathing impatience and desire,) may be so much the more instanced with an Earnestness to obtain the Honour and Favour of this so great a Dignity.

"He adds besides, that the Sovereign having well weigh'd these and the like things in his Mind, and imaturely advis'd thereof with his Knights-Companions, they

ff they were persuaded and well satisfied in themselves;
ff to nominate and chuse him before others; to the end
ff that he might both himself be honoured by the Choice
ff sinch a Person, and also thereby give an increase and
full addition of Lustre to those renowned Actions and Virfrues, which already were a chief Ornament to him.

Laftly, He points towards the Ensigns of the Order, which he declares to have been sent by the Sovereign, out of great Love, and singular Affection, to dignify him therewith, as to a Person to whom he wish as well and honourably as to any other Prince whatsoever, and withall intreats him kindly to accept thereof, and wear them in remembrance of the Sovereign and his Order.

This or the like Oration being ended, the Ambassadors present their Commission of Legation to the elect Stranger, who delivers it to his Secretary, and he publickly Reads

it.

At the before-mentioned Investiture of the Freneb King, Henry II. the Bishop of Ely, one of the Commissioners of the Legation, made the Speech, to which the Cardinal of Lorrain returned Answer in the said King's behalf, with all thankful Acknowledgments of the Honour of the Order.

After the Commission is read, Garter presents the Oath fairly Written, which is administred to the elect Stranger, where, if any Exceptions were before made and admitted, they must be rehears'd, as we find it directed in the instructions given for the Investiture of James V. King of Scotland. The Ceremony of the Oath being finish'd, Garter takes from off the Cushion the Garter, and having kis'd it, presents it to the Lord Ambassador, who kneeling down, puts it with all Reverence on the Stranger's left Leg, being affished by Garter, who pronounces these Words of Signification.

Ad laudem atque honorem Omnipotentis Dei, intemerat Mairis ejus, & Sandi Georgii Martyris; cinge tibiam tuam boc insigni Subligaculo, circumferens in augmentum honoris tui, & in signum ac memoriam illustrissimi Ordinis, nusquam oblivioni daturus, aut omissurus, qued eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam & velis in justo bello, quod solum inibis, stare sirmiter, agere fortiter, & feliciter omnino vincere.

This

This being said, Garter takes the Surcoat, and with the Ceremony of a Kiss, delivers it to the Lord Ambassador, who (after the Stranger elect hath put off his Cloak or upper Garment, and Sword,) puts it upon him in this manner: First, The Lord Ambassador begins at the Stranger's Right Arm, and Garter (or the Leiger Ambassador if present,) affists at the left Shoulder. The Stranger being thus vested with the Surcoat, both the Lord Ambassador and Garter gird his Sword about him, with a Velvet Girdle of the same Colour, at the doing where-of Garter saith these Words.

Capito vestem banc purpuream, ad incrementum bonoris, & in signaculum Ordinis accepti: qua munitus non veteberis pro side Christi, libertate Ecclesia, pro jure, & oppressorum atque indigentium necessaria tuitione; Sanguinem etiam fundere, nedum fortiter ac strenue dimicare.

After this, Gartér takes up the Manile and Hood, which, in like manner kiffing, he delivers to the Lord Ambaffador, who invests the Stranger therewith, and lays the Hood upon his right Shoulder; (the Train being given into the Hands of some Noble Personage to be born up,) Garter also pronouncing these Words.

Accipe Clamidem hanc Cælici coloris, in signum Clarifsimi hujus Ordinis, & in Augmentum etiam honoris sus, rubeo Clypeo Dominic.e crucis, uti cernis, insignitam: ut cujus virtute semper ac vigore protectus per Hostes tutus abeas, eos ubique superare valeas, & pro clarissimis denique Meritis, post egregiam hanc hujus temporis Militiam, ad eterna vereque Triumphalia gaudia pertingas.

Garter, in the last Place, takes up the Collar, and with a Kiss also presents it to the Lord Ambassador, who placeth at about the Stranger's Shoulders, and Garter uttereth these Words.

Torquem bunc' in Collo deferes, ad augmentum bonoris, & in fignum quoque clarissimi ordinis a te suscepti, cum imagine Santlissimi Mareyris, & Christi Militis Georgii: cujus prasidio suffultus, Mundi bujus tam prospera quam adversa sic pertranseas, ut anima pariter ac corporis bositus bic strenue devittis, non Temporaria modo Militia gloriam, sed & perenis victoria palmam denique recipere valeas. Amen.

When the Ceremony of Investiture is finished, the Lord Ambassador congratulateth the new invested Stranger in the Sovereign's Sovereign's Name, and in the Name of all the Knights-Companions, and then delivers him his Velvet Cap, adorned with white Plumes, and the Book of Statutes.

The Stranger being thus invested, stayeth a while in the Room, where he received this Honour, with the Ambassador, and after Complements of Congratulation between them, he goeth to the Church in a solemn manner, having the Train of his Mantle born up; at the Entrance into the Church, all in the Procession make three Reverences, the first towards the High Altar, the next towards the Sovereign's Stall, and the third towards the new invested Stranger's Stall.

The Lord Ambassador proceedeth towards the Seat affign'd for him, and stands before it till the Stranger hath ascended his Stall, and after making his Reverences, (as before) takes his; then Garter making the like Reverences, sits down on a Chair, plac'd for him before the So-

vereign's Stall.

But the Herald at Arms ought to be often near the Stranger, or else the Lord Ambassador, to inform them of the Order of Ceremony, because Garter is obliged to attend

the Sovereign's Royal Stall.

After a solemn Anthem, Garter passeth in the middle of the Choir, and by a Reverence, first to the invested Stranger, and next to the Lord Ambassador, gives them the Signal for descending, and being both come down, Sarter passeth up before the Stranger to the High Altar, where he makes his Offering of Gold and Silver, being accompanied with the Lord Ambassador, the Herald laying the Cushion whereon he kneels when he Offers.

But if a Knight-Companion be sent on this Legation; then he proceeds first up to the Altar, preceded by Garter, and Offers for the Sovereign, which done, he returns to his own Stall: Next, the invested Stranger proceeds up, (preceded as before,) Offers, and returns back to his own Stall; afterwards the aforesaid Knight-Companion proceeds up again, and Offers for himself: And in this Order was the Offering made when the Emperor Maximilian was invested at Vienna, January 4. Anno 10. Eliz.

The new invested Stranger having offered, returns to his Stall, and the Lord Ambassador, with three Reverences, takes his Seat, the Organs, &c. playing all the while:

When

When the solemn Service is fimili'd, the Stranger descends again from his Stall, and with the Proceeding before him. returns in the same Order he came to the Room, where

he received his Investiture.

It's observable, that the Emperor Maximilian, out of a compliance with the Protestant Religion, caused, on the Day of his Investiture, all Prayers to Saints incenting, and other Matters and Ceremonies not used by the Church of England, to be wholly omitted at the Service in his Chappel.

Ar these great Solemhities, the invested Strangers have heretofore held most magnificent Feasts, but of late they are not so much in Use: And when Dinner was ready. they proceeded thither in their whole Habit, which they

wore all Dinner time.

At the Investiture of Christian IV. King of Deumark; Anno 1 Jac. I. the Sovereign's Stiles and Titles of Honour were proclaimed thrice, (before they fat down to Dinner,) and the said King's twice; but when Maurice and Henry. Princes of Orange, received Investiture, the Stiles were proclaimed immediately after they were invested, and in the same Room, the Ceremony being perform'd to both in the Afternoon.

At the Feast made by Maximilian I. (King of the Romans,) Sir Charles Somerfet, and Sir Thomas Wriethefley. fent on the Embassy, was admitted to his Table, and sar on his left Hand: On the Day of Investiture of Don Ferdinand, Prince of Spain, Arch-Duke of Austria, the Lord Morley, and Sir William Hussey, sat on his right Hand at Dinner, and Dr Lee, and the faid Sir Thomas Wriothefler. on his left; these four being join'd in the Commission of Legation.

At a Feast on the like Occasion by the French King. Henry II. he admitted to his Table (beside the Marquiss of Northampton, the principal Person in the Legation,) the before-mentioned Constable of France; and all three far in their full Robes of the Garter, which they put not off till after Dinner. The Cardinal of Lorrain fat also at the

King's Table, but it was on the other fide.

When the Investiture was performed in the Afternoon, then was the Grand Dinner turn'd into a Supper; as it was at the Investiture of Maximilian the Emperor, and two of the French Kings; but when Henry, Prince of Orunges

(383)
Orange, received the Bufgus of the Order, there was no Feast at all, but purposely omitted, to prevent the difference which might have been occasioned by the Precedency and Place, between Ambassadors drinking of Healths.

and other Complements.

On this Solemnity, and the Honour they deriv'd from it. some have thought fit to transmit the Memory to Posterity. by Medals, with Inscriptions relating thereto; such were those of Gold and Silver, which Prederick, Duke of Wirtemberg, caused to be made; as also those made by Charles. King of Sweden.

Certificates of baving reteiv'd the Habits, and Enfigns of the Order.

§ 4. The magnificent Solemnity of Investiture, Gei, being compleatly finish'd, and the Ambassadors having fully performed their Duties therein; they are yet further to obtain from the new invested Stranger, before their departure, a publick Instrument, testifying the reception of the said Habit and Busigns, Sign'd with his Hand, and Sealed with his Great Seal; this we find anciently done in several Instances, and is generally demanded and obtain'd.

Hereupon a Clause to this Effect is usually added, in Inftractions given to Ambassadors; as appears from those to the Lord Howard and Garter, in the Embassy to Rames V. King of Scotland; namely, that Garter Should remember (after the Investiture was performed,) to Purchase, and Sollicit a Certificate from the faid King, of bis rereprion of the Order, and taking the Oath, both under his Seal.

The Form and Substance of these Certificates are much alike; for after a recital of all the Powers given to the Ambassadors nam'd in the Commission of Legation, the Stranger Prince first makes Certificate of his receiving. and Investiture with the Mantle, Surcoat, Collar, and other Ornaments of the Order; and that they received. them from the Sovereign's Ambassador, with the accustom'd Solemnities.

In some of these Certificates, namely from Ferdinand, Prince of Spain, Anno 15 Hen. VIII. from Francis I. the

the French King, Anno 19 Hen. VIH, and from Guffavur, King of Sweden, Anno 3 Car. I we find the taking the Oath appointed by the Statutes to be also certified. Of the return of these Certificates, the Annals of the Order sometimes take notice, and by a Decree, 13 Car. I. care was taken to oblige the Ambassadors to produce these Cer-

tificates to the Sovereign at their return.

The Stranger Prince hath been pleas'd sometimes, to give with the Certificate, a particular Testimonial of Garter's punctual discharge of his Duty in the Legation, or of the Officer of Arms employed in his stead; as did Gustavus, King of Sweden, in the preamble of his Diploma, whereby he testifies the bestowing upon Henry St. George, Richmond Herald, the Honour of Knighthood; they have also usually given Garter Gratuities, either in Money, Diamonds, or some other Present of great value, of which several Instances might be produced.

C A P. XVI.

The Installation of a Stranger by Proxy.

Touching the Choice and Nomination of a Proxy.

Fter the Stranger is invested, he is enjoin'd by the Statutes (be he of what State or Condition soever,) to send in eight Months after his Investiture, either a Prostor or Deputy to be installed in his behalf, in the Seat affign'd him within the Chappel of St. George at Windsor.

The Time limited for sending in Henry Vth's Statutes, is but seven Months; and those of Henry VIII. allow no more; and that not only after Investiture, but after the Stranger hath certified the Sovereign of his reception of

the Order.

By King Henry VIIIth's Statutes, it's also provided that in case a Stranger do not send his Deputy or Proctor within seven Months, without having a reasonable Excuse, and such an should be allowed by the Sovereign or his Deputy,

the Election (notwithfunding his former Acceptation,) Should be also void, except so it be, that the Stranger to hindred or disturbed by great Affairs, and them might he send his Excuse to the Sovereign, or his Deputy, within one Month after; and according as the Sovereign or his Deputy Should allow or disallow of his Excuse, that then the Sovereign or his Deputy might give unto him four Months of respite more; within which time, if he neither come, nor send his Deputy to be installed for him, then the said Election should be void for that time.

The French King, Francis I. was so earnest for compleating this Honour, that he dispatch'd his Proctor hither with all the speed he could, and most of the Stranger Princes have sent their Deputies within the limited time, there being very sew Instances to the contrary, and those were occasioned through the multiplicity of Affairs.

When the Garter and George only have been sent to a Stranger, the Ceremony of Initallation hath been dispenced with, till a more convenient time, as appears from the Instructions of March 4. Anno 19 Car. I. given at the sending these two principal Ensigns of the Order; to William, Prince of Orange, and Bernard de Foix, Duke d'Espernon, (in regard of the Interruptions then given by the Rebellion here,) such dispensations, and for the same reation, was King Charles II. necessitated to give those Strangers whom he honoured with Election, while he remain'd in Foreign Parts.

Upon the said King's happy Restauration, among many other things relating to the Order, this particular was taken into confideration, in reference not only to the Duke de Espernon and Prince Maurice, who were dead, but those Strangers also then living; and at two Chapters held at White-Hall, Anno 13 Car. II. directions were given to Garter to place the Banners and Atchievements of the surviving Strangers over their respective Stalls; and the Scvereign, by his supream Power, sinduc'd by the imposfibilities of the late Troubles to perform the Installation and by reason of the time elaps'd since their Biections.) dispenced wholly and absolutely with their Installations. but at the same time declar'd, that as the like ne teffity and conjuncture could hever happen again, so he would not, on any motion or pretence whatsoever, give the like diffensation,

Digitized by Google

It feems to rest in the pleasure of the Stranger, whether he will chuse to send over any Person of his own Conrt, or give his Procuration to some one of the Sovereign's Subjects, to receive his Stall, and in his Name to take Possession of it; the latter of which hath been done several times, out of desire to favour some of our Nobility with this Honour, of which many instances

might be given. It hath sometimes happned, that a Proftor for the Installation of a Stranger, hath been appointed and nominated by the Sovereign of the Order, though the Principal had nam'd another before: Thus it fell out in the case of Maurice, Prince of Orange, Anno 10 Jac. I. who having deputed Count Henry his Brother, to be installed for him, and he having put to Sea in Order thereto, but by reason of contrary Winds not arriving in England before the Day appointed for his Installation, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions ordered that Lodowick of Nassau, Kinsman to the elect Prince, should take Possession of his Stall on his behalf: A case somewhat like, was that of John George, Duke of Saxony, who fent over his Procuration to John, Barl of Bash; and he being detained in the West on extraordinary Occasions, when St. George's Feast was held at Windsor, Anno 23 Car. II. wrote to the Chancellor of the Order, to obtain the Sovereign's Dispensation, for not appearing in the Name of his Principal; who reprefenting his humble request to the Sovereign, in a Chapter held on the Eve of the laid Feast, he was pleas'd to grant it, and appointed Heneage, Earl of Winchelsea, who perform'd the Service. There is also an ancient Example of this kind, Anno 9 Hen. V. where the Sovereign n minated the Lord Fitz Hugh, Proctor for the King of Denmark; which yet was not done, till after the Sovereign had been certified that the faid King had been invested. and obliged himself by Oath to the observation of the Statutes.

In like manner it is recorded, that the Earl of Cleveland was by the Sovereign appointed Deputy for the Installation of Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, and yet not unlike, but this might be with consent of the said King, though the Annals herein are sleen.

The Proftor's Qualifications:

\$ 2. By the Statutes of the Order, the Proctor, whether he be nominated by his Priccipal, or by the Sovereign, must be Procurator sufficients & Idoness; that is, such a Person who hath always been accounted of unblameable Conversation, not branded with any note of Insamy, but altogether irreprovable. And such was Dominicus Franciscus, Deputy to Charies, Duke of Ferrara, who in the Black-Book of the Order is characterized to be a Knight of incorrupt Fame; nor are we to doubt but that other Proctors to Strangers were such, though the Testimonials of their Virtues do not appear in the Annals of the Order.

Secondly, The Prottor ought to be a Person correspondent to the State and Dignity of the Stranger that is invested, which may sufficiently appear by several Instances; the Emperor Maximilian I. appointed for his Proxy, the Marquis of Brandenburgh, Anno 6 Hen. VII. Francis I. King of France, Adrian de Fercelin, Lord of Bross, Anno 19 Hen. VIII. and Henry IV. of France, Sieur

de Chastes, Vice Admiral of France, Anno 42 Eliz.

Thirdly, It is provided that he be a Knight, and without any manner of Reproach; and if it is happen that
he have not received the degree of Knighthood, the Sovereign is to bestow that Honour before he be allowed to
take upon him the Execution of his deputative Power;
for none but Knights are capable of this Honour, or permitted to bear the Ensigns of so great an Order. Hereupon the Lord Willoughby of Eresby, Prostor for Frederick II.
King of Denmark, was Knighted by the Sovereign, the
Morning before he proceeded to take Possession of the
Stall.

There was one reason notwithstanding, why this particular was not strictly stood upon, (though moved) in the case (and it's the single case) of Henry Ramell, Hereditary Lord of Wosterwicz and Beckeskaw, Deputy for Christian IV. King of Denmark, Anno 3 Jac. 1. for it being taken notice of that he was not a Knight, certain Persons were sent from the Sovereign to signify his Pleafare; that he should be advanced to the Honour of Knight-Rod:

hood before he took upon him the Enfigns of the Order in his King's behalf; to which he made Answer, that he appeared here, not in his own, but in the Name of the King of Denmark; and that such a degree of Honour was unusual in his own Country, (being Born in Pomerania,) and therefore humbly defired that he might be excus'd from the Honour; upon which the Sovereign was pleas'd to dispence with him, and forthwith the said Deputy (but no Knight,) was admitted to take the Stall assign'd to the said King his Principal.

His Letters of Procuration.

6 3. The Authority wherewith an elect Stranger inverts his Proxy, which ought to pass under his Hand and

Seal, do generally contain these Particulars.

First, He premiseth the Sovereign's Election of him into the Order of the Garter, and his receipt of the Habit and Enligns thereof, then takes notice of the Obligation the Statutes of the Order put upon hini, for sending a Proxy to take Possession of his Stall, in regard the Dignity whereunto he is advanc'd in his own Country, will not permit him to repair Personally to Windsor; and being not only desirous that the Election and Investicure should obtain its due effect, but to fulfil, as far as in him lies, the Injunctions of the Statutes, in what concerns the affuming of his Stall, and taking the Oath appointed; he therefore Ordains, Authorises, and Deputes, a Person fitly qualified, (named in the Deputation,) his sufficient Proftor, and special Deputy, to appear at the Castle of Windsor in his behalf and in his Name, at the next Solemnity that should be held there, to supply his room, and receive Possession of the Stall assign'd him, according to the usual Form; and in all respects to perform those Ceremonies and Things in his behalf due and accustom'd, or should appear to belong any way to the Spiendor or Ornament of the Order: As also to take the accustomed Oath with those Qualifications, and in that Form as had been (or should be) agreed on; and further, to fulfil all other things which he should think necessary to be perform'd on this Occasion, or whatsoever thing might require a more special Command, than was contain'd in the Let-2131

ters of Procuration; and as fully as the Stranger should be obliged to, and would do, if he were there present in his own Person. Lastly, there is usually added a Clause of Ratification and Confirmation, of all such things as the Prostor should say or do, in reference to the Solemnity of Installation:

Of the Proctor's Reception.

§ 4. When the Sovereign is acquainted with the arrival of the Proxy, and the occasion of his coming, he soon after gives him Audience; after which, a Day for Installation is affign'd, and the Sovereign nominates some of the Knights-Companions his Commissioners, to perform the Ceremonies.

The Proctor heretofore has been receiv'd with very great State; Sir Baltbafar Castilian, sent hither from the Duke of Urbin, Anno 22 Hen, VII. was mer at the Seafide by Sir Thomas Brandon, with a goodly Company of his own Servants well Hors'd, who kept Company with him, till they came near Deptford in Kent; where, by the Sovereign's Command, he was met by Sir Thomas Dokara, and Sir Thomas Wriothefley, Garter: The said Sir Thomas Dokara had attending him thirty of his Servants, all in new Liveries, well Hors'd, every Gentleman bearing a Javelin in his Hand, and every Yeoman a Bow and a Sheaf of Arrows, and so they convey'd him to his Lodging. The next Day they conducted him to London, and by the way there met him divers Italians, and Paulus de Gygeles, the Pope's Vice Collector, to whose House he was convey'd and lodg'd. The reception also of James Lord Rambovilles, Proctor for the French King, Charles IX. was very noble.

The Preparations for Installation.

by Proxy, are the same as for the Proxy of a Knighter Subject, mention'd as before, and the Form of the Committion for Installation is much the same; the Preamble C c 3

tains the Authority wherewith the Proxy is impower'd, and is penn'd with like Words.

The Letters of notice to the Commissioners.

The Warrants for removing of Stalls, and for the Strangers Atchievements, are all to be obtain'd by the Chancellor of the Order, under the Sovereign's Sign Marnual, to which the Signet of the Order is to be affixt.

The Strangers Atchievements (as mention'd in the Warrant,) are to be provided at the Sovereign's Charge; namely, his Helm, Crest, Mantlings, and Sword, togethet with a Banner of his Arms and Quarterings; and these the Proctor is enjoin'd to bring along with him to Windsor.

Sometimes a Warrant hath been directed to the Master of the Wardrobe, to provide but some part of these Atchievements; and another Warrant to the Lord Treasurer of England, to deliver Garter Money to provide the other part; in each of which, the particulars relating to either are enumerated; for so were the Warrants drawn up for the Atchievements of the Fronch King, Henry II. At other times direction hath been to the Master of the Wardrobe, to deliver to Garter the whole, who thereupon puts the Charge upon Account.

Sometimes particular Warrants have been directed to the Master of the Wardrobe, to deliver several Parcels of the Materials, for the making up these Atchievements; as were those Warrants, to deliver the Sovereign's Embroiderer, and to Garter, so much Velvet, Cloth of Gold, Sc. for making the great Banner, and other the Atchievements of Charles IX. and Henry III. French Kings.

It also appears that Garrer hath sometimes laid out the Money for all, or part of the Atchievements, and then delivered his Bill of disbursements into the Wardrobe; as is manifest from those Bills for the Atchievements of Frederick II. King of Denmark, in Count Palatine of the Rbine,

and the Duke of Holftein.

Besides the Atchievements, some other things used at the Solemnity are commonly included in the forelaid Warrants; the Mantle of the Order is not prepared at the Sovereign's Charge, for the Statutes of Institution appoint the Proxy to bring one with him, not that the Sovereign should provide it, having done that before, at the Legation with the whole Habit; nor is it found in the Rolls of Books of the Sovereign's great Wardrobe, that any Account

count is made for providing a second Mantle, when the Proxy of a Stranger came hither; which, had the Sovereign been at such Charge, would not have been omitted.

The Proffer's Cavalcade to Windsor.

§ 6. The Day appointed for the Installation drawing on, the Proxy was heretofore accompanied from London to Windfor, with the Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Assistants, (if the Feast of St. George was then also celebrated,) or otherwise the Sovereign's Commissioners with a great Retinue.

Among the rest, when the Deputy of the French King, Francis I. rode to Windsor, Anno 19 Hen. VIII. all the Knights-Companions that were in Commission for that Solemnity, assembled at the Lord Sandy's Place near St. Paul's Church in London, whence they rode to the Deputy's Lodging, and thence accompanied him with a gallant Equipage to the Castle of Windsor, where Lodgings were

prepared for him at the Dean's House.

In like manner, Anno 8 Eliz, the Earls of Suffex and Leicester, and Lord Clinton, (three of the four Commissioners appointed for the Installation of the French King, Charles IX.) with other Lords and Gentlemen, took their Horses at the Court Gate at Westminster, and with a great Train rode to the Lodgings of the said King's Proxy, (being then at St. Mary's Spittle in London,) whence they went through Holbourn towards Windsor; the Earl of Southampton, Viscount Mountague, Sir Henry Lea, and Sir Edward Umpton, met them at Langford near Colbrook, with their Hawks, and shew'd the Proxy variety of sport, with which he being well pleased, they rode to his Lodgings at the Dean's House at Windsor, the usual Place of entertaining the Strangers Proxies.

Supper after his Arrival there.

§ 7. The Evening of their arrival passeth with a sumptuous Supper, but the principal Entertainment is reserved for the following Day's Dinner. At the Installation of the French King, Francis I. all the Commissioners met to-

gether at the Marquiss of Exeter's Lodgings, and went to the Dean's House, where they were entertain'd by him at Supper all at one Table; at another Table sat Garter, with certain of the Deputy's chief Gentlemen, and some of the Heralds; and at a third sat the rest of the Heralds, and other of the Proxies Servants.

The Commissioners and other Noblemen, who accompanied the Pressor of Charles IX. to Windsor, supped also with him at the Dean's; He himself sitting at the upperaind of the Table; then the Earls of Sussex and Leicester by him, one against the other, next the Earl of Southampton, and Viscount Mountague, then the Lord Clinton, and Lord Herbere of Cardiff, after them two Strangers of distinction, then lower sat the Lord Grey, and other Strangers, and last of all, at the lower end, opposite to the Proses, sat Monsieur Dose, alias St. Michael, the French Horald. Garter, Black-Rod, and divers Strangers, supped with the Dean, and in the Parlour and Hall sat divers Pensioners, Gentlemen, and Strangers.

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

18. What hath been before set down of the Proceeding to the Chapter-House, at the personal Installation of a Knight-Subject, will extend hither, both as to Order and Circumstances; yet this general Rule is to be born in mind, that the Place of a Stranger Prince's Proctor here, is next after the Provincial King's, (unless the Proctor of a Knight-Subject happen to intervene,) and before the Junior Knight-Companion, (unless a Knight-Subject pass then in the Proceeding,) of which we have an Instance at the Installation of the Dukes of Brunswick and Chevereux, and the Earl of Dorset, by their Procedors, but the Earls of Salisbury, Carlisse, and Holland, with Viscount Andover in Person, Anno t Car. I. when the Proceeding was ordered as followeth.

1. Two Waiters of the Sovereign's Hall, in their Livery Coats, bearing White Rods.

2. Alms-Knights.

3. Prebends of the College.

4, Officers of Arms.

5. Proctors

(393)

5. Proctors to the absent élect Knights.

6. Elect Knights in Person.

7. Knights-Companions.

8. Black-Rod.

9. Register.

10. Garter.

11. Chancellor,

12. Prelate.

13. Sovereign's Lieutenant.

14. Courtiers and Gentlemen in the Rear.

Only in the fingle case of Christan IV. King of Denmark, Anno 3 Jac. I. (as an extraordinary Respect and Honour,) his Proxy went in the Proceeding to the Chap-

ter-House next before the Sovereign's Lieutenant.

As we had a former Example, of a Proctor to a Knight-Subject, who in this Proceeding past before the Alms-Knights, and Officers of Arms, namely, Sir Henry Sidney, Deputy to the Earl of Warnick, 5 Eliz. so here in the case of a Stranger, the Vilcount Hereford, Proxy to the Duke of Holstein, installed 3 Eliz. went in this Proceeding to the Chapter-House, before the Officers of Arms; Which Proceeding was ordered as follows.

1. Gentlemen and Knights.

2. The Proctor and Ambassador of Holstein together.

3. Officers of Arms.

4. Register and Gartes.

5. Lord Hastings, and Lord Pages, Commissioners,

If the Proxy of a Stranger pass in the Proceeding, which to the Chapter-House, then for the most part he gives his Attendance in the Presence-Chamber, or in the Room whence the Lieutenant or Commissioners proceed, and

there joins himself thereto.

But sometimes the Commissioners, as an instance of singular Respect, after their setting out, have taken the Proxies Lodging in their way, and there received him into the Proceeding; so did Prince Henry, by the Processor of Christian IV. King of Denmark; and the Commissioners by the Processor of the Duke of Wirtembergh, 2 Inc. I.

Tis.

Tis observed, that the Proxies of Strangers have not always gone in the Proceeding, but sometimes staid at their Lodging, till the Commissioners were ready to send for them to the Chapter-House. As at the Installation of Charles IX. King of France, 8 Eliz. the Commissioners meeting, they, and the three inserior Officers of the Order, robed themselves, and then went to the Proxies Lodging, and having just conferr'd with him, took leave, and proceeded to the Chapter-House, whence they sent out Garter to the Proxy, with invitation to come to them, who was presently conducted by Garter to the Chapter-House Door, where the two Senior Commissioners received him between them.

Sometimes the Proxies have past privately to the East-Isle of St. George's Chappel, and there rested, before the Soveteign and Knights-Companions went into the Chapter-House, or proceeded into the Choir, without entering thereinto; for so did the Earl of Cleveland, and the Marquils of Dorset, Proxies to Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, and Henry, Prince of Orange, 4 Car. I. The like Method was observed by the Earl of Dover, Proxy to Charles, Prince Palatine, 9 Car. I. and by Sir George Cartaret, Proxy to Christian, Prince of Denmark, 15 Car. II. so also of the Earls of Carlisse and Winchelsea, Ploxies to Charles, King of Sweden, and John George, Prince Elector of Saxony, 23 Car. II.

The Ceremonies perform'd therein.

6 9. When the Proceeding hath arrived at the Chapter-House Door, the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions, or the Lieutenant, &c. with the Officers of the Order before them, enter to hold their Contultation; the Stranger's Proxy being first requested to stay without, till his Deputation, or Letters of Procuration are read, to the end they may understand the effect thereof.

To this purpose we find it directed, by an ancient Hand, that where any Knight is installed by his Deputy, he ought to stay without the Vestry, or Chapter-House Door, till he be introduced by two Knights-Companions: So the Lord Paget, one of the Commissioners for Installation of the Duke of Savoy, when the Proceeding was come to the Chapter-

Chapter-House Door, acquainted his Proxy with this Cue

from and Injunction, which he complied with.

The East-life, behind the High Altar, is the usual Place for Proxies to stay, till they are called into the Chapter, as it is also for the Deputies of Knights-Subjects, where Chairs and Cushions are prepared for this occasion.

The first thing done after the Chapter is opened, is reading the Commission for Installation, by the Register of the Order, (but if the Sovereign be present, no Commission issues,) and next, the Letters of Procuration; this being the most usual and proper Place for this Ceremony

However, at the Installation of the French King, Francis I. by a very unusual compliance, the Commissioners went from the Chapter-House, after they had called in and invested the Earl of Oxford, with his Surcoat and Hood, to the Dean's House, where the Prostor was lodg'd, and in a great Chamber there, shewed him the Sovereign's Commission, and in it the Authority for admitting him into the Stall of his Lord and Master: Upon which the Proctor presented them with his Procuration, which impowered him to take Possession of it, and to perform what Ceremonies related to it; which Instrument the Register read before them. This being done, they all proceeded to the Chapter-House, and passed directly into the Choir.

After some time of Consultation in the Chapter-House, the Proxy is sent for in thither by Garter, who conducts him to the Chapter-House Door, and his Reception there by the Commissioners is after the same manner as is used to the Knight elect, or to his Proxy: But whether he ought to enter the Chapter-House, or be admitted any farther than the Door, or Porch thereof, and to pass thence immediately into the Choin, hath been some Question; because the Practice seems to have been sometimes one way, sometimes another.

All that we find to prohibit his Entrance therein, is an Expression in the short Ceremonial of Installation of Strangers by Proxy, entered in the Black-Book; where it says---That the Mantle is to be laid on the Proctor's right Shoulder, in the Porch of the Chapter-House, because be in

net to enter into it.

And there are two Instances where the Mantle was deliyered to the Prector at the Chapter House Door; from whence whence some may infer, that the Practice of those Times was also agreeable to the aforesaid direction; namely, that of the Proctor of the French King, Francis I. 19 Hen. VIII. where Garter stood at the Chapter-House Door, with the Mantle, and as the Proceeding passed by, presented it to the two Senior Knights-Companions, who placed it upon the Proctor's right Arm; and so of the Proctor of Emanuel, Duke of Savoy, 1 and 2 Phil. and Mar. who entered not into the Chapter-House, but had the Mantle discussed at the Door.

But these Instances, if duly weighed, cannot properly, or with any Advantage, be alledged to prove the Assertion; because the Assarts relating to both, receiv'd dispatch in the Broctors Lodging a little before, and where the Proctor himself was present, where the meeting of the Commissioners and Proctor cannot be deemed less than a Chapter, tho not held in the Chapter-House, from the Transactions that passed there, viz. producing the Sovereign's Warrant, and the Proctor's Instrument of Deputation, which were both read before them by the Register, and the Proctor accordingly admitted, which being sinished, nothing relating to the present purpose required their passing into the Chapter-House, or remained to be done till they came into the Chapter-House, or remained to be done till they came into the Choir.

But the general Practice runs strong on the contrary side; for we find that the Proctor for Charles IX. King of France, 8 Eliz. was tnet at the Chapter-House Door, by the Earls of Suffex and Leicester, who took him in thither between them, where, after the Register had read, as well the Sovereign's Commission for Installation, as his Letters of Procuration, and the Commissioners had admitted him Deputy for the said King, they all came forth, and laid his Principal's Mantle on his right Arm and Shoulder, the Train whereof was born by the Earl of Southampton, assisted by the Lord Herbert of Cardiff.

Again it is remarkable, 25 Eliz. that Garter conducted the Proxy of Frederick II. King of Denmark, to the Chapter-House, and at that Place'the Earl of Leicester, and the Lord Hunsdon, received and 'led him in: So also was Christian IVth's Proxy led thither, by the Earls of Nottingham and Dorset. And in Jac. I. Lodowick, Count Nassau, Prostor to Maurice, Prince of Grange, was called into the Chapter-House, and these lest, while the Sovereign, and Knights.

Knights-Companions, proceeded into the Choir: Also in like manner was Sir George Cartaret, Profler to Christian, Prince of Denmark, 15 Car. II. and the Proflers to the

King of Sweden, and Duke of Saxony, 23 Car. II.

Nor are these Instances, and the Practice in this latter case, really derogatory to the Statutes, which, though they prohibit the Proxies Entrance into the Chapter-House, yet do not extend to any thing previous to the Installation, but what may happen after; for the Article of the Statutes having first directed the delivery of the Mantle to the Proxy, and next the assumption of his Principal's Stall, in these Words, Distus Procurator Installatus, it immediately subjoins, that from thenceforth, that is, from the time of Installation, he shall neither wear the Mantle, nor enter into the Chapter, nor have Voice there, by virtue of any Power granted him. All which are Prohibitions, plainly relating to future Examples, and arising after the Cetemonies of Installation are past, and not at all tesering to what preceeds it.

And it seems the Law hath been thus understood, in regard the greater prevalence of Practice hath generally attended it; for not only the Proxies of Strangers, as is observed, but generally Knights-Subjects, have been called into the Chapter-House, and there received the Mantle,

before they proceeded into the Choir.

The Ceremony of delivering the Mantle to the Proctor, is performed by the Sovereign, his Deputy, or the Commissioners, Garter presenting it to them; and the manner of it was anciently, by putting it on the Proxies right Arm or Shoulder, in the Name of his Lord and Master, there to hold it till the End of Divine Service.

But as there hath arisen some dispute, touching the Process's entry into the Chapter-House before Installation, so it hath happened in this Point of receiving the Mantle, viz. whether in the Chapter, or Stall allotted their Prin-

cipal, of which there are Examples.

That part of the Article in the Statutes of Institution, relating to this Point, runs thus:—That the Mantle, tempore Installationis Procuratoris, shall be laid on his Arm, &c. but whether this shall be construed to that instant of time, when the Proctor is brought to the Stall of his Principal, or to some greater Latitude, as during the time of Installation, including the very first Action, or beginning of the Geremony, namely, the being called to the Chapter-House

House Door, and entrance into it, is the Question; because there are Instances in both, but the latter is most

warrantable by the Statutes and general Practice.

The Article in Henry VIIIth's Statutes being much more tlear in describing and explaining the Ceremonies of Infallation, than any of the former; (the particulars of which in every Point seems to be excellently regulated.) having mentioned the Sovereign, or his Deputies, laying the Mantle on the Proxies Arm, it immediately follows. as the very next thing to be performed in course of time; That afterwards he shall be led by two Knights, from the Chapter-House Door to the Stall, and there being, shall make his Oath, and be installed; it gives no Account of laying the Mantle on the Arm of the Proctor at the instant of Installation in the Choir, that being directed to be done before. It is also recorded in the Black-Book; where this Ceremony is more fully treated; That Garter shall take the Mantle upon his Arms, and deliver it to both the Knights-Commissioners, and that they (according to the Tenour of the Statutes,) shall lay it on the Proctor's right Shoulder, in the Porch of the Chapter-House.

Besides, the ancient usage of receiving the Mantle in the Chapter House, or at the Chapter-House Door, either before, or in the Proceeding to the Choir, of which many instances may be given, there are several modern instances where the Mantle was born to the Choir, (and sometimes the Collar of the Order with it,) not by the Proctor, but by Garter, before him, and delivered in his Principal's Stall; as in the Proceeding of the Proxy for the Duke of Wirtembergh, Anno 2 Jat. I. when, after he had taken the Oath, and was led into the Duke's Stall, (not before) was the Robe laid on his Arm; and so was it done in many more Installations; which manner hath so far prevail'd as to be the continu'd Practice, Garter carrying the Mantie on a Cushion before the Proctors into the Choir, and laying it (after they have taken their Oaths.) on their Arms in fuch manner, that the Cross of St. George may be con-

spicuous.

Of the Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 10. Concerning the Proxies Proceeding into the Cloir, King Henry VIIIth's Statutes direct: That he shall be accompanied tompanied and led by two Knights-Companions of the Order, from the Door of the Chapter-House, to the Stall assigned to his Principal; agreeable to which, is that Passage in the Black-Book; That as soon as the two Knights have placed the Mantle on his Arm, they shall take him between them, and conduct him to the Stall of his Lord; and thus assisted have all Proxies proceeded to the Choir.

Since the Custom of receiving the Collar in the Chapter-House was laid aside, the Sovereign, (or his Lieutenant,) with the Knights-Companions, (so soon as the Mantle is delivered the Prottor, or (as of late) that he hath been admitted according to the purport of his Deputation,) proceed to the Choir, leaving the Proxy behind them in the Chapter-House, and after they have taken their Stalls, the Sovereign directs two of the Knights-Companions to descend; who taking the Alms-Knights, Officers of Arms, and the three inferior Officers of the Order before them, pass to the Chapter-House, and bring thence the Proxy to his Installation. In this Proceeding the Proxy goes Bareheaded, as did the Earl of Dover, Prottor to Charles, Prince Palatine of the Rhine, and Sir George Cartaret, Prottor to the Prince of Denmark, Anno 15 Car. II.

The Ceremonies of Installation:

It. When the Proceeding hath entred the Choir, and paid the accustomed Reverences, both towards the Altar and the Sovereign's Stall, and the Alms Knights, Officers of Arms and of the Order, taken their usual Stations; the two Commissioners (Knights-Assistants or Knights-Companions,) and Prostor make their Reverences together, and then they conduct him into the lower Stalls directly before the Stall appointed for his Principal, the foresaid Officers of the Order standing below in the Choir: If there be more than two Commissioners, then the two Senior conduct him as before, while the rest of the Commissioners take their Station below in the Choir, before their proper Stalls, and there stay till the Installation be sinish'd, and the like do the Lieutenants-Assistants, except the two Senior that are imployed in the Ceremony.

The Proxy thus introduced into the lower Stalls, stands there while the Register pronounceth the Oath of the

Ordet

Order to him, which he repeats diffinctly, Jaying his Hand on the New Testamene, and afterwards kisseth the Book.

The ancient Oath appointed by the Statutes of Institution is short, and without limitation in all Points, the same with that a Knight-Companion takes at his Personal Installation, viz. Faithfully to observe, to the utmost of his Power, the Statutes of the Order; but afterwards the Sovereign's and Fellows of those other Orders of Knighthood, (as the Golden Fleete, Monsieur St. Michael, &c.) before their admission into the Order of the Garter, sued for, and obtained the allowance of some relative exceptions or proviso's to be added to the aforesaid Oath; which usually were such as stood with the interest of their Religion, their great State or Dignity; or precedent obligation to the

Order they had before accepted.

In the Black-Book is a Precedent of the Oath to be taken by an Emperor; whereby he is obliged to promile on his Royal Word, and give his Faith on his Honour and the Holy Evangelists, That be will faithfully and truly, to the atmost of his Power, observe the Statutes in every Branch and Article thereof, at least so far as they can or ought tobe observed by him, and so far as they shall not be contrary or derogatory to those whereunto be hath before given his Name and Sworn, and faving all other conditions agreed There are belides this, other Precedents in the Annals of the Form of the Oath from the Proftor of an Emperor of King, and of every other inferior Degree, wherein are several exceptions before agreed on; and when Philip, King of Castile and Leon, (Sovereign of the Order of the Golden Fleece,) was Personally installed at Windsor, Anno 22 Hen. VII. and took the Oath without Limitation, yet he soon after obtain'd the Sovereign's Dilpensation, that the use of the Collar and other Ensigns of the Order might be left to his pleasure, and that he might not be obliged to be present at future Chapters.

Other Exceptions have been admitted, but were obtained with great difficulty and much debate, lest the Dignity and Reputation of the Order should (instead of being kept up) be lessen'd, the forbearance of some Circumstances that hath been yeilded to, having sometimes been brought into Precedent, to the prejudice of the Order.

THE

The exceptions that were allowed the Arch-Duke of Austria, when he took the Oath at his Investiture at Normalis, Anno 15 Hen. VIII. were as follow.

Nos to wear the Garter and Collar but at some certain

times in the Tear, at his own pleasure.

That if he were not in Place convenient to go to hear Mass on it George's Day, he should cause a Priest to say it

in bis presence.

Not to be obliged, if bufied in weighty Affairs, to wear the Garter, Collar, or whole Habit of the Order, on St. George's Day, longer than during divine Service; nevertheless he promised, if he could not than wear it for a whole Day together, he would willingly wear it on some other solemn Day within the compass of the Year.

Of another nature were the exceptions, which Francis I. King of France, procured to be admitted into the Oath taken by his Profler, Anno 19 Hen., VIII. viz. To observe the Statutes of the Order of the Garter so fur as they were considered with, and not constant or prejudicial to the Statutes of the Order of St. Michael, and other Orders which his Principal had before taken of other Princes.

Such like exceptions have been generally allowed to Kings and Sovereign Princes, but as to the Prexies of such Strangers, not Sovereign Princes, but Subjects, the Form of their Oath is usually framed (by the indu gence of the Sovereign;) with just limitations, not only to their obligation of the Statutes of any other Order they had accepted, or any Oath formerly taken, but sometimes to the Fidelity and Allegiance which they owe their Sovereign Lord and Prince.

After the Oath hath been administred to a Stranger's Proxy, (with such or the like exceptions before set down) the two Knights Commissioners pass up with him into the higher Row of Stalls, and so to that assign'd to his Principal, where being arrived, they take the Mantle from Garter, and lay it upon the Proctor's lest Arm, with the Escutcheon of St. George uppermost, according to an Order in a Chapter he d, Anno 23 Car II. which was to be a standing Rule for the suture, and is now observed.

In the Act and Ceremony of Installation, the Commisfloners who first conducted the Proxy into the Choir, jointly embrace him; then the Proxy makes his double Reverence; and lastly the Commissioners, according to the Custom of (402)

Installations, set him down in his Principal's Stall, where he hath used to remain during Divine Service; but by the aforesaid Order in Chapter, Anno 23 Car. II. the Proxies are prohibited sitting in their Stalls, but directed to stand before them uncovered, with their Mantles on their right Arms, until Divine Service be ended.

The two Knights (between whom the Prax) proceeded to Inflallation,) descend into the Choir, and stand before their own Stalls, and after a while, first the Senior Commissioners, and then the other, ascend into them with

usual Reverences, and then Divine Service begins.

The Profter's Offerings

In Proflor having received Possession of his Principal's Stall, stays in the Choir, and performs the following Ceremonies, the chief of which is the Offering of Gold and Silver, according to the Degree and Seniority of his Principal's Stall, in case the Installation be in the Morning; but if it be celebrated when St. George's Feast is held by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, the Praxy ought not to Offer till the Lieutenant hath first Offered for the Sovereign'; and the Lieutenant also Offereth for himself before the Proflor, if his Stall be higher than the Stranger's, for

whom the Process is installed.

The Proctor in Offering doth it with all the Cerethony as if his Lord were present; when the Knights-Compainions descend from their Stalls, (which Ceremony begins with the Junior Knight,) he also descends in his turn, and placeth himself below in the Choir before the Stall of his Principal, and if he have an opposite Knights-Companion; he joins himself to him, and proceeds towards the Alear to the Offering, with the Officers of Arms before him; but if no Knights-Companion be opposite, he then proceeds alone, having his Train born, and a Knights-Companion, or some other great Personage, suitable to his Degree, attending on his less Hand, to give him the Offering, which he Offers kneeling on a Cushion, and after him the rest of the Knights-Companions present Offer, every one according to the Seniority of their Stalls.

After the Offering, the Process taking his way by the Best-end of the Stalls, returns back to the Stall of his Prinz

tipal,

7 463)

sipal, and Divine Service being sinish'd, and like Honoue in all respects showed to his Proxi as if his Principal had been present, he ought to remain in his Master's Stall till his next Junior Knight hath left his Stall, and then descend after him, and stand below before his Stall, till his turn come to join himself again to the Proceeding, and so to pass out of the Choir.

Sometimes the Process hath been received at his coming flown from his Lord's Stall by the two Knights-Commissioners who installed him, as were the Process of Frederick II. King of Denmark, and John, Count Palatine of the Rhine; between whom they also proceeded to the Chapter-Honse Door, in the same manner they were conducted into the Choir; but notwithstanding this, the Process ought rather to take in his return the Place of his Principal, (as he did at the Offering, and which is indeed his right,) and so the Process of Francis I. went behind alone in his Principal's place, and followed the Knights-Commissioners from the Choir to the place where he lodged; and this Method is since followed.

The Dinner:

\$ 13. When the Installation hath past in the Morning, there hath usually been prepared a great Dinner at the Sovereign's Charge; we need here only mention what is different in this particular from the Perlonal Installation of a

Knight-Companion.

The Prexy washes alone; firs at the chief Place of the Table alone, and is serv'd alone; but the other Knights-Companions sit at the end of the Table; but if the Sovereign's Lieutenant be present; the Process dines at the same Table with hird, and then a little before the second Course is brought in, the Sovereign's Stile is proclaimed with the tisual Ceremony; in Lasin, French, and English; but otherwise, only the Stile of the new installed Prince; and once. The Stile and Titles of Christian IV. King of Denmark, were problemed in Lucius; and of Manusce; Prince of Grange, in French.

Dinner being eided; all rife in Order and Wash; sirflythe Proxy alone, and after him the Knights-Commissioners; and according the Process to his Chamber; where leaving B d 2

Digitized by Google

him, they retire to their own Lodgings, and there put off

their Habits.

When the Solemnity of Installation is over, the Proctor is to take care, that Garter forthwith set up the Atchievements of his Principal over his Stall, and six the Plate of his Arms on the back thereof; in Memorial of the Ceremony of Instaguration; to which end also Medals have frequently been struck, to perpetuate the Honour so received.

C A P. XVII.

The Duties and Fees payable by the Knights-Companions at their Installations.

Touching the Fees due to the College of Windsor.

that they thought no Work well perform'd, without being attended with some charitable Donarion, especially if it had relation to the Church, whereto they generally bore a venerable Esteem. Hence was it at the Installation of the Order ordain'd: Thus every Knight-Companion should, at his entrance, bestow a certain Sum of Money, according to his Quality and Degree. That is to say,

	•	l.	s.	đ.
The Sovereign of the Order		26	13	04
SilA'-Stranger King	•	20	60	00
The Prince of Wales		13	06	08
-0 Every Duke		10	00	00
Every Earl		06	13	04
· Every Baron	•	05	00	00
*** Every Knight-Batchelor	•	03	06	08

These Summs were appointed towards the Relief of the Camons of Windsor, the Alms-Knights, and augmentation

of the Alms-Deeds; there appointed perpetually to be done. To the end, That every one entring into this Military Order, might thereby more worthily obtain the Name, Title, and Privilege, of one of the Founders of the Order; it being supposed a worthy and just thing, that who sever obtained this Privilege, should add some small increment to this Foundation.

Not long after establishing the Statutes, the Titles of Marquis and Viscount becoming special Dignities, it was Decreed, Anno 22 Hen. VI. that a Marquis should contribute 8 1. 6 s. 8 d. and a Viscount 5 l. 16 s. 8 d. which

was confirmed by King Henry VIIIth's Statutes.

And though in all the Bodies of the Statutes, the Sovereign of the Order is charg'd with Payment of Fees to the College, yet is it to be understood only of those Sovereigns, who were not (before the assumption of their Stall,) elected into this Order.

Upon a Decree, Anno 22 Car. II. the Installation Fee, to all the Officers of the Order were settled; Those made

payable to the Dean and Canons are,

		٠.	d.	
A Stranger King 2	0	00	00	
A Stranger Prince	0	Οġ	00	
	,0	00	00	
	0	00	00	
A Marquis .	8	06.	9	
An Earl	6	13	04	
A Viscount		16		
A Baron	5	80	00	
A Knight-Batchelor	3	o6	08	

These Fees ought to be paid at the time of the Knight's Installation, by the Hands of some one of their Servants, so soon as the Ceremonies are ended; the Statutes expressly prohibiting the setting up of their Archievements till

Payment be made.

The Alms-Knights, by Queen Elizabeth's Establishment, receiv'd Installation Fees apart from those paid to the College, which by the aforesaid Establishment of Fees, Anno 22 Car. II. are made equal to those payable to the Deam in and Canons; and by the said Decree, the Choir of Windsor, under which not only the Vicare, but the Vergers, Charles D d 3 rifters.

riflers, and Bell-Ringers, are comprehended, receive the following Fees.

9.4	l. s. d.
A Stranger King	16 00 00
A Stranger Prince	68 IO 00
A Prince of Wales	16 00 00.
A Duke	og 10 od
A Marquis	·06 15 0°C
An Earl	 "05 IO 0Q
A Viscount	 04 00 00
A Baron	04 00 00
A Knight-Batchelor	03 00 00

Fees due to the Register, Garter, Black-Rod, and Officers of Arms.

11. In the Rank of those Officers to whom Infallation Pees are due, stands first the Register, who, as appears by the Black-Book, is to have of every Knight-Companion 13 1. 4 d. and a Robe.

Bus there being a concealment of this Fee, it was reprefented to King Charles I. who ordered the Register to be

paid in Lieu of the Robe, as follows;

		ş. d.	l. s. d.
	Knight-Batchelor	13 04]	[28 00 0g
•	Baron	13 04	30 00 00
7	Viscount	13 04	32 00 00
Hem. For a	{ Earl	13 04 > and	34 00 0Q
` -	Marquils	13 04 }	36 00 00
	Duke	13 C4	40 00 00
	Prince	₹3 °4 j	138 00 00

The same were since settled by the Establishment of Installation Fees, Anno 22 Car. II. when it was added, that the Prince of Wales, and a Stranger King, should pay 40 L and a Stranger Prince 38 L 13 s. 4 d.

Next, the Register and Garter claim both Droits and Fees, for their Service and Attendance, having a greater share of Business than any other Officer of the Order. As to the first of these, it was ordained by the Constitutions of his Office; That as often as any Knight should happened to

to be infigiled, be might challenge for bimfelf the Garments were by him, immediately before his Investiture with the Surcest of the Order. And the constant Practice hath interpreted this to be the Knight's upper Garment, anciently a short Gown, of later times a Cloak, but now a Cost; which he puts off in the Chapter-House when the Investiture begins.

By the Establishment of Installation Fees, Anno 22 Car, II. the composition set upon each Knight-Companion for his

upper Garment, was thus rated.

	(, s.	d.
A Prince of Wales	. 60- oq	00
A Duke	55 00	00
A Marquis	50 00	00
An Earl	45 00	00
A Viscount	40 00	
A Baron	25 00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	30 00	00

Besides this Droit or Composition, there hath in all times been paid to Garter by every Knight-Companion, a Fee for his Installation, which was likewise brought to the following certainty by the said Establishment.

	<i>,l</i> .	s.	d.
A Stranger King	30	OO.	00.
A Stranger Prince	20	00	00
A Stranger King A Stranger Prince A Prince of Wales	40	00	00
A Duke	35	00	oρ
A Marquis	. 30	00	00
An Earl			00
A Viscount		٥٥	
A Baron	25	00	.00
A Knight-Batchelor			00

The Fee due to the Black-Rod by the said Establish-

	l. s. d.
A Stranger King	20 00 00
A Stranger Prince	20 00 00
A Rrince of Whles.	40 00 00
A Duke	20 00 00
A Marquis	18 00 00
An Barl	16 00 00
D d 4	A Vic-

A Viscount A Baron A Knight-Batchelor 14 00 00 12 00 00 10 00 00

The Officers of Arms, by the faid Establishment, have the fame Fees as are allowed the Black Red; only in the Fee of a Stranger King, they have an addition of ten Pounds more.

Fees belonging to other of the Sovereign's Servants,

§ 3. In the Lists of Installation Fees of former times, some Officers were set down, who gave their attendance, with the several Sums they received, some that were then accounted Fees, and others Benevolences; all which nevertheless were admitted into the List of Installation Fees, 22 Car. II. and though not entered into the Register of the Order, yet are to be given in under the Hand of Garter, with the other Fees payable at Installations, and to be paid by every Knight to all Persons concern d respectively, according to ancient Custom, viz.

Prince. Duke Marquis Earl. To the Wardrobe of oo oolo3 oo oolo2 to oolo2 oo o The Trumpets 12 00 0006 00 0005 00 0004 00 0 The Serj. Trumpet 02 00 0001 00 opor 00 0001 00 0 The Muficians 16 00 00|08 00 00|01 00 00|06 00 0 Drum's and Fifes 04 00 00 02 00 00 01 15 00 01 10 0 Knight-Harbinger 03 06 08 03 06 08 03 06 08 03 06 8 The Porters 06 00 00|03 00 00|02 to color oo o Mafter Cook 03 00 00 01 10 00 01 02 00 01 00 0 Serjeant Porter 06 00 00/03 00 00/02 00 00/01 00 0 To the Veilry 02 00 0001 00 0001 00 0001 00 0 Yeomen Harbingers of . 90 oclo3 .00 oclo2 10 oclo2 00. 9 Ethers of the Hallow oo or or 10 00 01 05 00 01 00 0 Grooms of Chamb. 03 00 0001 10 0001 05 0001 00 0 Yeomen Ushers 06 13 0403 06 0803 00 0002, 19 0 Quarter Waiters 08 16 0004 08 0403 16 0803 05 8 Sawers (08 00 00/04 08 04/03 16 08/03 06 8 Buttery' 03 00 0001 10 0001 05 0001 00 0 Pantry os on appor la appor as appor ab o Celler 83 oo oolut to öolot o2 oolut op o

Fees payable for Strangers.

00.00

01 00 00

90 QQ

10

Cellar

of Fees, was thought unreasonable; therefore by the Seatures of Institution, the Sovereign is obliged to pay them; the first Example whereof that we meet with, is an Order, then. VI. which appointed; That the usual Fees, due for the Installation of the King of Denmark, should be discharged by the Sovereign, as the Statute evisin'd.

To this, purpose Privy-Seals were issued to the Lord Treasurer, for the time being, to pay the Fees to the Register. of the Order out of the Exchaquer, which was the constant Custom, till King Charles I. in the 13th Year of his Reign, settled an Annual Pension of 1200 s. upon the Order; and by a Comm ssion in the said Year, impower'd the Chancellor of the Order, and his Successors; to pay out of the same, not only the ordinary, but also extraordinary Charges of the Order; wherein the Fees for Installations of Strangers are included.

Notwithstanding the Sovereign (as we have shown) discharg'd the Installation Fees due from Strangers, yet they

Monarch, vet the Grand Feast began to decline, by a removal of the observation of St. George's Day from Windfor, and a prorogatory Celebration of the Grand Feast to other rimes.

The Article of the Statutes, causing this great alteration from the original design of the first Institution, gives the Sovereign Power to prorogue the Grand Feast at his Pleasure; but then tis evident from the same Statute, that St. George's Day was nevertheless ordained to be duly oblerved by it self, in what Place soever the Sovereign (if within the Realm) should then reside; Windsor hereby being not excluded.

It farther implies, the facred Rites and Offices to be performed, with other Matters concerning the Order; for befides the particulars therein enumerated, this general Clause is observable: That what other urgent Affair loever, relating to the Order, stiould offer it felf to be performed, the same might be treated of, and receive dispatches, in the Chapter held where the Sovereign then thould be, as fully as if he were at Windfer Caffle,

So that henceforward, all things began to be ordered. both on the Eve the Day of St. George, and the Morzow after, with as great State; all Affairs as legally dispatched, and all Ceremonies as magnificently performed, except. that of offering up of Archievements, which is peculiar to the Chappel of St. George at Windfor only, as could be observed at the Grand Festival it self.

And how, by Virtue of this Article, and with what Ceremonies St. George's Day was held, when the Grand Wealt was prorogued, is evident from a full and ample Precedent, 22 Hen. VIII, now remaining in the Office of Arms.

For though the Sovereign with 13 Knights-Companions were at Windsor that Year, upon the 22, 23 and 24 of April, yet at that time they observed only the Feast Day of St. George, with the Eve and Morrow after, but deferand, by Order in Chapter, the Celebration of the Grand Feaft, to the 8th of May enluing.

The Grand Feust neglected by King Edward VI.

6. From the Accession of this Prince, the Sovereignty of this Order Lecame more neglected, so that during his Reign,

Reign, no Anniverlary of St. George was kept at Windfor,

by & Grand Festival.

This is supposed to be owing to the common Calamity of that Age, wherein most Ceremonies, solemn or splendid, especially such as related to Divine Services, came under the denomination of being either Superstinious or Idolatrous. Insomuch, that at a Chapter held at Greenwich, 2 Edw. VI. an Abolition being intended for such Ceremonies as were not consonant to the King's Injunctions, lately prescribed, it was then decreed, that then, and for ever from thenceforth, at the Feast of this most Noble Order, no other Ceremonies should be observed than such as were appointed by his Majesties Letter.

That no Procession should be made with going about the Church, or Church-yard, but the King's Majesty's Procession, lately fet forth in English to be used. His Majesty and other Knights Companions sitting in their Stalls, at the Entry. such Reverences to be made to the King's Majesty only as was heretofore. The Offering to be in the Box for the Poor, with, due any other Reverence, or kissing any Paten, or other thing; but only at the return, due Reverence to the King, as was used before. The Mass of Requiem to be left undone, but yet, both on St. George's Day, and for next Day, a Mais to be Sung with great Reverence; in which, immediately after the Words of Consecration is said, the Priest shall say the Pater Nofter, and so turn and Communicate to all, or so many of the Order, or other, after they have done, as shall be disposed to receive the Communion, according to the Orders prefcribed by his Majesty's Book of Communion, and without any other Rite or Ceremony after the said Communion to be used; exrept some godly Psalm or Hymn to be Sung in English, and so to end the said Service. All Chapters, and other Rises concerning the Order, not being contrary to these, to remain as they Bank been used.

This Decree seemed to mean nothing less than a Prohibition to the holding the Grand Feast at Windsor, at least the neglect of its Celebration there, whilst King Edw. VI. lived: And thought toward the End of his Reign, some care was taken for a Permission to hold the said Feast, either on St. George's Day, or some other appointed by Prorogation; yet it was without any regard to the ancient and usual Place; for when the Act passed, commanding the Days therein mentioned to be kept Holy, and no other,

whereby

times, fell too near the 23d of April, to celebrate the Feath on, which was the real cause of those Prorogations, of which there are many Instances.

And as the Knights-Companions had Prohibitions put upon the Solemnization of their Feaff, in case of its interfering with Easter; so had the Church of England, in their Observation of St. George's Day, in reservence to several other Festivals; and this continued till the time of the Resormation begun by King Edward VI. but since the Grand Feast has been celebrated upon any of them indifferently

the Feaft of Easter only excepted.

The second lort of Prorogations; which are meerly Arbitrary, and wholly dependent on the Sovereign's Pleafure, yet warranted sufficiently from the Words, Causa postulante, mentioned in King Henry VIII's Statutes; as likewise the great Latitude given the Sovereigns of this most Noble Order, in reserence to their Affairs, in the same Statutes: The first Precedent of which was, Anno 5 Hen. V. when about August, sour Months after St. George's Day, that King being engaged in the Wars of Prance, ordered the Feast to be celebrated at Caen in Normandy, and with great Solemnity created sisteen Knights into the Order.

There are several other Examples, particularly one 8 Hén. VIII. when the King being at Elebam on St. George's Day, it was in a Chapter there held, Decreed, That the accustomed Feast of St. George should be observed at Windsor 25th of May ensuing. And from this time it became Annually customary, to keep the Day of St. George where the Sovereign at that time inade his Abode: On which Day, and the Day after, the usual Solemnities were observed. But as to the Solemnization of the Grand Feast it selfs that was in one of the Chapters then held, adjourned to some farther time, and then solemnized at Windsor by Prorogation, not by the Sovereigns themselves, but by their Lieutenants and their Assistants appointed for that purpose.

But to proceed with the Causes of Protogation, which were either for some weighty reasons, of upon emergent Occasions; Anno 1 Maria, the Sovereign celebrating the Feast of St. George at St. James's, Philip, Prince of Spain, and the Earl of Sussex, were on the Morfow after elected into the O der; whereupon it was likewise Decreed.

creed, that the Inauguration of these two elea Knights, till the Prince came to England, which happening 21st July following, the Grand Feast, together with that of the elea Knights Installations, were appointed to be celebrated at the same time.

Again 3 and 4 Phil. and Mar. at a Chapter held 22d April, the Feast of St. George, together with the Installation of three elect Knights, was appointed to be held at Windsor the 9th of May ensuing; and by a Chapter summon'd the 3d of May, before the appointed Day for holding the Feast, the same was prorogued to the 15th of December following, upon the preffing Affairs of the King and Queen. But before that design'd time came, another Chapter was held on the 31st of October, wherein it was again prorogu'd to the first Sunday after Twelftb-day, viz. 9 January, if by that time the King, who was then in Flanders, should return to England: But that not happening, it was farther prorogu'd to the 20th of February; and thence, by another Decree, to St. George's Day. Of which there are many other Examples, and sometimes upon other Occasions; but still at the Sovereign's Pleasure.

Of Commissions of Prorogation.

§ 9. There is no Precedent of Commissions for Prorogation, ancienter than 12 Car. I. left by Sir Thomas Rome, wherein Notice is taken of all the Adjournments of the Grand Feasts, from St. George's Day preceeding, till that Time, with the Reasons thereof, and chiefly upon Confideration of the spreading Sickness, together with a Command to the Knights-Companions, and the Officers of the Order, to attend the Sovereign on the new assign'd Days for celebrating the Feast.

As to the Substance hereof, the succeeding Commissions very near agree, yet with some little Difference; as sirst, the Preambles are general, and run thus: Whereas, upon special Reasons, and other important Affairs, &cc. except the Commission issued 25th February, 1637, where the Preamble was sitted to a special Occasion, and runs thus, --- Whereas we have determined to create the Prince, our eldest Son, a Knight, and to propose him in Election as a

Digitized by Google

whereby this was involved among many other Saints Day's then prohibited to be kept, as not being found among the Feafts then Establish'd; it was considered, that a Provision and Allowance should be entered in the aforesaid Act; for the Celebration of this Feast, particularly by the Knight's Companions; which Act, though it suffered a Repeal by Queen Mary, yet stands in soice at this Day, being revived by King James I. his repealing that Statute of a Mar. Cap. 21

Removed from Windsor by Quien Elizabeth.

5 7. But the most fatal Blow given to the growing Honour of the Castle of Windsor, was a Decree in Chapter held 9 Eliz. with the consent of the Knights Companion.

then prefent, vit.

That if on the Vigil and Bay of St. George, the Feaft was not beld at Windsor, according to the usual Custom, it should nevertheless be sufficient, if the Observation thereof were kept at the same Place where the Sovereign should then happen to be, where also the rest of the Knights-Companions were obliged to be present, no less than if the Feast had been held at Windsor.

And so severe was the latter part of this Decree against the flourishing condition of that Place; that it commanded

alfo,

That no other Solemnity, under the notion of St. George's Reaft, should thenceforth be celebrated at Windson, except upon occasion of the Installation of some illustrious Person; and then also, not without express leave of the Sovereign.

And to say truth, this Statute was but too strictly observed during her Reign; for we meet but with one Feast of St. George held there, till 1 Jur. I. (unless we missake the Feasts of Installation for those of St. George,) but then the Sovereign, who was yet in Scotland, sent his Commission, dated 3 April, to the Earl of Notetingham, his Lieutenant, to prorogue the Festival to the 3d July sollowing, and after constituted him to hold the Feast; which was performed the 2, 3 and 4 Days of the said Month, with all Pomp and Ceremony. The King himself; being then at Windsor, was prevented from being present by some excasion not mentioned.

Thus

Thus, after a long Interval, the Honour of the Feast was restored, which had this effect, toward the End of King James I. Reign, and that of his Son and Successor, King Charles I, that it begat a Re-union of the Feast and Place, whereby the Castle of Windsor, famous for the Institution of this most Noble Order, retrieved its ancient Honour, of having its Solemniries celebrated there.

of Proregation of the Quand Fraft:

§ 8. Having thus noted, that from the beginning of King Henry VIIIth's Reign, till of late Years, the Grand Feast was seldom observed upon the precise Day of St. George; and that the occasion how both Day and Feast came to be celebrated apart, took its rise from the indulgence of the Statutes in point of Prorogation: Tis necessary farther to observe, that this Prorogation is of two sorts, either Absolute, as being enjoined by the Statutes; ar'else Arbitrary, at the Sovereign's Pleasure, upon intervening Reasons.

In the first of these the Founder's Statutes enjoin, That if the Feast of St. George shall happen within sisteen Dajs next after Easter Day, it shall be prorogued to the Sunday Fortnight, or sisteen Days after Easter Day. And the reason is there given, That every of the Knights-Companions might have opportunity of coming thereto, without being constrained to ride upon any of those three Holy Days preceeding Easter Day. The same Rule for Prorogation, where there is a concurrence of these two Feasts, is likewise enjoin'd by the Statutes of King Henry V. and King Henry VIII.

And when the Grand Feast, in this case of Easter, has been kept before the expiration of the said sifteen Days, the Knights-Companions then absent; to avoid the Penalty for their nor appearing, have made Excuse; that the ancient Statutes of the Order were violated in keeping the Feast within sifteen Days after Easter, as was alledged when Sir John Denham, Lord Treasurer, as President; held the Feast of St. George at Windsor, 24 April, & Henry VII.

Anciently, where the Register mentions the Grand Feat to be held at Windsor, beyond the Day of St. George, 'tis observable upon Calculation, that Easter Day, in those

Companion of our most Noble Order, for the more Conveniency of his Installation, We have thought fit to defer the Feast of

Sr. George, ಆ.

But in the Commissions of Prorogation of the Grand Feast, 25th February, 19 Car. I. the Piace appointed for Celebration is omitted, which Desect we find in the abovementioned Precedent also; yet afterwards that material Part came to be inserted, and first of all in that Commission of the 26th February, 14 Car. I. where the Place, being the City of York, is put into the Body of the Commission. And when the Civil War drew on, and the Sovereign could not well ascertain any Place, then the Grand Feast was appointed to be kept at any such Place as, on a nearer View, should seem convenient; afterwards it vary'd something, and came to be inserted thus, -Where-soever We shall then be; or thus, at such Places as We shall timely appoint.

The most ordinary course, preparatory to the issuing such Commissions of Prorogation, has been by the Sovereign's Declaration in Chapter, or otherwise the Signification of his Pleasure to the Chancellor of the Order at any other Time, who thereupon drew up the Commission, and presented it to the Sovereign for his Sign Manual, and then affixed thereto the great Seal of the Order. But where the Chancellor was not at Hand to receive the Sovereign's Commands, in this Case it was convey'd to him by some other Hand, with command to summon the Knights-Companions and Officers accordingly. For so it was done to Sir Francis Windebank, Knt. Secretary of State, by his Letter to Sir Thomas Rowe, 13 Car. I. for Prorogation of the Grand Feast.

And as all the preceeding Adjournments of the Grand Feast have been either decreed in Chapter, or directed immediately from the Sovereign; so there is a Precedent where the Lieutenant has been impowered to prorogue the same; yet to the Time and Place appointed by the Sovereign, and inserted in the Commission of Lieutenancy: And this was in a Commission, 1 Jac. I. directed to Charles,

Earl of Nottingham.

That

That the Grand Feast ought to be celebrated once a Year.

for. Though the Prorogations of the Grand Feast have been occasionally made use of on the aforesaid important Reasons, yet no such Adjournment or Prorogation is legally to be inlarged beyond Sr. George's Day ensuing; because once within the compass of every Year, the Grand Feast ought to be solemniz'd; for so it was ordained by the Seatutes at the Institution of the Order, and confirmed likewise by the succeeding Seatutes. And when our Historians take notice of the Grand Feast, they speak of the same thing, that it ought Annually to be performed; whence it is frequently called in the Rogisters, Annua Festivitatis, solemnitas annua, celebritas annua, and the like.

Of late Times, an Occasion happen'd that brought this of the Seatutes, into a solemn Debate in Chapter, which, for the Result thereof, became very remarkable.

At a Chapter held at White-Hall, 2d February, 1640.

The Sovereign propos'd to the Knights-Companions, that baving prorogued the Celebration of St. George's Feast from time to time, to the 1st, 2d, and 3d of March, so near Lent, that if the Feast were not held on these Days, it could not be done within the compass of that Year; because the 23d of April, for the next Year, did fall on Good-Friday, and so consequently must have been kept in Lene this Year, or not at all; and confidering the great and important Affairs of the Parliament, he moved the Question, whether, if there were no Feast kept this Year, it would be any Blemish to the Honour of the Order? And whether he might not dispence with the Statute, and defer it till next Year? They all confessed the Sovereign's dispensing Power; yet some of the Knights feeing from the Institution to that Time, no Precedent was found where the Grand Feast had been wholly omitted, but that some of the Sovereigns, even though engaged in War beyond Sea, either solemniz'd the Feast in their own Prejonce, sence, or by Commission in England, which was averred by the Chancellor to be both the fundamental and constant Pra-Rice,) humbly besonght the Sovereign not to begin to make any Breach in the constant Order, so long and uninterruptedly continued. Whereupon it was resolved, by general Vote, that the Feast should be celebrated on the aforesaid Days of

Prorogation.

By which Determination it sufficiently appears, of what Moment the Sovereign and Knights-Companions then conceived it to the Honour of the Order, to follow the Statutes, for the Celebration of the Grand Feaft once every Year. Besides, it is observable, that it was not thought expedient to be dispensed with, even on the most pressing and important Occasions. But rather than the Statutes should suffer any Violation, the Feast was then solemnized, they were so straitered, in point of time, as not to have above two Days to make Preparation for it.

And though indeed, on the breaking out of the unhappy Civil War, the Sovereign was oblig'd to defer the Solemnity from Year to Year, it was not to be look'd on as any Precedent; and on the Restauration of King Charles II, it

renew'd its former Order.

C A P. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feast of the Order.

Of Letters giving Notice of the Time and Place.

Mong many other things which are necessary to be prepar'd beforehand; the first of Course is, the Letters directed to all the Knights-Companions and Officers of the Order, resident within the Kingdom, to give them Notice of the Time and Place, when and where the Feast is to be held. (2.) Letters of Dispensation to such Knights, as the Sovereign shall please to excuse from their Attendance at the Feast. (3.) Commissions

maffions of Lieutenancy, (or sometimes of Affistance) when the Sovereign cannot personally solemnize the same (4.) Warrants for the Removal of Atchievements, if there be then Occasion. (5.) Escutcheons and Stiles, to be set on the back of each Knight-Companion's Stall, if the Feast be held elsewhere than at Windsor. (6) The Chappel to be decently adorn'd. (7) The great Hall, or other Place, for the Grand Dinner, to be prepar'd, and very nobly furnish'd. (8.) And lastly, Officers to be appointed, besides those of the Order of Arms, who are to give peculiar Attendance on the Sovereign, at this Grand Solemnity.

As to the first of these Points, the Chancellor is to attend the Sovereign some convenient Time before the approach of St. George's Day, to learn his Pleasure therein, and whether he is inclined to Prorogue the Day, &c.

If the Sovereign be inclin'd to a Prorogation, then the Chancellor is to draw up a Commission for that purpose. After this, Letters issu'd out anciently under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, both to his Lieutenant, when he holds not the Feast personally, and the Knights-Companions, giving them notice of the Time and Place; but of late the Chancellor hath been appointed to dispatch these Letters in his own Name.

But whether the Feast be held upon St. George's Day, or any other, by Prorogation, the Sovereign's Pleasure was usually known so long before the appointed Time, that these circular Letters issu'd out sometimes two, three, four, five, or fix Months, before the affign'd Day. And in Cases where there has been farther Prorogations, Care has been taken to iffue our new Commissions, in the like convenient Time, before the old were expir'd; as may be observed by what has gone before; that so those Knights Companions, who are most remote from Court, may have sufficient Time to prepare, either for Attendance, or, on just Occasion, to apply themselves to the Sovereign, for Letters of Dispensation for Absence: And farther, that the absent Knights may thereby take notice of the Day fer, because such are oblig'd to hold the Feast in their own Houses, at the same Time.

Besides the Letters directed to the Knights-Companions; the Chancellor is likewise to write his Letters to each of the Officers of the Order, to give them the like notice.

Ee 3

Of Dispensations for not attending the Grand Feast.

§ 2. It having been complained of by the Chancellor of the Order, and taken notice of by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, in a Chapter held at the Celebration of the Grand Feast, 13 Car. I. at White-Hall:

That of late Years, divers Knights-Companions had negleded, both their Attendance on the Sovereign at the Fcafe of St. George, or to send, under their Seals of Arms, their probable Excuses, and Petitions for Licence and Dispensation, contrary to the most ancient Statutes, and their Duty.

It was therefore, among many other things, decreed, That for the future, every Knight of the Order should be bound to attend on the usual Days, or such as should be asfigned by Prorogation: But in Case of Sickness, or other important Bufiness to retard them, they shou'd, under their Seals of Arms to the Chancellor, fignify the Reasons for requiring a Dispensation for their Absence, twenty Days at least before the usual, or assigned Time, to be presented by him to the Sovereign; and on Neglect of fo doing, except in sudden Accidents, should not be excused, but incur the Penalty of the Statutes.

And it is evident, that this way of enjoining the Knights-Companions to fend the Reason that prevented their Attendance, under their Seals, has been very ancient; for the Black Book records an Order in Chapter, held at a General Feast, 1 Hen. VI. to this very Purpose; and enjoin'd farther, That when such absent Knights were present at the next Feast, they should be oblig'd to give the Reason why they Thould not incur the Penalty of their former Absence, since the

Statutes enjoin it.

In Pursuance of the beforementioned Decree, Sir Thomas Rome, then Chancellor, added to those his Letters, dated 18 May, 1637, and directed to the Knights-Companions, under the Seal of the Order, this following Post-

Acript.

According to two Ads made in Chapter, in the Presence of the Sovereign, 18 April. 1637. concerning the Neglett of the Knights-Companions, in their Attendance upon his Majesty at the Feest of St. George, and a Command expressy receiv'd to signify so much to your Lordship; I have the true Copies

Copies of the Ads themselves, it being resolv'd, in Case of Omission of your lawful and timely Excuse, under your Seal of Arms, and in Occasion of Absence, in keeping the Solemmity in your own House, that no Dispensation shall be given, but your Lordship shall incur the Penalties of the ancient Statutes; which are, That you shall not be permitted to the Chapter, nor to your Seat, the next Year; but Shall stand before it, as do the Choiristers: In Procession then you shall go before, and not in your Place among the Knights, and That! Offer last; and that this Penance being done, you Mall come before the Sent of the Sovereign, and ask Absolution: But if two Years successively your Lordship shall omit your Attendance, or timely Suit for Difpensation, you shall pay twenty Marks, and that Sum to be doubled for every Year of such Omission, till you are reconciled, and pardon'd by the Sovereign, whereof I befeech your Lordship to take Knowledge.

It afterwards appears, by an Order past in Chapter, 9th Ostober, 15 Car. I. that this early Notice to be given from such of the Knights-Companions as, upon the Reasons already mention'd, should be absent, was design'd chiefly in Favour of the Officers of the Sovereign's Houshold, who, by knowing in due Time who should be absent, and who not, might make timely and certain Provision

for the Feast.

Upon Notice sent by the Chancellor, to the Knight-Companions, as aforesaid, if any of them should happen to be any way indispos'd, or have other lawful Excuse for not repairing to Court, and attending the Feast, they may acquaint the Chancellor therewith, whose Duty it is to represent it to the Sovereign, and thereon to procure his Letters of Dispensation for their Absence, if the Sovereign consents.

Which Letters are to be convey'd by Garter, or carry'd by whomsoever he shall appoint; for which there was a Fee by the Mile allowed him, by the following Order, past at a Meeting held by the Knights-Commissioners, for

regulating Points relating to the Order, 13 Car. I.

Whereas it having anciently been the Office of Garter, King of Arms, to differse and send Letters of Prorogation, Dispensation, and other Commands of the Sovereign, to the absent Knights, which in many Cases must be chargeable, it was this Day order'd, That if he should send any Ast of Ee 4. Favour Favour or Dispensation to any Knight, absent from his Majest's Court, or four Miles from the City of London, he to whom such Dispensation should be sent, should pay his Servans or Messenger, for every Day's Travel, as much as is allowed and paid any other Messengers of his Majesty's House or Chamber.

Variety of Occasions and Accidents, as Grounds to move the Sovereign, and Inducements to obtain his Dispensation, are extant in several Letters sent to Sir Thomas Rowe, when Chancellor, on the aforesaid Injunctions, decreed 13 Car. I. but they all agree in the Causes we have mentioned.

Of Commissions of Lieutenancy,

53. Touching the third particular, and preparing Commissions of Lieutenancy, in such Cases where the Sovereign cannot personally celebrate the Feast; as also Commissions for those whom he thinks fit to appoint for his Assistants, the Reader is referred to the Head in the next Chapter, under which there is an Account of constituting a Lieutenant; and here only observe, that the Chancellor is to draw up these Commissions, and attend the Sovereign for his Hand, and after to pass them under the Great Seal of the Order.

Warrant for the Removal of Atchievements.

§ 4. If there be Occasion for Removal of any of the Knights-Companions Atchievements, at the Grand Feast, which indeed has seldom happen'd, unless an Installation were celebrated at the same time, then does the Chancellor obtain the Sovereign's Warrant, directed to Garter, for the Performance thereof: But of this we have already said sufficient, under the Head of Preparations made for Personal Installations of a Knight-Companion.

Escutcheons of Arms and Stiles.

9 5. Heretofore, when the Celebrations of St. George's Day were kept at any other Place besides Windfor, Gastle,

it was thought most necessary to provide large Paper Escutcheons; wherein were Marshalled the Arms and Quarterings of the Sovereign, and each Kaight-Companion, in Metal and Colour, encompass'd with a Garter; and thereon Crowns, Caps, or Coroners, peculiat to each Dignity, with their Stiles and Titles fairly printed underneath, (but without Crests or Supporters,) to be set on the Backside of their Stalls, on the Eve of the Feast: But the Sovereign's Arms were impaled with those of St. George, over which an imperial Crown was plac'd, and these, (in Defect of the Plates and Banners, set over their Stalls, in the Choir of St. George's Chappel at Windser,) did serve for Directions for the Knights-Companions, that, by the view of them, they might the more readily and certainly know their proper Stalls.

We have not met with any Memorial of this Ulage, that reacheth higher than Anno 21 Hen. VII. when the Sovereign, holding the Day of St. George at Cambridge, King's College Chappel was furnish'd with Escurcheons of the Knights-Companions Atms; but to shew the Use was ancient, there is this Note put into the Memorial, [as was Yearly accustomed,] Anno 22 Hen. VIII. the Sovereign being at Windsor on the Eve of St. George, appointed the Service of the Church to be celebrated in his Chappel, in the upper Quadrangle of Windsor Castle; and there being present with him thirteen Knights-Companions, each of them had set over their Heads an Escutheon of their

Arms.

This Manner the Stalls were afterwards solemnly effablish'd, and enlarged to absent Knights, by an Order of Chapter, held at Greenwich, Anno 3 Edward VI. wherein the Sovereign and Knights-Companions agreed, that from thenceforth every Stall, upon St. George's Eve, should have an Escutcheon of the Arms of them which are absent, as well as those that were present, at their several Costs and Charges:

But this cannot be understood of the Stalls situate in the Chappel of St. George at Windsor; for besides, that we have met with no ancient Account of any such Custom in that Place, we find a Memorial, rather implying the contrary; when Queen Elizabeth, in the sixth Year of her Reign, held the Feast of St. George upon its proper Day, at Windsor Costle; namely, that there was no Escutations

cheons of the Knights-Companions Arms fer up there, but only the Plates; and without all doubt, had it been the Usage to fix Escurcheons in the Choir of that Chappel, as ar other Places, they would not at that time especially have been omitted; because then the Sovereign appear d upon an extraordinary Occasion, and where many things were added to heighten the Glory of that Grand Feast, by Reason the Peace between Bugland and France was to be proclaimed at this Festival, in the Presence of the French Ambassador, and was accordingly done with great Solemnity on St. George's Day in the Morning, at the Eaft-Emrance in the lower Ward of the Caftle, at the top of the Hill towards St. George's Chappel; and to which Place the Sovereign, in her whole Habit of the Order, (the Brench Ambaffador being near her.) with the five Officers of the Order, and Knights-Companions before her, and before them the Officers of Arms and Trumpets, proceeding in a stately and well order'd Cavalcade; and after Claremeax, King of Arms, had ended the Proclamation, they continu'd the Proceeding thence to the Chappel, in the fame State and Order.

As to the Practice and constant Usage of setting up Escutcheons of Arms, since Anno 3 Edward VI. and at such time as St. George's Day was held elsewhere than at Wind-

for, we have seen Variety of Testimonics.

The Care of ordering and providing of which belong'd to Garter; but the Sovereign of the Order was at the Charge, (notwithstanding the said Order, Anno 3 Edw. VI.) which heretofore we see was paid out of the Treasury in the Exchequer; and since the Establishment of 1200 1. per Annum, (settled by the late Sovereign King Charles I. to discharge the ordinary and extraordinary Expences of the Order,) the Allowance issued thence, and was paid by the Chancellor of the Order; but now the Charge is placed upon Garter, he having an Allowance therefore included in the Augmentation of his Pension, Anno 15 Car. II.

We find Privy Seals to have iffu'd as high as the fifreenth of Queen Elizabeth, for the Annual Allowance of 71. for Eleutcheons imploy'd for the Use aforesaid, and that the Price some time before was about that rate; for the three and twenty Escutcheons, provided against St. George's Feast, Anno 1 and 2 Phil. and Mar. came to 61. 11. and 8 d. and those five and twenty set up the sollowing lowing Year, 61. 11 s. and 8 d. some Differences then also being in the Work, which enhand the Price, viz. those provided for Princes, at 6 s. and 8 d. a Piece, and each of

the rest at 5 s.

The Sovereign, the Prince of Wales, and Stranger Kings and Princes, have accustomably had, at these Times, Majesty Escutcheons set up over each of their Stalls; but the rest of the Knights-Companions, Lodging Escutcheons only; and we have seen an Account of some Majesty Escutcheons prepar'd for every St. George's Foost, from 1613, to 1619; to wit, one for the Sovereign, another for the King of Denmark, a third for the Prince of Wales, and a fourth for Frederick, Count Palatine of the Rhine, at 6s. and 8d. a piece; but so many Knights, Companions as attended the Sovereign at those Feasts, had each a Lodging Escutcheon, at 2s. and 6d.

From the Marshalling of Arms, quarter'd in the Knights-Companions Escutcheons, and ordering their Stiles, (printed always in French) there are several things no less useful than worthy of Observation; for, first, though the Plates of Arms and Quarterings, fix'd in each Knight-Companion's Stall at Windsor, continue there without Alteration, or very seldom chang'd from that Order wherein they were Marshall'd at that. Time of their Installation; yet these Escutcheons and Stiles Annually set up, do admit of frequent Alteration, as there is Occasion; either by adding more Quarterings, altering the Stiles, or amending any thing that is amiss.

For Instance: Whereas the Duke of Savor, before 5 Eliz. bore Gules a criss Argent, it was then alter'd into five Coats; that is to say, in the first Quarter, West phalia, Saxe-Moderne and Angria; in the second, Chablais; in the third, Aousse, and the fourth as the first; and over all, in the

middle, the aforesaid Escutcheon of Savoy.

When the Lord Hunsdon was install'd, Anno 3 Eliz. he had twelve Coats of Arms, thus Marshall'd in his Plate; four, four, and four; the first Carey, the second Spencer, the third Somerset, the fourth Bullen, the fifth Ormond, the sixth Hoo, the seventh Rochford, the eighth Seyntomer, the ninth Malmains, the tenth Wichingham, the eleventh St. Leger, and the twelfth Hangford; but Anno 7 Eliz his Eleutcheon receiv'd an Addition of sour ether Coats, viz Beuchamp, Warwick, Berkley, and Ge-

rand, and they were inserted next to Somerfer, the third Coat in this said Plate.

But on the contrary, where Ambrose, Earl of Warwick. had twenty one Coats put into his Plate, Anno 5 Eliz. and they Marshall'd in this Order, five, five, five, and six; namely, first Sutton, second Paganell, third Grey of Ruthin, fourth Hastings, fifth Quincy, fixth Malpas, seventh Somery, eighth Valence, ninth Talbott, tenth Warwick, eleventh Beauchamp, twelfth Berkley, thirteenth Liste, fourteenth Gerard, fifteenth Guilford, fixteenth Houlden, seventeenth West, eigenteenth and nineteenth Quarterly de la Ware and Cantilupe, twentieth Mortimere of Wigmore, and twenty one Greely; at the Feast of St. George held at White-Hall, Anno 9 Eliz. his Escutcheon contain'd but fixteen : viz. four, four, four, and four; namely, first Sutton, second Paganell, third Somery, fourth Malpas, fifth Grey of Rutbin, fixth Hastings, seventh Valence, eighth Ferrers, ninth Quinceff, tenth Chefter, eleventh Talbott, twelfth Beauchamp, thirteenth Warwick, fourteenth Berkley, fifteenth Gerard, fixteenth Lifle: So that there were seven Coats taken out of the former; namely, Guilford, Holden, West, de la Ware and Cantilupe, Quarterly Mortimere and Greely, and two added. viz. Ferrers and Chester.

But the greatest and frequentest Variations are in the Stiles and Titles of *Honour*, set under the Escutcheons, and these relate unto, and are occasioned principally from their attaining or refigning of Offices or Dignities.

We find that the Stile set under the Escutcheon of Fordinand the Emperor, at St. George's Feast, Anno 1 and 2

Phil. and Mar. was as followeth.

Du tres bault tres-Excellent & tres-Puissant Prince, Ferdinand, par la grace de Dieu, Roy des Romaines, de Hungarie, & Bobenie, Arch-Duc d'Austrie, Duc de Burgoigne, &c. Chevalier du tres-Noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.

But Anno 5 Eliz in the said Emperor's Stile, the Titles of King of Hungary and Bohemia were left out; because Maximilian his Son had a little before obtain'd both those Kingdoms.

In the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, the Stiles of Philip, King of Spain, who, while Queen Mary lived, was Co-

Sovereign of this most Noble Order, run thus:

Du

Du tres Hault tres-Excellent and tres-Puissant Prince Philip, par la grace de Dieu, Roy d'Espaigne, des Deux Cicels & Jerusalem, Arch-Duc d'Austria, Duc de Burgoigne, Millan, & Brabant, Compte de Hapsburghe, Flanders, Flanders, & Tiroll; Chevalier du tres-Noble Ordre de la Jarreviere.

But at the Feafts of St. George, Anno 28, 29, and 30 Eliz. the Title of Catholick Prince was also given him.

The Instances relating to Knights-Subjetts are very many; here having been almost every Year some Additions, or Omissions.

In the Duke of Norfolk's Stile, Anno 3 Rliz. the Lieusenansship of the North was omitted. In the Earl of Rusland's, at the same Feast, President of the Council in the Council in the North, was added. The Marquis of Winchester caus'd the Title of Baron St. John to be omitted, because his eldest Son bore that Title, and was a Baron of Parliament.

It may be further observed, that a Stranger elect (having receiv'd the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*,) hath been allow'd the Honour of having an Escutcheon of his Arms set on the back of that Stall design'd for him, notwith-standing he has not been install'd.

Of Adorning the Chappel.

66. The Chappel where divine Service is celebrated, at the Time of the Grand Feaft; whether it be that of St. George's at Windfor, or elsewhere, as the Sovereign is pleas'd, hath at all Times been adorn'd with rich Furniture; the Care and Oversight whereof at Windfor, is committed to the Dean of the College, but at other Places, to the Dean of the Chappel.

The Altar, by the Gift of pious Benefactors, was adorned with Vessels, sumptuous both for their Materials and Workmanship; but temp. Hen. VIII. and Edw. VI. most of them were disposed of, so that King James I. taking notice that very little Plate, and other Ornaments, were belonging to the Chappel, was pleased to make some Provision for the adorning thereof, which was at length

length effected by the free Contributions of the Knights

themselves.

For at a Chapter held at Woite-Hall, 16 Jac. I. it was decreed, that every Knight-Companion should give to the Use of the Altar, in the said Chappel, a piece of Place of the Value of 20 l. at the least.

This Decree was confirm'd, Anno 6 Car. I. the Dean and Canons of Windfor being impower'd to demand and receive the Sums of Money, as above, which they were to beftow in Plate for the Use of the Altar; and accordingly they agreed for the Quantity of Plate hereafter mention'd, which was deliver'd, Anno 1637, viz.

Ou. Dr.
for 3092 06
113 01
553 15
251 15
210 00

l. s.
730 10
009 10

But to make some farther Addition to the Glory of this Altar, King Charles II. at the time of his Installation, offer'd two large gilt Water-pots, weighing 387 Ounces ten Peny Weight, amounting, by the excellent Workmanship, to 12 s, the Ounce, and to the Sum of 232 l. 10 s. Some sacred Ceremonies were perform'd at the Confectation of this Plate, not very necessary to be spoke of here. But all these, with the other Goods and Monuments belonging to the King's free Chappel and Treasury at Windfor, were rist'd and taken away by the Parliament Army. King Charles II. therefore, after the Restauration, Anno 1667, by the Consent of the Knights-Companions, did levy and collect, and by his own Bounty surnish'd the Chappel again with the following Plate:

A Pair of gilt Flaggons, bought with Money collected from

the Knights-Companions, 150 Ounces.

A Pair of wrought Flaggons, with great Bellies, having the Figure of St. George on Horseback on the Cover, &c. bought with the Knights Moncy, 414 Ounces.

One

One small Bason. 25 Ounces and an half.

A Pair of plain gilt Chalices and Covers, bought also with the Knights Money, 163 Ounces and a quarter.

A large Embost Bason, with the Figure of Mary Magda-

len washing our Saviour's Feet, 198 Ounces.

A Pair of large Taper Candlesticks, 264 Ounces.

At the Charge of the College.

A Pair of large Basons gils and emboss'd, given by her Royal Highnes the Datchess of York, 303 Ounces.

A plain gilt Corporas, the Gift of Sir Richard Fanshaw.

24 Ounces.

A double gilt Chalice, the Gift of the Lady Mary Heve-

ningham, 33 Ounces.

As to the Adorning, and Furniture of the Chappel, 'tis very sumptuous; the particulars being not so very material, I shall here omit them.

The Furnishing St. George's Hall.

§ 7. The Care of making ready and furnishing Sc. George's Hall, or any Place, either there, or elsewhere, set apart for the Grand Dinner, is committed partly to the Gentlemen Ushers of the Black-Red, and partly to the Sovereign's Surveyer-General of his Works, both by War-rant from the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold: They cause to be prepar'd the Tables, and set in order the rich and coftly Furniture.

Officers and Servants appointed to astend the Grand Feast.

§ 8. The principal Officers of the Grand Feast are ferv'd by Noblemen, whom the Sovereign appoints, and are put in a Lift, Sign'd by the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshould, and deliver'd to the Black-Rod, who gives them Notice some convenient time before the Feast, that they may the better perform the Duty of their several Places; of what Quality they usually are, will appear by the following Lift.

Thole

Those that gave their Attendance at the Grand Feast, Anno 14 Car. II. when the Sovereign was install'd, were, For the Sword, The Earl of Northampton.

The great Bason, The Earls of Bedford, Herrford, Clare,

St. Albans, and the Lord Herbert of Ragland.

The Cup-bearer, The Earl of Effex. The Earl of Carlifle. The Carver. The Sewer. The Earl of Dover. The Earl of Elgin. The Surnap, The Ewer, The Earl of Deconshire.

The Lords Russel, Herbert, and Cran-The Train.

The Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Privy-Chamber in waiting bear the Canopy, and the Sovereign's Officers and Servants following, (having notice from the Lord Chamberlain,) give their Attendance; as appears by the Lift of those appointed to give their Attendance at Windsor, Anno 23 Car. II.

Lord Chamberlain, and Servants. Groom of the Stool. Bed-Chamber Men. Secretaries of State. Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy-Chamber. Mr. Vice Chamberlain. Gentlemen of the Bed Chambers Privy Purse. Secretaries of Scotland. Twelve Gentlemen of the Privy-Chamber in waiting. Four Gentlemen Ushers daily Waiters. Two Cup-bearers. Eight Quarter Waiters, Gentlemen Ushers. Two Chaplains, Two Phyficians. Two Chirurgeons. Mrs. Sempstress and Landress to his Majesty. Four Grooms of the Chamber. Fourteen Lords to attend his Majesty. Officers of the Guard. Yeomen of the Guard. Three Matters of the Tents. Master of the Ceremonies. Aid of the Ceremonies. Jewel-Houle.

Musi-

Musicians. Yeomen of the Bows and Guns. Captain Gook, and the Children of the Chapreli Two Carvers. Two Sewers. Two Pages of the Presence. Two Esquires of the Body. Two Apothecaries. Four Serjeants at Arms. Right Sewers of the Chamber. Pages of the back Stairs. Captain of the Guards. Officers of the Robes, Two Grooms of the Privy-Chamber. Groom Porter. Marshal of the Ceremonies. Removing Wardrobe. Gentlemen of the Chappel. Five Messengers. Sixteen Trumpeters. Serjeant Trumpeter: Drum Major. Four Drummers and a Fife.

CAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feast.

Of the beginning of the Grand Feast.

HE Celebration of the Grand Feast, with the Ceremonies, devis'd to set forth and illustrate the Glory thereof, hath been worthy the observation of the first Institutor, and all succeeding Sovereigns; well knowing that what is once slightly observed will soon fall into disesteem, if not into contempt. Therefore they have been very particular to the Day, the Hour, and

and the Place, where the Sovereign and Knights-Com-

panions are to meet.

As to the first, although St. George's Day (or such other Day as the Sovereign shall please to nominate and appoint, by Prorogation in lieu thereof,) be the Principal and Grand Day of the Feast, yet the Eve of that Day does the Feast take Commencement, and determines not till the third Day following; the whole Solemnity taking

up three Days inclusively.

And this is clear from several Articles of the Statutes. wherein the course of the Ceremonies to be observ'd at the Grand Solemnity are set down; whether observed, on the Eve, the Feast-Day, or the Morrow after: And these three Days together did the Sovereign hold the Grand Feast, whether they personally celebrated the same, or deputed other of the Knighes-Companions to that Employment, the cause of the Commissions of Deputation limitting their Power either in general, during the time of the Feast; or in particular, upon the Day of St. George, the Day, and that following, viz. the last Day of the Feaft. In like manner, when in succeeding Times, Commissions of Prorogation of the Grand Feast were made use of, we find the three Days continuance of the Feaft to be particularly mentioned in the Body of those Commissions: Namely, the Day wherein, by such Appointment, the Feast was to begin, the Grand Day it felf, and the Day whereon it ended.

The Directions given in the Statutes, for the Order and Course of this Solemnity, to begin with the Eve, run thus: Every Year upon St. George's Eve, shall be an Assembly, or Meeting of all the Knights-Companions of the Order, at Windsor Castle, &c. and the same is positively

enjoin'd by all the other Bodies of the Seatutes.

And as the Grand Feast is generally said to Commence in Vigilia Santi Georgii, or as it is otherwise express in the Black-Book, in Vigilia in suture celebratis, or, Vigiliis Divi Georgii, or in Vigilia Festi. So has the time of this preceeding Day several other Denominations given it in the same Register, Vesper ante Diem Santi Georgii; in Vesperiis Georgianis, in Vesperiis Festi, in Vesperiis Committonem; and at other times, pridie Divi Georgii, pidie Georgiane Solemnitatis, pridie Festi, pridie feriarum Divi Georgii, and sometimes per vigilia, and lastly in plain English.

English, St. George's Eve; all which fignify one and the same thing, and are but various Names given to the Evening of the Day foregoing either that of St. George, or that whereon the Grand Feast is appointed to be held by Prorogation.

Thus we see that the Founder began his Solemnity upon the Eve of the Feast Day; which doubtless was in conformity to the Custom of the Church, who made the Vigils and Boes part of the ensuing Festivals, and as

Uthers to the Grand Solemnities.

As the Eve was appointed by the Founder for the Commencement of the Anniversary of the Grand Feast, so to make the time more certain, the Statutes express the exact Hour of meeting for beginning the Solemnities, to be at the Hour of Tierce, which in many other Places is called, Hora Tertierum. But this seemed not sufficient to express clear enough the meaning of a Law, where a Penalty was enjoined, and therefore at a Chapter held at Windson, 17 Edw. IV. a scrupte arising among the Knights-Companions, concerning the Words Hora Tertierum, whether they were intended to mean three in the Asternoon, or at the Hour of the Church, generally used after Prime Noon before; and fixed it to the latter.

The Registrum Chartaceum Records the same Explanation of the Words; and to let us see that twas immediately put in Practice, it is there entered with the Names of those Knights-Companions present with the Sovereign, both in the Morning and Evening of the same Day.

Another Instance of which there is, 3 Hen. VII. on the Eve of the Grand Feast, held by Prorogation at Windsor, where the Sovereign, in regard of the arrival of several Ambassadors, put off the usual Chapter till Noon; whence it is evident, that the Custom at this time was

likewise to begin the Solemnity in the Morning.

But notwithstanding the said Decree of King Edw. IV. we find it Anno 11 Hen. VIII. to be meant and intended for three in the Asternoon. And when King Henry VIII. came to Model the Statutes of the Order, in two several Articles, he declares and expounds the Hora Terria, (which the English Version of those Statutes renders the Hour of Tierce,) to be the Hora Terria post Merediem, three in the Asternoon; and in another Article of the same Statutes, Hora Terriarum, id est, Hora Terriarum post Merediem; F f 2

and ellewhere, Hora Terria Vespertina vel Pomeridiana s which Hour, as it was then settled to be the punctual time for the Knights-Companions meeting, to enter on the Solemnity of the Feast, so has it ever since continued un-

altered, and usually observed.

The Place of Assembly for the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, bath usually been in such of the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, both at Windsor, or essewhere, as he hath appointed; frequently in the Privy, Withdrawing, or Bed Chambers: To this appointed Place the Knights-Companions repair, to give their Attendance on the Sovereign, having first invested themselves in full Robes, either in their own Lodgings, or some convenient Room at Court, where Garter is to attend them, with notice of the approaching Hour.

The Knights-Companions being come to the Sovereign, as likewife the Officers of the Order, habited in their Mantles, and bearing in their Hands the Symbols of their feveral Offices, they wait the Sovereign's being vefted in his Robes, till he passes into the Presence Chamber, or give beginning to the Feast, by opening the Chapter at

their meeting, before he goes thither.

About the same time, the Provincial Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants, wearing their Coats of the Sovereign's Arms; so also the Band of Pensioners, armed with their Pole Axes, Assemble in the Presence Chamber; but the Prebends of the College, vested in their Tassay Mantles over their Surplices, and Alms Knights in their Mantles and Surcoass, come no nearer than the Guard Chamber.

Lastly, The Servants and Attendants of the Knights Companions meet without the Guard Chamber Door, whence spreading themselves down the Stairs, through the Stone Gallery, into the upper Ward of the Castle, or as far as their Number will reach, all wait the Sovereign's coming

forth into the Presence.

It will be necessary here to inform the Reader, in regard not only the Feast Day of St. George, but the Grand Feast held in Honour of the Order, hath been kept in several other Places besides Windsor Castle, more particularly, at White-Hall, St. James's, Greenwich, and York; that there are many Ceremonies, and other Particulars hereafter named, which alter not with the Place, but appertain to the Festival, and are therefore to be observed every

where alike; as for instance, the sorm of Proceeding, the manner of holding Chapters, the Ceremony of Offering Gold and Silver, Swearing of Officers, and such like: But others there are, which are precisely local and particular, as the Prebends and Alms-Knights going in the Proceeding, the Offering up of Atchievements, &c.

to Windfor only.

Since the withdrawing the Grand Feast from Windsor, some of the Officers of Arms, curious in the Observation of these Solemnities, performed in other Places, have afforded us great Plenty of Memorials, relating to the ceremonious Part thereof, while the same was continued at Windsor; and therefore, when the true Place where the Instance lies, shall be also cited, the Reader is not to conclude that the Precedent urged doth not sull enough auswer the Purpose, unless it had been likewise setched from Windsor. But that in this case, the Ceremony or Example is such, as is peculiar to the Feast, not the Place, and ought to be observed without alteration at any Place, where the Sovereign shall keep the Grand Feast.

Of setting the Proceeding in Order.

\$ 2. In Times past, the Knights-Companions appeared at the Grand Feast, attended with a numerous Train of Servants and other Dependents; but the Feast having removed from Windsor to other Places, much of this ancient Splendor was laid asside; yet upon King James I. Accession to the Crown, somewhat of this Glory began to revive; for we find it entered upon the Register, in the sourth of his Reign; That the ancient Custom, which for some Years had been intermitted, wherein, at the Solemnity of this Feast, all the Knights-Companions were wont to go attended, each with a large Train, was recalled and brought back into use.

But this heighth of Gallantry and Splendor in the Number of Attendants, and richnels of their Apparel, within ten Years grew up to such Excels, or rather Exorbitancy, that it required a restraint; wherefore the Sovereign, by the unanimous Advice of the Knights-Companions, Decreed, and Commanded, That every one of the Knights-Companions of the Order, should have to attend upon his Person F f 3

nt the yearly Solemnization of the Feast of the Order, fifty Persons, and no more: The reason whereof we find elsewhere noted to be, for saving of Charge, and avoiding of Emulation. But in the beginning of King Charles I. Reign, of ever Blessed Memory, the gallantry of Attendants began again to Increase and Augment; insomuch that at the Grand Feast held at White-Hall, the 22d, 23d, and 24th of April, Anno 8 Car. I. we find it observed, that the Knights-Companions came forth attended, each with a Train of Servants very richly clad.

But to return and enter upon the Proceeding, to the end the Servants and Attendants of the Knights Companions may be exactly Marshalled, the Usher of the Hall (whose Duty it is to rank them) cught to call for a List from Garter, of such Knights-Companions as are to be present at the Grand Feaft, noted with their several Places in the Proceeding, for his better Directions in affigning the Attendants their due Places, the Order whereof is thus : First, the Junior Knights-Attendants proceed one before another, on the left Hand, upon whose right Hand the second eldest Knights-Attendants go in equal Rank with them, for this we observe to have been the general rule; where the Knights-Companions Proceed in pairs, their Attendants go together: those belonging to the Senior Knights of the two, on the right Hand, and to the Junior upon their left; but the Order is otherwise, where any of the Knigits-Companions proceed fingle and alone, (which often falls out, as shall be noted in its due Place,) for then the Attendants belonging to that fingle Knight go two and two, on both fides the Way, opposite one against the other.

But when the Grand Feast is Celebrated at White-Hall, there the Knights-Companions Attendants are Mar-shalled by the said Usher, on both sides the Passage, from the outward Door of the Guard Chamber, down into the Hall, taking up all the Room as far as the old Chappel; and because here they do not proceed, in regard of the shortness of the Processional way, but only make a stand, for the Proceeding to pass through them, they are ranked in a way different from that used at Windsor; nevertheless relating more especially to the Order observed by their Masters: Which Method, in the Sovereign's Proceeding to the Chappel, at the besorementioned Feast, held

held at Whise-Hall, Anno 8 Car I. we find thus described The eldest Knight-Companions Servants were ranked on the right Hand of the Passage, the chiefest of them near unto the old Chappel Door; and the second Knight (being Companion to the eldest) his Attendants stood on the lett side, the chiefest of them also next the said old Chappel Door, and in case the eldest Knight's Fellow or Companion be not present in this Proceeding, then the eldest Knight's Servants ought to be p'aced opposite one against the other, upon each side the said old Chappel Door: The like Order is to be taken in Marshalling the Servants of the other Knights of this most Noble Order, whose

Companions are then absent.

Secondly, The Order of Proceeding amongst the Alms-Knights, (who, Anno 1 Car. I. had two Waiters of the Sovereign's Hall, in their Livery Coats, bearing white Rods in their Hands, to proceed before them,) is in general two and two together, the Junior is placed foremost on the left Hand, and his next Senior on his right; and if Sickness, or other lawful Impediment, chance to hinder one or more of them, from going in the Proceeding, his Junior is advanced into his Place, and consequently all the other Juniors do in like manner alter their Places, and advance, to the end the superior Place be still supplied, according to the right rule of Marshalling the Singles, that compose a gross Body; but in this Case, if the Number that attend happen to be odd, the Governor of the Alms-Knights goes last of all, and alone.

Thirdly, The Virger of the College hath his Place next after the Alms-Knights, and immediately before the Prebends of the College; who being habited in a Gown, beareth a Silver Verge, the Enfign of his Office: Nevertheless, heretofore, when the Prebends went not in the Proceeding, on the Eve of the Grand Feast, the Virger proceeded first of all, before the Alms-Knights, for so it was observed on the Eve of St. George, at Windsor, Anno 6 Eliz, and in this manner we see it exprest, in the Pro-

ceeding fet forth by Marcus Gerchard.

Fourthly, Under the general rule, relating to the Alms-Knights, are comprehended the Prebends of the College, the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings, infomuch, that where either of the said Kings are absent, the Senior Herald is advanced, and goes in break on the left Hand of F f A him

him who is then present; so also where any of the He-ralds are wanting, his next Junior ascendeth into his Place; whereby it sometimes falls out, that the Senior Pursuivant is joined to the left Hand of the Junior Herald: And through their desects and absence, the Number of the Officers of Arms be odd, then (with this difference in the foresaid rule observed among the Alms-Knights,) the

youngest Pursuivant goeth single by himself.

Touching the right of Precedency, between the Officers of Arms, and Prebends of the College, in Proceeding before the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, we find there hath been heretofore not only some Question started, but the Place contended for; insomuch, that at the Installation of the Earls of Shrewsbury and Cumberland, Anno 34 Eliz. the Prebends took Place, and upon the 24th of May, Anno 39 Eliz. at the Installation of Thomas, Lord Howard of Walden, and others, the Prebends again endeavoured to pass between the Officers of Arms, and Officers of the Order; but Charles, Lord Howard of Essimplanm, then Lieutenant to the Sovereign, delivered his Opinion on the behalf of the Officers of Arms against the Prebends.

Yet did not this so settle the Order of Brecedency, or quiet the Prebends, but that the Contention again broke out, Anne 1 Jac. I. at the Initaliation of the Earls of Pembrook, Marr, Southampton, and Duke of Lenox; (which happened on the ninth, not second of July, in the foresaid Year,) even to such a heighth, that the Prebends, Purfuivants, and Heralds, contended in the Proceeding; but the Controversy was on the next Morning composed, by the Lord Admiral, (then the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) the Lord Treasurer, and the Earl of Worcester; and the Order in Proceeding thus settled ! first, That the Alms-Knights should go foremost, the Pursuivants next, then the Prebends, and then the Heralds and Kings of Arms; and this Order in Proceeding was afterwards observed, on the 21 May, Anno 4 Jac. I. at the Installation of the Earl of Salisbury, and Viscount Bindon; as also the 19 May, Anno 6. of the same King, at the Installation of the Earls of Dunbar, and Montgomery.

Howbeit, Anno 9 Jac. I. and so afterwards, we do not find the Pursuivants mentioned in the Proceeding, by particular Name, nor otherwise, than in this following Order,

der, viz. Almi-Knights, Prebends, Heralds, &c. but it may be presumed that the Pursuivants, then joined again in Body with the Heralds, (though for some Years before divided from them, by the interposition of the Prebends,) as well as the Provincial Kings, and all of them under the Title of Heralds, and sometimes Officers of Arms.

And though at the Grand Feaft held by Prorogation, on Sunday the 14th of September, in the said sifteenth Year of King James, it is noted, that the Prince (being then the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) proceeded to Morning Service on the Feast Day, with the Alms-Knights, Heralds, Prebends, and Officers of the Order before him; from which manner of Expression, it may perchance be supposed, that the Heralds went at that time next after the Alms-Knights, and before the Prebends; nevertheless, elsewhere we find them, on the Eve of the aforesaid Feast, ranked in this following Order.

The Alms-Knights.
The Prebends.
The Officers of Arms.
The Knights of the Order, &c.

And doubtless, they proceeded in the same Order to the Chappel, on the next Morning, notwithstanding what is before said to the contrary, those Expressions being interwoven with the general Account given of the Ceremonies of the whole Festival, and more subject to mistake, where the relation of the Proceeding is carried on in a continued Discourse, than were ranked (as is before exhibited.) in particular Lines, and in the Order and Form of a Proceeding. Besides, we no where meet with any Order or Decree, nulling the foresaid Determination, made Anno 1 Fac. I. which placeth the Prebends before the Heralds. Finally, to give an end to the Disputes in this Point. we find, that upon the Eve of this Feast, held at Windsor. the 23, 24, and 25 of November, Anna I Car. I. the Prebends proceeded next before the Pursuivants, and the Pursuivants immediately before the Heralds and Provincial Kings; that is to fay, all the Officers of Arms (except Garter, whose Place is elsewhere,) proceeded in one entire Body together, which Order we find to be the same in all Proceedings after, that we have met with, and was ſo

so observed at the Grand Feast held at Windsor, Anno 13

Car. II. and ever fince. But to proceed.

All the before mentioned Attendants wait in their several Stations, till the Hour of Tierce, when the Sovereign (having the Knights-Companions and Officers of the Order before him, and his Train carried up,) passeth towards the Presence Chamber, notice of whose coming being given, the Band of Pensioners make the accustomed Guard and Passage along the Presence Chamber, the Seniors standing towards the Lobby Door, within which Guard, on the other side, the Officers of Arms place themselves: Upon the same warning, the Yeomea of the Guard clear a like Passage from the Presence Chamber Door, along the Guard Chamber, unto its outward Door,

for the Proceeding to pals through.

At the Sovereign's approach, one of the Gentlemen Ushers attended with the Sword of State, (the Point resting upon the Ground,) delivereth to such one of the Nobility, (not being a Knight of the Order,) whom the Sovereign, as an honorary Favour, hath before nominated, to bear it from thence, before him in all the Proceedings of the Feaft; during which Action, the Knights-Companions proceed forwards, and being entred the Presence Chamber, Flank on each fide the State, with some small distance between them, and there make a stand: The Sovereign being also entred, passeth to the Step before the State, (the Nobleman who beareth the Sword, and the five Officers of the Order, retiring a little on his right Hand) and then turning himself towards the Knights-Companions, standeth there a while, until they have made their Reverences unto him; which being performed, he refaluteth the Knights-Companions by putting off his Cap: This done. the Sovereign putteth his Cap on again; whereupon every of the Knights Companions putteth on theirs, and immediately Rank themselves, according to their due Place. on both sides the State.

For the right understanding whereof, we are in the sisth place to Note, that in the Order and Method wherein the Knights-Companions are ranked, (if they be all present,) is two and two rogether, the Junior foremost on the less Hand, for that is his Place in all Proceedings; but where any of them be absent, the rule is different from that appropriate to the before-mentioned Degrees;

For though it be recorded, that upon the Eve of the Grand Feast held at Windsor, Anno 7 Hen. V. the Knights-Companions went in Order to the Coapter-House and Choir; yet this being exprest but in general terms, how it ought to be understood, will more fully appear, from the particular Directions given for the Order of the Knights-Companions Proceeding in King Henry VIII's Statutes; where the Law directs each Knight-Companion to proceed alone, at such time as his Fellow (who possessed the Stall opposite unto him) is absent, but the Order of such Proceeding will by a Scheme be made more evident.

The Proceeding of the Knights-Companions, present on the Eve of St. George, to the Closet at White-Hall, Anno 3 Eliz.

The Lord Hunsdon.
The Lord Robert Dudley.
The Lord Loughborow.
The Earl of Suffex.
Void.
The Marquis of North.
The Lord Clynton.
Void.

Void.
The Viscount Mountague.
The Earl of Shrewshury.
The Lord Howard of Effing.
The Earl of Westmorland.
Void.
The Duke of Norfolk.
The Earl of Pembrook.

Thus four Knights-Companions proceeded alone, in regard the Stalls opposite to them were void, the three first being absent, and the last void by the Death of the Earl of Huntington; and to avoid all disputes in relation to Precedency, King Henry VIII. Decreed, in the sixteenth Year of his Reign; That each Knight-Companion should take Place, in Procession, Station, or sitting at the Table, thence forward, as he had his Seat or Stall in the Choir, and not according to the Degree of his Birth or Condition, unless the Sovereign was pleased that any should be made Choice of, according to the Nobility of his Family, to sit at the end of his own Table, or perform any other thing by the by.

The Proceeding among, the Officers of the Order differeth from all before spoken of; for, being five in Number, the three inferior Officers (when all present,) March in a breast, and (of later Times,) the Register in the middle,

Garte

Garter on his right Hand, and the Usher of the Black-Rad on his left.

After these three Officers, the two superior proceed together, the Prelate on the Right and the Chancellor on the lest; and after, the Officers of the Order follow the Sword, which is carried immediately before the Sovereign. In the beginning of Queen Elizabeth's Reign, it was born by some of the Barons, but of later Times it hath been conferr'd on Persons of higher Rank, as Anno 4 Car. I. on the Earl of Dover; Anno 9 Car. I. on the Earl of Danby; and Anno 13 Car. II. on the Lord Viscount Mordant, then Constable of the Castle of Windsor; and at this Time 'ris

usually born by none under the Degree of an Earl.

The Sovereign's Place in the Proceeding, & notandum quod superior Ordinis tempore Processionis in dica Capella transibit retro totam Sociarum Comitivam; which though the Statute mentions here to be performed at the Grand Procession, yet it refers to all those times the Sovereign proceeds to, or from, no less than within the Chappel, In ancient Time, the Sovereign (if he were at Windsor, to celebrate the Grand Feast,) proceeded to the Chappel in Person, as well on the Eve. as on the Feast Day. Elizabeth being the first who went not to the Chappel on the Eve of the Feast, unless we except King Henry VI. who, by reason of Sickness, was necessitated to make a Deputy in his stead: The aforesaid Omission of Queen Elizabeth, was first occasioned through Indisposition of Health, though the afterwards, without that necessity, did not comply, as in the 18, 25, 29, and 31 Years of her Reign, which gave occasion to King James to make Deputies at those three Grand Feasts he Celebrated at Windfor; and the like did King Charles I. in the first Year of his Reign; but in the fourth Year of his Reign, the ancient Custom (for many Years intermitted.) was restored. and the Sovereign (making no Lieutenant,) proceeded to the Chappel, not only on that Eve, but always observed it afterwards, as did King Charles II. in all the Grand Feafts he held. and is now observed.

It will be necessary to take notice, that the Proceeding begins from the Presence Chamber, call'd in the Statutes the Great Chamber; a Scheme whereof, on the Eve of

the Grand Feast, is here exhibited.

The

The Attendants on the Knights-Companions. Alms-Knights. Virger of the Chappel. Prebends of Windfor. Officers of Arms. Knights-Companions. Black-Rod. Register. Garter. Chancellor. Prelate. The Sword. The Sovereign. Train-bearers. Captain of the Pensioners. Pensioners.

To the foregoing Proceeding have been occasionally receiv'd some Persons of Quality, and others Eminent in Place and Degree; (though their Offices do not particularly relate to this most Noble Order,) but are admitted by reason of their requisite Attendance on the Sovereign, in his Proceedings on all Occasions.

On St. George's Eve, Anno 3 Eliz. the old Ambassador of Sweden, accompanied by the Earl of Hertford, went in the Proceeding to the Closet at White-Hall, next after the Train-bearers, and immediately before the Ladies Attendants on the Sovereign; and the next Morning, when the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, the new Ambassador of Sweden went in the same Place.

As to those admitted on the Account of their Offices, is the Lord Chamberlain, (though not a Knight of the Gurter,) and is allowed Place somewhat behind, on the right Hand of the Severeign, and the Vice Chamberlain

on the left.

The Dean of the Sovereign's Chappel at Woite-Hall attends when the Proceedings are thither, going a little behind the Sovereign towards his left Hand; next goes the Clerk of the Closet, then the Master of the Robes, as also one of the Masters of Requests, and then the Gentlemen of the Robes.

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 3. Having under the precedent Head, treated at large of the Rank and Place of all those that pass in the Proceeding, wherein all are Bare-headed, except the Sovereign and Knights-Companions: I now come to the Place

whither the Proceeding is directed.

The first Solemn Action on the Entrance of the Grand-Feast, which the Sovereign and Knights-Companions are obliged to perform, is to Celebrate a Chapter, to which end it hath been most usual for them to proceed from the Presence Chamber, every one in their due Place and Order; first to the Chapter-House, to consult of things of course; and next into the Choir, to hear Divine Service; which has been the constant Custom from the Reign of King Henry V. as many Examples, recorded in the Registers of the Order, evidence.

As this Eustom of holding a Chapter on the Eve of the Grand Feast, was constantly observed when celebrated without Prorogation; so also hath a Chapter been in like manner held before Vespers, on the Eve, at such time as the Feast Day of St. George only hath been observed, when (for any cause) the Anniversary of the Grand Feast received Prorogation: As for Instance, Anno I Mary, a Chapter was held at the Mannor of St. James's, on the Vigil of St. George, before the first Vespers; whereunto is first this Note, ut moris est; and the Grand Feast for that Year received Adjournment, until the coming of Philip, then Prince (after King) of Spain.

In like manner, though the Celebration of the Grand Feasts were removed from Windsor, and observed at other Places, yet this usual Custom of holding a Chapter on the Eve, was always practised; after which the proceeding to Evening Prayer succeeded, as is manifest by several

Testimonics from the Registers.

The publick processional way to the Chapter-House at Windsor, used Time out of Mind, led from the Presence Chamber through the Cloister, and the great Gate of the King's Lodging, to the upper Ward of the Castle, thence through the middle Ward, and part of the lower, to and through the Passage, between the East End of the Chappel

Digitized by Google

and Tomb-House; and thence into the Chapter-House, Situate on the North East Corner of St. George's Chappel.

But the Sovereign hath sometimes thought sit to wave this publick processional way, and pass along the private way, which leads from the King's Privy Chamber, down the Stairs into the Terrace, viz. through that stately Walk lying on the North side of the Castle, and entring again at a Door, heretofore made through a part of the Castle Wall into one of the Canons Lodgings, adjoining to Winchester Tower, (now made up) went thence through the

Cloisters, proceeding in the Order before shewed.

We shall close this Head, with observing, that though the Proceedings to the Chapter-House or Chappel, on the Eve of the Feast, have most commonly been on Foot; yet have they been also on Horse-back, on extraordinary Occasions, as Anno 3 Hen. VII. at which Time several Ambassadors being arrived here from Foreign Kings and Princes, they and many of the Nobility of this Kingdom, with the King's Council, the two Archbishops, the Bishops of Lincoln and Ely, and the Chief Justice of the King's Bench, repaired also thither; and on the Eve, the Sovereign, accompanied with the Knights-Companions, rode from the upper Quadrangle down to the College. The Queen and the King's Mother rode in a Chair, covered with rich Cloth of Gold, drawn by fix Coursers finely Harnas'd, and twenty one Ladies, habited in Crimson Velvet, rode on white Palfries: Sir Roger Cotton, Master of the Queen's Horse, led her Horse of State, whereon was a Saddle of Cloth of Gold, and three Crowns of Silver gilt; as foon as they alighted, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceeded to the Chapter-House, and thence to Evening Song, which ended, they return'd in the Order they came.

King Henry VIII. in the eleventh Year of his Reign, at three a Clock in the Afternoon, with all the Knights-Companions, in the Habit of the Order, proceeded from the Presence Chamber in Windfor-Castle, till they came to the Quadrangle, where they took their Horses, and rode according to their Stalls, not according to their Estate, next before the King, and thence rode to the middle Door of the Chappel, and there alighted, and proceeded without the Choir to the Chapter-House; there are

other Examples, but these may suffice.

Of

Of the opening of the Chapter.

6 4. The Proceeding being arriv'd at the Entrance into the Chappel, first the Attendants on the Knights-Companions divide themselves as they enter, beginning at the outward Door, and Flank on each fide the North Isle of the Chappel, and so toward the West Door of the Choir, making a stand along the Isle for the Alms-Knights, Virgers, Prebends, and Officers of Arms, to pass through them, who go on towards the said West Door; and when the Junior Knights-Companions are entred into the Chappel, the Proceeding makes a stand, while all the Knights-Comsanions following turn aside on the right Hand into the Chapter-Houle, next the Officers of the Order, and laftly the Sovereign; but the Nobleman that carries the Sword, the Train-bearers, Pensioners, &c. stay without the Chapzer-House Door in the North Ide; none being admitted in but the Sovereign, the Knights-Companions, and the Officers of the Order; who being all entred, the Door is thut by the Gentleman Usher of the Black-Rod, and every Person severally takes his due Place and Station, whereupon the Chapter immediately opens.

In what Manner and Order the Sovereign, Knights-Companions, and Officers of the Order, are ranked, at the holding of a Chapter, is described, Anno 11 Hen. VIII. when the Sovereign and Knights-Companions consulted in the Chapter-House, on the Reformation and Explanation

of the Statutes of the Order.

The Sovereign, on his Entrance, proceeded to the midst of the North-end of the Table; the Knights-Companions, whose Stalls in the Choir were on the Sovereign's fide, took the right Hand of the Table, and those of the Princes side the lest; then the Prelate of the Order came and stood on the Sovereign's right Hand, at the corner of the Table; Register and Garter were at the lower end, and Black-Rod kept the Chapter-House Door on the inside. The Chancellor of the Order is not there mention'd, (as not being present) yet his Place is on the Sovereign's lest Hand of the Table.

If the Sovereign and Knights-Companions arrive at the Chapter-House so late, that the Business necessary to be done

cannot be discuss'd, without putting off the Celebration of Vespers, beyond the Canonical Hour; it hath been usual to adjourn the Debates till the next Morning, as was done Anno 14 Car. I.

Transactions in the Chapter held before the Vespers.

4 5. When the Chapter held before the Vespers is opened, and no Adjournment given thereto, all things are then to be provided for, which concern the Honour and

Dignity of this most Noble Order.

The matters of course are; sirst, Swearing, and admitting Officers; secondly, Debating about the Knights-Compenions then absent, and either dispensing with, or inflicting Penalties on them; and thirdly, Constituting or appointing an Officer, to carry on the State and Solemnity of the Feast in the Sovereign's absence. But other Particulars that are occasional, cannot so well be brought within Rule, as being wholly accidental.

As to the first, the Officers of the Order, soon after the Chapter is open'd, take their respective Oaths, in Order to perform the Duty of their several Places, during the Session of the Chapter, and thenceforward, as is evident from several Examples, but one may suffice, from a Chapter held at Windser, Anno 4 Car. I. whereat Dr. Neal, Bishop of Winchester, was Sworn Prelate; Six Francis Crane, Chancellor; and Dr. Mathew Wren, Bishop of Ely, Register.

It hath sometimes happened, that some of the Officers of this Order have been Sworn at other Times, as an Chapters next ensuing their Nomination and Choice, wherein the Administration of the Oath is one of the first things

done.

Touching the second particular debated in Chapter, viz. the dispensing with, or punishing absent Knights; it is to be considered, that the Seatures of the Order enjoin all the Knights-Companions to be present at the Celebration of the Grand Feast: that is, those that are within the Kingdom, or essewhere; although the Service of St. George, according to the Rites of the Church, be not celebrated, as on the Service of the Day whereon that of St. George, has fallen, viz. Good-Friday: But with this Limitation.

so that they be in a capacity, or may conveniently repair thicker.

Therefore the next thing usually entred upon in the Chapter, is the Sovereign's and Knights-Companions taking notice, whether any of the Fellowship make default of coming at the Hour affign'd; and if so, they are considered under one of these Heads. First, Stranger Princes; Secondly, Late Commissioners who are arrived, or every Minute expected; and Thirdly, Such as have given notice that they cannot be present, during the continuation of the Feast: Of these Excuses of course, verbal Apologies, or Letters of Excuse, are, or may be, offered; and in case they are approved or admitted, then the Penance, which by the Statuses ought otherwise to be inflicted, is admitted; all which ought to be recorded.

- Stranger Princes are excused in course, on Account of their necessary Residence in their own Territories; and of their Excuses and accustom'd Dispensations, are divers

Inflances in the Registers of the Order.

As to Knights-Companions, who are tardy in their Journey, or being come to the Castle, fall short of the Hour, or of attending the Sovereign to the Chapter-Honse, either through negligence, or want of timely notice, or other accident; the Seatutes enjoin for Penance, that they be not permitted for that time to enter into the Chapter, but sarry without the Door, and not have Voice in any thing that shall happen to be done there, unless they can alledge a just Excuse, or render such a sufficient cause as the Sovereign, or his Deputy, shall approve of; but sew defaulters have been noted of this kind.

The third fort of Delinquents, are those Knights-Companions absent, not only at the Hour of Tierce, but are likely to be so during the whole Feast; the Proceedings relating to them, are either upon what is offered in Excuse of their absence, or determined on their neglect of making

Apology for it.

Excuses for absence, are either by Letters or Word of Mouth; if by Letters, they are directed to the Chancellor of the Order; or else the Sovereign sends to his Lieutenant on their behalf, and both are produc'd by the Chancelor: But if Excuses be made by Word of Mouth, then are they delivered by the Sovereign himself; or on manife,

tion made by some of the Knights-Companions present in

Chapter.

The Cuftom of fending Letters has been very ancient: The Lord Powis's Letter, under his Hand and Seal, (certifying his Indisposition of Body,) was produc'd in Chapser, Anno 8 Hen. V. And the following Year the Dukes of York, Norfolk, and Buckingham, with the Earls of Salif-bury, Shrewibury, and Pembrook, Viscount Bourchier, the Lord Rivers, and Sir John Falftaff; being all absent from St. George's Feast, they declared the reason of their absence by their Messengers. There are many Precedents of this kind, and of Letters fent from the Sovereign, directed to his Lieutenant, to accept of Knights-Companions Excules, whose absence he had beforehand dispenc'd with; we obferve those Dispensations excusid not the sending their own particular Excuses; for it is evident they were also expected, and that such allowance of absence was not Absolute, the Clause running thus: That you [the Soveresgn's Deputy] allow these Excuses so far as are consonant to reason. And in all other Letters of the same pature, a Clause to this Effect hath been inserted: That as the Sovereign thought good to advertise his Deputy, that for certain Causes he had dispend with their Attendance for that time; so he will'd him to accept their reasonable Excusts in that behalf accordingly.

Secondly, The ablent Knights-Companions have had their Excuses frequently made by Word of Mouth, either of the Sovereign, or some other of the Knights-Companions, present in the Chapter. This Favour is done either by the Sovereign himself, if present; or by his Order

to the Lieutenant, in his absence.

There have been many Examples of what hath been done in this Case, and also when the Sovereign bath not been present in Chapter, but hath beforehand verbally given his Deputy or Lieutenant direction to excuse the

absence of several Knights-Companions.

It will be necessary to observe what Essect the Excuses have usually produc'd; whereinto we find the just and reasonable favourably admitted, some suspended, and divers disallowed. Those easily allow'd were, first, Sickness; (for those of the Knights-Companions who have been either Sick, far spent with Age, or intent on publick Affairs, have been readily allow'd,) Secondly, The not. recq.

Gg 2

recovery of Wounds receiv'd in the publick Service; as we meet with in the Case of Sir William Haringtone, Anno 7 Hen. V. whom we fee excused for his Illness, occasion'd from his Wounds then lately receiv'd at the Siege of Rohan, and elsewhere. Thirdly, Imporency and old Age. Fourthly, Imployment in the Sovereign's Service, either Abroad or at Home; those Abroad are necessarily excus'd, those at Home we shall be more particular to. The Earl of Shrewsbury, Anno 22 Eliz. was taken up in certain Affairs, enjoin'd him by the Sovereign; the Earl of Huntington, 26 Eliz. being President of the Council of the North, his absence was for that, and several Years following, favourably excus'd; and a like Case was that of the Earl of Danby, Anno 13 Car. I. who for his necessary Attendance at the Seat of Justice in Eyre, was excus'd waiting on the Sovereign at the Grand Feast that Year. Fifthly, When the Grand Feast bath receiv'd Prorogation. and any of the Knights-Companions have not had notice of she Day whereunto is was prorogued. Sixthly, When any of them bave been in Captivity; as was Thomas, Earl of Salisbury, and the Earl of Huntington, both Prisoners in France, Anno 2 Hen. VI. Seventhly, When any of them have obtain'd the Sovereign's Letters of Dispensation, of which sufficient is spoken before. Laftly, Some other just and lawful Occasion, as well as Accident, having fallen out; (not relating to those under the former Heads,) the Sovereign, on Information given in Chapter, hath been pleas'd to allow of; as in the Case of the Lord Fauconbridge, Anno 32 Hen. VI. was readily admitted, on his pleading the care of his Domestick Affairs, he having been lately in Prison, and had obtained leave to go and see his House and Lands in the Country. The Earl of Arundel's ablence, . Anno 15 Car. I. was pardon'd, by reason of the Dutchess of Richmond's Death, who died on the Eve of the Grand Feast; that so he (being the chief of her Family,) might be at Hand to advise and affist in all things conducing to the Honour of the decealed Durchels.

And as the Knights-Companions have been often excused for not appearing on the Grand Feaft, so hath the Sovereign, on sufficient Grounds, been pleased to license and dispence with their departure; from the same of this is an Example, 6 Eliz, when the Lord Hastings of Loughborough, falling Ill a little before the Offering on St.

George's

George's Day, obtain'd Licence from the Sovereign to depart out of the Choir; and came no more abroad that Day, nor during the Feast. As also another in the Duke of Lenox, Anno 15 Car. I. The Deputy Chancellor having, by Command of the Sovereign, and in discharge of the Duty of his Office; who being forc'd to go back to London, by reason of the aforesaid Dutchess of Richmond's Death, had his Excuse, and the Sovereign's Licence for departure.

We are next to confider Excuses, which, though sent in due time, yet on Debate in Chapter were suspended rather than allow'd; to which Head may be referr'd that Case of several of the Knights-Companions, who were Members of the Lord's House in the long Parliament. For Anno 18 Car. I. the Deputy Chancellor having, by the Command of the Sovereign, and in discharge of the Duty of his Office, sent to each of them a Summons, for their Attendance at the Celebration of the Grand Feast, to be held for the preceeding Year at York; and notice thereof being given to the House of Lords, they immediately made the ensuing Order.

Die Martis 22 Maii, 1641.

Whereas the Lord Chamberlain of his Majesty's Houshould, and some other Lords of Parliament, Knights of the Garter, have been Summoned to give their Attendance, and repair into the City of York, for the Celebration of St. George's Feast; who acquainting this House with the Summons aforesaid, it is this Day ordered by the Lords in Parliament, that they attend the weighty Affairs of the Kingdom discussed in Parliament, whereanto they are obliged by his Majesty's Writ, and the Law of the Land.

Jo. Browne, Cleric, Parliament.

Whereupon the said Knights-Companions, before the Days appointed by Prorogation for holding the Feast, sent their petitionary Letters of Excuse to the Deputy Chancellor, wherein they profess'd their desire and readiness to attend, in Obedience of the said Summons; nevertheless pleaded the foresaid Order for the Ground of their stay in London, and therefore desired him to obtain for them the Sovereign's Dispensation: On producing the said Letters in Chapter, the Sovereign would not at that time either ad-

G g 3.

mit

mit or disallow of their Excuses, but referr'd the confideration to the next Chapter, to be held by Prorogation.

Of Excuses which have not been allow'd, the most remarkable is that of the Duke of Norfolk, and the Lord Scales, Anno 36 Hen. VI. who were adjudg'd to the Penalty of the Statute, in regard the Causes alledged to excuse their absence were not approved; the latter was signed by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, in a Jewel to the value of twenty Marks, to be offered in the College; whereby the rigour of the Seasutes appears to have been more strictly executed on him, than the Duke, probably because the Lord Scales was absent the Year before, and no cause thereof shewed to the Chapter.

In relation to the Proceedings on the absent Knights-Companions neglect of sending their Excuses, we shall observe, that some of them have with difficulty been remitted, some less in suspence, and others sentenc'd, and referr'd either to the Sovereign's pleasure, or the Punishment affign'd by Law; of the first kind we find that the Earl of Westmorland, Anno 10 Hen. V. though not very well, yet had much ado to be excus'd, because he signified not the Cause of his absence, as the Statutes required. So Anno 12 Car. I. the Earls of Derby and Kelly, having made no Excuse, were for that Omission blameable, but by the Grace of the Sovereign for that time perdon'd.

As to those who, through the indulgence of the Sovereign, (where probable cause hath induc'd it.) have not had Sentence pass'd on them presently, but were deserr'd in expectation of some satisfactory Cause to be shewed; we find in the Case of the Prince, the Duke of Buckingbam, and sive other Knights-Companions absent from the Feast, held Anno 18 Hen. VII. wherein it is registred, that no cause of Excuse was shewed, but there was an expectation of one to be alledged.

But as for those of the third sort, on whom Sentence hath pass'd; they have been lest either to the pleasure of the Sovereign, or to those Penalties which the Law of this Order instict; of which, as also of those on whom

Judgment hath pass'd, are divers Inflances.

Besides these Grounds of assigning Penances, there are other Causes set down in the before recited ninth Article, of the Seatures of Institution for Penances; as when the Knigsts Companions are absent at other times, beside the Hour

Hour of Tierce, that is, the beginning of the first Vespers. Secondly, At the beginning of the Morning Service on the Feast Day. Thirdly, At the beginning of the second Vespers. Fourthly, During the whole Feast. And, Fifthly,

at the Grand Feast next following.

For the first, admitting any Knight-Companion hath failed of meeting and attending on the Sovereign at the Hour of Tierce, and thereupon suffered the Punishment of Nonadmittance into the Chapter-House, and deprivation of Vore; nevertheless if at the rising of the said Chapter. he be not ready to proceed with the Sovereign, and other the Knights-Companions, into the Choir, to the beginning of the first Vespers; he ought not only to suffer the former, but this additional Penalty, that he shall not presume to Enter into his Stall at that time, but tarry in that part of the Choir, where the Taper-bearers are wont to ftand; nevertheless before his own Stall, until the holy Offices be ended; and the Law of the Order is the same in King Henry V's, and King Henry VIII's Statutes, only render the Place for the Delinquent Knight to stand in, to be before the Stalls in the Choirifters Places; and now how the Penalty hath been inflicted, upon breach of the Law in this particular, we shall see by the following Instances.

At the Grand Feast celebrated at Windsor, An. 21 H. VII. when it seems the Lord Kildare, Sir Gilbert Talbor, and Sir Richard Goulford, came late to the Chappel, we find this Memorandum fixt to their Names; they stood without, (before their Stalls) by the Sovereign's Permission, or rather Command: But yet this is not all the Punishment which hath been inflicted upon the Knights-Companions for this Offence; (though it be all that is set down in the soresaid Article,) for Anno 25 Hen. VI. upon the Eve of St. George, the Marquiss of Dosser not coming to the first Vespers, and being convicted of his late coming, was prohibited joining in the Nomination then made, for the Election of the King of Portugal, into the room of the Duke of Gloucester.

Offenders in the second and third Case, being such as neglect to come before the beginning of the high Mass, or the second Vespers, called also the Vespers on St. George's Day, have the like Punishment with the sormer assigned them, throughout all the Bodies of the Statutes: viz.

Gg4 Ex

Exclusion from their Stalls, and Station in the Choirifters

Range.

Anno 1 Hen. VI. We observe the Lord Willoughby noted to be absent upon the Eve of the Grand Feast, but present on the Day; and consequently he incurred no further Penance than what his absence on the Eve drew on him; the Earl of Derby, Anno 18 Eliz. coming too late to the first Morning Service on the Feast Day, did for some short time undergo the same Penance, but soon after, upon Dispensation from the Lieurenant, went up to his Stall.

There are several other Instances; and besides the aforesaid Defaults, he is likewise to undergo the same Penalties, when the Grand Feast is prorogued, or celebrated at any

Other Place than Windsor,

But if he offend in all, and have no reasonable or allowable Excuse for his absence, he is then prohibited entering his Stall at the next Feast, and to pay ten Pounds, to be employed towards the Ornaments of the College; and sometimes the former Penance has been inflicted for

late coming to Divine Service.

The fourth degree of Offence is yet greater than any, and the variety of Penances are heightened. If a Knighe-Companion shall neglect coming to the Grand Feast, and have no allowable reason; he shall not at the Feast held the ensuing Year be permitted to enter his own Stall, but stand below it; he shall walk alore by himself before three Crosses, which, in ancient time, were born in the Grand Procession: When the Grand Procession returns to the Choir, he shall stand in the Place aforesaid, till the time of the Offertory; he shall Offer last by himself, and then humbly approach the Stall of the Sovereign, or his Deputy, and there desire Absolution. But there is no Instance that these Rigours were put in Execution, though many have offended in this kind.

Lastly, The Statutes enjoin; That where a Knight-Companion remains within the Kingdom, and shall be Guilty of an Omission two Years together, he ought to be so long interdicted his Stall, till he have offered a Jewel at St. George's Altar, to the Value of twenty Marks; and thenceforward every Year in which he shall be guilty of the same Omission, the Penalty to be doubled, till he is pardoned: The most memorable Case in the Prose

cutich

cution of a Contempt, was against the Earl of Arandele 14 Edw. IV. who for being absent two Years together, was Mulct forty Marks; and continuing his Contempt the next Year, was fined the Sum of eighty Marks.

Touching the Necessity, and Power, of the Sovereign's constituting a Deputy; it was provided for at the Institution of the Order; the Sovereign being then engaged in the Wars of France, thought it reasonable that Provision should be made by the Statutes, for to depute some Per-

fon in his ftead.

When therefore such Occasion happened, a Commission was made out to one of the Knights-Companions, some reasonable time before the approach of the Feast; so that none of the ancient Ceremonies might be omitted, or any Impediment happen through his absence; and such Deputy hath usually been one of the chief of the Order, in Authority, Eminence, or Birth. The first so made was, John Duke of Bedford, 7 Hen. V. and the reason there-of given, in the Registrum Chartaceum, is, because the Sovereign was then employed in the Wars in Normandy.

And though the Title given by the Statutes to this Officer, be not particularly mentioned in the Blue-Book, where it speaks of the said Duke's holding the Feast of St. George that Year, but rather implied in the Words Regiae Sublimatis locum impievit; yet in the Registrum Chartaceum it is expresly set down, and the said Duke there styled, Depute de l'Ordre de Jaritiere. Sometimes he has been styled, Deputatis Ordinis, & prases clarissima

Ordinis, &c.

About the beginning of the Reign of King Henry VIII. the Title of Locum Tenens, or Lieutenant, began to be taken up, and has, for the most part, continued in all succeeding Times; and the other Titles of Deputy, President, and Vicegerent, laid aside. As to the Business of this Officer, sufficient has been said already. As an Essential Honour to his Place, he has from ancient Time had some of the Knighte-Companiens affigned for his Assistants; the first mention of which is in the Registrume Chartaceum, 8 Hen. VIII. The Number of these Assistants were in those times uncertain; at the time asoresaid they were 4. 21 Hen. VIII. 3. and 32 Hen. VIII. we find but two; which Number has been a constant Rule ever since, except once, viz. the last of Hen. VIII. They were always appointed in Chapter, and have Letters of notice

(458)

fent them thereof: But neither the Lieutenant, nor Affiftants, can be Cholen two Years together, except the Sovereign should please to be present at the Day or Feast : and after it was Decreed, 23 and 24 Hen. VIII. that this Indulgence should extend to the term of three Years.

Laftly, We observe that this Officer always held the Feait at his peculiar Cost and Charge; and gave liberal Rewards to Garter, and for his Escutcheons, as also to the Officers of Arms, Gentlemen-Ushers, Alms-Knights, and to all the feveral Waiters and Artendants employed in the Ceremony.

The Ceremonies relating to the first Vespers.

§ 6. The first Chapter held on the Eve of St. George being finished, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions immediately proceed from the Chapter-House to the Choir. to hear Velpers. The Officers of Arms, Prebends, and Alms-Knights, having attended in the North-Isle of the Chappel, do now put themselves in Rank, and continue the Proceeding from the Chapter-House Door, along the said North-Isle, to the West Door of the Choir; in like manner as they did from the Presence Chamber, to the Chapter-House: The Organs then beginning to play, and so continue till Vespers begin.

When the Alms-Knights arrive at the West-Door, they first enter in a whole Body, while the rest of the Proceeding makes a short stand, and pass forward near the middle of the Choir, where they make a joint and low Obeyfance; next, all turning about by the left Hand, to the Sovereign's Seat; then ftill turning from the right, to the left Hand, they ascend the Haut Pas's, even to the Rails set before the Altar; and forthwith divide themfelves, flanking on each fide, the Juniors nearest the Rails,

This done, the Prebends enter in a Body also, and having made the like Obeylances in the middle of the Choir, divide themselves, and take their Seats; which, by King Henry VIII's Statutes, are appointed in the lower range of Seats, between, but not in, the Stalls of the Knights-Companions. While the Prebends are entering their Seats, the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, in a Body, likewise enter the Choir; ar.d

and after due Reverence, pass up to the Alvar, and join the Alms-Knights; though anciently some difference was

in this Ceremony.

Afterwards, the two Junior Knights-Companions enter, paffing on till they come near their own Stalls, and there make their Reverences, and then divide, and take their stands directly before their Stalls; and so of the rest of the Knights-Companions.

Next to the Knightis-Companions, the Black-Rod, Garrer, and Register, enter in a Breast, who, proceeding to the middle of the Choir, make their Obeylances, and then pass to their Form, placed on the South-side of the Choir, before the Sovereign's Stall, and stand before it. After them, the Chancellor and Prelate in the like manner, stand before their Form, placed near the Sovereign's Seat: And for these Forms, whereon the Officers of the Order six in the Chappel, there is a special Decree for the allowance of them, entered at the end of the Constitutions of their Offices.

Last of all the Sovereign enters, (having the Sword born before him, but his Band of Pensioners stay at the Choir Door, to keep off the Crowd,) who, coming to the Steps which ascend the Royal Seat, makes a Reverence toward the Altar, and then takes Place therein, before he makes a second Reverence.

When the Lieutenant, in the Sovereign's absence, proceeds to the first Vespers; as soon as he enters the Choir, and comes near the Sovereign's Stall, he stands and makes a little pause there; then doing his Reverences, after he has again stood a while, before he ascends his own; where being arrived, he makes the double Reverence a second time, and then sits down.

And now to placing the Knights-Companions in their Stalls: Garter, as foon as the Sovereign, or his Lieuten nant, is placed, makes again the usual Reverence in the middle of the Choir; then turns to the Senior Knights, and doth his Reverence to each of them; whereupon, at one Instant, they make their double Reverences below, where they stood, and strait ascend at the first, or wistern Entrance, that goes to the side Stalls; where Long atrived, they make again their double Reverences, and then seat themselves. But when the Sovereign's Lieutenant is present, each Knight adds a third Reverence to him, both when

when they ascend to, and descend from, their Stalls; and so likewise do all Persons, who pass in the Proceeding, add to their double Reverences so often as there is occasion to make it, after such time as the Lieutenant is entered h s Stall; and so long as he continues therein, both on the Eve, the Feast Day, and the Morrow after.

The Knights-Companions being all seated, the Prelate and Chancellor pass into the middle of the Choir, and having made double Reverences, return to their Forms, and at down. And after them, in the same manner, the

Register, Gerter, and Black-Rod, proceed.

As to the Sovereign's other Attendants, the Nobleman who carries the Sword retires before the Sovereign's Stall, a little on the right Hand; and the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold, if not a Knight of the Garter, and the Vice Chamberlain, on the left, till the Sovereign give them leave to sit down. The Clerk of the Closet stands at the Sovereign's right Hand, but the young Noblemen, that carry up the Sovereign, and the Gentleman of the Robes, sometimes repose themselves on the Steps going to the Sovereign's Stall.

This being done, preparation for Velpers begin; in reference to which, the Prelate ascends the Altar, it being the Duty of his Office, which if he omits, he is fined twenty Marks, to the use of the College, unless he give sufficient reason for his absence; in which Case, or on the vacancy of the See of Winchester, the Sovereign hath sometimes appointed another Bishop to Officiate for him. The Proceeding to the Altar, on this occasion, is as follows.

First, The Serjeant of the Vestry makes a double Reverence, then comes before the Prelate, and makes a single one to him; who thereon arises from his Seat, and the Serjeant proceeds before him into the middle of the Chair, where the Prelate makes a double Reverence; and passing forward after the Serjeant, and having ascended the uppermost Haut-pas before the Altar, he makes one single Reverence toward the same, and so goes to the North side of it.

After which, the two Provincial Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants, leaving their fore-mentioned Stations, join together till they come near the Forms of the Register, Garter, and Black-Rod; where, making their double reconcerns.

verences,

verences, they divide again on each fide, and there stand.

Lastly, The Alms-Knights come down into the Choir in a Body, and there make their joint double Reverences, and then take their Chairs; all which being finished,

Divine Service is begun by the Prelate.

The like Solemnity is observed at any other Place, as well as at Windsor; where, because the Alms-Knights are absent, the Pursuivants at Arms ascend nearer the High-Alsar than when they are at Windsor; but this occasions little Variation.

When the Vespers are ended, the Prelate goes to the middle of the Altar, and with great Reverence makes an Obeysance; and thence, with the Serjeant before him, descends to the middle of the Choir, where he makes his double Reverences, and so returns to his Seat; whereupon all make ready to pass out of the Choir, which is performed in much the same manner, and with the same State, as they proceeded thither; and the Servants and Attendants of the Knights-Companions are marshalled in the same Order as they were at the beginning of the Proceeding, that the whole Procession may again pass through them.

The Alms-Knights having entered the Guard Chamber, spread themselves on each side thereof; the Prebends pass through them, and fall off on either side the Room to

the Presence Chamber Door.

Then the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings, proceeding through the Lane made by the Alms-Knights and Prebends, enter the Presence Chamber, and fall off on either side toward the Stall, the King's standing uppermost.

Then enter the Knights-Companions, and place themfelves on each fide of the State, in such Order as they sat in their Stalls, the eldest nearest the State; but those whose Companions are absent, stand alone; after whom follow the Officers of the Order, disposing themselves conveniently near the State.

Lastly, The Sovereign passes to the Step before the State, where, being arrived, he turns toward the Knights-Companions, who make their Reverences jointly to him, and he thereon puts off his Cap, and re-salutes them;

which

which done, the Sovereign and they withdraw into the

Privy Chamber till Supper time.

But in Queen Elizabeth's Reign, when the Feast of St. George was held at White-Hall, or Greenwich, and the Sovereign, as was usual with her, proceeded no farther on the Eve so Vefpers, than to the great Closet, the ordinary way, and thence sent her Lieutenant into the Choir. Then, in such Case, when Vespers were ended, the Lieutenant returned from the Choir, through the great Hall, and so back to the said Closet, and stood at the Door thereof, attending the Sovereign's coming forth; from whence they all proceeded before her into the Presence-Chamber, and there the Ceremony, for that time, ended.

But in the Reign of King James I. when the Supper on the Eve, as also the following Meals, were prepared in the Banquetting-House, the Sovereign's Lieutenant frequency returned from the Closet, by the Lobby, to the said Banquetting-House, instead of going to the Presence; and passing up the State, gave an End to the Ceremony till Supper time: And so we find it observed in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, and 16 of that King.

When the Sovereign and Knights-Companions are retired, they are not to put off any part of their Robes till Supper is over, for that is prohibited by the Statutes, not only to those who do not Sup, as well as those who do. And bereon, 19 Car. II. the Sovereign having a mind to take the Air, went into Hide-Park, after he had taken leave of the Knights-Companions, the Dukes of York and Monmouth, and the Earl of Oxford being with him, but all in full Robes, and so returned to Supper.

The Supper on the Eve.

6.7. When the Sovereign is pleased to Sup publickly, on the Eve of the Feast at Windfor, the Supper has been always prepared in St. George's Hall. The usual Place at White-Hall, was heretofore in the Presence Chamber; of later times, the Banquetting-House; and at Greenwich, either the Presence, or the Council Chamber; where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, were always present. But when the Feast of St. George was celebrated at Took, 17 Car. I. the Sovereign and Knights-Companions marched after

ester the first Vespers, to a House prepared for that pur-

pole, and supped there,

But if the Eve of the Feast fell out on a Fasting Day, as it did 22 Hem. VIII. and 11 Jac. I. the Supper was always omitted; and the Sovereign, with his Lieutenant, and Knighes-Companions, were served of the Void only.

Nor does the Sovereign, when he Sups publickly, pass privately to the Place, but as foon as notice is given that the first Mess is set upon the Table, he presently enters the Presence Chamber, whence the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, the Knights-Companions in their full Robes, for so the Statutes expresly direct, having put themselves into their usual Order, proceed before him to St. George's-Hall: Where being enteted, the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings, fall off all upon the right Hand, opposite to the Knights-Companions Table, the Junior Pursuivants standing toward the lower End of the Hall Then the Knights-Companions passing up beyond them, formerly divided themselves on either side, according to the Decree, 16 Hen. VIII. and made a stand, each taking Place, according to the Order of their Stalls. But at the Feak held at White-Hall, 19 Car. II. the Sovereign directed that they should stand all on the right Hand side. facing the Table.

Next, the five Officers of the Order follow, who afcending beyond the Senier Knight, retire on the right Hand: After them the Sovereign, and the Officers of Arms, all doing him Reverence as he passes by: Who passing up to the Haut-pas, before his own Table, turns himself to the Knights-Companions, and putting off his Cap, they re-

turn their Reverences jointly to him.

The Sovereign fitting down to Supper, is first served by Water by some Nobleman; then Grace is said by the Prelate; then is the Senior Knight conducted to his Table by two Officers of Arms, and so the rest in Order, to the Tables appointed them. Whereupon the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, retire out of the Hall to Supper.

If a Lieutenant be constituted, he proceeds to Supper in full Robes, and in the same Order as doth the Sovereign, and sits alone at the Sovereign's Table, yet on the left Hand of the Cloth of State, being served in all Points with Water, and by a Cup-bearer, Carver, and Semer, as the Sovereign himself is.

When

When Supper is ended, and the Banquet taken away, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceed back in the same Order they came to the Presence Chamber, where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, standing on the Step before the Cloth of State, Salutes them as before; and then appoints the Hour and Place for the Knights-Companions to attend him the next Morning: The like, if the Supper be provided in any other Place besides the Presence Chamber, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceed back thither, because the Ceremony ought to end there, as has always been the Custom. And if the Supper be prepared in the Presence Chamber, they then take their Leave in the same Room, there being no occasion to proceed farther.

If any of the Knighet-Companions accompany the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, to his Lodgings, they then go after, not before him, in regard the State of that Night's Service ended in the Presence Chamber; and after they have retired to their Lodging, they have Permission to Unrobe.

When the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, do not Sup in St. George's Hall on the Eve of the Feaft, on the following Night, the Officers of Arms have formerly had the Liberty to Eat there; and this Privilege was affigned them by Decree of a Chapter held 16 Eliz. appointing them that Table, which was before that time used by the Chancelor, Register, and other Officers of the Order: But how they came to lose this Privilege, is not mentioned; for now, instead of sitting in the great Hall, they are necessicated to Eat in such Rooms of the Castle as they can procure.

C A P.

C A P. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feast Day.

The Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning.

for takes up three Days, viz. part of the Feast takes up three Days, viz. part of the twenty second, all the twenty third, and part of the twenty fourth of April, yet the twenty third, St. George's Day, is the Grand Part: The Ceremonies of which may be divided into Sacred and Civil, the first solemnized in the Chappel, the latter in St. George's Hall.

In Order to which, the Knights-Companions in full Robes repair to the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, at the Hour appointed; as also the Officers of the Order. In the mean time the rest of the Degrees and Persons, which made up the Proceeding on the Eve of the Feast, take their several Stations then appointed them, to attend the Sovereign's

coming out of the Presence-Chamber.

When the Sovereign, having the Knights-Companions, and Officers of the Order before him, has entered the Prefence, the Sword is delivered to the Nobleman appointed to bear it; and after the usual Salutations, the Proceeding sets forward to the Chappel in the same Order as on the Eve; the Knights-Companions having their Trains born by some of their own Gentlemen.

At the Foot of the Stairs, entering the Cloister, or Stone Gallery, twelve Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber attend, with a rich Canopy of Cloth of Gold, who, when the Sovereign approaches, receive him under it, and bear it over his Head, till he comes to the Choir Door of St. George's Chappel; which Canopy is carried only on the Morning of the Feast Day, and not at any other time.

The Processional way to the Chappel, is the same they traversed on the Eve, if the Sovereign and Knights-Coms panions proceed to the Chapter-House sirst; for anciently

it was the Custom to hold a Chapter in the Morning of the Feast Day, either before Mattins, or after, before the Grand Procession set forward. This Course received interruption in Queen Elizabeth's time, during which, no Chapter was held in the Morning, except in the 26, 31, and 38 Years of her Reign, and then only for admitting some Officers of the Order: But the time of holding this Chapter was restored by King Charles I. who several times held it before the first Service began; as in the 5, 14, and 15, of his Reign.

But if no Chapter be held at this time, then, as soon as the Proceeding comes near the Chappel, instead of entering the Passage between the East-end of the Chappel, and King Henry VIII's Tomb House, as it does on the Eve, by reason the Sovereign goes first to the Chapter-House, it proceeds Braight on to the South Door, and thence into the Choir: Yet King Charles II. in the 15 of his Reign, appointed the whole Proceeding to pass by the said South Door, all along the South side of the Chappel, and then to enter at the West Door, which was then, and since observed.

When the Alms-Knights are come to the West Door of the Choir, they enter, and pass up above the Steps of the Altar, in the very same Manner and Order as they did on the Eve, and so exactly of the rest: Which being done, the Prelate begins the Morning Service, according to the Order observed in the Common-Prayer, only that the first Lesson being made proper to the Festival, is taken

out of the 44 Chapter of Ecclesiasticus.

This Solemn Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning of the Feast Day, is, and has been, most usual performed on Foot; yet there are Instances heretosore, where the Sovereign and Knights-Companions have proceeded on Horse-back, for the greater Splendor and Gallantry of the Order: As in 16 Edw. IV. when several Ladies rode in the Cavalcade, richly adorned, of which Habit mention is already made. So also 3 Hen. VII. when it was augmented by the Presence of the Queen, and the King's Mother, attended by a splendid Train of Ladies: And again the 22 of the same King, when he held the Feast at Baynard's-Castle, in London, he proceeded on Horse back to St. Paul's: The like King Henry VIII. did at Windsor, on the Feast of St. George, 11 of his Reign; and King Philips.

Philip, 1 and 2 of Phil. and Mar. and Queen Elizabeth, in the 6 of her Reign, in her whole Habit of the Order; so did the Sovereign's Lieutenant at the same Feast ride to the first and second Vespers, and to the Morning Ser-

vice the Day after.

It was a Custom begun by Queen Elizabeth, and used when she celebrated St. George's Feast, either at Woite-Hall, or Greenwich, for the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and Knights-Companions, in full Robes, attended with the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, to meet in the Presence Chamber, about nine in the Morning of the Feast Day, and proceed thence as they did the Evening before, through the Guard Chamber, down into the great Hall, and thence into the Chappel, where they took their Stalls, as on the Eve; after which, Morning Prayer was performed as far as the Litany, and this was called the first Service; which done, they all descended from their Stalls, in the accustomed Order, and proceeded back to the Presence, and there waited the coming of the Sovereign, before whom they proceeded a second time to the Choir, where the Litany, and Grand Procession began, called the second Service, at which the Sovereign was usually Present; but seldom at the first Service.

The first Instance we have met with of this double Proceeding, is recorded in the Blue-Book of the Order, 3 Eliz. and was continued throughout her Reign; and that of King James I. not only when the Feast of St. George was celebrated at White-Hall, or Greenwich, but also at other times, when celebrated at Windsor; and so I Car. I. But from that time, the Sovereign went to the Chappel at the beginning of Morning Service, which was comtinued without interruption: Which way has been

ever fince duly observed.

But when it was known that the Sovereign did not go in the Grand Procession, but his Lieutenant for him; then the Service was constantly gone through withal at once.

The Proceeding to the second Service.

\$ 2. When the Feast has been celebrated essewhere than at Windsor, as soon as the Prelate was come H h 2 down

down from the Altar, on finishing the first Service, the Knights-Companions descended from their Stalls in usual Order; and then the Lieutenant, with the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, proceeded before him to the Presence, to conduct the Sovereign to the second Service; which second Proceeding was disposed in the same manner as was that to the first Service in the Morning; only in the latter, because the Sovereign proceeded, the Sword was also carried.

Of the Grand Procession.

6 3. We are now arrived at the Grand Procession of this most Noble Order, which is indeed the most Solemn, and Magnificent Part of the whole Ceremony, and has always been celebrated in the Morning of the Feast Day of St. George; or on such other Day, as the Sovereign hath appointed by Prorogation to hold the same. But as to the inftant of Time when it began, it has sometimes been uncertain; with respect to the conveniency of the Church Service, when it was conceived most proper; which was generally at the end of the second Collect, and before the Litany: Nevertheless, in 6 Eliz. the Feast being then held at Windsor, it began presently after the Te Deum was Sung; and the twentieth of the faid Queen's Reign. at Greenwich, after reading the second Lesson. And to come nearer our Times, the Grand Procession set forward, & Car. I. when the first Service was finished; and 17 Car, I. after the Sermon was ended: But at the Grand Feaft, 13 Car. II. it was brought to its usual time, after the last Collect.

As to the Proceeding, or Processional way at Windjor, that has not been always the same; sometimes it was confined within the Walls of St. George's Chappel, but at other times enlarged through the lower Court of the Castle; a sew Instances of both Cases are remaining, but none of any ancient date.

What the Order and Manner of this Ceremony was, may be collected from what an old Relator says, of the Solemn Procession made the 29 May, 5 Hen. VIII. That it was ordered as of old Time accustomed.

Fug

First went the Alms-Knights, two and two on either side the Choir, then the Officers of Arms, next the Knights-Companions; after them the Officers of the Order, and then the Prelate bearing the Heart of St. George, under a Canopy honourably affisted, sour Noblemen bear-

ing each a Torch; and last of all the Sovereign.

And though here is no mention of any Ecclefiasticks, that joined themselves in the Proceeding; yet it cannot be supposed, that as part of the Divine Service was to be performed, but that some of the Chaplains and Priests were included. And we meet with one Instance, where the Priests not only went in the Grand Procession, but had a Place assigned in it; where the Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Chappel, and Choir of Windsor, now go.

But it must be confessed, that the Records of the Order are very desective in this particular, relating to the Grand Procession, and speak of it only in general, or at most, take notice but of some of those Degrees that attend in it; and this but of late Time neither: Among which, 23 Eliz. it is said; They all proceeded in Order, as the Custom was; the Sovereign following in the Rear of the Proces-

fion.

As to Place and Precedency, it is in every respect the same, as in the Sovereign's Proceeding to the Chappel, on the Eve of the Grand Feast; only here are some Persons added, which go not in that; Namely, the Gentlemen and Choiristers of the Sovereign's Chappel at White-Hall; and the Petty-Canons, Vicars, and Choiristers of Windfor: The whole Order is as follows.

The Morning Service having proceeded to the second Lesson, and the Prelate conducted by the Serjeant of the

Vestry from the Altar to his Seat;

The Alms-Knights rife from their Seats, and pass to the middle of the Choir; and after their accustomed Reverences, go up to the sides of the Altar.

Next, in like manner, the Officers of Arms pass up.

Hereupon Garter rises from his Sear, and makes his usual Reverences; then waving his Rod, summons the

Junior Knights to descend.

Whilst they and the rest of the Knights-Companions are leaving their Stalls, with usual Reverences; the Gentlemen of the Chappel, Petty-Canons, and Vicars of Windfor, put on Copes, and make themselves ready to proceed.

Hh 3 Then

Then the Knights-Companions being all come down, fland each under his proper Stall.

Then the Black-Rod, Garter, and Register rise, and stand

before their Forms.

So do the Chancellor and Prelate.

This done, the Alms-Knights come down from the Alter, and passing into the middle of the Choir, make again their double Reverences, and proceed out of the Choir.

After them the Choiristers pass in a Body to the middle of the Choir, and having made their double Reverences, (as do all that follow,) proceed forth two and two.

So do the Vicars of Windfor.

Next, the four Petty-Canons come from their Seats, into the middle of the Chair; and there begin to Sing an Hymn.

Then follows the Serjeant of the Vestry, bearing his

gilt Rod.

After him the Gentlemen of the Chappel at White-

Next the Virger of Windfor Chappel, bearing his Silver Rod.

Then the Prebends of Windfor.

After whom the Officers of Arms come down from the Altar, and pass on.

Then the Knights Companions, the Juniors first.

Then the Black-Rod, Garter, and Register.

The Chancellor and Prelate.

The Nobleman that bears the Sword of State.

Then the Sovereign, above in his Stall, makes a Reverence toward the Altar, and being descended, another below; then passes out, and enters under the Canopy, which waits for him at the Choir Door; the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold, if not a Knight of the Order, attending somewhat behind the side of the Canopy, on the Sovereign's right Hand; and the Vice Chamberlain at the like distance on his lest; as in the Grand Procession, 23 Car. II.

And lastly, The Band of Pensioners, who attend the Guard on each side the Sovereign and Knights-Companions,

with their Captain at the Head of them.

In this Order, to this Day, they proceed with great Devotion; the whole Choir Singing the Office appointed, which which heretofore was the Litany; but is now generally

a Thanksgiving Hymn.

The Grand Procession, when it has been celebrated at White-Hall, or elsewhere than at Windsor, is for the most part ordered after the aforesaid manner, as may be seen by the following Scheme.

Serjeant of the Vestry, with his gilt Rod.
Choiristers in Surplices.
Gentlemen of the Chappel in Copes.
Subdean in a Cope.
Officers of Arms.
Knights Companions.
Officers of the Order.
The Sword.
The Sovereign under a Canopy, with his Train born up.
The Pensioners as before.

But in what this Grand Procession differs from that at Windsor, we shall here Note.

First, Here the Serjeant of the Vestry leads the Pro-

ceeding, and is followed by the Choirifters.

Secondly, The Prebends and Choir of Windsor, and the

Alms-Knights, are here wanting.

Thirdly, The Subdean and Dean of the Chappel are taken in, and proceed next to the Gentlemen of the Chappel, to whom the Sovereign's Almoner has fometimes joined himself.

Fourthly, Whilst the Knights-Companions are descending from their Stalls, the Gentlemen of the Chappel go into the Vestry, to put on their Copes; but the Dean of the Chappel hath his brought into the Choir, which he puts

on below, under his Seat.

Fifthly and Lastly, In Queen Elizabeth's Reign, the Ladies Attendants went with the Pensioners on either fide

the Sovereign.

To contribute more to the Pomp and State of this great Ceremony, a Canopy is born over the Sovereign's Head, by Knights and Gentlemen of Quality, while he passeth in Procession, till he return to the Choir Door.

The Persons appointed to carry the Canopy, Anno 11
Hen. VIII. were four Knights of the Body, when four
other Knights bore four Wax Tapers; but since they are
H h 4

the Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber in ordinary, who at the time of the Feast are in waiting, twelve of whom are appointed for this Service; the Sovereign hath also the long Train of his Mantle carried up by several of the young Nobility, who receive notice thereof by the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold.

In like manner the Lieutenants, or Deputies to the Sovereign, have had their Train carried up in the Proceedings, by Persons of Distinction; and the Train of a Stranger King, personally present at Windsor, hath also been born up; and in like manner the Train of a Deputy from a Stranger King; and lastly, the Knights-Companions have their Trains carried up by their own Gentlemen.

The Cloaths and Apparel of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, and the great variety of rich Jewels which furround or adorn their Caps, or where else they may

appear most conspicuous, shine with great Lustre.

The Provincial Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants, habited in their rich Coats, and going together in one Body, appear also very conspicuous, from the Royal Arms of the Sovereign richly Embroidered on them with fine Gold, Purples and Twist; the Ground of the Provincial King's Coats are blue Velvet, the Heralds blue Sattin,

and the Pursuivants blue Damask.

The Habit in which the Canons of the College proceed, is also peculiar; for though, as Clergymen, they are vested in Linen Surplices at all times of Divine Service, yet at this Solemnity they wear a Mantle over those Surplices, which is a Habit appointed for them, from the Foundation of the Order; these Mantles are of Murry Taffeer, and on the right Shoulder is an Escutcheon of St. George's Arms within a Rundlet, Embroidered with Gold and Silk, which is bought at their own Charge.

The Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Chappel, the Petty-Canons, and Vicars of Windsor, appear in Habits more glorious, being all (or the most part of them) vested in rich Copes of Cloth of Gold, or most costly Embroideries; but the Children of the Chappel and Choiristers, proceed habited in Surplices of white Linen; lastly, the Habits of the Alms-Knights [a Mantle and Kirtle] are not unremarkable both for Colour and Materials, which appear suitable to their Age and Degree. The Mantles are of Cloth, which the Seatures appoint to be of a red Colour,

Colour, with a Shield of the Arms of St. George, but without a Garter to surround them.

In this Grand Proceeding, the Habits entertain the Beholders with a very delightful Prospect, being so ordered, that the Grave are placed between those that are Rich and Gallant; and to add to the greater Shew of this Solemn Ceremony, the Registers of the Order make mention of divers Persons of Rank and Quality, who put themselves on the Duty of Attendance on their Sovereign, because related to his Service, though in reference to the Order not so concerned as to be taken into the Proceeding; such are divers of the Nobility, sometimes great Ladies, many considerable Officers of the Houshold, and other Courtiers, all richly habited and attired.

2

ç

7

To complete the Pomp of this great Solemnity, we may (in the last Place,) firly remember the Musick, as a part thereof, the Choirs of the Sovereign's Chappel at St. James's, and at Windsor, being united, all Singing the sacred Hymn together, while the Grand Procession devoutly passet; and on their return to the Choir Door, the Alms-Knights first advance into it, and after double Reverences ascend above the Haut Pas's to the Altar.

Next the Choiristers, and in like manner the Vicars,

Petty-Canons of Windsor, Gentlemen of the Chappel, and Prebends, go to their Seats.

Then the Officers of Arms pass up, and join to the Alms-Knights. After this the Knights-Companions enter, and stand before their Stalls.

The like doth the Black-Rod, Garter, and Register.

As also the Chancellor and Prelate.

Then doth the Sovereign take his Royal Stall.

The Knights-Companions ascend their Stalls.

The Officers of the Order fit down on their Forms, in the same Manner and Order, and with like Reverences, as at their Entrance into the Choir, on the Eve of the Feast.

Then the Prelate, with two Prebends, (appointed to read the Epistle and Gospel,) are conducted, the one by the Serjeants of the Vestry, the other by the Virger, up to the Alear, (which they approach with usual Reverences,) the Prelate passing to the North-side, and the Prebends to the South, to finish the remaining part of Divine Service.

Where-

Whereupon the Officers of Arms descend into the Choirs

And

The Alms-Knights go down to their Seats, which, while they are so doing, the two Prebends put on their Copes at the South-side of the Altar. This done, the Prelate begins the second Service, which hath been celebrated, fince the time of the Reformation, according to the Book of Common-Prayer, and is the same commonly used on any other Feast Day; excepting a peculiar Epistle and Gospel; the first being the thirty third Chapter of Deuteronomy, and the latter the fifth Chapter of St. John, beginning at the twenty south Verse, and ending at the thirtieth; which being read, the Creed is Sung.

We may here Note, that before the Reformation, it belonged to the Abbot of Tower-Hill to read the Golpel, and to the Prior of Medemenham in Norfolk, to read the

Epistle.

The Offering of Gold and Silver.

5 4: This Ceremony, whether it be performed in the Sovereign's Chappel at Windjor, or in any other Church or Chappel, is one and the same, (except the Sovereign's Offering of Gold and Silver, instead of the Bezane,) which

is peculiar to Windsor.

The accustomed time of Offering on the Feast Day, is mentioned Anno 22 Hen. VIII. to be after the Sovereign's return to his Stall from the Grand Procession, in the time of High Mass, and at this Day begins immediately after this first Sentence of the Offertory is pronounced by the Prelate.

Let your Light so shine before men, &c.

This faid, the Organ begins to Play, and forthwish a Groom and Page of the removing Wardrobe, (with Reverence first made,) unrol a long Carpet, and spread it before the Altar; which being done, the Alms-Knights sirst, next the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings, ascend in usual Order, and slank the Carpet on both sides. Then Garrer steps from his Seat, and after double Reverences, and the usual manner of waving his Rod, the Knights Companions descend in their accustom'd Order, and stand before their Stalls,

After

After this, Black-Rod goes from his Seat to the Altar, towards which, making a fingle Reverence, he turns his Back, and immediately the Groom of there moving Ward-robe delivereth him a little Carpet, anciently of Silk, now of Cloth of Gold; and the faid Groom holds on his Arms a Cushion of Cloth of Gold, for the Sovereign to Kneel upon, at the time of his Offering, which the Black-Rod forthwith lays on the upper Haut Pas before the Altar, and each of them, as well in delivering, as receiving the Cushion, kiss it.

After this, the Prelate of the Order takes a gilt Bason to receive the Sovereign's Offering, and stands before the middle of the Altar, with one of the Prebends to affish him, at which time the Sovereign arising makes his Reverence towards the Altar, and then descending, makes a little Reverence below, and ascends towards the Altar with his Attendants, and being come into the middle of the Choir; he makes another Reverence, and at the first Haut Pas.

his laft.

He that bears the Sovereign's Offering, is either the Senior Knight, the Prince, or the greatest Estate among the Knights-Companions then present, and no other Person, (of what Degree soever) if he be not of this Noble Fraternity,

performs this Service.

The Sovereign being come to the upper Haut Pas kneels, at which Instant Black-Red on his Knee delivers (with Assay) the Sovereign's Offering to the Senior Knight, or other Person nominated, and he kneeling presents it to the Sovereign, which he immediately Offers into the Bason held by the Prelate, and then ariseth, and is conducted and attended, as when he came up to Offer; at the Entrance into his Stall, he turns and makes a Reverence, and his Attendants also bow towards the Altar; and being attended into his Stall, doth the like again, and then reposeth himself in his Seat.

An Entry is made in the Red-Book, Anno 6 Car. I. That whereas in other Places (besides Windsor) the Sovereign is wont to Offer a certain Gold Piece, (vulgarly called a Bezant) to be redeemed afterwards at a certain Price; the Usher of the Black-Rod having been admonished, that in these Services there is no Redemption to be made, should never present the Bezant at Windsor to the Sovereign, but Gold and Sil

ver of English Money.

When

When the Sovereign is absent, and the Lieutenant Of-

fers for him, he performs the Ceremony as follows.

First, (After the Preparations made for the Offering, as aforesaid,) he descends from his Stall with the usual Reverences, and goes to the Steps ascending the Sovereign's Stall, and there stands a while; then making his double Obeyfance, he proceeds towards the Altar (the Officers of the Order going before him,) with one other Reverence in the middle of the Choir, and another at the first Haus Pas of the Altar; the Carpet and Cushion is spread and laid for him, as is for the Sovereign, and the Offering also given in the same way, and the Lieutenant kneeling puts it in the Bason, and returns to the Sovereign's Stall in the same Order, &c. he came; where standing a while again before it, he makes a Reverence towards it, and then goes up into his own Stall, where (if it fall out that the Lieurenant is not the Senior Knight,) he stays to receive the Reverences of all the Knights-Companions his Seniors, as they go up to Offer, and when his own turn comes to Offer, he descends with a double Reverence, and proceeds up with his Fellow, (if present) and Offers for himself in his own Place, but his Train is then let down, the Carper, &c. taken away, and only two Officers of Arms (but none of the Order) proceeds before him, and when he has Offer'd, he returns to his Stall.

But it seems, 7 Jac. I. that Garter alone, on the Feast Day, brought up the Prince, then the Sovereign's Lieutenant, when he came to Offer for himself, which Service ought to have been performed by Clarenceux and Norroy, which was an oversight in Garter; as likewise his bringing down at the same, the Knights-Companions out of their Stalls to Offer, before the Epistle and Gospel were Read, contrary to the usage of former times; by which they were kept a tedious time waiting below in the Choir, before the Offering began. But 11 Jac. I. the Prince was brought up by Clarenceux and Norroy, when he came to Offer, and not by Garter. When the Lieutenant hath Offered for himself, he returns to the lower end of the Stalls, and passes to his own, where having paid the usual Reverences, he enters it, and is ready to receive the Re-

As foon as the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, is returned to his Stall, the two Provincial Kings pals down into the

verences of all the other Knights-Companions.

the middle of the Choir, where making Reverences jointly to the Altar, and next to the Sovereign, Clarenceux turns himself to the Senior Knight, and makes him a third Reverence, while Norroy at the same Instant does the same to the next Junior Knight, and so both, as an intimation of their going up to Offer; then each King retires a little backward toward the Stalls: In the mean time, the two Senior Knights draw near together, and making double Reverences, Clarenceux and Norroy step forth, and pass up before them, till they arrive near the Prelate; (or if the Senior Knight be without his Opposite, then he is brought up fingle,) then making their Reverences, first towards the Altar, next to the Knights, Clarenceux retires to the right fide, and Norroy to the left, waiting for the return of the Knights, who are kneeling on the uppermoft Haut Pas of the Altar, making their Offering. Which humble Ceremony of kneeling, not being heretofore used, was fixed by a Decree of 4 Car. I.

The Knights-Companions Offerings are both of Silver and Gold, which is received by two of the Prebends, or by one Prebend and one Chantor, anciently by one Chantor only, when the Offering is at Windfor; but by the Dean of the Chappel, when at White-Hall. The Offering being made, the Knights-Companions rife, and forthwith divide themselves, Clarenceux conducting the Senior Knight to the lower end of the Stalls on the Sovereign's side; and Norroy the next Junior Knight, to the lower end of the Stalls on the Prince's side; and at parting make their Reverences, and return to their Stations before the Altar. The Knights, at their Entrance into the Stalls, make their double Reverences together, and then pass on to their own; where making the like Reverences, they

take their Seats.

But if any Stranger King be present at the Offering, he does not retire to his Seat, by the lower end of the Stalls, but along the Choir, as does the Sovereign, the same way he proceeded up: So did the King of Denmark, 4 Fac. I.

The Ceremonics of the two Senior Knights Offering being finished, the two Senior Heralds observing their last Reverences, pass down into the Choir, in the same manner as did Clarenceux and Norroy, to bring up the next two Senior Knights to Offer, who use all the same Ceremonics.

nies, and are conducted back in like manner to the Alear 3 and 10 of the other, brought up by the two next Senior Heralds; Clarenceaux and Norroy beginning again, if there are more Knights than the Heralds in one Course supply; and after them the Heralds again, till the whole is ended: And here it may be noted, that where any Knight goeth fingle to Offer, he hath nevertheless two Heralds to attend him.

Touching the Offerings themselves, made in the Chappel of Windsor, they belong of right to the Dean and Prebends, being conferr'd on them by the Statutes of the College: And ordained also, that the Chantor should see them receiv'd, and faithfully kept; and at the end of every Month, or Weekly, if the College required it, give an Account of what was receiv'd: All which was confirmed by King Edward III. the Bishop, Dean, and Chapter of Salisbury, to whose Jurisdiction the College of Windsor belongs; and also by the Bishop of Winchester. Prelate of the Garter, 1352. But Dr. Montague, Bilhop of Winchester, at the Feast at Windsor, 21 Jac. I. challenged a right to the Offerings; and Bishop Andrews did de Facto both receive, and keep the Offerings, whenever he officiated at Windser. But on complaint of the Dean and Prebends of Windsor, this matter was referred to the Chapter; yet we do not find that any final or positive Determination was ever made to the time of the Reftauration. from which time the right of the Dean and Canons has never been disputed, and the Statutes have duly taken Place.

What has usually been offered, either in Gold or Silver, we shall see by the Account given in by the Bishop of Winchester, 4 Car. I. at St. George's Feast at Windsor,

September 24.

The whole Offering of the eight Knights, is four Pounds fifteen Shillings, viz. in Gold ten Shillings each, and in Silver two; excepting the Lord Steward, whole Offering in Silver was only one Shilling; besides the Sovereign's Bezant redeemable.

The Offerings on the twenty fith Day.

His Majesty's Offering in Gold one Pound, and in Sil-

ver ten Shillings.

The eight Knights-Companions the same as the Day before; the whole, besides the King's Bezant, eleven Pounds.

When

When all the Knights have offered, and are returned to their Stalls, the Chancellor of the Order makes his Reverences; and after him, the Register, Garter, and Black-Rod, theirs together, and take their Seats: Next, the Carpet being rolled up by the Groom and Page of the removing Wardrobe, the Provincial Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants, and last of all the Alms-Knights, make their Reverences, and pass into the Choir, where they remain till the Prelate has sinished the second Service; who, conducted by the Serjeant of the Vestry, comes down from the Alsar with his accustomed Reverences to his Seat. After whom, the two Prebends are brought down by the Virger, who making their usual Reverences take their Seats.

The Return to the Presence.

66. Immediately after, all prepare to pass out of the Choir, and to proceed back to the Presence Chamber, which is done in every particular as it is in the return of

the Sovereign from the first Vespers.

Ļ

The Proceeding passes on through the South-Door of the Chappel, and here the Trumpets are taken in, and placed before the Alms-Knights, and sound all the way to the Guard Chamber; at which time the Drums and Fises begin to beat and play. Thence the Proceeding passes into the Presence Chamber, whither it ought to go, before the Sovereign pass into the great Hall to Dinner; and here the Knights-Companions take their usual Stands; and after the Sovereign's Saluration, and their Reverences, the Sovereign retires into the Privy Chamber, and the Knights likewise retire till Dinner is ready.

Of the Dinner on the Feast Day.

67. As soon as the Sovereign hath notice given him, that the first Mess is set on the Table, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions come out of the Privy Lodgings into the Presence Chamber, attended by the Officers of the Order, and seat themselves in the same manner, as at the Supper on the Eve of the Feast: The Musick sounding whilst

whilst the said Mess is carrying up; which is in the following Order.

Four Serjeants at Arms, two and two? The Comptroller.

The Sewer.

The Messes carried up by the Pensioners.

Master of the Houshold. Cofferer.

A Clerk Comptroller.

Second Clerk of the Kitchin.

A Clerk Comptroller.

Chief Clerk of the Kitchin.

The Sovereign hath most frequently sat alone, thought sometimes heretosore he hath been pleased to admit some of the Knights-Companions to sit at the Table with him; but this Honour has not been offered to any of them since the Reign of Queen Elizabeth. As soon as the Sovereign is placed, the Knights-Companions put on their Caps, and remaining covered, retire against the Tables prepared for them; where Water is brought them by a Gentleman of Quality; and having washed, they all sit down.

The Order of passing to their Seats at the Table, 19 Car. II. and so appointed to be observed for the future, was after the following manner. First, The Duke of Tork entered the Rails at the upper end of the Table, and passed down the hither side, to the lower end, and thence to the bench-fide to his Place: In like manner followed all the other Knights, according to the Seniority of their Stalls, as it is ordained they shall fit, and not according to their Estates or Dignities, (except the Sons of Stranger Kings, Princes, and Dukes,) and all on the right Hand, or farther fide of their Table, not one against another, but two and two at a Table to a Mels, and those whose Oppofites are wanting to fit alone, and have a whole Mess Their Meat being usually brought up by the Yeomen of the Guard; and are attended by some of the Gentlemen. Pensioners, and others of the Sovereign's Servants, two to each Table.

It appears that anciently the Officers of the Order had a Table allowed them in the great Hall, and fat covered in

in the Sovereign's Presence; but on the Eve of the Feast, 10 Car. 1. it was ordered in Chapter, That they should be at their Choice, to keep the Feast privately by themselves, or sit uncovered where the Sovereign dired. Whereupon, from that time, they forbore sitting in the Hall, or where else the Sovereign and Knights-Companions sat. It likewise appears, that the Officers of Arms did anciently sit in St. George's Hall, at a Table joined to that, at which the Officers of the Order sat.

Before the Entrance of the Sovereign's second Course, he stands up and drinks to the Knights-Companions, (and so it is remembred to be done by Phil. and Mar.) they standing all the while uncovered, till they have all pledged him: Which done, the Officers of Arms make themselves ready, at the lower end of the Hall, to proceed up in the

following Order.

Garter.
Clarenceux and Norroy.
Heralds two and two.
Pursuivants two and two.

And so altogether make their Reverence to the Soverreign, and proceed near the side of the Knights Table, till they come to the middle of the Hall, where, after another Reverence made, they go still forward; and when Garter has passed about two Yards beyond the Knights Table, and come near the Haut Pas ascending the Sovereign's State, they make the like Reverence again jointly. Then Garter with a loud and audible Voice cries Larges thrice,

though anciently but twice.

Upon Garter's beginning to cry Large's, all the Knights-Companions, unless Kings and great Princes, if any be present, stand up uncovered, till he has made an end; (which Custom, it seems, 7 Car. I. had been discontinued for some time.) Then Garter proceeds, and Proclaims the Sovereign's Stiles and Titles of Honour, first in Latin, after in French, and lastly in English; he and the Officers of Arms making a Reverence between; and at the end join altogether in crying Large's thrice, and then all make Reverence togethet.

Hereupon, somerimes the Treasurer of the Houshold puts the Sovereign's Largess, which is ten Pounds in Gold,

3006

into Garter's Hat; and this is afterwards divided amorig the Officers of Arms, according to Custom. But Anno 23 Car. II. the Black-Rod put the Largess into Garter's Hat. This being finished, all the Officers of Arms retire about three Yards backward, keeping their Faces towards the Sovereign, and there make a Reverence, and so a second, and thence retire out of the Hall to Dinner.

This Ceremony ended, the Sovereign's second Course is brought up; first the Serjeants at Arms, next the Treasurer and Comptroller of the Houshold, next the Sewer, then the Gentlemea-Pensioners, bearing the Messes; then the Cofferer and Master of the Houshold, the two Clerks of the Green-Cloth, the two Clerks Comptrollers, and lastly the two Clerks of the Kitchin, habited in their Gowns, and their Caps in their Hands. And after the Sovereign's Table is compleatly furnished, the second Course is served up to the Knights Table by the Yeomen of the Guard, in such Order as was the sirst.

But where any Knight-Companion happens to be inftalled at this Grand Feaft, and is present at Dinner, then Garter, and the Officers of Arms, proceed in Order, (after they have proclaimed the Sovereign's Stile,) from the lower end of the Hall, till they come before the new inftalled Knight's Mess, and there Garter cries Largess once, and Proclaims his Stile in English only; and then

retires to Dinner.

In the last Place comes in the Banquer, brought to the Sovereign's Table by the Pensioners, in the same Order as the Messes; (only in Place of the Clerk of the Kitchin, the Chief Clerk of the Spicery waits,) and the Banquet for the Knights-Companions, by the Yeomen of the Guard.

Dinner being ended, the Knights-Companions rise first, and having washed, place themselves a little below the State, in their usual Order, and make their Reverences to the Sovereign. After which, the Sovereign hears Grace said by the Prelate, then Water is brought in the usual way, and the Sovereign washes: Which done, the Knights making again due Reverence to the Sovereign, he puts off his Cap, and salutes them, and then proceeds as usually to the Presence Chamber, with the Knights and Officers of the Order before him, &c.

In like manner does the Sovereign's Lieutenant proceed from the Presence to the Hall, or such other Room where the Dinner is prepared, only his Place at the Table is a little on the left Hand the Cloth of State, or at the end of the Table: And after Dinner, he returns to the Presence in the same Order as the Sovereign does.

The Ceremonies belonging to the Second Vespers.

4 8. The usual time for Proceeding to the Chepter-House, hath usually been about four a Clock in the Atter-noon, but sometimes not before five, by reason of the length of the Dinner. The Proceeding is as at other times and when the Sovereign and Knights have made a Cavalicade of it on the Eve, or on the Feast Day, the same has been observed at the Proceeding to the second Vespers.

It has been customary to hold a Chapter before the sea cond Vespers, for the regulation of the Assairs of the Order: When the second Vespers are ended, the Proceeding passes out of the Choir in the very same Order as at the first Vespers; but Anno 15 Car. I. it happening to be late ere the second Vespers ended, the Sovereign did not go to the Presence Chamber, but proceeded directly to the great Hall to Supper by Torch Light.

Of the Supper on the Evening of the Feast Day.

9. It has not been frequently known, that the Solvereign hath supped publickly in St. George's Hall on the Feast Day; but when it happens, as 14 Car. I. the Proceeding thither, and return, are in all respects performed as at the Supper on the Eve. And if the Sovereign's Lieutenant hath on this Night supped publickly, then it was in the Presence Chamber, where he sat alone at the Sovereign's Table, as at other times.

É A P.

C A P. XXII.

The Ceremonies observed on the last Day of the Feast.

Of the Proceeding to the Choir.

HE manner of Proceeding to the Chapter-House is performed in the same manner as it was on the Eve of the Feast; and differs only in this Point; that then the Sovereign and Knights are obliged by the Seatutes to proceed in full Robes; here, by the Indulgence of King Henry VIII's Statutes, all are dispensed with, except the upper Robe or Mantle: And as then the Image of St. George was worn Pendant at the Coller of the Order, now a blue Ribbond sufficeth; and instead of a Cap and Feather, only their ordinary Hats.

It was the ancient Custom to Celebrate a Chapter in the Morning of the last Day of the Feast, before the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, chiefly to make Election of Knights, where any Stall is void; which has sometimes been held, when the Sovereign did not go to the Chappel, in the Privy Chamber, and then the Lieutenant, waving the Chapter-House, proceeds straight on to the Chappel, and enters at the South Door.

Of the elect Knights proceeding into the Choir.

§ 2. Where an Election has been made of a Person then present at Court, he is called into the Chapter-House by Garter, according to the usual manner; and having been invested with the George and Garter, he usually passed in the Proceeding to the Chappel, whether it were from the Chapter-House, or Presence Chamber; and in this ordinary Apparel, always bare-headed; the Place allowed him in the Proceeding being between the Knights-Companions and the Officers of Arms: But if two Knights

Knights have been elected, they then proceed together, before the Knights-Companions. At his Entrance into the Choir, the elect Knight is plated by Garter, next before the lowest Stall; or if there be two elected, and both proceed to the Chappel, they are placed in the two lowest Stalls; where they are to stand all Service time, unless upon Licence to sit, as they have sometimes obtained.

Of the Ceremonies performed at Divine Service.

§ 3. In this Morning Service, before the Reformation of our Church, the Mass of Requiem was solemnly Sung, for the Souls of the Knights-Companions, and all faithful Souls departed, which was provided for by the Statutes. As likewise, that all the Knights should be present thereat, unless upon License obtained, or special Case to the contrary. At this Celebration, was the deceased Knights Atchievements also offered with solemn Ceremony; of which we shall speak presently.

Another Ceremony belonging to the Service of this Morning, is the Offering of Gold and Silver, which (when the first Sentence of the Offertory has been pronounced,) is again performed by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions; the Ceremonies being the same, in all particulars, as are observed at the like Offering on the

Feast Day.

Divine Service being ended, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions frequently proceed to the Chapter-House, and there put off their Mantles, and therewith the Ceremonies of this Grand Feast determine.

I i 3

CAP.

C A P. XXIII,

The Observation of the Grand Feast by absent Knights.

Absent Knights enjoined to observe the Grand Feast.

Aving shewn with what Magnissicence and Cetemony the Feast of St. George has been, and ought to be observed; as also how strictly the Statutes oblige the Knights-Companions to appear annually thereat; and what severe Penakies they are liable to, if absent, except on reasonable Cause of Absence. Yet less the Honour might receive diminution, from too small an Appearance at its publick Solemnities; it was farther at the Institution of the Order Decreed: That none of them should depart the Kingdom, without sirft acquainting the Sovereign, and obtaining his special Leave and License; nevertheless the Sovereign granted them License to go beyond Sea, before the rest of his Subjects, if they were disposed to undertake any Military Expedition, from whence any Glory of Knighthood might be hop'd for.

It was then by the eleventh Article also ordained; (on whatsoever occasion the Absence might be.) That where-soever any of the Knights-Companions resided, during the said Feast, they should wear their Mantle; of the Order, from the Hour of the first Vespers on the Eve of St. George, till the second Vespers on the Feast Day were finished; as they should have done, had they been present in Person, with the Sovereign or his Deputy, during the whole Celebration of the Feast; (in case they were not deprived of their Liberty,) the Prorogation of the Feast notwithstanding.

King Henry VIII. observing the Custom of these Celebrations began to be neglected, in the eleventh year of his Reign, enlarged the Law in this particular, explaining the said eleventh Article. He declar'd and enjoin'd the wearing of the whole Habit on the Eve of St. George, if the Knight-Companion were not under restraint. Then he enume.

enumerated the times for wearing it; to wir, on the Eve, at all times of Divine Service, Dinner and Supper; unless in case of War, Sickness, or other just Impediment; when it was sufficient, if the absent Knight did wear the Garter and George, either in a Gold Chain, or Silk Riberond.

And when the same Sovereign, about three Years after. made a general Reformation of the Statutes, he enjoin'd the absent Knights-Companions (unless under restraint,) to prepare a Capital Stall in the Church or, Chappel where he defign'd to hear Service, to the Honour of the Sovereign; in which should be set up the Arms of the Order within a Garter; and also to erect another Stall, as far in distance (according to the proportion of the said Church or Chappel,) from the Stall of the Sovereign, as is the absent Knights Stall in the Caftle of Windsor, and therein place his own Arms: And should wear the whole Habit of the Order, and hear Divine Service, such as the Church ordained for the faid time; as well on the Eve and Morning, as on the Afternoon on the Feast Day. He is likewife to do Reverence towards the Altar, in the Honour of God, and after towards the Stall erected for the Sovereign, at his coming in and going out of the said Church or Chappel, and as often as he should pass before the said Stall. But Emperors, Kings, Princes, or Electors, are excepted, who may place their Seats and Stalls as they think fitting.

This Decree is still in full force, and we shall only further observe, that it has been usual for the absent Knight to perform the same Ceremonies as near as may be to what is observed at Windsor, and to be attended with a convenient Number of Gentlemen before him, well habited, with the Officers of his Houshold, &c. who, according to their Degrees, proceed two and two together bare-headed; and that he Dines and Sups alone at all times,

unless a Knight-Companion be with him.

How it is to be observed in Case of Sickness.

only confin'd to his Chamber, the Custom was to prepare a Capital Stall for the Sovereign, in the Chamber where

he lay, and another Stall for himself, placed according to the before-mentioned directions, to remain during the Feast; in which Room Divine Offices were celebrated. And if the absent Knight was so Sick as to keep his Bed, then his whole Habit of the Order was laid thereon; and upon this Account Ambrose, Earl of Warmick, falling Ill at Greenwich, when St. George's Day was there celebrated, Anno 30 Eliz. retir'd to his Chamber, and sat in his Robes.

In what manner the Feast hath been observed by absent Knights.

J 3. Of this, the Black-Book of the Order gives a very confiderable Precedent; Namely, the Feast of St. George held at the Palace of Hereford, by Prince Arebur, 15 Hen. VII. being then in his Government of the Principality of Wales; and had with him Sir Richard Pool, one of the Knights-Companions; where every thing, according to the form of the Statutes, was duly observed. The Prince's Sword was born before his Stall, and the Service performed by his Herald with great exactness. Likewise the Sovereign's Herald stood all the while before the Sovereign's Stall, which was adorned with accustomed Ornaments; and the Bishop, who performed Divine Service, had his Seat erected near the High Alear.

There are other Instances, as particularly those observed by Sir Henry Sidner, at Sbrewsbury and Ludlow, 23

and 24 Queen Eliz. which were very remarkable.

As to the observation of the Feast, by a Knight beyond Spa, there is an Instance in Robert, Earl of Leicester, Lieutenant for Queen Elizabeth, Governor, and Captain General of the united Provinces, and there celebrated the Feast, 1586, He had an Escutcheon of the Order, impailed with the Sovereign's Arms, fixt to the front of his House, so also to the back of her Stall in the Church, and his own Arms at the back of his own Stall.

He proceeded on Horse-back to the Church, a Pursuivant riding before him, wearing a King of Arms's Coat; who, after Sermon, proceeded before him to the Offering; which he made for the Sovereign and himself; Service being ended, he returned to his Lodging, and dined with great Solemnity.

Dispense

Dispensations for Absence granted during Life.

§ 5. Sometimes Dispensations for Absence have been obtained for Life, upon the Petite of the Knights-Companions setting forth their Age and Insirmity: An Instance of which, we find was granted to the Lord Dacrees, 26 Hen. VIII. and the Earl of Derby, 14 Car. I. and the Lord Musgrave; but both with this Restriction; that the absent should be obliged to send to Garter for his Escutcheons, at the same time that he sent his Excuse, and Petite for Dispensation; and should solemnly keep in his own House the Feast, with all the sacred Rites and Ceremonies, in his Robes, and other Ornaments, if Health permit; and in Case of Sickness, upon his Bed, according to the ancient Statutes.

This Act was thought of so great Importance to be obferved, that the Chancellor was ordered to transcribe it, and send it to each of the Knights-Companions; acquainting them at the same time, with the Penalties they should be liable to, if they neglected the least Punctilio. And the like was again observed, and repeated to them, before

the Feast of the ensuing Year.

C A P. XXIV.

The Degradation of a Knight-Companion.

HE Enfigns of the Order are not to be withdrawn from a Knight, during Life, unless Guilty of some of those Marks of Reproach, set down in King Henry VIII's Statutes, viz. Heresy, Treason, or Flying from Battle: It has sometimes been found, that Prodigality has been made a sourth Point, where a Knight has so wasted his Estate, as to be incapable of supporting his Dignity. The Pretence for divesting vesting William, Lord Paget, 6 Edw. VI. was, his not being a Gentleman of Blood, both by Father and Mother, But Felony comes not within the compass of this Statute, as not being expressy mentioned among the Reproaches there Summ'd up; and so it was adjudged in a Chapter, 14 Fac. I. in the Case of Robert, Earl of Somerfet, then lately condemned for that Fact, whereon his Hatchments were not removed.

When a Knight-Companion is found Guiky of any of the Offences mentioned in King Henry VIII's Statues, he is usually degraded at the next Chapter, of which the Sovereign gives the Knights-Companions previous notice and then commands Garter to attend such of them as are appointed to go to the Convict Knight, who, in a solemn manner, first takes from him the George and Ribbond, and then his Garter. And at the ensuing Feast of St. George, or sooner, if the Sovereign appoint it, publication of his

Crimes and Degradation is made by Garter.

Next, Garter, by Warrant to that purpose, takes down his Atchievement, on which Service he is vefted in his Coat of Arms, and the Officers of Arms flanding about him, the Black-Red also present; First Garter reads aloud the Instruments of Degradation, after which one of the Heralds, who is placed ready on a Ladder set to the back of the Convict Knight's Stall, at the Words expelled, and put from among the Arms, takes his Crest, and violently casts it down into the Choir, after that his Banner and Sword; and when the Publication is read out, all the Officers of Arms spurn the Atchievements out of the Choir. into the Body of the Church, first the Sword, then the Banner, and last of all the Crest, so out of the West Door, thence to the Bridge, and over into the Ditch; and thus it was done at the Degradation of Edward, Duke of Buckinglam, 13 Hen. VIII. Their Plates are likewise taken down from their Stalls and carried away.

Degradation not being alone thought sufficient, it was debated in Chapter, 32 Hen. VIII. whether the Names of such Knights-Companions as were convicted of Treason should remain in the Registers, or be razed out: Where the Sovereign determined; That wheresoever the Actions or Names of such Offenders should be found, these Words [Vab Proditor] should be Written in the Margin; by which means

means the Register wou'd be preserved fair, and not de-

faced with razures or blots.

In the close of this Section we may observe, that some Knights-Companions, who have suffered Degradation, have lived to be restored thereto; being re-elected, and reinvested, and their Archievements set up again, by the Indulgence of the next Reign; as were the Lord Pages's, I Mar. and the Marquis of Northampson, I Eliz. as likewise the Duke of Norfolk, I Mar.

CAP XXV.

Honours paid to deceased Knights-Companions.

S to the first part of this Section, the celebrating Masses for defunct Knights-Companions, I think it very little material here; that Ceremony altering with the Form of Religion, became wholly disused, 32 Hen. VIII. at which time, in a Chapter then held at Westminster, the following Decree was made.

That every one of the Knights-Companions, in lieu of the said Masses, should, for the future, after the Death of any of their Brethren, according to the Rates of their Degrees hereafter mentioned, and immediately upon Demand of the Register, and Dean of Windsor, or one of shem, pay the several Sums following.

The Sovereign A Stranger King The Prince A Duke	6 c8 4 5 16 8 5 00 0	An Earl A Viscount	2 I I	3. 10 01 13 16	8	
A Marquis	3 16 a					

The Monies so collected, (called Obiis Monies) were by the said Decree appointed to be distributed in Alms-Deeds, Deeds, as the Reparation of High Ways, the Relief of the Poor, &c. The receipt and disbursements of these Sums were committed to the care of the Dean and Register.

Mr. Ashmole, has made this addition in his Library. which it will not be out of our way to observe, for the information of those who may be desirous to know how the Point then stood; that not withstanding the aforesaid Order in Chapter, made the 24th of May, Anno 32 Hen. VIII. for changing the Number of Masses usually Sung for defunct Knights, into a pecuniary Rate, according their degrees; the Prayers for Souls departed, both by private Persons, as also by the Clergy, in Masses and Exequies; nay farther, to give Alms to others, and to pray for them, was continued by the Church of England several Years beyond that space: for in a Book, entituled the Institution of a Christian Man. Sc. made by the Clergy of England, as appears by the Subscriptions of the Archbishops, Bishops, and others of the Clergy to the Preface; dedicated by them to King Henry VIII. and printed by Thomas Bartelet, the King's Printer, Anno 1537. cum Privilegio, the Article of Purga-

tory is there let down.

But to proceed. This charitable diffribution, in a Chapter held at Greenwich, 5 Edw. VI. was enlarged to the relief of the Poor in the Town of Windsor, and other Towns, Villages, and Places, at the discretion of the Dean of Windfor. And though the faid Decree was confirmed by King Edward VI. Queen Mary, and Queen Elizabeth, yet for many Years, the Collection of these Obiit Monies was neglected; till in 9 Car. I. the Earl of Poreland, out of his great Generosity, as well as his Zeal for reftoring so pious a Work, reiterated to the Sovereign the ancient Decrees made in this Case. Whereupon it passed in Chapter, that the same should be revived; and for ever continued; and that the same should begin for the five Knights, whose Atchievements were offered at that Feaft, viz. the King of Sweden, the Elect or Palatine, the Earls of Northumberland, Banbury, and Rutland. And as to Stranger Brinces, it pleased the Sovereign to express himself. That as by the Statutes they are left to perform these Payments by themselves, if they wou'd; so, if it were not done by them, that both then, and for the future, the same should he paid by the Sovereign hime feif. AfterAfterwards, all the Sums of Money, to be collected by Virtue of this Decree, together with the Knights-Companions Duties, at their first Entrance in the Order, were employed toward providing Plate for the Altar, within St. George's Chappel, which is already treated of.

Of fixing on the Stalls Plates of their Arms and Stiles.

§ 2: The next thing provided for by the Statutes of Inftitution, was the deceased Knight's Honour; in regard of which, it was ordained, That when any one of the first Founders should die, there should be in Metal an Escutcheon of his Arms, with his Helm, or Crest, fastened at the back of his Stall, for a Mark of Honour to him that bore them. And in like manner, that their Successors should have a like Escurcheon fixed on the back of their Stalls; and to difference them from those of the first Founders, they were appointed to be made somewhat less, and to be placed a little underneath them. But this Article relates only to the Knights-Companions, not to the Sovereigns of the Order; nor do we find that any of them had Piates of their Arms and Stiles set upon the back of their Stalls. in manner as is before prescribed to the rest of the Knights-Companions.

King Hemy VIII. in his Body of Seatutes, alters this Article in three particulars; first, as to the setting up their Plates, which he appoints not to be after their Deaths, but within, after the Installation of every Knight-Companion; secondly, as to the nature of the Metal, that it may be such as the Knight shall please himself: And lattly, as to the fize, though he also restrains the Knights-Subjects to a lesser than those of the sirst Founders; yet he gives liberty to the Knights-Strangers to use their Plates and Fashions at Pleasure. As to the first of these, it has been pretty duly observed; and indeed the second, of making them of Copper; but the last, viz. the size, has been very little regarded; for the very Plates of those Knights who were soon after installed, and thence downwards.

are larger than those of the first Founders.

In tract of time, many of these Memorials were, by sacrilegious Hands, taken away, which King Charles I.

taking notice 8f, and defirous to put a ftop to a Michief not in his Power to prevent, and to preferve the Remembrance of the precedent Knights-Companions; commanded the Dean of Windfor to describe the Stiles of those that remained in a Book, which he accordingly did, and deposited the same in the College: But what became of this Book, could not be afterwards discovered; so that the most that could be done, was to draw the Arms, and Copy out the Stiles, engraven on the Plates then remaining; from whence the following Observations may be made.

First, That for many Years after the Institution of the Order, the Plate whereon the Shield was engraved, bore no other Inscription, than the deceased Knight's Name, set at the Foot thereof, under the Escutcheon of his Arms. Afterwards, the chief Title of Honour began to be added, though now and then, in the first and elder times, both were omitted, as also their Crests. But about the beginning of King Henry VIII's Reign, not only the Knight's chief Title, but all other his Titles and Dignities, whether Honorary, or Officiary, were drawn together in one Inscription, concluding with that of Knight of this most Noble Order; and which, about the same time, the Knights-Companions used to insert, in all their publick and private Instruments of Writing; a Custom observed by the Knights of other Sovereigns Orders Abroad.

At first the Knights-Companions gave their Paternal Coats of Arms, singly and without any Quarterings; but toward the beginning of Hen. V. they began to add their Quarterings, as appears from the Escutcheons of Hugh, Lord Burnel, who died 9 Hen. V. Sir Lewis Rebessare, and others. Yet was not the same generally used, but lest to the Pleasure of the Knights-Companions.

But of later times, this very thing was thought of such concern, that where a Knight has been elected, who wanted Quarterings, the Sovereign has been pleased to grant him another Coat of Arms, to quarter with his Paternal Coat; that his Banner, which ought to hang over his Stall, might not seem too naked.

Soon after King Henry VIII's Accession, the Knights compassed their Shields with the Royal Garter, and thereon (such as were Noblemen) placed the Coronet belonging to their Dignity. As to Supporters, we observe two

Plates

Plates to which they are added; the one of John Beaufort, the first Duke of Somerfer of that Name, elected 28 Hen. VI. the other of Anthony Widwile, Earl Rivers, elected 5 Edw. IV. and besides these, till the Reign of King Henry VIII. there is not another Example: But then it grew into common usage, as also the ingraving their peculiar Motto's, or Devices upon the Plates.

The Offering of Atchievements.

§ 3. A third Honour paid to the defunct Knight, is a most solemn Offering up his Atchievements at the High Altar; namely, the Banner of his Arms, his Sword, Helmet, and Crest, with its Mantlings; all which had been set up over his Stall at his Installation. The Ceremony of Offering these Ensigns does not appear to have been regulated at the Institution of the Order, but rather added as an additional Honour, by King Henry V. and the manner thereof set down in the sourceenth Article of his Body of Statutes.

This Solemnity is local to the Chappel of St. George, within the Castle of Windfor, and not to be performed till the Sovereign has notice of the Knight-Companion's Death.

In I Edw. VI. at the Feast then held at Windsor, there arose a Question, wherher the Atchievements of King Henry VIII. which yet hung over the Sovereign's Stall, should be taken down and offered at the Mass of Requieme ensuing, or not? in regard his Banner, Sword, Helm, and Crest, with Mantles, had been offered up before, at his Interment within that Chappel. In conclusion of which it was determined, That the said Atchievements should not again be offered, but remain over the Sovereign's Stall, for his Son King Edward VI. But when the Sovereigns of this most Nobie Order are not interred at Windsor, then their Atchievements are offered up the next ensuing Feast; as were those of Queen Elizabeth, which the Blue-Book notes to be done at Morning Prayer.

As to the time for performing this Ceremony, it was ordained to be on the Morrow after the Feast, when the Mass was Sung for the Souls of the Knights-Companions, &c. and so was duly observed till the time of the Reformation, when the Mass of Requiem being abolished, it was nevertheless at the Morning Service, on the Morrow immediately

mediately after the Offertory: But after Queen Elizabèth had removed the Feaft of St. George from Windsor, this Solemnity was frequently dispatched in one Day, before they went out of the Choir; and the ancient Rule, as to the time, being thus broke, was never after restored, but generally performed the very same Morning wherein the elect Knights were installed: And though the Day was thus changed, yet the Ceremony it self was not performed till after the Installation was finished, that Solemnity having always the Precedency, till 9 Jac. I. when he observing how incongruous it seemed, to instal a new Knight before his Predecessor had been fully discharged of his Stall, gave Order for Offering the Atchievements of Sir Henry Lea, the Lord Scroop, and others, before the Instalment of the elect Knights.

Not long after, it was thought convenient to perform this Ceremony on the Eve of the Feast, presently after the first Vespers began; and next to proceed with the Installations; whereby, as much as possible, the Stalls of the Knights-Companions might be supplied, in all the rest of the Solemnities of the Feast. But if at any time, any of the new elect Knights were introduced into the Choir, before the Offering of the Atchievements began, they were appointed to stand there under the Stalls defigned for

them till that Ceremony was finished.

Thus it continued from the said 9 Fac. I. till the 15 Car. II, when it was performed at the time anciently accustomed for it; the Prince of Denmark, and the Duke of Monmouth, being both installed before the first Vespers began, and the Atchievements of the defunct Knights not

offered till the Morrow after the Feast Day.

As to the Manner and Order of this Ceremony, among other Institutions of King Henry V. it is appointed, That as often as, through the vacancy of any Stall, the Swords, Helms, with the rest of the defunct Knights, ought to be offered, the Sword of the deceased Knight shall be first offered, being carried up to the High Altar by two of the Knights-Companions, and afterwards the Helm, with the Crest and Mantlings, by two other Knights-Companions; and this Offering is to be made for them, in the Order they were installed, not as they died.

But of the Offering of a defunct Knight's Banner, we find no express mention till 18 Hen. VII. at which time the

the Banner of the Lord Brook was offered: But after-wards the direction for Offering their Enfign and Banner was taken into King Henry VIII's Body of Statutes. And fince the faire were introduced, according to the foregoing Precedent, it was to be offered first, and so hath

been generally observed.

By the appointment of the Statutes of Henry V. the Sovereign is to nominate and affign the Knights Companions, who are severally to perform this Ceremony; and so is the direction in Henry VIII's Statutes: But since the beginning of Queen Elizabeth's Reign, the Knights have generally proceeded to this Offering, according to their Seniority; and when the Course ended, then the Seniors began again. There are likewise many Examples where the Sovereign's Licutenant has joined in the Ceremony to as as a fift the other Knights: Nor is a Proxy, or Deputy, to be admitted to perform any part of the Ceremony, though in the Offering of Money he ought.

We shall next proceed to the Duties of the Prelate of the Order, the Prebends, and Officers of Arms, as their Services severally, or jointly, relate to the performance of this Ceremony. First then, the Prelate, and two Prebends, ought to proceed up to the Altar, immediately before Garter summons down the Knights-Companions to the Offering; and there stand ready to receive the At-

chievements, as they are severally offered up.

It is next the Duty of the Provincial Kings, and Heralds, to conduct the Knights-Companions, when they proceed up to the Altar, bearing any part of the defunct Knight's Atchievements. The whole Ceremony is briefly thus.

First Garter rises from his Seat, and proceeds into the middle of the Choir, where, after his usual Obeysances, he summons the Knights-Companions to descend, who come down and place themselves before their Stalls: Where-upon Clarenceux and Norroy (or in the absence of either, the Senior Herald, or of both, of the two eldest Heralds,) pass down from the Steps of the Altar into the Body of the Choir; in the interim Garter takes the Banner of the eldest defunct Knight, and presents it, half rolled up, to the two Senior Knights-Companions; the two Provincial Kings by this time approaching them, make their double Reverences, and after to the other Knights-Companions, and then it and a little asside; while the two Senior Knights,

k having

having taken the Banner between them, make their double Reverence, and pass up to the Altar, (preceeded by the Kings) bearing it with the lower end of the Staff foremost, and at the first Haut-Pas make another double Reverence. The Provincial Kings being arrived at the uppermost Haut-Pas, after an humble Obeysance, divide themselves to make way for the Knights to Offer, who forthwith raise the Point of the Banner upwards, and after a single Reverence toward the Altar, present it upon their Knees, to the Presate of the Order, who delivers it to two Canons, and they deposite it upon Cushions laid before the Altar. This done, the two Provincial Kings conduct the Knights back into the Choir, who, with the usual Reverences, retire to their Stations, under (not to) their Stalls, and the Provincial Kings to their, on either side the Altar.

Next the two Senior Heralds pass down into the Choir, as the Provincial Kings did, whilft Garter, taking up the Sword, presents it to the two next Senior Knights, who proceed to the Altar with the two Heralds before them, in the same Order as before, bearing the Sword between them, and offer the same with the Pommel or Hilt up-

wards, and then retire as before.

In the next place, the two next Senior Heralds go down as before, and the Helm and Crest is offered in the like manner: But the Pursuivants at Arms do no part of this

Duty.

Heretofore we find that Garter has not only begun this Solemnity, by presenting the Banner, but has also conducted the two Senior Knights to the Altar, as he did 5 Eliz. by the Banner of the Lord Grey; and at some other times. It was likewise the usage heretofore for the Prelate to deliver the offered Atchievements, to some of the

Heralds, to be deposited near the Altar.

There is nothing on this farther observable, than what relates to the Atchievement it self, which, as they became by this Ceremony part of the Goods of the Chappel, and included within the Words of the Seatures of the College, whereby the Sovereign granted to the Dean and Canons all Oblations, they could not be sold or alienated, and were therefore deposited by them in the Chapter-House: But the Helms and Swords, because they were at first forged for the Service of War, of an extraordinary large size, have been frequently redeemed, that they might serve

again to the same uses. And likewise, because it belongs to Garter to provide Atchievements for new installed Knights, he usually hath compounded with the Dean and Canons for the defunct Knight's Atchievements.

Of depositing the deceased Knights Mantles in the Chapter-House.

9 4. In 9 Eliz. there passed a Decree, That the Knights-Companions should be bound by their Oaths, to take care, by their last Will, that after their Decease, all their Ornaments, which they had received, should be restored, the Robes to the College, and the Jewels to the King that gave them. Sir Christopher Hatton complied with the Decree, and sent his Mantle accordingly; but that of Sir Henry Lea, being lest to the disposal of others, and not sent to the College, happened at length to come into the Hands of Brokers, and was openly exposed to Sale in Long-lane, to the great dishonour of the Order.

This Decree was in after times but flackly observed. and therefore in a Chapter held at Windsor, 4 Car. I. the Knights were admonished, That when the Sovereign should vouchsafe to bestow the Mantle of the Order, the Knight should take care at his Death, to have it sent to the Chappel at Windsor, according to the Seatures. But this taking, little Essec, the Sovereign thought fit to restore vigorously the Law in this particular, by a Decree in Chapter, 13 Car. I. which obliged all Knights-Companions, receiving the Enfigns of the Order from the Sovereign, to take care, according to the tenor of their Oaths, that these, together with the Book of Statutes, should be restored in the Hands of the Sovereign, after their Deaths; and a Command was therewithal given, That certain Books, Mantles, and Surcoats, then lying at White-Hall, shou'd be delivered to the Register of the Order, to be laid up at Windscr, in honourable Memory of those to whom they belonged.

In Observation of these Decrees, where the Habit and Ensigns of the Order were either wholly, or in part, bestowed by the Sovereign, Order was taken, at the Decease of such Knights-Companions, to send for them in again. As at a Chapter held 15 Car. I. the Garter and

K k 2 George

George of the Lord Treasurer Weston being sent back, were presented to the Sovereign; and after delivered to the Dean and Chapter of Windson, to be preserved: And in the same Chapter it was ordered, that the Earl of Kelly's Robes and Ornaments of the Order, should be sent for by

the Chancellor.

These former Decrees were yet thought needful to be confirm'd by King Charles II. so that in a Chapter held 1669. at White-Hall, it was Decreed, That the Mantle of each Knight Companion, with the Book of Statutes, should be ient to Windsor, immediately after their Deaths; and that the Chancellor of the Order should be obliged, by Letters to their Heirs and Executors, to put them in mind of sending them thither. But it is to be understood, that where the Mantle has been provided at the Knight's own

Charge, there is no obligation for returning them.

Thus I have run through all the Particulars, relating to the Institutions, Laws, and Ceremonies, of this most Noble Order; I shall in the last Place proceed to give a List of all those who have enjoyed this fingular Mark of Honour from its first Foundation. The Motives which excited the Royal Founder to set on Foot the said Order. are already particularly treated of; who having eftablished Rules and Seatutes for the Government, and regulation thereof, he next resolved to elect, from among the Flower of his own Wars, twenty five of the most celebrated Knights, who, together with himself, should make up the Number of Twenty fix; for of so many does the Order by his Appointment confift: And indeed that Age plentifully furnished him with Men of the most brave and celebrated Characters, and of fignal Reputation in Arms. raised by the eminent Wars of those times, and justly distinguished by their own heroick Actions.

The first that he elected into this Noble Order, was Edward, his eldest Son, who a ready a part deserved, and afterwards justly obtained the Title of a Brave and Martial Prince, of whom our Histories speak so largely. The rest of his accomplished Collegues, were these that

follow, and are thus placed in their Stalls.

The

I The Sovereign King Edward III.

- of Wales.
- 3 Henry, Dake of Lancast.
- 5 Piers Capitow de la Bouch.
- 7 W. Montacute, E. Salish.
- 9 Sir John Lyfle.
- 11 Sir John Beauchamp.
- 13 Sir Hugh Courteney.
- 15 Sir John Grey.
- 17 Sir Miles Stapleron.
- 19 Sir Hugh Wrotesley.
- 21 Sir John Chandos.
- 23 Sir Otho Holland.
- 25 Sir Sanchet Daubrichcourt

- 4 Th. Beauchamp, E. War.
- 6 Ralph Stafford, E. Staff.
- 8 Rog, Mortimer, E. March,
- 10 Sir. Barthol. Burghersh.
- 12 Sir John Mohun.
- 14 Sir Thomas Holland.
- 16 Sir Richard Fitz Simon.
- 18 Sir Thomas Wale.
- 20. Sir Nele Loring.
- 22 Sir James Audeley.
- 24 Sir Henry Eam.
- 26 Sir Walter Paveley.

A Catalogue of their Successors, with the Blazoning of their Arms, corrected in above sixty Errors, in the Plates engrav'd in Ashmole.

Knights afterwards elected in the Reign of King Edward III.

27. R Ichard of Bordeaux, afterwards King of England; of that Name the second.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Argent on the middlemost, a Cross of St. George.

28. Lionel of Antwerp, Earl of Ulfter, and Duke of

Clarence.

Quarterly, France ancient and England, on a Label of three Points Argent, as many Cantons Gules.

29. John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, after created Duke of Acquitaine.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three

Points Ermine.

30. Edmund of Langley, Earl of Cambridge, after Duke of York.

Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label of three Points' Argent and nine Torteauxes.

31. John de Montford, Duke of Bretagne, and Earl of Richmond.

Plain Ermine.

32. William de Bohun, Earl of Hereford. Azure a bend Argent between two Costifes, and fix

Lyons rampant Or.

33. William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton.

Azure on a bend Argent, cottized between fix Lyons
rampant Or, three Mullets Gules.

34. John Hastings, Earl of Pembroke.
Or a manch Gules.

35. Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick.
Gules a fess between six 'cross Croslets Or.

36. Ricks

36. Richard Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel and Surrey.

Gules a Lyon rampant Or.

37. Robert Ufford, Earl of Suffolk. Sable a Cross ingrailed Or.

38. Hugh Stafford, Earl of Stafford.
Or a chevron Gules.

39. Ingelram de Coucy, Earl of Bedford.

Barry of fix Vair and Gules.

40. Guiscard d' Angoulesme, Earl of Huntingdon.

Or billetty a Lyon rampant Azure.
41. Edward Spencer, Lord Spencer.

Quarterly Argent and Gules, in the second and third a free Or, over all a bend Sable.

42. William Latimer, Lord Latimer. Gules a Cross patonce Or.

43. Reynold Cobham, Lord Cobham of Sterborough.

Gules on a Chevron Or three Estoils Sable.

44. John Nevil, Lord Nevil of Raby.

Gules a Saltire Argent.

45. Ralph Basset, Lord Basset of Drayton. Or three Piles Gules a Canton Ermin.

46. Sir Walter Manny Banneret.

Or three Chevrons Sable, to which King Edward III. added an augmentation of a Lyon Passant gardant Or, placed on the uppermist Chevron.

47. Sir William Fitz Warin, Kt.
Quarterly per fess indented Ermine and Gules.

48. Sir Thomas Ufford, Ke.
Sable a Crojs ingrailed Or with his difference.

49. Sir Thomas Felton, Kt.

Gules two Lyons passant in pale Ermine crowned Or.

50. Sir Francis Van Hale, Kt.

Gules wishin a bordure cousu Azure enurny verdoy of Lyons rampant and Flower Deluces, a Wyvern or bisooted Dragon rising and crowned all Or, charged on the breast with an inescochion, of the sirst therein a double headed Eagle displaid Gold.

51. Sir Fulk Fitz Warrin, Kt.

Quarterly per fest indented Argent and Gules.

52. Sir Allan Boxhull, Kt.

Or a Lyon rampant queve fourche Azure frettee Argent.

53. Sir Richard Pembruge, Kr.
Barry of eight Or and Azure.

K k 4

54. Sir

54. Sir Thomas Wreight, Kt.
Gules on a Cross patonce Or, five mullets of the Field.

55. Sir Thomas Banester, Kt.

Argent a Cross patonce Sable.

56. Sir Richard de la Vache, Kt. Gules three Lyons rampant Argent crowned Or.

57. Sir Guy de Bryan, Kr. Or three Piles Azure.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Richard II.

58. Thomas of Woodstock, Earl of Buckingham, after Duke of Gloucester.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a bordure Argent.

59. Henry of Lancaster, (or Bolinbroke,) Earl of Darby, afterwards King of England; of that Name the fourth.

Comme son Pere, No. 29.

60. William, Duke of Gelderland.

Parti per pale Or and Azure, two Lyons rampant combatant and counter-changed.

61. William of Bavaria, Earl of Ostrevant, after Earl of

Holland, Henault, and Zeland.

Quarterly the first and sourth Or, a Lyon rampant Sable, the second and third Or, a Lyon rampant Gules, i. e. Flanders and Hainault.

62. Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, after Duke of Surry.

England a border Argent, to which the King in Augmentation gave him King Edward the Confessor's, viz. Azure a Cross patonce between five martlets Or, to be impaled before his own aforesaid, assumed from his Grandmother of the House of Plantagenes Woodsteek. Vide among the Founders.

63. John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, after Duke of

Exerer.

England a border of France, as descended maternally from Plantagenet Woodstock.

64. Thomas Mowbray, Earl of Nottingham, after Duke of Norfolk.

England a Label of five Points Argent, his maternal Grandmother's Arms Plantagenet of Brotherton, his own Arms was Gules a Lyon rampant Argent.

65. Edward,

65. Edward, Earl of Rutland, after Duke of Albemarle, Comme son Pere, No. 30.

66. Michael de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk.

Azure a Fess between three Leopards Faces Or.

67. William Scroop, Lord Scroop, after Earl of Wiltshire, and Lord Treasurer of England.

Azure a bend Or, a Label of three Points Argent with difference, being of the Masham Line.

68. William Beauchamp, Lord Bergavenny.

Comme son Pere, No. 35. with a Crescent difference.

69. John Beaumont, Lord Beaumont.

France a Lyon rampant Or. 70. William Willoughby, Lord Willoughby.

Or, and Gules a Cross moline Argent, his Grandmother Ufford's Arms, his own proper Coat being Or freety Azure.

71. Richard Grey, Lord Grey.

Barry of fix Argent and Azure, a Label of five Points
Gules.

72. Sir Nicholas Sarnesfield, Kt.

Azure an Eagle displaid Or, crowned Argent, poisus Argent crowned Or.

73. Sir Philip de la Vache, Kr.

Comme, No. 56.

74. Sir Robert Knolls, Kt.
Gules on a Chevron Argent, three Refes of the first.

75. Sir John Sulby, Kt.
Ermine four barrs Gules.

76. Sir Lewis Clifford, Kt.

Checquy Or and Azure a fess Gules, potius a bend Gules.

77. Sir Simon Burley, Kt.
Or three barrs Sable in chief, two Pallets of the second,
in presence Hussey, viz. Gules with three bars Ermine.

78. Sir John d'Evereux, Kt.

Gules a fess Argent in chief, three Plates.

79. Sir Richard Burley, Kt. Comme, No. 77.

80. Sir Bryan Stapleton, Kt.

Argent a Lyon rampant Sable, on his Shoulder an annulet diff.

81. Sir Peter Courtney, Kt.

Or three Tortenuxes, on a Label of three Points Azure, nine Plates 82. Sir

82. Sir John Burley, Kr. Comme, No. 79.

83. Sir John Bourchier, Kt.

Argent a Cross ingrailed Gules, between four water budgets Sable.

84. Sir Thomas Granton, Kt.

Paly of fix Argent and Azure, on a bend Gules, three escallops Or.

85. Sir Robert Dunftavil, Kt.

Argent a fret Gules and Border ingrailed Sable, over all

on a Canton, of the second a Lyon passant Or.

86. Sir Robert de Namur, Kt.

Or a Lyon rampant Sable, Suppressed by a Batime Gules.

89. Sir Sandich de Frane, Kr. alias vocat Sanchet la Towre.
Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Gules.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry IV.

88. Henry, Prince of Wales, after King of England, of that Name the fifth.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three

Points Argent.

89. Thomas of Lancaster, Earl of Albemarle, and Duke of Clarence, Brother to Prince Henry.

Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label Argent, three cantons Gules at the Label Ermine as his Grandfather, No. 29. but charged with Cantons.

90. John, Earl of Kendal, and Duke of Bedford, after Regent of France, another Brother to Prince Henry.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of five Points perpale Ermine, and Azure semi de liz Or.

91. Humphry, Earl of Pembrook, and after Duke of Exeter.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a border Argent.

92. Thomas Beaufort, Earl of Dorlet, and after Duke of Exeter.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a border gobone Ermine and Azure, in every piece of the second a Flower Deluce Or. 93. Ro-

N. B. Sir Thomas Percy, Knight of the Garter, living 7 Rich. II. is mentioned by Ashmole, p. 213. tho omitted in his and other Catalogues. Or a Lyon rampant Azure.

93. Robert, Count Palatine, Duke of Bavaria, after Em-

peror of Germany.

Quarterly Sable, a Lyon rampane crowned Or, for the Palatinate, and Paly bendy Argent and Azure, Bavaria.

94. John Beaufort, Earl of Somerfet, and Marquiss of Dorset.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a bord. gobone

Argent and Azure.

95. Thomas Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel.

Comme son Pere, No. 36.

96. Edmund Stafford, Earl of Stafford.

Comme son Pere, No. 38.

97. Edmund Holland, Earl of Kent. England a border Argent.

98. Ralph Nevil, Earl of Westmorland.

Comme son Pere, No. 44. 99. Gilbert Roos. Lord Roos.

Gules three water budgets Argent.

Gules three water auagets Argent.
100. Gilbert Talbor, Lord Talbor.

Gules a Lyon rampant within a border ingrailed Or.

101. John Lovell, Lord Lovell.

Barry nebulee of fix Or and Gules.

102. Hugh Burnell, Lord Burnell.

Argent a Lycurampant Sable, crowned Or, a border Azure.

103. Thomas Morley, Lord Morley.

Argent a Lyen rampant Sable crowned Or.

104. Edward Charleton, Lord Powis.

Or a Lyon rampant Gules.

105. Sir John Cornwall, Kr. after Lord Fanhope.

Ermine a Lyon rampant Gules crowned Or, a border ingrailed Sable befanty.

106. Sir William Arundel, Kt. of the House of Fitz Alan.
Gules a Lyon rampant Or, a crescent difference.

107. Sir John Stanley, Kt.

Quarterly Argent and Or in the first, on a bend Azure; three Stags Heads Silver, in the second a chief indented as the third, charged with three Plates, i. c. Stanley and Latham.

108. Sir Robert de Umfrevile, Kr.

Gules Semi de cross Croslets a cinque foil Or, over all a bend ingrailed Argent.

109. Sir Thomas Rampston, Kt.

Argent a Chevron, and in the dexter chief Point a cinquefoile Sable. 110. Sir

111. Sir Thomas Erpingham, Kt.

Vert an inescocheon within eight Marlets, placed in
Orle Argent.

Hitherto the Knights of this Noble Order are ranked. as placed in divers other Catalogues, and according to their greatest Dignities, because the certain Years of their Elections cannot be found; only we have here removed Sir John Sulbie, and Sir Sanchet de Trane, from the Reign of King Henry IV. in which they are written in those old Catalogues, to the Reign of King Richard II. for it appears in Ashmole, Page 213. that they were Knights of the Garter, 7 Rich. II. and we have a little varied the Places of the Knights in that Reign following: The precedence in the Roll of Accounts of Alan de Stoke that Year. who reciting twenty three of these Knights-Companions, gives therein the preference to some of them after this manner; Sir Guy Bryan, Sir William Beauchamp, Sir Thomas Percy, Sir Nele Loring, Sir John Sulby, Sir Lodowick Clifford, Sir Simon Burley, Sir Richard Burley, Sir Bryan Stapleton, and Sir Soldan de la Trane. These that follow are Marshalled in an exact Series of their Elections.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry V.

111. Sir John Dabrichcourt, Kt.. Ermine three barrs humet Gules.

112. Richard Vere, Earl of Oxford.

Quarterly Gules and Or, in the first Quarter a Mullet Argent.

113. Thomas Camois, Lord Camois.
Or on a chief Gules, three Plates.

114. Sir Simon Felbryge, Kt.

Or a Lyon rampant, rather saliant Gules.

115. Sir William Harington, Ke.

Sable, a fret Argent, a Label of three Points, Gules.

116. John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon. Comme son Pere, No. 63.

117. Sigifimund, Emperor of Germany.

Or an Eagle double headed displaid Sable, on the Breast, Hungary and Bohemi 1, in presence Brandenburgh. 118. Dux 118. Dux Hollandie Lib. Nig. Fol. 27.

Or an Eagle displaid Sable, escharfoned cross the breast Argent.

120. Sir John Blount, Ke:

Quarterly Sanchet of Spain, his Mother's Arms, viz.
Argent a Castle Azure and Blont, viz. barry nebulee
of six Or and Sable.

121. Sir John Robessart, Kr.

Vert a Lyon rampant Or, vulned on the Shoulders proper.

122. Sir William Phelip, afterwards Lord Bardolph.

Quarterly Gules and Argent, in the first Quarter an Eagle displaid Or, Guillim gives him the Lord Bardolph's Arms, whose Heir he Married, Azure three Cinquesoils Or.

123. John, King of Portugal.

Over Or, debrasing a Cross d'Avis Or, of Calatrava, Portugal, viz. Argent sive Escochions in cross, each charged with sive Plates saltirewise, a bordure of Castile, viz. Gules, therein Castles Or.

124. Eric, King of Denmark.

Or semi de Coeur or Hearts proper, three Lyons, pas-

Sant gardant in pale Azure, crowned Or.

125. Richard Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, after Lieutenant General, and Governor in France and Normandy. Comme son Pere, No. 35.

126. Thomas Montacute, Earl of Salisbury.

Argens three losenges in fess Gules.
127. Robert Willoughby, Lord Willoughby.

Camme son Pere, No. 70. viz. Ufford and Beke.

128. Henry Fitz Hugh, Lord Fitz Hugh.

Azure three Chevrons fretted in hase, and a cheif Or.

129. Sir John Grey, Kt. Earl of Tankervile.

Gules a Lyon rampant and border, ingrailed Argent.

130. Hugh Stafford, Lord Bourchier.

Quarterly Or, a Chevron Gules, a mullet diff. for Stafford and Argent, a Cross ingrailed Gules between four water budgets Sable for Bourchier.

131 John Moubray, Earl Marshal.

Comme son Pere, Plantagenet, Brotherton, No. 64: making only the label to confift of three Points.

132. William

132. William de la Pole, Barl of Suffolk, after Marquiss and Duke of Suffolk,

As bis Grandfather, No. 66.

133. John Clifford, Lord Clifford.

Checquy Or and Azure, a fefs Gules.

134. Sir Lewis Robestart, Kt. afterwards Lord Bourchier: Comme son Frere, No. 12.

135. The Heer, or Sir Henry Van Clux, a German Lord,

Captain of Crewly in Normandy, 7 Hen. V.

Quarterly per fels embatteled Gules and Argent, in the fecond and third a branch of a Tree in bend, with four folages bend, couped at both ends, sable rather Vert.

136. Sir Walter Hungerford, after Lord Hungerford, and

Lord Treasurer of England.

Sable two bars Argent in chief, three Plates.

137. Philip le Bon, Duke of Burgundy.

France a bordure Gobone, Argent and Gules being Burgundy Modern, aliter Quarterly, the first Austria, viz. Gules a fess Argent; the second Burgundy, Modemas aforesaid; the third, Bendy Or and Azure Burgundy ancient; the fourth, Brabant Sable, a Lyon rampant Or, over all Flanders, Or a Lyon rampant Sable.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VI.

138. John Talbot, Lord Talbot, after Earl of Shrewsbury.
Comme fon Frere, No. 100.

139. Thomas Scales, Lord Scales.

Gules fix escallops, three hundred and twenty one Argent.

140. Sir John Falstoff, Kr.

Quarterly Or and Azure, on a bend Gules, three escallops Argent.

141. Peter, Duke of Conimbero, third Son of John I. King

of Portugal.

Comme son Pere, No. 123. but without the Calatrava Cross of Flower Deluces, viz. Portugal a border of Castile.

142. Humphry Stafford, Earl of Stafford, afeer Duke of

Bucks.

Comme son Pere, No. 96.

143. Sir

143. Sir John Ratcliff, Kt.

Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

144. John Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel, and Lord Mal-

Comme, No. 106. and 95, and 36.

145. Richard, Duke of York, the King's Lieutenant in France and Normandy.

Quarterly France modern and England, on a label of three Points Argent nine torteauxes.

146. Edward, King of Portugal.

Comme, No. 123.

147. Edmund Beaufort, Earl of Moriton, after Earl of Dorfet, and Duke of Somerset.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border gobone Ermine and Azure.

148. Sir John Grey, Kt.

Barry of fix Argent and Azure in chief, three torteauxes over all, a label of three Points Argent for his difference, being of the Ruthyn Line.

149. Richard Nevil, Earl of Salisbury, after Lord Chan-

cellor of England.

Quarterly first and sourth, his Wives Arms, Argent three losenges enjoyn'd in sess, viz. Montague, Gules quartering Monthermer Or, an Eagle displaid Vert, second and third, Gules a Saltire Argent, Comme son Pere, No. 98. with a label of three Points gobone Argent and Azure difference therein.

150. William Nevil, Lord Falconbergh, after Earl of Kent.

Quarterly first and fourth, his Wives Arms, Argent a

Lyon rampant Azure Falconbergh, second and third,

Comme son Pere, No. 98. viz. Gules a saltire Ar-

gent, a mullet Sable difference.

151. Albert, Duke of Austria, afterwards Emperor.

Or on the breast of an imperial Eagle, i. e. doublebeaded and displaid Sable, an Escochion of Austria, viz Gules a fess Argent.

152. John Beaufort, Earl of Somerset, afterwards Duke of

Somerset, and Earl of Kendal.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border gobone Argent and Azure.

153. Ralph Butler, Lord Sudley, after Lord Treasurer of England.

Gules ..

Gules a fefs cheequy Argent and Sable, between fix crofs patees fitchee of the fecond.

154. Henry, Duke of Visco, fourth Son of John I. King of Portugal, after King of Portugal.

Comme son Frere, No. 141.

155. John Beaumont, Viscount Beaumont, Comme son Beau Pere, No. 69.

156. Gaston de Foix, Earl of Longueville and Benanges,

Captain de Buch.

Quarterly first and sourth Or, three Pales Gules, the Arms of the old Counts de Foix, second and shird Argent, two Cows passant, Gules armed and ingrailed, and collered Or, Bells hanging at their Necks, Azure for Bearne, vel vice versa, both the maternal Coat of the Gaston. Over the whole Atchievement, a label of three Points terminating in Crosses Sable, on each of which charged with five escalops Argent, in allusion to the Arms of Greilly, the original House of this Gaston.

157. John de Foix, Earl of Kendal.

Comme son Pere, No. 156.

158. John Beauchamp, Lord Beauchamp of Powick, and after Lord Treasurer of England.

Gules, a fess between six martlets Or.

159. Alphonius, King of Portugal.

Comme, No. 123.

160. Albro Vasques d'Almada, Earl of Averence in Normandy.

Or on a bend Vert between two Eagles, displaid Gules,

as many cross patonces Argent pierced.

161. Thomas Hoo, Lord Hoo.

Quarterly Sable and Argent.

162. Sir Francis Surien, Ks.

Or three pales Gules, on a chief Sable, three escallops Argent.

163. Alphonius, King of Aragon.
Aragon, viz. Or four pales Gules.

164. Calimire IV. King of Poland.

Quarterly first and fourth, the Dutchy of Lithuania, viz.
Gules a Chevalier armed at all Points a Cap-a-pee,
brandishing his Sword aloft, Argent garnished Or,
Mounted on a harded Courser, furnished throughous of
the second, and holding a Shield in his left Hand,
Asure

Azure charged with a Crofs double croffed as the fecond; fecond and third Gules, an Eagle displaid Argent, rather vice versa, the last being Poland.

165. William, Duke of Brunswick.

Gules two Lyons passant gardant in pale Or.

166. Richard Widvile, Lord Rivers, afterwards created Eurl Rivers.

Argent a fess and canton Gules. Philipot Vil. Cant, lays he bore Rivers in pretence. Gules a Gryphon rampant Or.

167. John Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 131.

168. Henry Bourchier, Viscount Bourchier, after Lord Treasurer of England, and Earl of Bisex.

Bourchier Comme, No. 83. quartering Lovain, viz. Gules a fefs between fifteen billets Or.

169. Sir Philip Wentworth, Kt.

Sable a Chevron between three leopards faces Or.

170. Sir Edward Hall, Kt.

Argent three cross Croslets sitchee Azure in bend, be-

171. Frederick III. Emperor of Germany. Comme son Frere, No. 151.

172. John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury. Comme son Pere, No. 138.

173. Lionell Wells, Lord Wells.

Or a Lyon rampunt quevee fourchee Sable.

174. Thomas Stanley, Lord Stanley.

Quarterly first and fourth Or on a chief indented Azure, three Plates for Latham, his great Grandmother's Arms; second and third Stanley, viz. Argent on a bend Azure, three Staggs heads caboshed Or.

195. Edward, Prince of Wales.

The national Arms, viz Quarterly France modern and England, a label of three Points Argent.

176. Jasper, Earl of Pembroke, after Duke of Bedford.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border Azure,

semi de Flower de Luce Or.

177. James Butler, Earl of Wiltshire.

Or a chief indented Azure.

178. John Sutton, Lord Dudley.

Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Vert.

1 . 179. John

179. John Bourchier, Lord Berners.

Argent a Cross ingrailed Gules between four Waterbudgets Sable, on a label of three Points, of the second nine Lyons of England.

180. Richard Nevil, Earl of Warwick.

Quarterly of four; first, his Wives Arms, Boauchamp,
Earl of Warwick, viz. Gules a fest between six Croslets Or impaling the old Earls of Warwick checquy.
Or and Azure a Chevron Ermine; second, his Mother's
Arms, viz. Montague, Argent three losenges in fest
impaling Monthermer, Or an Eagle displaid Vore;
third, Spenser, viz. quarterly Argent and Gules a
bend Sable, in the second and third a fret Or; sourth,
Clare, impaling Or, three Chevrens Gules impaling
Nevil, his paternal Coat, viz. Gules a salting Argent, differenced with a label gobonated Argent and
Azure.

181. William Bonvill, Lard Bonvill.

Sable six mullets, 3 2 1 Argent pierced Gules.

182. John Wenlock, Lord Wenlock.

Argent a Chevron Sable between three Negroes beads brafed proper.

183. Sir Thomas Kyriell, Ke.

Or two Chevrons Gules on a Canton, of the last a Lyon of England.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Edward IV.

184 George, Duke of Clarence.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points

Argent, on each a canton Gules.

185. Sir William Chamberlayn, Kt.

Gules a Chevron between three escallops, Or a label extended of three Points Argent.

186. John Tiptoft, Earl of Worcester, after High Constable of England.

Argent a Saltire ingrailed Guler.

187. John Nevil, Lord Montague, after Earl of Nor-

thumberland, and Marquiss of Montague.

Comme son Pere, No. 149. a crescent difference in pretence quarterly; first, Argent on a Canton Gules a rose Or for Bradeston, two Gules a Cross ingrailed Argent, gene, for Ingolsthorp, [Wife of this Lord Montague] shird, Delapole, viz. Azure a fess between three leopards faces Or; fourthly and lastly, Brough Argene on a fess dancer Sable three besants.

188. William Herbert, Lord Herbert, after Earl of Pem-

broke.

Parti per pale, Azure and Gules three lyons rampant Argent.

189. William Hastings, Lord Hastings.

Argent a Maunch Sable.

190. John Scrope, Lord Scrope of Bolton.
Azure a bend Or.

191. Sir John Aftley, Kt.

Quarterly Azure a cinquefoil Ermine for Astley, and Or two barrs Gules for Harcourt, over both a label extended of three Points Ermine.

192. Ferdinand, King of Naples, Son of Alphonius, King

of Aragon.

Aragon, viz. Or four pales Gules, a baston sinister Argene:

193. Francis Sfortia, Duke of Milan.

Milan, viz. a Guivre or Snake wreathed and erested in pale Azure vorant, an Infant issuant proper.

194. James, Earl of Douglas.

Argent an heart Gules regally crowned proper as the augmentation; on a chief Azure, three mullets Argent.

195. Galiard de Duras, Lord of Duras.

Quarterly, Gules a lyon rampant Argent, and Argent a bend Azure, both by the Name of Duras.

196. Sir Robert Harcourt, Kt.

Gules two barrs Or.

197. Anthony Widvile, Lord Scales and Nucells, afterwards Earl Rivers.

Commo son Pere, No. 166. there should be the due . difference of a label.

198. Richard, Duke of Gloucester, after King of England, of that Name the third.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Ermine.

199. Lord Mountgryson in Apulia.

200. John Moubray, Duke of Norfolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 167. viz. Plantagenet Brotherton.

L 1 2 201. John

201. John de la Pole, Duke of Suffolk. Comme son Pere, No. 132.

202. William Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel.

Comme son Frere, No. 144.

203. John Stafford, Earl of Wilthire.
His Grandmothers Arms Plantagenet Woodftock, viz.
Quarterly, France modern and England, a border Argent and Crescent difference, aliter Quarterly, first,
Plantagenet Woodstock, ut ante; second, Azure a bend
Argent cotised between six lyons rampant Or, for
Bobun, Earl of Hereford; third, the said last Coat
with three mullets Gules on the bend for Bobun,
Earl of Northampton; fourth, his own paternal Arms,
viz. Or a Chevran Gules, in the Centre of the
whole, a Crescent difference.

204. John Howard, Lord Howard, after Duke of Notfolk. Quarterly first and fourth, Plantagenes Brotherson pro Mombray, viz. England a label of three Points Argent; second and third, Howard, Gules a bend be-

tween fix cross Croslets fitchee Argent.

205: Walter Devereux, Lord Ferrers of Chartley.

Argent a fest Gules in chief three torteauxes.

206. Walter Blount, Lord Montjoy.

Quarterly; first Argent two Wolves passant in pale Sable, a border Gules of Saltires Argent for ayela; second, Azure a Castle Or, sanchet de ayela, his Grandmother's Arms, a Spanish Lady; third, barry nebulee of six 'Or and Sable, his own paternal Arms; and fourth, Vair and Beauchamp of Hatch, a maternal Ancestor.

207. Charles, Duke of Burgundy.

Burgundy modern, viz. France a border gobonated Argent and Gules.

208. Henry Stafford, Duke of Buckingham.

Plantagenet Woodstock, his great Grandmother's Arms, viz. Quarterly France modern and mngland a border Argent, his own Coat was, Or a Chevron Gules.

209. Thomas Fitz Alan, Lord Maltravers, afterwards Earl

of Arundel.

Quarterly Fitz Alan, Comme son Pere, No. 202. and Malttavers, viz. Sable a free Or over the whole Atchievement, a label extended of three Points Argent for difference.

210. Siç

210. Sir William Parr, Knight of Kendal.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Ross of Kendal, viz. Or three Water-budgets Sable; second and third, Argent two barrs Azure, a border ingrailed Sable Parr.

211. Frederick, Dake of Urbin.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Or an Bagle displaid Sable; second and third, Or bends couped Azure, between the two uppermest an Eagle displaid Sable, the said Quarterings separated by a Pale Gules, charged with the Papal Infula or tripple Crowned Mytre Or in chief, and the Ecclesiastical Keys, in Saltire the dexter Gold, the Sinister Argent in hase tyed Azure, for his Office of Gonfalonier under the Pope, tho properly this Mytre is a Gonfannon pavilionated.

212. Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland.

Quarterly Percy, Lovain and Lucy, viz. Or a lyon rampant Azure and Gules, three lucies bauriant Argent.

213. Edward, Prince of Wales.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Silver.

214. Richard, Duke of York, second Son to King Edward.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points

Argent, on the first one Canton Gules.

215. Thomas Grey, Marquiss of Dorset, and Earl of

Huntingdon.

Barry of fix Argent and Azure, in chief three torteauxes, a label extended of three Points Ermine.

216. Sir Thomas Montgomery, Kt.

Gules a Chevron Ermine between three Flower Deluces Or.

217. Ferdinand, King of Castile and Leon.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, viz. Gules a Castle Or and

Argent, and lyon rampant Gules crowned Or.

218. Hercules d'Esti, Duke of Ferrara.

Quarterly; first, Or an Eagle displaid Sable, bequed. membred and couroned Gules, the Empire; second, for France a bordure parte per indenture throughout Gules and Or; for Ferrara, the said Quarterings separated by a Pale Gules, charged with the papal Keys in Saltire, the dexter being Or, the sinister Argent as Genfalonier, ever all pretence Azure an Eagle displaid Argent for Esti. Mr. Ashmole afterwards corrected it as now L 1 2

in his Library. Palewise of three pieces, first, partie per fess in the chief Or an Eagle displaid Sable. membred langued and Crown'd Gules, and in base Azure three Flower Deluces within a bordure indented Or and Gules; secondly, Gules, two Gules in Saltire, the one Or, the other Argent, charged in fess with an Escurcheon of pretence Azure supporting an Eagle; of the third membred langued and Crown'd, of the second, over all in chief a papal Crown Or, garnished with Sundry Gemms Azure and Parts; thirdly, the third as the first, counter plac'd.

219. John, King of Portugal, Son to Alphonius V.

Comme son Pere, No. 159.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Richard III.

220. Sir John Conyers, Kt. Azure a manch Or.

221. Thomas Howard, Earl of Surrey, after Lord Trea-

furer of England, and Duke of Norfolk.

Quarterly, first and fourth Gules a bend betwixt six cross Croslets fitchee Argent for Howard; second and third, England a label of three Points Argent, for Plantagenet, Brotherton and Mowbray; over the whole a label extended of three Points Argent.

222. Francis Lovel!, Viscount Lovell.

Comme, No: 102.

223. Sir Richard Ratclift, Kt. Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

224. Sir Thomas Burgh, Kt. after Lord Burgh,

Azure three Flower Deluces Ermine.

225. Thomas Stanley, Lord Stanley, after Earl of Darby: Argent on a bend Azure, three Stags Heads caboshed Or, a crescent diff.

226. Sir Richard Tunitall. Ke. Sable three combs Argent.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VII.

227. John Vere, Earl of Oxford. Comme son Beau Pere, No. 112.

238, Şir

228. Sir Giles d'Aubeny, after Lord d'Aubeny.
Gules four fufils in fest Argent.

229. Thomas Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel.

This is the same Person, No. 209. called Thomas Lord Maltravers, who succeeded his Father William Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel; therefore one of them should be out, for other Catalogues have him not temp. Hen. VII.

230. George Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 171.

231. John Wells, Viscount Wells. Comme son Pere, No. 173.

232: George Stanley, Lord Strange.

Comme son Pere, No. 225. in pretence his Wives Arms, viz. Strange of knockin, Gules two lyons passant in Pale Argent quartering Mobun, Or a Cross ingrailed Sable.

233. Sir Edward Wydevile, Knight Banneret. Comme, No. 197. with due difference.

234. John Dynham, Lord Dynham, Lord Treasurer of England.

Gules four fusils in fess Ermine.

235. Maximilian, King of the Romans, after Emperor of

Germany.

Or on the breast of a single headed Eagle displaid Sable, an Escochion Quarterly of four first, Barry of eight Argent and Gules for Hungary; second, Gules a fess Argent for Austria; third, Gules a lyon rampant with two Tails, armed langued and crowned Or for Bohemia; fourth, bendy Or and Azure, a bordure Gules for Burgundy ancient.

236. Sir John Savage, Kt.

Quarterly, first and fourth, Argent a pale of Losenges Sable, Daniel pro Savage; second, Or on a fess Azure, three garbs of the first Vernon; third and last, Gules a Chevron between three martlets Argent, the ancient Arms of Savage, over the whole Atchievement a label extended of three Points Gules.

237. Sir William Stanley, Kt. Lord Chamberlain.

Comme son Frere, No. 225. a crescent on a Crescent difference.

238. Sir John Cheney, Knight Banneret.

Azure six Lyons rampant Argent and Canton Ermine, Shirland's Arms his maternal Ancestor.

239. Alphonsus, Duke of Calabria and Naples, King of

Sicily and Jerusalem.

Quarterly, the first Arragon, viz. Or four pales Gules, the second Calabria, viz. Argent a Cross potent Sable.

240. Arthur, Prince of Wales.

Quarterly France and England a label Argent.

241. Thomas Grey, Marquiss of Dorlet. Comme son Pere, No. 215.

242. Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland. Comme fon Pere, No. 212.

243. Henry Bourchier, Earl of Essex.
Comme son Beau Pere, No. 168, vel 83.

244. Sir Charles Somerset, Knight Banneret, after Earl of

Worcester, and Lord Herbert.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border Gobone Argent and Azure, over all a basion simister Argent impaling his Wife Herbert, viz. per pale Azure and Gules three Lyons rampant Argent.

245. Robert Willoughby, Lord Brook.

Quarterly Offord and Beke, viz. Sable a Cross ingrailed Or, and Gules a cross moline Argent, his maternal Ancestors; but the proper Arms of his Family, Or freety Azure.

246. Sir Edward Poynings, Kr.

Barry of fix Or and Vert, a bend Gules.

247. Sir Gilbert Talbot, Knight Banneret of Grafton. Comme son Pere, No. 172. a Crescent difference.

248. Sir Richard Poole.

Parti per pale Or and Sable, a Saltire ingrailed counterchanged.

249. Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham.

Quarterly of four, first, Comme son Pere, No. 208. i. e. Plantagenet Woodstock; second, Azure a bend Argent cotised between six Lyons rampant Or, Bobun Earl of Hereford; third, Or a Chevron Gules Stafford; fourth, Azure on a bend Argent cotised between six Lyons rampant Or, three mullets Gules, Bobun Earl of Northampton,

250. Henry,

250. Henry, Duke of York, after King of England, of that Name the eighth.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Ermine.

251. Edward Courtney, Earl of Devonshire. Or three Torteauxes.

252. Sir Richard Guilford, Knight Banneret. Or a Salsire besween four martlets Sable.

253. Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 201.

254. Sir Thomas Lovell, Knight Banneret. Argent on a Chevron Azure between three Squirrels, fercint Gules, an annulet difference.

255. Sir Reginald Bray, Knight Banneret. Argent a Chevron between three Eagles Legs, erased a la quise Sable.

256. John, King of Denmark. Denmark Comme, No. 124.

257. Guido Ubaldo, Duke of Urbin. Comme, No. 211.

258. Gerald Fitz Gerald, Earl of Kildare. Argent a Saltire Gules.

259. Henry Stafford, Lord Stafford, after Earl of Wiltfhire.

Plantagenet Woodstock, a crescent difference, Comme son Frere, No. 249.

260. Richard Grey, Earl of Kent.

Barry of fix Argent and Azure, in chief three Torteauxes..

261. Sir Rys ap Thomas, Knight Banneret. Argent a Cheoron Sable between three cornish Choughs proper.

262. Philip, King of Castile.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 217.

263. Sir Thomas Brandon, Knight Banneret. Barry of ten Argent and Gules, over all a Lyon rampane Or Crowned per pale; of the second and last, a mullet difference.

264. Charles, Archduke of Austria, Prince of Spain, after

Emperor of Germany.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 217.

Knights

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VIII.

265. Thomas Darcy, Lord Darcy.

Azure semi of cross Croslets, three cinquescies Argent.

266. Edward Sutton, Lord Dudley.

Comme, No. 178.

267. Emanuel, King of Portugal.

Comme, No. 218. viz. Portugal debrusing a Calatrava Cross, or a Cross Flower Deluced, within a bordure of Castile.

263. Thomas Howard, Lord Howard, eldest Son to Thomas, Duke of Norfolk, afterwards Earl of Surry, and fecond Duke of Norfolk.

Gules a bend between six cross Croslets sitabee Argent,

a label of three Points Or.

269. Thomas Weft, Lord La Ware.

Argent a fess dancet Sable.

270. Sir Henry Marney, Kr. after Lord Marney. Gules a Lyon rampant gardant Argent.

271. George Nevil, Lord Abergaveny.

Gules on a Saltire Argent, a Rofe of Lancaster, i. c. Gules.

272. Sir Edward Howard, Kt. Second Son to Thomas, Duke of Norfolk, Second Duke of that Family.

Gules a bend between fix cross Crostets sisches Argene, a crescent difference Sable.

273. Sir Charles Brandon, after Duke of Suffolk.
Comme fon Pere, No. 264. but without difference.

274. Julian de Medices, Brother to Pope Leo X.

Or eight roundles in Orle, that in chief of France, viz.

Azure charged with three Flower Deluces Gold, the
other Gules.

275. Edward Stanley, Lord Monteagle, fecond Son to the Earl of Derby.

Comme son Pere, No. 225. in presence Gules a Lyon rampant Or, for his Wife Vaughan.

276. Thomas Dacres, Lord Dacres of Giles land.
Gules three escallops Argent.

277. Sir William Sandys, after Lord Sandys.

Augent a Cross ragulee Sable in pretence Bray, his Wives Arms, viz. Quarterly first and fourth, Gules three

three Bars Vair Longville pro Bray; second and third, Argent a Chevron between three Eagles Legs.

278. Henry Courtney, Earl of Devonshire.

Quarterly first and sourth, an Augmentation, viz. France and England within a Border of England and France Quarterly; second, Courtney, Comme son Pore, No. 251. third, Rivers, Earl of Devenshire, Or a Lyon rampant Azure.

279. Ferdinand, Prince and Infant of Spain, Archduke of

Austria, after Emperor of Germany.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, ut No. 216. a label of three Points Azure, on the Foot of the first a Crescent Or.

280. Sir Richard Wingfield, Kt.

Argent on a bend Gules cottifed Sable, three pair of Wings impailed, of the first an Estoile of sixteen Rays.

281. Sir Thomas Bullen, Kt. after Vifcount Rochford,

and Earl of Wiltshire and Ormond.

Argent a Chevron Gules between three Bulls-Heads coupee Sable, afterwards his Mother's Arms, Butler of Ormond, Or a chief indented Azure.

282. Walter d'Evereux, Lord Ferrars of Chartley, after

Viscount Hereford.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 205.

283. Arthur Plantaginet, Viscount Lifle.

Quarterly first, France and England; second and third, Ulster, viz. Or a Cross Gules; fourth, Mortimer, Earl of March; viz, Barry of fix Or and Azure, on a chief of the second a pale two Esquens based dexter and finister Gold, an Escochion Argent, over all a baton sinister Azure.

284. Robert Radcliff, Viscount Fitz Walter, after Earl of

Suffex.

Quarterly first and fourth, Argent a bend ingrailed Sable, Radcliff, second and third, Or a fess between two Chevrons Gules Fitz Walter.

285. William Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel.

Comme son Pere, No. 209. but without difference.

286. Thomas Mannors, Lord Roos, after Earl of Rutland.

Or two Barrs Azure a chief Quarterly, two Flower Deluces of France, and a Lyon of England.

287. Henry Eitz Roy, after Earl of Nottingham, and Duke of Richmond and Somerser.

Quarterly

Quarterly France and England, a border Quarterly Ermine and compone Argent and Azure a baton sinister of the second.

288. Ralph Nevil, Earl of Westmorland.

Comme, No. 98.

289. William Blount. Lord Montjoy. Barry nebulee of fix Or and Sable.

290. Sir William Fitz Williams, Kt. after Earl of South-ampton.

Losengy Or and Gules a mullet difference.

291. Sir Henry Guilford, Ke.

Comme son Pere, No. 252. with a Canton of Granada, viz. Argent a Pomegranet slipped and leaved all proper.

292. Francis I. the French King.

France, viz. Azure three Flower Deluces Or.

293. John Vere, Earl of Oxford. Comme son Cousin, Nc. 227.

294. Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland.

Quarterly; first, Percy, Lovain, Or a Lyon rampant Azure; second, Quarterly France modern and England a border gobonne; third, Lucy Gules three Lucies hauriant Argent; fourth, Poynings, Barry of six Or and Vert a bend Gules.

295. Anthony Montmorency, Duke of Montmorency.

Or a Cross Gules between sixteen Eagles displaid Azure.

296. Philip Chabor, Earl of Newblanch.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Or three Chabots Chubs or Chevin Fish hauriant Charles second, Argent a Lyon rampant Gules, Crowned Or; third, Gules a Sun Argent.

297. James V. King of Scotland.

Scotland, viz. Or a Lyon rampant within a double sressure flory counter story Gules.

298. Sir Nicholas Carew, Ke.

Or three Lyons passant in pale Sable, with due difrence.

299. Henry Clifford, Earl of Cumberland. Comme, No. 133.

300. Thomas Cromwell, Lord Cromwell, after Earl of Essex.

Azure on a fess between three Lyons rampant Or a rose Gules, on either side whereof a Chough proper.

301. Jahn

301. John Russell, Lord Russell, after Earl of Bedford.

Argent a Lyon rampant Gules on a chief Sable, three
escallops of the first.

302. Sir Thomas Cheyney, Kr. Comme fon Oncle, No. 237.

303. Sir William Kingston, Kr.

Azure a fess between three Leopards faces Or.

304. Thomas Audley, Lord Audley of Walden, and Lord

Chancellor of England.

Quarterly per pale indented Or and Azure, in the second and third, an Eagle displaid of the first, on a bend of the second a fret between two martlets Gold.

305. Sir Anthony Browne, Kt.

Sable three Lyons passant in bend double cotised, Argent a Crescent difference.

306. Edward Seymour, Earl of Hertford, after Duke of

Somerser.

Quarterly the Augmentation, viz. Or on a Pile Gales between fix Flower Deluces Azure, the Lyons of Rngland; second, Seymour, viz. Gules a pair of Wings conjoyned in pale tips downward Or.

307. Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey.

Gules on the middle of a bend between fix cross Crostets Argent, the Augmentation, viz. an Escochion Or, therein a demi Lyon within a double Scotch tressure Gules, an Arrow transfixing his Mouth, of the last a label of three Points Azure.

308. Sir John Gage, Ks.

Quarterly per bend dexter and finister Azure and Argent,

a Saltire Gules.

309. Sir Anthony Wingfield, Ke.
Comme son Frere, No. 281. but without the Estoil.

310. John Sutton, (alias Dudley) Viscount Lisle, after Earl of Warwick, and Duke of Northumberland.

Or two Lyons passant in pale Azure, Somery his maternal Ancestor.

311. William Paulet, Lord St. John of Bafing, after Earl

of Wiltshire, and Marquiss of Winchester.

Sable three Swords in pile Points conjoyned in base Arigent Hilts Or, a Crescent difference.

212. William Parr, Lord Parr of Kendall, after Earl of

Essex, and Marquiss of Northampton.

Argent

'Argent two Bars Aqure a border ingrailed Sable, vide fon Beau Pere, No. 210.

313. Sir John Wallop, Kt.

Argent a bend unde Sable.

314. Henry Fitz Alan, Earl of Arundel. Comme son Pere, No. 285.

315. Sir Anthony St. Leger, Kt.
Azure frette Argent a chief Or.

316. Francis Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 172.

317. Thomas Wriothesley, Lord Wriothesley, after Earl of Southampton.

Azure a Cross Or between four Falcons Argent:

Knights elected in the Reign of King Edward VI.

318. Henry Grey, Marquiss of Dorset, after Duke of Sussoik.

Comme son Pere, No. 241.

319. Edward Stanley, Earl of Derby. Comme, No. 223.

32d. Thomas Seymour, Lord Seymour of Sudley.

Comme son Frere, No. 307. with a Cresont or Mallet difference.

321. Sir William Paget, Kt. after Lord Paget.

Sable on a Cross ingrailed between four Eagles displaid

Argent, five Lyons passant of the first.

322. Francis Haftings, Earl of Huntingdon. Comme, No. 189.

323. George Brook, Lord Cobbam.

Gules on a Chevron Argent, a Lyon rampant Sable

Crowned Or.

324. Thomas West, Lord La Ware. Comme son Pere, No. 269.

325. Sir William Herbert, Kr. after Lord Herbert of Cardiff, and Earl of Pembroke.

Perti per pale Azure and Gules, three Lyons rampant Argent, a border Gobonee Or, and of the second besanted.

325. Henry II. the French King. France Comme, No. 292.

327. Edward

327. Edward Clinton, alias Fines, Lord Clinton, after Earl of Lincoln.

Argent fix crofs Croflets fitches Sable on a chief Axure, two
mullets Or pierced Gules.

328. Thomas Darcy, Lord Darcy of Chiche.

Argent three cinquefelles Gules.

329, Henry Nevil, Earl of Westmorland. Comme son Pere, No. 288.

230, Sir Andrew Dudley, Kr.

Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Vert a Crescent difference.

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen Mary.

331. Philip, Prince of Spain, after King of England, by

Quarterly Caffile and Leon, Comme, No. 262.

332. Henry Ratcliff, Earl of Suffex.

Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

333. Emanuel Philibert, Duke of Savoy.

Tierce emanche towards the chief the dexter Westphalia or ancient Saxony, win. Gules on Horse emaged Argons the same counterturned; the sinister Saxony modern, viz. barry of eight Or and Sable, over all a chaptes of rue Vert in bend, ente in base Angria; viz. Argens three bouteroles Gules.

334. William Howard, Lord Howard of Effingham.

Gules on a bend between fix crost Crostus Argent, the
Scotch Augmentation, Comme, No. 307. a mules difference.

335. Anthony Browne, Viscoune Montagu.
Comme fon Pere, No. 305.

336. Sir Edward Haftings, Ke. after Lord Haftings of Loughborough.

Comme for Frere, No. 322, a crescant difference.

337. Thomas Ratcliff, Earl of Suffex. Comme fon Pere, No. 332.

338. William Grey, Lord Grey of Wilton.

Barry of fix Argent and Azore, a label of five Points

Gales.
339. Sir Robert Rochefter.
Checquy Argent and Gales on a fest Aware, three escalloss Or.

Knights

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

340. Thomas Howard, Duke of Norfolk.

Comme for Pere, No. 308. but without the label, viza
Howard with the Scotch Augmentation in the middle

of the bend.

341. Henry Manners, Earl of Rutland.

Comme son Pere, No. 286.

342. Sir Robert Dudley, Kt. after Earl of Leicester. Comme fon Oncle, No. 330.

343. Adolphus, Duke of Holftein.

Norway, viz. Gules a Lyon rampant Argent crowned Or, holding, or supporting with three of his Feet, a danish Battle Ax, of the last headed as the second.

344. George Talbor, Earl of Shrewsbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 316.

345. Henry Carey, Lord Hunsdon.

Argent, on a bend Sable three Roses of the Field, a crescent
on a crescent difference.

346. Thomas Percy, Earl of Northumberland.

Comme, No. 212. viz. Percy, Lovain, and Lucy, Quarterly.

347. Ambrose Dudley, Earl of Warwick.

Comme son Frere, No. 342. without the crescent distinction.

348. Charles IX. the French King. France, Comme, No. 326.

349. Francis Ruffel, Earl of Bedford. Comme Son Pere, No. 301.

350. Sir Henry Sidney, Kt.

Or & Pheon Azure.

351. Maximilian II. Emperor of Germany.

Or, on the Breast of an imperial Eagle, i. c. double

headed and aliplaid Sable, an Escochion of Hungary and Bohemia, viz. barry of eight Argent and Gules impailing Gules, a Lyon rampant Argent crowned Or.

352. Henry Haftings, Earl of Huntingdon. Comme son. Pere, No. 322.

353. William Somerset, Earl of Worcester.

Or, on a fess France and England, Quarterly and borded gobonee Argent and Azure.

354. Francis

354. Francis Montmorency, Duke of Montmorency. Comme, No. 295.

355. Walter d'Evereux, Viscount Hereford, after Earl of Effex.

Comme son Pere, No. 282.

356. William Cecill, Lord Burghley, after Lord Treasurer of England.

Barry of ten Argent and Azure on six Escocheons Sable, as many Lyons rampant of the first.

357. Arthur Grey, Lord Grey of Wilton. Comme son Pere, No. 338.

358. Edmund Bruges, Lord Chandos.

Argent on a Cross Sable, a Leopard's Face Or.

359. Henry Stanley, Earl of Derby. Comme son Pere, No. 319.

360. Henry Herbert, Earl of Pembroke.
Comme som Pere, No. 325. omitting the besants.

361. Henry III. the French King. France Comme, No. 348.

362. Charles Howard, Lord Howard of Effingham, after Earl of Nottingham.

Comme son Pere, No. 334. viz. Howard, with a muller difference.

363. Rodolph, Emperer of Germany. Comme, No. 351.

364. Frederick II. King of Denmark.

Denmark, Comme, No. 257. but the Lyons crowned Or.

365. John Casimire, Count Palatine of the Rhine.

Quarterly; first and fourth, the Palatinate, viz. Sable
a Lyon rampant Or, crowned Gules; second and third,
losongy bend-wise, Argent and Azure for Bavaria.

366. Edward Manners, Earl of Rutland.

Comme son Pere, No. 341. 367. William Brook, Lord Cobham.

Comme son Pere, No. 323.

368. Henry Scrope, Lord Scrope of Bolton.
Comme, No. 190.

369. Robert d'Evereux, Earl of Essex.
Comme son Pere, No. 355.

370. Thomas Butler, Earl of Ormond and Offery.
Or a chief indented Azure.

M m

371. Sir.

371. Sir Christopher Hatton, Kt. after Lord Chancellor of England.

Azure a Chevron between three garbs Or.

372. Henry Ratcliff, Earl of Suffex.

Comme son Frere, No. 337.

373. Thomas Sackville, Lord Buckhurft, after Lord Treafurer of England, and Earl of Dorset. Quarterly; Or and Gules a bend vaire.

374. Henry IV. the French King. France, Comme, No. 361.

375. James VI. King of Scotland, after King of England, France, and Ireland.

Scotland, Comme, No. 297.

376. Gilbert Talbor, Earl of Shrewsbury.
Comme Jon Pere, No. 316.

377. George Clifford, Earl of Cumberland, Comme son Beau Pere, No. 299.

378. Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, Comme son Frere, No. 346.

379. Edward Someriet, Earl of Worcester. Comme son Pere, No. 353.

380. Thomas Burogh, Lord Burogh.

Azure three Flower Deluces Brmine:

381. Edmond Sheffield, Lord Sheffield, after Earl of Mulgrave.

Argent a Chevron between three garbs Gules.

282. Sir Francis Knolles, Kr.
Azure crufily, a Crofs moline voi ded Or.

383. Frederick, Duke of Wirtenbergh.

Or three Staggs attires placed Bar-ways Sable, id eft,
Wirtenbergh.

384. Thomas Howard, Lord Howard of Walden, after Earl of Suffolk, and Lord Treasurer of England.

Comme son Pere, No. 340. with a Crescent difference.

385. George Carey, Lord Hunsdon. Comme son Pere, No. 345.

386: Charles Blount, Lord Montjoy, after Eurl of De-

Comme, No. 289.

387. Sir Henry Lea, Kt.

Argent a fess between three Crescents Sable.

288. Robert Ratcliff, Earl of Suffex. Comme son Pere, No. 372.

389. Henry

389. Henry Brook, Lord Cobham. Comme son Pere, No. 367.

390. Thomas Scrope, Lord Scrope of Bolton. Comme son Pere, No. 368.

391. William Stanley, Earl of Derby.

Comme son Pere, No. 359.

392. Thomas Cecil, Lord Burghley, after Earl of Exeter. Comme son Pere, No. 356.

Knights elected in the Reign of King James I.

393. Henry, Prince of Wales,

Quarterly; first and fourth, France and England quartered 3 fecond, Scotland, viz. Or a Lyon rampant within a double tressure counterflory Gules; third, Ireland, Azure an Harp or String Argent, over all a label of three Points Argent.

394. Christian IV. King of Denmark.

Denmark, Comme. No. 264.

395. Lodowich Stewart, Duke of Lenox, and after Duke

of Richmond.

Quarterly; first, the Augmentation, viz. France with in a border cousu Gules, charged with eight round Buckles Or ; second, Or a fess checquy, Argent and Azure, a border ingrailed Gules, for Stewart, over all in pretence Lenox; viz. Argent a Saltire ingrailed between four cinquefoils or roles Gules.

396. Henry Wriothesley, Earl of Southampton.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 317. 397. John Erskin, Earl of Marr.

Azure a bend between fix cross Croslets sischee Or, his Title of Marr, his proper Coat, Argent a pale Sable.

398. William Herbert, Earl of Pembroke. Parti per Pale, Azure and Gules, three Lyons rampant Argent.

399. Ultrick, Duke of Holstein.

Norway, Comme, No. 344. but the Lyon crowned Ori

400. Henry Howard, Earl of Northampton.

Comme son Frere, No. 341. A Crescent difference.

401. Robert Cecil, Earl of Salisbury.

Comme son Frere, No. 392. with a Crescent difference! 402. Tho-Mm 2

402. Thomas Howard, Viscount Bindon.

Comme son Frere, No. 268. viz. Howard with a Crescent difference, and without the label.

403. George Hinne, Earl of Dunbarr.

Vert a Lyon rampant Argent.

404. Philip Herbert, Earl of Montgomery, after Earl of Pembroke.

Comme son Frere, No. 398. a Crescent difference:

405. Charles Stewart, Duke of York, after Prince of Wales,

and King of England, of that Name the first.

Quarterly; first and fourth, France and England; second, Scotland; third, Ireland; Comme son Frere, No. 393. on a label of three Points Argent, nine Torteauxes.

406. Thomas Howard, Earl of Arundel, after Earl of

Norfolk.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 340.

407. Robert Carr, Viscount Rochester, after Earl of Somerset.

Gules on a Chevron Argent, three Mullets Sable in the dexter chief Point, a Lyon of England, Augmentation and difference.

408. Frederick, Count Palatine of the Rhine, Prince Eletter

of the Empire, and after King of Bohemia.

Quarterly; the Palatinate and Bavaria, Comme, No. 365. in pretence the Augmentation, viz. Gules an Imperial mound or globe Or.

409. Maurice Van Nassau, Prince of Orange.

Azure billettee a Lyon rampant Or; i. e. Nassau.

410. Thomas Ereskine, Viscount Fenton, after Earl of Kelly.

Quarterly; first, the Augmentation Gules, an imperial Crown within a double Tressure counterflory Or; second, Erskine, Comme, No. 397. with a Crescent difference.

411. William Knolles, Lord Knolles, after Viscount Wallingford, and Earl of Banbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 382.

412. Francis Manners, Earl of Rutland. Comme son Oncle, No. 366.

413. Sir

413. Sir George Villiers, Kt. after Baron of Whaddon, then Earl and Marquiss of Buckingham, and lastly, Earl of Coventry, and Duke of Buckingham.

Argent on a Cross Gules five Escallops Or, a martlet

difference.

414. Robert Sidney, Viscount Liste, after Earl of Leicester. Comme son Pere, No. 350.

415. James Hamilton, Marquiss Hamilton, and Earl of Cambridge.

Gules three cinquefoiles pierced Ermine.

416. Esme Stewart, Duke of Lenox, and Earl of March. Comme son Frere, No. 395.

417. Christian, Duke of Brunswick.

Gules two Lyons passant gardant in pale Or, which is Brunswick.

418. William Cecill, Earl of Salisbury. Comme son Pere, No. 401.

419. James Hay, Earl of Carlisle.

Argent three Escocheons Gules.

420. Edward Sackvile, Earl of Dorset. Comme son Beau Pere, No. 373.

421. Henry Rich, Earl of Holland.

Gules a Chevron between three Crosses bottonee Or.

422. Thomas Howard, Viscount Andover, after Earl of Barkshire.

Comme son Pere, No. 384. viz. Howard, with a Crescent on a Crescent difference.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Charles I.

423. Claude de Lorrain, Duke of Chevereux.

Hungary, viz. Barry of eight Argent and Gules; his proper Arms being Lorrain, viz. Or on a kend Gules three Alerions [Doves, or as others, Eaglets without becques,] displaid Argent.

424. Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden. Sweden, viz. Azure three Crowns Or.

425. Henry Frederick Van Nassau, Prince of Orange. Nassau, Comme son Frere, No. 409.

426. Theophilus Howard, Earl of Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 384.

M m 3 427. Wil-

A27. William Compron, Earl of Northampton, Sable three Helmets Argent with a Lyon of England Augmentation in fest between them.

428. Richard Weston, Lord Weston, Lord Treasurer of

England, and after Earl of Portland.

Or, an Eagle regardant displaid Sable.

429. Robert Bertie, Earl of Lindsey.

Argent three battering Rams propor armed and garnished

Or.

430. William Cecil, Earl of Exeter.

Comme son Pere, No. 392.

431. James Hamilton, Marquiss of Hamilton, Earl of Cambridge and Arran.

Comme son Pere, No. 415.

432. Charles Lodowick, Count Palatine of the Rhine, Prince Elector of the Empire, and Duke of Bavaria.

Comme fon Pers. No. 408.

433. James Stewart, Duke of Lenox, and Earl of March, after Duke of Richmond.

Comme son Pere, No. 416.

434. Henry Danvers, Earl of Danby.

Gules a Chevron between three mullets of fix Points Or.

435. William Douglas, Earl of Morton.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Morton Argent on a chief indensed Gules, two mullets of the first; second and third, Douglass, Comme, No. 193.

436. Algernon Percy, Barl of Northumberland.

Comme son Pere, No. 378.

437. Charles, Prince of Wales, after King of England, of that Name the second.

Comme fon Oncle, No. 393.

438. Thomas Wentworth, Earl of Strafford.

Sable a Chevron between three Leopards faces Or.

439. James Stewart, Duke of York, after King James, of that Name the second.

Comme son Frere, No. 437. viz. the national Arms

with a label Ermine,

440. Rupert, Count Palatine of the Rhine, and Duke of Bavaria, after Earl of Holdernels, and Duke of Cumberland, fecond Son of the King of Bohemia.

Comme son Frere aisne, No. 432. but without the Augmentation, No. 405, viz. the Palatinate and Bayaria quarterly,

441. Wil-

(535)

441. William Van Nassau, Prince of Orange.

Nassau, Comme son Pere, No. 425.

442. Bernard de Nogaret de Foix, Duke de Espernon and de Valerre.

Quarterly; Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 331. in pretence Nogaret, viz. Or a Nut-tree eradicated proper impailing Thouloser i. e. Gules a Cross urdee voided Or, and pomellee as the Points Or, over both Coats a chief of Valette, viz. Gules a Cross potent Argent.

Knights elected in she Reign of King Charles II.

443. Maurice, Count Palatine of the Rhine, and Duke of Bavaria, third Son of the King of Bohemia.

Comme son Frere aisne, No. 440.

444. James Butler, Marquiss of Ormond, after Earl of Brecknock, and Duke of Ormond, in Ireland and England.

Comme, No. 370. 445. Edward, Count Palatine of the Rhine, and Duke of Bavaria, fifth Son of the King of Bohemia.

Comme son Frere aisne, No. 443. viz. the Palatinate

and Bavaria quarterly.

446. George Villiers, Duke of Buckingham.

Comme son Pere, No. 413.

447. William Hamilton-Dowglass, Duke of Hamilton. Quarterly; first, Hamilton, Comme, No. 415. second, Dowglass, Comme, No. 193.

448. Thomas Wriothesley, Earl of Southampton.

Comme son Pere, No. 396. 449. William Cavendish, Marquiss of Newcastle, after

Duke of Newcastle. Sable three Harts beads caboshed Argent, a Crescent difference.

450. James Graham, Marquiss of Montrole. Or on a chief Sable, three escallops of the first.

451. James Stanley, Earl of Darby. Comme son Pere, No. 391.

452. George Digby, Earl of Briftol. Azure a Flower Deluce Argent, a Crescent difference.

453. Henry Mm 4

453. Henry Stewart, Duke of Gloucester, third Son to King Charles I.

Quarterly; first and fourth, France and England, Quarterly; second, Scotland; third, Ireland, on a

label Argent mine Roses of Lancaster.

454. Henry Charles de la Tremoville, Prince de Tarente. Arragon, Sicily, viz. parti per Saltire the chief and base Or, four pales Gules for Arragon; the second and third, Argent an Eagle displaid Sable for Sicily in pretence, his paternal Arms, viz. Tremoville, Or a Chevron Gules between three Eagles displaid Azure.

455. William Van Naslau, Prince of Orange, after King of England, of that Name the third.

Nassau, Comme son Pere, No. 441.

456. Frederick William, Prince Bledor of the Empire. Marquiss of Brandenburgh.

Argent an Eagle displaid Gules, which is Brandenburgh. 457. John Galpar Ferdinand de Marchin, Count de Gravil. Quarterly; first and fourth, Argent a Fish bauriant Gules; second and third, Or two barra Sable.

458. Sir George Monk, Kt. after Duke of Albermarle. Gules a Chevron between three Lyons Heads erased Argent.

459. Sir Edward Montague, Kr. after Earl of Sandwich. Quarterly, Montague and Montbermer, viz. Argent three Losenges in fess Gules, a border Sable and Or, an Eagle displaid Vert, over all a Mullet difference

460. William Seymour, Marquiss of Herrford, after Duke

of Somerlet.

Comme, No. 306. a Crescent difference.

161. Aubrey de Vere, Earl of Oxford, Comme, No. 293.

462. Charles Stewart, Duke of Richmond and Lenox. Comme son Oncle, No. 433.

463. Montague Bertie, Earl of Lindley. Comme son Pere, No. 429.

464. Edward Montague, Earl of Manchester. Comme son Cousin, but with a Crescent difference.

465. William Wentwerth, Barl of Strafford. Comme son Pere, No. 438.

466. Christierne, Prince of Denmark, after King of Denmark.

Denmark, Comme, No. 394.

467. James

467. James Seot, Duke of Monmouth and Bucclugh. The Imperial Arms of King Charles II. a baston sinister Argent, In presence, Scot of Bucclugh, viz. Or
on a bend Azure, a Crescent between two Mullets.

468. James Stuart, Duke of Cambridge, Son of James,

Duke of York.

Comme son Pere, No. 439. viz. the national Arms, with a label of sive Points Ermine.

469. Charles IX. King of Sweden, Goths and Vandalls. Sweden, Comme, No. 424.

470. John George II. Duke of Saxony, Juliers, Cleves and Monts, and Prince Elector of the Empire.

Quarterly; first, Thuringe, viz, a Lyon rampant barry of ten Argent and Gules.

471. Christopher Monk, Duke of Albermarle.

Comme son Pere, No. 458.

492. John Maitland, Duke of Lauderdale.

Or a Lyon rampant difmembred, Gules within a double treffure counterflory Azure.

473. Henry Somerlet, Marquiss of Worcester, after Duke

of Beaufort.

Quarterly, France and England, a border gobone Argent and Azure.

474. Henry Jermyn, Earl of St. Albans.

Sable a Crescent between two Mullets in pale Argent.

475. William Russell, Earl of Bedford, after Duke of Bedford.

Comme, No. 346.

476. Henry Bennet, Earl of Arlington.

Gules between three demi Lyons rampant couped Argent, a befant after changed to an imperial mound, serving for both difference and Augmentation.

477. Thomas Butler, Earl of Offory.

Comme son Pere, No. 444.

478. Charles Fitz Roy, Earl of Southampton, after Duke of Southampton, and now Duke of Cleveland.

The Imperial Arms of England, a Battune Sinister

E-mine difference.

479. John, Earl of Mulgrave, now Duke of Buckingham.

Arragon a Chewron between three Garbs Gules.

480. William Cavendish, Duke of Newcastle.

Comme, No. 447.

481. Thomas

(538)

481. Thomas Osborn, Earl of Danby, after Duke of Leeds
Quarterly, Ermine and Azure a Crofs Or.

482. Henry Fitz Roy, Duke of Grafton.

The Arms of King Charles II. with a Battoon Sinister Gobony Argent and Azure.

483. William, Earl of Salisbury.

Barry of ten Pieces Argent and Azure on fix Escocheons Sinister, as many Lyons rampans; of the first, a Crescent difference.

484. Charles, Count Palatine of the Rhine.

Comme, No. 445.

485 . Charles, Duke of Richmond.

The Arms of King Charles II. within a Bordure Gobony Argent and Gules, the Argent charg'd with Roses as the second.

486. George, Prince of Denmark. Denmark, Comme, No. 466.

487. Charles Seymour, Duke of Somerier, Est.

Quarterly; first, an Augmentation, viz. Or on a Pile Gules, between six Flower Delusés Azure, three Lyons of England; second, the paternal Coat of Seymour, Gules, two Wings'somjoined in Lure Or.

488. George Fitzroy, Duke of Northumberland.

Knights elected in the Reign of King James II,

489. Henry Howard, Duke of Norfolk.

Agent a Chevron between three Estoils Wavy.

491. Laurence Hyde, Earl of Rochester.

Azure, a Chevron between threa Lozenges, a Crescent difference.

492. Louis de Duras, Earl of Feversham.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Gules a Lyon rampane Argent; second and third, Argent a bend Azure, with a label of three Points differense.

493. Robert Spencer, Earl of Sunderland.

Quarterly, Argent and Gules, in second a Fret Or, over all a bend Sable, charged with three eschallops of the first.

Knights

Knights eletted in the Reign of King William and Queen Mary, and King William.

494. James Butler, Duke of Ormond. Or, a chief indenced Azure.

495. Frederick Schonbergh, Duke of Schonbergh.

Argent, an Escocheon Sable, over all a Carbancle of eight Roys Or, a Crescent difference.

496. William Cavendish, Duke of Devonshire, then Earl

of Devonshire.

Sable, three Hearts Heads caboshed, Argent.

497. Charles Sackville, Earl of Dorfet and Middlefex.

Quarterly, Or and Gules a bend Vaire.

498. Frederick III. Marquis of Brandenburgh, Prince Elector, and Great Chamberlain of the Holy Roman Empire; after King of Prussia.

Comme, No. 456.

499. George-William, Duke of Brunswick and Lunenburg-Zell, Prince of the Holy Roman Empire.

500. Charles Talbot, Duke of Shrewsbury.

Gules a Lyon rampant, within a border ingrailed Ora

501. Prince William, Duke of Gloucester.

The Arms of England, with a label of three Points
Argent, the middlemost charged with the Cross of
St. George, and an Escocheon of his paternal Coat of
Denmark,

502. John Holles, Duke of Newcastle.

Ermine, two Piles, their Points meeting in base Sable.

503. William Bentinck, Earl of Portland.
Azure, a Cross Moline Argent.

504. Thomas Herbert, Earl of Pembroke and Montgo-mery.

Comme, No. 404.

505. Arnoldjoost Van Keppel, Earl of Albermarle.

Gules, three eschallops Argent.

506. James Dowg'als, Duke of Queensbury and Dover.
Quarterly; first and fourth, a Heart Gules, Crown'd
with an Imperial Crown Or, on a chief, Azure, three
Mullets Argent; second and third, Azure, a Bend Or,
six cross Cresses of the same, all within a double
Tressure Counterstory Gules.

507. Georges

507. George-Lewis, Elettor of Brunswick-Lunenburgh, &c. the present Sovereign.

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen ANNE.

508. Wriothelly Ruffel, Duke of Bedford. Comme, No. 475.

509. John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough.

Sable, a Lyon rampant Argent, on a Canton of the second, St. George's Cross.

510. Meinhardt Schonbergh, Duke of Schonbergh. Comme, No. 495.

510. Sidney Godolphin, Earl of Godolphin.

Gules, an Eagle with two Heads display'd between 3 Fleurs de Lis Argent.

511. George Augustus, Prince Electoral of Hanover, now Prince of Wales.

512. William Cavendish, Duke of Devonshire. Comme, No. 496.

513. John Campbell, Duke of Argyle.

Girony of eight Pieces, Or and Sable.
514. James Hamilton, Duke of Hamilton and Brandon:
Placed here in his Order of Election, but lived not to be installed.

Comme, No. 447.

515. Henry Beaufort, Duke of Somerset. Comme, No. 473.

516. Henry de Grey, Duke of Kent,

Barry of fix Argent and Azure. 517. John Poulett, Earl Poulett.

Sable, three Swords, their Points in Pile Argent, the Hilts Or.

518. Robert Harley, Earl of Oxford and Earl Mortimer, Or, a bend cosised Sable.

519. Thomas Wentworth, Earl of Strafford.
Sable, a Chevron between three Leopards Heads Or.

520. Charles Mordant, Earl of Peterborough and Mon-mouth.

Comme, No. 490.

Knitsbg

Knights elected by King George.

521. Charles Poulet, Duke of Bolton.
Sable, three Swords, their Points in pile Argent, their
Hilts Or, a Crescent difference.

522. John Maners, Duke of Rutland. Comme, No. 412.

523. Lionel-Cranfield Sackvil, Earl of Dorfet and Middlefex.

Comme, No. 497.

524. Charles Montague, Earl of Halifax.

Argent three Lezenges in fess Gules, within a border

Sable difference.

A Catalogue of the Jeveral Officers of this most Noble Order, to this Time.

Prelates of the Order.

1. William de Edyngton, Bishop of Winchester, Lord Treasurer, and after Lord Chancellor of England.

2. William de Wykham, Bifhop of Winchester, Prioft, Cardinal of St. Bulebius, and Lord Chancellor of England.

3. Henry Beaufort, Biscop of Winchester, Priest, Cardinal, &c. and Lord Chancellor of England.

4. William de Waynfleet, Bishop of Winchester, and Lord Chancellor of England.

5. Peter Courtney, Bishop of Winchester.

6. Thomas Langton, Bishop of Winchester.
7. Richard Fox, Bishop of Winchester, and Lord Privy.

8. Thomas Wolfey, Bishop of Winchester, Priest, Cardinal, &c. and Lord Chancellor of England.

9. Stephen

9. Stephen Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester.

10. John Poyner, Biflog of Winchester.

11. Stephen Gardiner restored, and made Lord Chancellor of England.

12. John White, Bishop of Winchester.

13. Robert Horne, Bishop of Winchester.

14. John Watson, Bishop of Winchester.
15. Thomas Cooper, Bishop of Winchester.

16. William Wykham, Bishop of Winchester.

17. William Day, Bishop of Winchester.

18. Thomas Billon, Bishop of Winchester.
19. James Monrague, Bishop of Winchester.

20. Lancelot Andrews, Bishop of Winchester.

21. Richard Neyle, Bifhop of Winchester.

22. Walter Curle, Bishop of Winchester.

23: Brian Duppa, Bishop of Winchester.

24. George Morley, Bifton of Winchester,

- 25. Peter Mew, Bishop of Winchester.

26. Sir Jonathan Trelawny, Bar. now Bishop of Winchesten

Chancellors of the Order.

- 1. Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of Salisbury, and Dean of Windsor.
- 2. Lionel Woodevelle, Bishop of Salisbury.

3. Thomas Langton, Bishop of Salisbury.

4. John Blyth, Bishop of Salisbury. 5. Henry Dean, Bishop of Salisbury.

6. Edmond Audley, Bishop of Salisbury.

7. Sir William Cecil, Ks. Secretary of State.

8. Sir William Peters, Kt. Secretary of State.

9. Sir Thomas Smith, Kt. Secretary of State.
10. Sir Francis Walfingham, Kt. Secretary of State.

11. Sir Amias Paulet, Kr. Secretary of State.

12. Sir John Woolee, Kt. Secretary for the Latin Tonguel

13. Sir Edward Dyer, Kt.

14. Sir John Herbert, Kt. Secretary of State.

15. Sir George More, Kr.

16. Sir Francis Crane, Kr.

17. Sir Thomas Row, Kt.

18. Sir James Palmer, Kt.

19. Sir Henry de Vick, Bar.

20. Sir

20. Seth Ward, Bilbop of Salisbury.

21. Gilbert Burner, man Bishop of Salisbury.

Registers of the Order.

1. John Coringham, Canon of Windfor. 2. John Deepden, Canon of Windsor.

3. James Goldwell, Canon of Windsor, 4. Oliver King, Canon of Windsor, Secretary to Prince. Henry, Son of King Henry VI. To King Edward IV, V. and Henry VII.

5. Richard Nix, Canon of Windsor.

6. Christopher Urswick, Dean of Windsor.

7. Thomas Wolsey, the Kings Almoner.

8. William Arwater, Canon of Windsor, after Biftop of Lincoln.

.9. Nicholas West, Dean of Windsor.

- 10. John Vescy, Dean of Windsor.
- 11. Richard Sydnor, Canon of Windsor.
- 12. Robert Aldridge, Camon of Windfor. 13. Owen Oglethorp, Dean of Windsor.
- 14. John Boxal, Dean of Windsor, and Secretary of State.
- 15. George Carew, Dean of Windsor.
- 16. William Day, Dean of Windsor. 17. Robert Benet, Dean of Windsor.
- 18. Giles Thompson, Dean of Windsor, and Bishop of Gloucester.

19. Anthony Maxey, Dean of Windfor.

- 20. Marc Antonio de Dominis, Arebbishep of Spalato, Dean of Windsor.
- 21. Henry Beaumont, Dean of Windsor,
- 22. Matthew Wren, Dean of Windsor.
- 23. Christopher Wren, Dean of Windsor.
- 24. Brune Ryves, Dean of Windsor.
- 25. Dr. Gregory Heskard, Dean of Windsor.
- 26. Dr. John Robinson, Dean of Windsor, fince Bifhop of London.
- 27. Dr. George Verney, Lord Willoughby of Brock, now Dean of Windsor.

Garters

Garters King of Arms.

1. Sir William Brugges, Ke.

2. John Smert.

3. Sir John Writh, Kt.

4. Sir Thomas Wriothesley, Kt.

5. Sir Thomas Wall, Kt.

6. Sir Christopher Barker, Kr.

7. Sir Gilbert Dethick, Kt.

8. Sir William Dethick, Kr.

9. Sir William Segar, Kr.

10. Sir John Borough, Ke.
11. Sir Henry St. George, Ke.

12. Sir Edward Walker, Kt.

13. Sir William Dugdale.

14. Sir Thomas St. George.

15. Sir Henry St. George.

Ushers of the Black-Rod.

1. William Whitehorse.

2. John Cray.

3. Thomas Sye.

4. John Athelbrig.

5. William Evington, and Edward Hardgyll.

6. Robert Marleton.

7. Ralph Ashton, and Hugh Dennys.

8. Sir William Compton, Kt.

9. Henry Norresse, Esq;

10. Anthony Knyver, Esq;

11. Sir Philip Hobby, Kt.

12. John Norres, and William Norres, Esqui,

13. Anthony Wingfield, Esq; 14. Richard Coningsbye, Esq;

15. James Maxwell, Esq;

15. James Maxwell, Ejq; 16. Peter Newton, Ejq;

17. Sir John Ayton, Kt.

18. Sir Edward Carterer, Ke.

19. Sir Thomas Duppa.

20. Sir Fleetwood Shepard.

21. Sir David Mitchell.

22. Sir William. Oldes.

A



A List of all the pt as their Places occur in their Standsor: Shewing the respective Ti

3. $Normanby, \mathfrak{G}_{c}$ 5. Charles Fitzroy, &c. installed April **છ**ેત. installed 7. Charles Lenox, April 20th, 1681. The Prince's Side, Elled April 5th 9. George Fitzroy, led April 8th, 16 Montgomery, 11. Charles Talbot. iam III. June 5th, 1694. Side. Sc. installed 13. Arnold Jooft V The Sovereign's installed May 14th Gc. instal. 15. Meinhardt Scho. led September 2d, installed Au-17. John Campbel, cember 22d, 1710 Earl Mortimer, 19. John Poulett, I. en Anne. 1713. 12 Queen A gh and Mon-21. Thomas Wentw 2 Queen Anne August 4th, 1713 installed De 23. Charles Pouler, cember 9th, 1714 &c. installed 25. Lionel-Cranfield fex; installed Dece

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX.

The Statutes of Institution of the most Noble Order of the Garter, as they were reform'd and explain'd by King Henry VIII.

Hereas the moost famous, moost happiest, and victorious Prynce Edwarde, the thirde of that Name, his Noble Progenitour sometyme Kyng of England and of Fraunce, and Lord of Irland, &c. To th' onnoure of Almighti God, and of the Blessed and Immaculate Virgyn Marie, and the Blessed Martir Sainte George, Patron of the right Noble Roialme of England; and of Saynt Edwarde, Kyng and Contessour; To the exaltation of the holy Faith Catholique, ordeyned, established, created, and founded within the Castel of Wyndesore, a Company of twenty six Noble and Worthi Knyghtes, for to be of the said moost Noble Ordre of Saynt George, named the Gartier, and for the honourable continuance, augmentation, and interteyning of the same.

The seid moost victorious Kyng did devyse and institute divers honorable Estatuts, and laudable Ordinances, for to be observed and kept by the Cobrethren and Confreres, Knyghtes and Compaynons of the said moost Noble Ordre; amonge the which Estatutis been certeyne doubtis and ambiguities, which to be more playnly declared, interpreted and extended, it is thought right necessary and expedient, and that certeyne other new Ordinances and Articles be to the said Statutes added and adjoyned. Wherefore the said moost excellent and victorious Prynce Henry VIII. Kyng of England and of Fraunce, Desensor of the Faith, and Lord of Irland, and Soverayne of the said moost Noble Order; and for the right N n

fingular Love, good Zeal, ardent and intier Affection that his Royall Majestie hath and bearith to the said mooft Noble Order, and to the Estate of Chivalrie and Knyghthood, and for the honorable contynuance and encreasing the same. And also at the hmuble requeste and instante defire of the Knyghts and Companyons of the faid Noble Order, and by their Advyle, Councell and Affent, the twenty third Day of April, in the Year of Grace MDXXII. and of his moost Noble Reign the eighth Year, made interpretacion and declaracion of the Obscurities, Doubtisand Ambiguities, of the faid Estatutes, Ordinances, Inrespretacions. Declaracions, Reformacions, with their additions aforesaid, after the trew intencion of them. shall be from henceforth observed, kept and ensued by the Soverayne, and the Knyghtes Confreres and Companyons of the faid Noble Order, in manner and fourme following.

I. Firste, It is ordened and accorded, That the Kyng and his Heires and Successors, Kyngs of England, shall be for evermore Soveraynes of the saide moost Noble Order and amiable Companye of Saynt George, named the Gartier, to the which Soverayn, and to his Heires and Successours, shall apperteine the Declaracion, Solucion, Determinacion, Interpretacion, Reformacion, and disposition of all Causes, concernying and towchyng any thing of Obscuritie or Dowbte conteyned in the Statutes of the said moost Noble

Order.

II. Item, It is accorded, That none shall be elected and cholen for to be Fellow or Companyon of the said moost Noble Order, except that he be a Gentilman of Blood. and that he be a Knyghte, and without reproche. And that the Knyghtes of the said Noble Order, from hensforth, shall not Name any Person in their Election to be Felow or Companyon of the faid Noble Order, in whom thei shall thynke or extiem in their Conscience to have Spotte of Reproche. And as towchyng the Declaracion of a Gentilman of Blode, it is declared and determined that he shall be descended of three decentis of Noblesse, that is to fay, of Name and of Arms, both of his Father's fide. and also of his Mother's fide. And as towchyng or concernyng any marmer of reproche, foralmoche as there be divers and many fundry Poyntis of reproche, there shall be here declared but three Poyntes of them oonly, as it is declared in manner and fourme following.

The

The first Poynt of Reproche ys, That if any Knyght (as God defende) be convayingued or attaynted of Errour against the Cristen Faith Catholique, or had for any suche Offence suffred any Payne or Punicion publique.

The second Poynt of Reproche is, That if any Knyght (as God defende) had been arrayned, convicted, or at-

tainted of High Treason.

The third Poynt of Reproche is, That if any Knyght departe or flee away from Batayle or Journei, beyng with his Soverayne Lord, his Lieutenant or Deputie, or other Capetayne having the Kyng's Power Royal and Auctoritie; and whereas Banners Estandatz, or Pennons, have bene displaied, and that thei preceded to Fight, he that then reniously and cowardly flieth or departeth away from thens, ought to be efteemed and judged to have reproche, and never worthi to be elected Knyght of the said Company, (as God forbidde) do commytte any such reproche; that then he shall be departed and disgraded of the said Order, at the next Chaptier enfuying, if it soo shall please

the Soverayne and the Company.

III. Item, That every Yere upon the Vigill of Saynt George, that is to say, the twenty second Day of the Month of April, on what Day soever it fall on, and tho' no Service of Saynt George be celebrate or done, all the Knyghts of the faid Company beyng in any Place or Places of their Liberties, in what Places soever it be, shall be bounde for to were the hole Habit of the said Order; that is to wit, Robe, Mantell, Hudde, and Coller, from the owre of the first Even Songe, at the owre of Tierce, that is, at three of the Clocke at Afternone, untill the said Even Songe, and other Devyne Service, Souper, and Voydance, be done and accomplished; and likewyse on the Morrow on Saynt George's Day at Marens, Procession, * Mass, and the seconde Even Songe and all

Service. the faid Day, untyll that Souper and Voydance

be done, as ys aforesaid.

IV. Item, That if for any Causes it should please the faid Soverayne to proroge the faid Feast and Solemnytie of Saint George, or that the said Feast shuld be prolonged and proroged to another Day, that all the Knyghtis of the said Order, that shall be within the Realme of England, shall give their Attendance the Even and the Day of Saynt George, on the Parson of the said Soverayne, and shall N A 2 fynde

fynde themselstes in his Company, in what Place soever he be within the said Realme of England, and they so gyving their Attendance upon his said Parson the said Even and Day, shall observe and kepe the Servyce of Saynt George, if the Ordenance and Commaundement of holye Church deth suffre and permit it, and if the Ordenaunce of the Church doth not permit it, in this behalfe they be bound to tarry with the Soverayne, and heare such Servyce as all be than limited and ordened by the holy Churche to be done and celebrated, the said Even and Day of Saym George, in observing and kepying, durying the said Daies, of all other Ceremonies, aswell in goyng to the Chapter upon the said Even before Even Song at Afternone, and the said Day of Saynt George at Afternone, before the laste Even Songe, and also in weryng their hole Habit; and every Knyght beyng in his own Stall in kepyng the Devine Servyce, from the tyme of the fyrst

*Divine Service, from the tyme of the fyfit Even Song of the faid Even, Matens and * Masse, unto the last Even Song of the said

Day, and the Morrow after ensuying before the † Masse of Requiem, they shall take their Mantells, upon suche Gownes as shall please them, and shall enter into the Chapter, if there be eny Election or other great Affaires, before the

Divine Service. Said * Masse of Requiem, in using such Ceremonyes to this accustomed, as though they were present in the said Castell of Wyndesore. And in case that the said Soverayne be come, and entred into the said Chapiter, and that some of the seid Felows of the said Order be not entred or come with hym, and shulde tary behynde, in case they that have not given and done dew Attendance upon hym, shall abide withoute the Dores of the said Chapiter, without entryng into it, duryng all the tyme that the said Soverayne and other Knyghtes shall be in the said Chapter for that tyme. And if so be that eny of the above-named Knyghtes come to late to the

first Even Song of the said Even or Mattens

* Masse, or laste Even Soog, the said Day
of Saynt George, he shall have for Penance,
that during the tyme and space of such Devyne Servyce
he shall knele or stande before his Stall in the Place of the
Queresters; and if he come not to give Attendance upon
the Parson of the said Soverayne the sayd Even and Day
of Saynt George as is aforesaid, and that he have no Lycence

cence or other reasonable Excuse, and that it be accepable to the said Soverayne; for his absence in this Cale, the said Knyght that soo shall have done, for his Penance, shall not come in his Stall at the next Feast ensuyng, in the presence of the Soverayne, nor in his said Stall in the said College of Windesore; and farthermore shall Pay ten Pounds, for to be converted and bestowed to the use of the Ornaments of the said College.

V. Item, If it chaunsed that any of the Knyghtes of the said Order, by Leave or Licens, or otherwise, were in his House, or in any other Place, at his Libertie and Fraunchise, the said Even and Day of Saynt George, he shall be bound to cause to be prepared a Capitall Stall in the Church or Chappel in the which he shall heare Devine Service. In the Capitall Stall shall be sett and elevated the Order of Saynt George, named the Gartier, beyng within the Gartier; and his propre Arms, within the Gartier also shall be set at a Stall that shall be asmoche in distance, after the proportion and quantity of the said Church or Chappel, from the Stall of the said Soverayn, as is his Stall in the Castle of Windesore, and shall were his said Habit hole, and shall heare the Devyne Service, fuche as by the Holy Church is ordened and limited for the said Day, as well the first Even Song Mattens * Masse, as the latter Even Songe. doyng by him, first Reverence to the Aulter, in the Honor of God, and after to the Stall where is fixed or set up the Armes of the said Order, as well and as often at his comyng in, as at his goyng owte of the said Church or Chappel; and also as often as he shall passe before the said Armes allwey, excepte the Emperours, Kynges, Princes, and Electors. The which may in this case so ordeyne their Seats and Stalles, as that shall seme them beast, and at their Pleasure.

VI. Item, If that were so, that without any Prorogation the said Feast and Solempnyte of Saynt George were kept and celebrated the said Day and Even of Saynt George, in the said Castell of Windesore; and if it were not the Pleasure of the said Soverayne for to be present, or that conveniently he may not be there in Parson the said Day and Feast, at his said Castell of Windesore; That in this Case, in what Place that his Pleasure shall be, beyng within this his Realme of England, his Majestic may appoint

poynte and Commande suche Knyghtes of the seid Order a best shall seme hym, there for to kepe Company and geve Attendance upon the Parson, and to kepe all and lyke Ceremonyes as though they were at the said Castell of Windesore; and they downg the thynges abovesaid, shall be excused for their absence of the Feast of Saynt George, holden at the said Castell of Windesore for that Yere.

VII. Item, It is agreed that if the Soverayne cannot be at Saynt George's Feast, that he shall make his Deputy, by his Letters, for to kepe the Chapter upon Saynt George's Even, at the Owre of Tierce, the which is at three of the Clocke at Afternone, and on Saynt George's Day, to kepe the said Feast at the Costes of the said Soverayne for the space abovesaid, without any new Ordenance to be made, havyng Power to correcte and redresse all Poynts of the

said Chapter as for then shall seme necessary.

VIII. Item, That every one on Saynt George's Even, that is to wit, the twenty second Day of April, a gatheryng together shall be made of all the Knyghtes of Saynt George within the Caste'l of Windesore, that is to wir, of all them that shall be within this Realme of Englande or withoute, that conveniently may come; and there they shall have the Service of Saynt George, and also shall were their hole Habit of the said Order, duryng the feid Servyce, being ordinarily in theyre Stalls. And every of them shall have his Banner, Sworde, with his Helme and Crefte, above his Stall, the which, duryng his Lyff, shall abyde in the said Chappell for his Honor, and in Signe and Knowledge that he beres them in defence of holy Churche, as the Order of Knyghthod requireth. But in Case that the seid Feast of Saynt George happen to fall within fifteen Days after the Feast of Easter, or upon any Fyshe-Daye or Fastyng-Day, then shall it be proroged ard prolonged at the Soverayn's Pleafure, as above is faid, if so be that the Day of the seid Feast be not affigned nor ordeyned to be kepte the twenty fourth, twenty fifth, twenty fixth, nor the last Day of April, nor upon the fowre first Dayes of Miy, for by cause of the impediment or let of Devyne Servyce ordened by Holy Churche, for the double Feasts of Saynt Marke, Philipp and Jacob, and the invention of the Holy Cross of our Lord Jesu Chryste, nor at such Dayes as shall fall the Assencion, or the Feast

of Pentecoste, or any other Feaste of Solempnitie as is ordened in Holy Churche, whereby the fyrst or second Even Songe, by suche Prorogacions, might be letted or distorbed.

IX. Item, That all the Knyghtes of the said Order shall come Yerely in the faid Place of the faid Castell of Wyndesore, on Saynt George's Even, at the Owre of Tierce, the which is at three of the Clocke at Afternoone, as it is abovesaid; and if thei come not at the tyme affigned. without havyng a juste and reasonable Excuse, that they may be acceptable to the faid Soverayne or to his Deputy. or otherwyse pardoned by the said Soverayne, of their absence, by special Letters of Excuse, in the whiche Letters theyr Names and Causes shall be wryten, or otherwyse shall have their Pennance after the Orden unce and Agreement of the faid Chapter; And the faid Ordenaunce is such, that they shall not entre into the Chartre for that tyme, but shall byde without the Dore, and shall have Voyce in any thynge that is done in the said Chapter at that tyme allonly; and if they come not to Even Songe before the begynnyng of the said Even Songe. they shall not enter into their Stalles, but shall byde belowe affore the said Stallis, in the Queristers Places, duryng the faid Even Songe; and like Pennance is ordened for them that come not to the High * Masse betyme, and at Even Songe on St. George's Daye. And if there be any that come not to the Feaste, and have not a reasonable Excuse towarde the Soverayne or his Deputye, as is above declared, his Pennance shall bee, that he shall not enter within his Stalle the next Feaste after, but shall byde below, as it is said at the first Even Songe, and shall goo in the * Querifters. Procession before all the * three Crosses, † Divine Ser-. and shall fit below as afore is faid, all the † Maile tyme, untyl the Offering, and he shall Offer laste; and after his Pennance so done, incontinent he shall come before the Soverayn's Stalle, or his Deputye, and there he shall aske Pardon; and after that, the Soverayne or his Deputye shall Command hym to goo unto his Scalle in his fyrst Estate; and if he come noc to the seconde Feaste, and be dwellyng within the Realm, without having any Excusation alowable to the Soverayne or his Deputye, as is abovefuld, he shall not enter into his N n 41

Stalle from thenceforth, until the tyme that he hath gyven and offered a Jewell unto Saynte George's Aultar, within the faid Chappell, of the valew of twenty Markes of Silver of Troye, and fro thensforwarde, he shall double every Yere the Penaltie, unto the tyme he be reconsciled.

X. Item, It is agreed, That if any Knyghte of the sayd Companye be founde in apperte without his Garter, that he pay anon, after that the Chalenge be made to hym by any of the sive Officers of the Order, or of the Warden of the seid College, a Marke of Money, except he be boted for to ryde, that then it shall suffice to were under his bote a blew Ribande of Sylke, in signifying of the Garter, and also provided that no Knyght of the seid Order from hensforthe, do entre into the Chaptre without his Garter, upon the Payne abovesaid; and whosever of the said Officers or Warden shall make the syrst Chalence.

shall have the Penaltye for his Labor.

XI. Item, It is agreed, That the Knyghts of the Order of St. George, alway, and as often as they were theyr Mantels, they shall goo before there Soverayne, every of them with his Felow, that is for aneynst him ordinarily as they be for in their Stalls. And if it should happen that eny of them were not there present, his Felow for aneynst hym shall goe alone, the which Order shall be kepte and observed, as well in goyng in Procession as elliswhere in other Piaces. But at the Offryng, the Soverayne or his Deputye shall goo before all the Company. and the ordinaire Officers of the said Order shall goo as they have bene accustomed, when any Procession shall be done in the Chapter, Chappell, or elliswhere. And for the Order of the laid Knyghres for to fit at the Table, for to take their refeccion by it at Dinner, or at Souper, they shall fitt all along on one side after there Stalles, and not after there State, except Children or Bretherne of Kinges, Princes, and Dukes, that be Strangers, the which thall kepe their Places and Romes after their Aftate; and at their voiding and going out shall abide and goo in Order. so as thei sat at the Table.

XII. Item. It is agreed, That every one of them at the Castell of Wyndesore, on the Morrow after the Feast of Saynt Goorge, before the departyng of the Company, that the said Knyghres, upon such Gownes as shall please them, at the Chapter Dore, shall take their Mantels, and shall goo

200 into the said Chapter, and after that shall * Divine goo and here a * Masse of Requiem, the which Service. shall be Solempnely songe for the Souls of all the Felows of the said Order, which be departed and deceassed, and for all Christen Sowlles; and that all the Company be there present, without eny of them be lett bi a reasonable Cause, or have Lysence of the Soverayne or his Deputie before the departyng; and when it happens that for any Caule of the voydyng of eny of the faid Felowship, there shall be certayne Banners, Swordes, Helmers, and Creftes, the which ought to be offered up before the offeryng of eny Silver, the said Hachements ought to be offered, fyrst the Banner, by two of the leid Felowship, such as the Soverayne or his Deputye shall appoynte or name, and after that the Sworde shall be offered by two other, and likewise his Helmet and Crest by two other Knyghtes of the seid Order, affigned by the Soverayne or his Deputye; and if any Knyghte of the feid Order shuld decease the Yere afore, then every Knyghte beyng in the said Castell of Wyndesore, at the said * Masse of Requiem, shall offer a Tapre armed with a little Scuchion, of the Arms of the Knyghte departed; and if there were more then one deceassed, that then be made for every of them a Scuchion of Arms, and a grote sett nye to the light of the Tapre, the which Scuchions and Tapers shall be made at the Coste and Charge of the Knyghts of the seid Order.

XIII. Item, It is agreed, That all Strangers that shall be electe Felowes of the seid Order, shall be certifyed by Letters of the Soverayne of their Election. The which Letters of Certification, with the Statutes of the seid Order, under the common Seal, shall be sent unto them, at the Coste and Charges of the seid Soverayne, in all diligence, and at the fardest thei shall be certifyed of this within foure Moneths after the seid Election, to the end that the seid Electe may advyse them by the seid Statutis, if they will receive the seid Order or no. But if the feid Soverayne have greate and high Lettes and Busynes, that then he may deferre the Certification of the seid Election at his good Pleasure, unto tyme of opportunitie and convenient. After that the Certification have byn delivered, and that the Soverayne shall be certefied that the

the said Electe will receive the said Order; Then the Soverayne shall sende unto the said Electe by his Ambassadours his hole Habir, with the Gartier and Coller; and that all such Strangers, of what Estate, Dignytie, or Condicion, that they be of, shall sende within seven Moneths after the reception of the said Gartier, Coller, and Habit, and that he have certified the Soverayne to have reseyved those thyngs, a sufficient Deputye or Attorney, after the Aftate of his Lorde and Maister, so be that he be a Knyghte without Reproche, to be stalled in his place: the whiche shall bryng with him a Mantell of blew Velvert, of the Order of that which he shall send him, and also his Banner, Sworde, Helme, and Crest, for to be and abide within the faid College durying his Lyff. that the Mantell, in the tyme that the faid Deputye or Attorney shall be stalled by the Soverayne or his Deputye, put upon his right Arme, for to hold the faid Mantell upon his Arme, and shall be accompanyed and ledd by two of the Knyghtes of the said Order, from the Dore of the Chapter unto the Stalle, and there beyng shall make his Oath, and shall be stalled for, and in the Name of his faid Lorde and Maister, and the said Mantell abovesaid, the faid Attorney or Deputye shall bere it upon his right Arme duryng the Devyne Servyce; beyng fett in the Stalle of his faid Maister and Lorde without bervne of it at any tyme after: And to have no manner of Vovce in the Chaptre, or to come in it, in the absence of hym that hath fent hym. And if he fend not his faid Attorney within feven Moneths abovefaid, without havyng a reasonable Excuse, which shall be acceptable to the Soverayne or his Deputye, the Election shall be void of hym; except so be, that the said Knyghte be lett and distorbed by great Affaires; then he may fend his Excuse to the faid Soverayne, or to his Deputye, within a Moneth after: and after he is, as the Soverayne or his Deputye will allowe it, or accepte it, that then the faid Soverayne or his Deputye, may geve unto hym four Moneths more of respite; and if he came not or sent not his Attorney, before that the tyme of the four Monerhs be fynished, that then in this case the Election shall be hole voyde from hym for that tyme. And it is to be knowne, that this Favoure is done and shewed to the Strangers, the which may not well come in their proper Parlons, that they myght

myght be stalled by Attourneys; to the ende that they may be partetakers of the Masses, and all the Prayers of the seid Order, for they they shoulde sayle of the half, yf they were not stalled before their Deathe. And likewise it is ordened for them that be never Chosen and electe of the said Order, beyng in the Kyngs Warres by his Commaundement, for to enjoy of the Benefytes of the said Statutes, to that shall

appertagne allonly to their Stallacion.

XIV. Item, There is also ordened a Dean and Warden, with twelve Cannons Seculers, the which shall be Pristz at their entrying in, or ells within a Yere nexte following; and also eight Peticanons and twelve Vicars, also Prestes at their entryng in, or ells at the gyvyng of the next Orders, or at the furdest within a Yere after their Presentacion; also thirteen Clerkes and thirteen Querifters, for to fyng and Pray unto God for the prosperity of the Soverayne and all the Knyghtes of the said Order lyving, and also for the Sowles of all the Knyghtes of the said Order departed, and for all Crysten Sowles; and the Presentation of the said Cannons shall belonge allway to the Soverayne of the said Order; and the said Cannons. when any Knyghte of the faid Order is there present within the Quyer of the said Chappel, shall sitt in the lowermost Seates, where they be wonte to sitt at the Feaftes of Saynt George; and in the absence of the said Knyghtes, the said Cannons may fitt in the high Seates nexte unto the Stalles of the faid Knyghtes.

XV. Item, There be ordened five Officers appertaynyng to the said Order; that is to witt, Prelate, Chaunceler, Register, and Kyng of Armes, named Gartier, and an Huysher at Armes, named the Blacke-Rod; the which shall be received and Sworne to be of the Councell of the said Order; the Secretes, with also their Charges and Privileges, shall expressely be declared in the Booke of the

Ordenances of the faid Officers.

XVI. Item, It is also ordened, That thirteen pore Knyghtes, that have not wherwithall to lyve, for to have in that Place their lyvyng and sustentacion conveniently, for their good Prayers in the Honor of God and Saynt George, of the which the Charges and Privil ges hereafter shall be declared solowyng: The Ordynance, of the Officers and of their Election is ordened, as of the Presentacion

Digitized by Google

tacion of the Cannons, so that allway the Election shall abyde to the said Soverayne; and it is agreed that the pore Knyghtes shall have their Mantells of Scarlett, and a Scuchion of the Armes of Saynt George, without a Gartier.

XVII. Item, It is agreed, That every Knyghte of the faid Company shall leave his Mantell within the said College, for any sodayne Chaunses that myght happen, for to kepe, holde and observe, all suche Ordenances, Precepts and Commaundements, which may be advysed in Chapter by the said Sovereign. The which Soverayne, by the Consent and Agreement of six Knyghtes of the said Order, may at all Tymes and Places, at his Pleasure, Sommon and make to be kepte Chapter for all suche Causes, as it shall please to the said Soverayne to name, towching the said Order.

XVIII. Item, It is agreed, That if it fortune, that any of the said Companye shulde come within eleven Myle of the Castell, that he shall goo in, if he may, for the Honor of the Place, if he be not busied or lett by some juste Cause, and that he take his Mantell before he entre within the said Chappell; and also that he enter not in, but he have his Mantell upon hym; and the Cannons there beyng present for that tyme, shall come to receive hym.

and devotly shall bring hym into the said * Divine Chappel; and if it be in tyme of * Masse, he Service. shall tarry and heare Masse in the Honor of God and of Saynt George; and if it be at Afternone, he shall come in, in manner abovesaid; and there shall be faid by the Cannons de Profundis, for all Cristen Sowles, and there shall offer and returne to his Stalle; and if any of the faid Companye ride thorough the Town, and wyll not offer as agreed, that upon his Obedience for every tyme that he faileth, he shall goe one Myle a Fore from the said Chappell unto the said Place, in Honor of Saynt George; and also for every tyme that he shall so fayle, he shall give a Grete for his Offrynge; the which distance. for to come night unto the faid Castell, is two Myles allonly and no more.

XIX. Item, It is accorded the thirty second Yere of our Soverayne Lorde Kyrge Henry VIII. by the Grace of God, Kynge of Englande and of Fraunce, Desensor of the Faithe, Lorde of Irland, &c. upon Saynt George's Day, the

the twenty third Day of Aprill, at a Chapter holden at the Paleys of Westminster, by the Soverayne and the Companyons of the said Noble Order then there assembled: That as sone as the deth of any of the Company of the said Order shall be certeynly knowen, every of the rest, beyng no Strangiers, shall, according to the rates of their Degrees hereafter specified, immediately, upon a demande to be made for the same by the Register and the Dean, or one of them, to be by one of them employed in Aulmes Deeds, as in mendyng of High Wayes, or such other Workes of Charitie, as the Kyng's Majestie from tyme to tyme shall lymite and appoynte, the severall Somes of Money ensuying. Furst, The Soverayne, eight Pounds fix Shillings and eight Pence; a King of another Realme. fix Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence; the Prince. five Pounds fixteen Shillings and eight Pence; a Duke. five Pounds; a Marquess, three Pounds fifteen Shillings; an Erle, fifty Shillings; a Visconte, forty one Shillings and eight Pence; a Baron, thirty three Shillings and four Pence: a Bacheler Knyghte, sixteen Shillings and eight Pence. Of all which Somes thus to be received, the faid Dean and Regester, or eyther of them, shall yerely, at the Chapter, present his Accompte to the Kyng's Majestie, with his true and juste declaracion of disburlyng agayne, and defraying of the same. In that Cause the Partie whose Porcyon shall apere to be unpayde, shall in the Name of a Payne add unto his former Dutye another thirde parte of the same, and so for every Yere that he shall be behynde. to pay a thirde parte more than he shuld pay if he shuld fatisfye his Ordinary, according to the rate before expressed: and if the Dean or Register, or any of them, shall not at every suche Chapter present the Certificate of the Receipts and Payments in fourme aforesaid, whereby the same may apere to the Soverayne and Companyons of the Order then present, or at the leeft he in whome the defawlt shall rest, shall in the Name of a Payne contente and pave immediately, to be employed aboute like rurpose as afore, the Some of ten Pounds for every such defaulte.

XX. Item, It is agreed, That if any of the faid Companye die, that the Soverayne or his Deputie, after that they shall have certification of his Deth, shall be bounde

Digitized by Google

for to fend and give knowlege by ther Letters to all the Felowship of the said Order, being within Englande, for to come and be with the faid Soverayne or his Deputie, in what place soever it be, where it shall please hym to affigne, convenyently within fix Wekys after the certification of the Deth or Decease of the said Knyghte; the which allion affembled, or at the left fix, with the Soverayne or his Deputie abovefaid, every of them that there shall be present come to the Election, shall name nine of the worthieft and sufficient Knyghtes withoute Reproffe that he shall knowe, Subjectes to the said Sove? reyne, or others, so be that they holde no contrary Partie or be against hym; that is to witt, three Dukes, three Marquess, Erles, or of greater Aftate, three Barons, or Banerettis, and three Bachelers; the which denominations the cheiff Prelate of the said Order shall wryte; that is to witt, the Byshop of Wynchester for the tyme beyng, or in his absence the Chaunceler, or the Dean, or Register, or the moofte auncient Residencer of the said College in their absence, and the denominacion soo done by all, or fix at the leeft, by hym that have Written shall be shewed to the said Soverayne or to his Deputie, that then shall Chose of them that be named he that shall have the moost Voyces. and also he that the Soverayne shall exteme to be moost Honorable to the layde Order, and mooit profitable to his Crowne and to his Realme. And if there be any Knyght of the said Order that doth fayle for to come to the said Election, if he be not lett by a juste Cause, and that the faid cause of his Excuse shewed under his Seal of Armes. be founde by the Soverayne or his Deputie to be juste and reasonable, then his Excuse to be accepted and allowed: and that if his Cause be not juste, and that he come not to the Seremonies above-named, it is agreed that he shall Paye to the Warden of the College for to synge for hym that is departed, twenty Shillings Sterling; and at his nexte comyng to the Chapter, he shall not be before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; and shall knele upon the Grounde in the myddes of the Chapter, untyll the tyme that he be reconfiled by the Soverayne or his Deputie and the laid Companye.

XXI. Item, It is agreed, That if any Knyghte of the said Companye shulde departe, and another is Chosen and Electe, he shall have sone after his Election the Gatter,

in

in fignyfyeng that he ys one of the Knyghtes and Felowes of the Order of the Garter, and his Robe and Hode shall be delivered hym in the Chapter-House incontinently, after that his Commission hath been red before the Soverayne or his Depurie and the Companye, and after that shall be led by two Knyghtes of the said Order, accompanied with the other Noblemen, and the Officers of the Order shall also be present, and his Mantell shall be borne before hym by one of the Knyghtes of the faid Order, or by the Kyng ar Armes of the Order. The which Mantell shall be delyvered to hym for his Habit, after that he shall have made his Oth before his Stalle, and not before. And this done, he shall retorne into the Chapter-House. where he shall reseyve, by the Soverayne or his Deputie. the Coler, and soo he shall have the full Possession of his Habit holely, except great Prynces Strangers, the which may receive their Habit holely within the Chapter-House. as it hath been used and accustomed in tymes paste, for the shortenyng of tyme. And if he die before he have receyved hys Habit, he shall not be named one of the Founders, feyng that he lacketh to have full Poffession of his Astate: But he shall have the one halfe of the Masses above-named for the delyverance of the Garter, and none other thynge above it. And if he soo Chosen come not in all good diligence, after the reception of the said Garter in the said Place to be stalled, and in specyally within the Yere of his Election, if he be a Knyghre dwellyng within the Realme, and hath none Excuse reasonable, allowable, and acceptable to the said Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; then the Election shall be voyd of hym, and the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Companye, shall goo and make another new Election, and neyther the Banner, the Sworde, nor the Helmet, nor Creft, of hym so Chosen, be put upon his Stalle within the Castell before his commyng; to the ende that if he come not, his faid Hachementes, as Banner. Sworde, Helmer, be not taken down nor avoled, but honesly pur once of the Quyer, and the reast of other thyngs shall abyde, to the profitt and use of the saido Order.

XXII. Item, It is agreed, That if any of the Dukes, Marques, Erles, Vizcontes, Barons, Bandrettis, or Bachielers die; that he that shall come after and succede in his

his place and rome, be he Duke, Marquels, Erle, Vizconte, Baron, Baneret, Bacheler, or any of the Aftates
above-named, he shall have the selffe same Stalle his Predecessor had, and shall not change it, without he have
especiall License or Warrant of the said Soverayne, allwayes
all Emperours, Kyngs, and Prynces, be excepted, the
which shall kepe and holde theyr Stalles after theyr Astate, and very nexte unto the Soverayne; and then by
this meane a Duke shall take the Stalle of a Bacheler, and
a Bacheler the Stalle of a Duke, in signe and knowlege
of the fyrst Founders.

XXIII. Item, If there be any Place or Stalle voyde. the Soverayne at his Pleasure may advance and translate, by his special License, any Knyghte of the said Companye in the said Stalle, so be it that it be more hyer then the Stalle that he was in afore; also the Soverayne onys in his Lyffe may, if it please hym, make a general Tranflation of all the States at his pleasure, excepte the Emperours, Kyngs, Prynces, and Dakes; the which allwey shall kepe ther Places and Stalles, if not that they be translated in more byer Rome and Stalle, in the which translacion the long contynuance in the Ordre, and the praises, worthynes, and Merites of the Knyghtes ought to be considered and remembred; the which Knyghres from hensforth in goyng and syttyng at all tymes, that they shall were their Mantells, shall kepe their Places after the Order of their Stallis, and not after their Aftatis, as is aforesaid.

XXIV. Item, It is agreed, That all the Felowis above-faid, at their fyrft commyng in, shall give every of them a certayne Somme, after their Astate, for the entertaynyng and mayntenance of the Cannons and pore Knyghtes dwellyng in the said Place, and for the Almes Dedes that is there perpetualli ordenyd; that is to witt, the Soverayne sourty Markes, a Stranger Kyng twenty Pounds, the Prynce twenty Markes, every Duke ten Pounds, every Marques eight Pounds six Shillings and eight Pence, every Erle ten Markes, every Vizconte sive Pounds sixteen Shillings and eight Pence, every Baron and Baneret, sive Pounds, every Bacheler sive Markes; and their Baners, Helmetts, Crestis, and Swordis, shalle not be set over their Stalles untyll the tyme that they have payd, at their entryng, the foresaid Sommes, every one

after his Astate and Degree whereof he is; and that is to witt, the Soverayne is bounde to pay for every Stranger that shall be Chosen and electe, when he shall be stalled in his propre Parson, or by procurement or Attornay, and these Gystes be gieven, to the entent that every one of them that shall entre into the Ordre, be more worthy to have the Name, Title and Privelege of one of the Founders of the said Ordre.

XXV. Item, It ys agreed, That every Knight within the Yere of his Stallation, shall cause to be made a Scouchon of his Armes and Hachementis in a Plate of Metall, suche as shall please hym, and that it be suerly sett upon the back of his Stall; and the other that shall come after, shall have their Scochons and Hachements in like manner; but their Plates of Metall nor there Hachements shall not be soo large nor soo greatte as they of the first Founders were; excepte Strangers, which may use their Plates and Fashions at their Pleasure.

3

XXVI. Item, It ys agreed, That no Knyght chosen and electe for to be Felow of the said Noble Ordre, shall not be stalled by Procurement or Attornay, excepte he be a Straunger, and may not well come hyther in his propre Parson for to be stalled, or other that is busied withoute the Realme for the Affaires of the Soverayne, or by his Commandement and Lycence, as it ys above declared.

XXVII. Item, That every Knyght entryng in the said Ordre, shall Promes and Swere saithfully to observe and kepe the Poyntis and Articles that here followeth; that is to witt, that to his trew Powre he shall helpe, duryng his Lysse, and duryng the tyme that he shall be Felow of the said Ordre, for to kepe, desende and sustayne the Honor, Quarrelles, Rightes and Lordshippes of the Soverayne of the said Ordre.

Item, That with all his Powre he shall enforce hymselffe and take payne honorably to entertayne and augment the said Ordre; and if it happen hym for to know any thynge that were imagyned or procured to the contrarye, of the defence and resistence of this, with all his trew Powre he shall put hymself in more gretter endevorment.

Item, That well and trewly he shall accomplishe and entertayne all the Statutis, Poyntis and Ordynances of the said Ordre; and of all this shall make a generall Othe, all and so as though it were redde unto hym fro Poynt to

o Poynt,

Poynt, and Article to Article, and shall make the said Othe to the Soverayne of the said Ordre, or his Deputie, in swerying and promising upon the Holye Gospellis, for to kepe them and entertayne them without any fraude or delacion. And upon this he shall touche the Boke, and

kysse the Crosse.

Item, This done, the said Knyght soo Chosen, with due Reverence, shall receyve the Garter; the whiche the, Soverayne or his Deputye shall put it aboute his left Leg, in saying these Words: "Sir, The lovyng Companye of "the Ordre of the Garter hath receyved you theyr Bro-"ther, Lover, and Felow; and in token and knowlege of this, they give you and present you this present Garter; the whiche God will that you receive and were from hensforth to his Praise and Pleasure, and to the Exaltacion and Honor of the said Noble Order, and of your self.

XXVIII. Item, It is agreed, That in case that the Soverayne be out of the Contrey, to the whiche he cannot in propre Parson do that shall appertagne to the Stallation; he may gove Powre and Auctorite, by his Letters of Commission, to two of the Felows, or to dyverse, for

to exercise it in his Name.

XXIX. Item, It is agreed, That a common Seal, a Signet of the Arms of the Ordre be made, the which shall rest in the custodi and kepyng of the Chanceler of the Ordre, or of such a Knyghte and Felow of the said Ordre as shall please the Soverayne to name and affigne; and if he that shall have the Seales in kepyng or custodi, shulde departe or goo forth for any cause twenty Miles sairs from the Soverayne, then he shall deliver the said Seals to the Soverayne, or to such Knyghte of the Ordre, or to any other Parson that it shall please the said Soverayne for to ordeyne and appoynte; to the entent that at no tyme the said Seals be out of the presence of the seid Soverayne, he beyng within his Realme; and if he be owte of his Realme, the Signet shall suffice for to Seal all suche Actes and Wrytynges touchyng the said Ordre, that there may be concluded and made.

XXX. Item, It is agreed, That every Felow of the said Ordre, from hensforth, shall have the Statutis of the said Ordre first collected and oversene by the Register, and after that sealed with the common Seal aforesaid: And if

the Knyght will have any Armes devysed, or cognysance made within the Boke of the said Statutes, then the said Boke shall be delyvered to the Kynge at Armes of the Ordre, for trewly to ordayne of it as it shall appertayne; and the original to be likewyse signed and sealed, the whiche shall abyde in the Treasory of the said College for evermore.

XXXI. Item, It is agreed, That after the Death of eny of the Knyghtes of the said Companye, his Executours shall be bounde for to sende agayne, and to delyver, the Statutes of the said Ordre within three Monethes after, if so be that the Statutes hath been delivered unto hym by the Soverayne, or to his charge; the which Statutes shall be delivered agayn to the Warden or Register of the said College, or to one of the principal Officers for the tyme

beyng.

XXXII. Item, It is agreed, That none of the Knyghtes of Saynt George, of the said Companye of the Garter, shall not goo oute of the Contrey nor Dominion of the Soverayne, without havyng Leave and Lisence of the Soverayne; and therefore it is agreed, That if eny Viago be made, or any other notable Acte, appertaynyng to the Honor of Knyghthod; the said Soverayne, of his Grace, for the great Love, Favor and Considence that he beares towarde the Knyghtes of the said Ordre, will prefarre, advance and prefent the said Felowes and Knyghtes of the

Order of Saynt George before all other.

XXXIII. Item., That none of the Knyghtes of the said Ordre shall not Arme themselves the one against the other, but in the Warres of his Soverayne Lorde, in his right and juste Quarell; and if it shulde happen that any of the said Ordre were retayned with any Lorde, and holdyng his Partie and Quarell, and the adversari Partie defireth alloo to have another Felowe of the said Ordre with hym; In this case such a Knyght and Felowe shall not be recayned, but may excuse hym from all suche thynges, because his Felowe is armed against hym on the other fyde, and was recayned before hym; and every Knyght of the faid Ordre shall be bounde to excepte when he shall be retayned, that he may be holely discharged from his Servyce of Warre, if any of the Felowshipp before hym retayned or holding the contrary and adversari Partye; and if he that is second retayned, know that any of his Q 0 2 Felawes Felowes be retayned before hym, and armed with his adversari Partye; Then he that is seconde retayned, at the fyrste knowledge that he shall have thereof, shall be bounde to excuse hym roward his Maister, and leave that Onarell.

XXXIV. Item, That all the Lycencis given to the Knyghtes of the said Ordre that goo oute of the Realme, for to seke and obtaine Honor; and all Certifications or sending Letters and Writinges concerning the said Ordre, from hensforth shall be Sealed with one of the

Seales of the said Ordre.

XXXV. Item, It is agreed, That if eny Knyght of the faid Ordre, for his Devocion, wyll dwell within the faid Castell contynually; there shall be ordeny'd for hym a dwellyng Place convenient, by the Assignment of the Soverayne, and he of his propre Goods, and at his Costes and Charges, shall provyde for hys Lyveyng.

XXXVI. Item, If any other Knyghr, not being of the faid Ordre, hathe any wyll to dwelle there for his Devocion; there shall be ordened for hym a dwellyng Place, after the Wyll and Pleasure of the said Soverayne, and

with the Consentement of the said Company.

XXXVII. Item. It is ordened, That yf any Knyght, or other Parson, wylle gyve any Landes, Heritage, or Rentes, for to be participant of all the good Oraysons and Prayers that shall be said in the sayde Place, also his Name shall be registred, and the Canons and pore Knyghts shall Pray perpetually unto God for hym; and also the said Deane, Warden, and Canons of the said College, from hensforth, shall not take any maner of Charge upon the said College, withoute the Advyse and Consentement of the sayd Soverayne, or his Deputye, and the Felowship of the sayd Order, in Presence, and by them concented and agreed in playne Chapter.

XXXVIII. Item, For to have better knowledge of the Knyghtes that shall be of the said Order, the Soverayne of it willyth and ordeneth, by the Willes and Confentement of all the hole Company, that from hensforth, that every Knyght of the said Ordre shall have and were apertly and openly, a Coller of Golde about his Necke, waying thirty Ounces of Troy Weyght, and not above, the whiche Coller shall be made by Pieces in Fashion of Garters, in the myddes of which Garters shall be a double

R clo.

Rose, the one Rose of Rede, and the other within White, and the other Rose White, and the other Rose within Rede, and at the ende of the said Collet shall be pur and sastned the Ymage of Saynt George. The whiche Coller, the faid Soverayne, his Successours, and amiable Companye of the said Ordre, shall be bounde to were, and in especiall in principall and solempne Feafts of the Yere, and in other Dayes of the Yere shall be holden to were a small Chayne of Gold, with the Ymage of Saynt George dependyng at the ende of the faid Chayne, excepte in tyme of Warre, Sickeness, long Viage; then it shall suffice hym to were alonely a Lase of Sylke, with the said Image of St. George ; and if the faid Coller have any need of reparacion, it might be put into the Handes of the Goldesmyth and Workeman, unto the tyme that it be repared; the whiche Goller allfo may not be made more richer with Stones or other thynges, referving the faid Ymage, the which may be garnished and enryched at the Pleasure of the saide Knyghte: Also the said Coller may not be solde, engaged, aliened, nor gyven, for any nede, cause, or necessity whatsoever it be,

T H E

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

OF Knighthood in general, and the several Orders in England, &c. page 1.

CHAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Christendom, &c. page 19.

CHAP. III.

An Account of the Orders of Knighthood abfolutely Military. page 53.

. C H. A. P. IV.

Of the Castle, Chappel, and College of Windfor. page 79.

CHAP. V.

The Institution of the most Noble Order of the Garter. page 119.

CHAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order. p. 133.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Habits and Ensigns of the most Noble Order of the Garter. page 156.

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VIII.

The Officers appointed for the Service of the Order. page 189.

CHAP. IX.

The Election of a Knight into the Order. page 225.

CHAP. X.

The Investiture of a Knight Subject, with the Garter and George. page 272.

CHAP. XI.

Of Preparations for the personal Installation of a Knight. page 286.

CHAP. XII.

.The personal Installation of a Knight-Subject. page 315.

CHAP. XIII.

The Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy. page 352.

C H A P. XIV.

The Signification of Elections to Strangers.
page 360.

CHAP. XV.

The Investitures of Strangers with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order. page 367.

CHAP. XVI.

The Installation of a Stranger by Proxy. p. 384. C H A P.

The CONTENTS.

C.H A P. XVII.

The Duties and Fees payable by the Knights-Companions at their Installations. page 404.

C. H. A. P. XVIII.

Of the Grand Feaft of the Order. page 410.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feast of the Order. page 420.

CHAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feast. page 433.

CHAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feast Day.
page 463.

CHAP. XXII.

The Ceremonies observed on the last Day of the Feast, page 484.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Observation of the Grand Feast by absent Knights. page 486.

CHAP. XXIV.

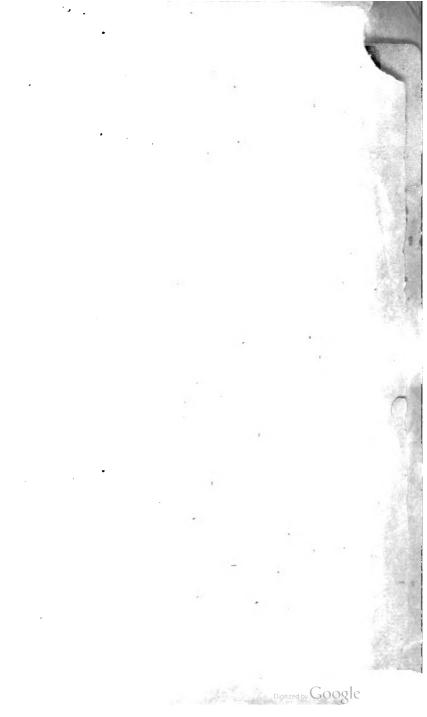
The Degradation of a Knight-Companion. p. 489.

CHAP. XXV.

Honours paid to deceased Knights-Companions. page 491.

CHAP. XXVI.

A List of the Founders, and Catalogue of their Successors, to the present time. page 501.



Digitized by Google*



